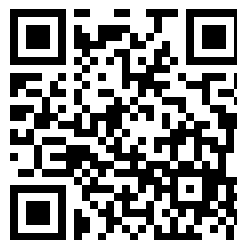

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

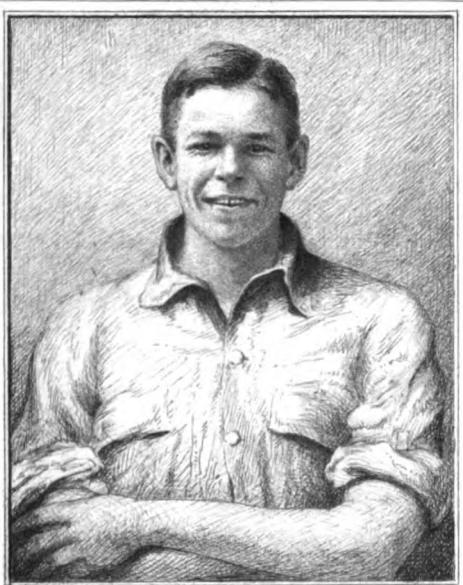
GoogleTM books

<https://books.google.com>



B 336677





In Memory of
STEPHEN SPAULDING
1907 - 1925
CLASS of 1927
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

62.1

**HISTORY
OF
THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT
1742—1934**

**HISTORY OF
THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE
REGIMENT**

1742—1934

**BY
LIEUT.-COLONEL RUSSELL GURNEY**

**ALDERSHOT :
GALE & POLDEN, LTD.**

1935

U A
652
. N 75
H 672
v. 1

PRINTED IN ENGLAND
BY
GALE & POLDEN, LTD.,
ALDERSHOT.

6914-J

**Dedicated
to
The Soldiers of The Northamptonshire Regiment
Past, Present and to Come—**



LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR HARRY H. S. KNOX, K.C.B., D.S.O.
The Colonel of the Regiment.

Stephen Spaulding
Mem. & Coll.

Fr. Edwards

11-13-32

582993

FOREWORD

It is again my privilege to write a foreword for a history of the Regiment. The lack of a published regimental history was for many years keenly felt, and since the Great War something has been done to improve matters. A few years ago we published "The Northamptonshire Regiment, 1914-1918," dealing in considerable detail with the part taken by the Regiment in the Great War. We followed this up with "A Short History of the Northamptonshire Regiment," giving a brief summary of the doings of the Regiment from the dates the battalions were raised to 1918.

These publications, valuable as they are, do not meet the demand for a fuller history more adequate to the greatness of the story to be unfolded. The present work, which aims at providing such a history, will be welcomed by all friends of the Regiment. That we are able to publish this volume is due to the generosity of many subscribers and to many years of work by the author, Lieutenant-Colonel Russell Gurney. On behalf of all ranks, past and present, of the Regiment I thank the subscribers and the author. Words cannot repay Lieutenant-Colonel Gurney the debt we owe him for his excellent work; his reward will be an honoured place for all time in the records of the Regiment he has served so well.

This volume contains a history well worthy of record: the story of nearly two hundred years of action, two hundred years of duty nobly performed, two hundred years of free and willing service. The Regiment has worked, and fought, and played with whole-hearted devotion, and without advertisement. It is a record of glorious achievement.


Our predecessors in good times and bad, in war and in peace, have given us a grand example of unselfish co-operation, of efficiency, of discipline, of pride in Army and Regiment, and of loyalty to King and Country.

These are the qualities which are the heritage of the British Infantry. They are the qualities which enabled our Regiment in strenuous years to play a noble part in Empire building and in extending the *pax Britannica* to many peoples. The 48th and 58th as separate Regiments, by deeds of undying valour, won honours for their Colours. Those honours are cherished by all battalions of the greater brotherhood of the Northamptonshire Regiment—the title under which we now have the honour to serve. The spirit of the old

Regiments played no small part in the efficient expansion of the Regiment which took place in 1914-1915, and that spirit lives to-day. It was evident on the battlefields of the Great War, where battalions of the Northamptonshire Regiment proudly proved their mettle. The spirit of the Regiment is a possession beyond price. These pages testify to its value.

To those who have served or are serving in the Regiment our history requires no recommendation, but we are proud to know that the story will be valued by a wide public in the counties of Northamptonshire and Rutlandshire. A territorial connection of over one hundred and fifty years' standing is an association highly prized in the Regiment, and, strong as was the county feeling before the Great War, it has been strengthened a thousandfold by the gallantry and sacrifice of those fathers, sons and brothers who in 1915-1918 left town and countryside to serve in their county regiment. By their service they cemented and consecrated the bond which unites County and Regiment. This history will appeal to many families in Northamptonshire and Rutlandshire whose names are honoured in the Northamptonshire Regiment.

The comrades who have served with us and our friends in the home counties constitute a wide public, but the story of the Regiment is an Imperial story, and it is hoped it will be read not without interest in those great Dominions with battalions of whose armies the Northamptonshire Regiment is proud to enjoy valued alliances.


Lieut. General.
Colonel, The Northamptonshire
Regt.

CONTENTS

| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|-------|---|------|
| I. | 48TH, 1741-1742 | I |
| | The Regiment—War of Austrian Succession—Formation of 48th—Purchase of Commissions—Enlistment of Men—Pay of the Soldier—Dress—Discipline—Drill and Tactics. | |
| II. | 48TH, 1742-1755 | 12 |
| | War of Austrian Succession—Flanders—The '45 Rebellion—Battle of Falkirk—Battle of Culloden—Flanders, 1747—Battle of Laffelt—Treaty of Aachen—Ireland. | |
| III. | 48TH AND 58TH, 1755-1759 | 23 |
| | The Seven Years' War—Battle of Monongahela—Formation of the 58th—The War in America—Sea Transport—The Capture of Louisburg. | |
| IV. | 48TH AND 58TH, 1759 | 36 |
| | Quebec Campaign—Battle of Montmorency—The Ascent of the Heights of Abraham—The Battle—Death of General Wolfe—Fall of Quebec—General Montcalm. | |
| V. | 48TH, 1759-1761; 58TH, 1759-1762 | 46 |
| | Defence of Quebec—A Sergeant of the 58th—Winter at Quebec—Surprise Attack (30th January, 1760)—Battle of Sainte Foy (28th April, 1760)—Casualties—Siege of Quebec—Capture of Montreal—Winter Quarters (1760-61)—48th March to New York. | |
| VI. | 48TH, 1761-1775; 58TH, 1762-1779 | 53 |
| | Martinique (1762)—War with Spain (1762)—Capture of Fort Moro (48th)—Eight Companies of 58th captured at Sea (1762)—Capture of Havannah (48th and 58th). 58th: England and Ireland (1763-1769)—Gibraltar (1770-1779)—Discipline—A Duel. 48th: Ireland (1763-1773)—West Indies (1773-1775). | |
| VII. | 48TH, 1775-1781; 58TH, 1779-1784 | 63 |
| | The War of American Independence—War with France—Eight Companies of 48th captured at Dominica and Grenada (1778)—War with Spain—Gibraltar—The Siege Commences (13th September, 1779)—Incidents of the Siege—Intense Bombardment opened—Death of Captain Burke—The Sortie (27th November, 1781)—The Attack by Sea, 1782—Relief by Lord Howe (18th October, 1782)—Treaty of Versailles. | |
| VIII. | 48TH, 1781-1797; 58TH, 1784-1798 | 78 |
| | The 48th in Scotland and Ireland (1781-1788)—The 58th at Home (1784-1793)—Aytoun's Diary—The Hon. A. Wellesley serves in 58th—The French Revolution (1789)—Situation in the West Indies—Attack on Martinique (1793)—48th in England and Jersey (1794-1795)—Martinique, 1794 (58th)—St. Lucia, Guadeloupe and Grenada—58th in England (1795-1798)—48th return to the West Indies (1795)—St. Lucia (1796-1797). | |
| IX. | 58TH, 1798-1802 | 89 |
| | Napoleon and the Mediterranean—Capture of Minorca (1798)—Expedition to Cadiz (1800)—Expedition to Egypt (1800)—Marmorice Bay—The Landing at Aboukir Bay—Battle of Mandora—Battle of Alexandria—One Hundred Years Later—Capture of Rosetta—Fall of Cairo—Capture of Alexandria—The Sphinx. | |

| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|--------|--|------|
| X. | 48TH, 1799-1801 | 100 |
| | England (1797-1799)—Mary Anne Wellington—Dan Long—Formation of the Band—Gibraltar (1799)—An Attempted Desertion—Minorca (1800)—Expedition to Genoa—Capture of Malta. | |
| XI. | 1/48TH, 2/48TH AND 2/58TH, 1803-1809; 1/58TH, 1802-1812 ... | 107 |
| | Napoleon threatens Invasion—Service Battalions Formed (1803)—The 48th in England and Ireland—At Gibraltar—The 58th in England and Jersey—They Return to the Mediterranean (1805)—Expedition to Naples—Expedition to Calabria—Battle of Maida—Siege of Scylla—Sicilian Companies—Capture of Ischia—Defence of Sicily. | |
| XII. | CONDITIONS OF SERVICE TO 1800 | 118 |
| | County Titles—Drill and Tactics—Officers—Accommodation of the Soldier—His Pay and Subsistence—Enlistment—Transport by Sea—Clothing and Equipment—Administration—Discipline. | |
| XIII. | 1/48TH, JUNE—DECEMBER, 1809; 2/48TH, MARCH—DECEMBER, 1809; 2/58TH, JUNE—DECEMBER, 1809 | 129 |
| | The Peninsular War—Passage of the Douro (May, 1809)—Arrival of 1/48th and 2/58th—Colonel Donellan—The Battle of Talavera—The Main Attack—Death of Colonel Donellan—Major Middlemore—Anniversary of the Battle—Withdrawal from Talavera. | |
| XIV. | 1/48TH, 1810-1811; 2/48TH, 1810-1814 | 144 |
| | Campaign of 1810 in Portugal—Battle of Busaco—Lines of Torres Vedras—Investment of Badajoz—Battle of Albuera—Capture of Major Brooke—Narrow Escape of Adjutant Dixon—Captain Cimitière—Battle Scavengers—Major Brooke's Escape—The Last of the 2/48th—Lieutenant-Colonel Sir James Wilson—Combat at Aldea da Ponte. | |
| XV. | 48TH, 2/58TH, 1812 | 156 |
| | Ciudad Rodrigo—Storming of Badajoz—The Casualties—Sack of Badajoz—Battle of Salamanca—Attack of Fusilier Brigade (48th)—The Casualties—Drummer Kelly (2/25th)—The Trumpeter's Horse—Siege of Burgos (2/58th). | |
| XVI. | 48TH, 2/58TH, 1813-1814 | 166 |
| | Winter Quarters, 1812-1813—Campaign of 1813—Battle of Vittoria—Battles of the Pyrenees—First Battle of Sorauren—Charge of the 48th—Second Battle of Sorauren—The 2/58th and the French 58th Face to Face—Combat at Echalar—Capture of San Sebastian—"A Steelback"—Crossing the Bidassoa—Battle of Nivelle—Battles of the Nive—Winter Quarters—Battle of Orthez—Battle of Toulouse—Peace. | |
| XVII. | 1/58TH, 1812-1843 | 181 |
| | 58th arrive in Spain (1812)—Battle of Castalla—Capture of Tarragona—58th leave Spain—American War—Battle of Plattsburg—Paris (1815)—Jamaica—Lord Lynedoch—Lord Frederick Bentinck—England and Ireland (1822-1828)—Sir Kenneth Douglas—Ceylon (1828-1839)—Regimental Savings Bank—General Maitland—England (1839-1843). | |
| XVIII. | 48TH, 1814-1853 | 187 |
| | Ireland (1814-1816)—Australia (1817-1824)—The Voyage Described—Bushrangers—India (1824-1835)—The Coorg Campaign—England and Ireland (1835-1837)—First Move by "Rail Road"—Gibraltar (1838-1844)—Jamaica (1844-1847)—Presentation of Colours (1838)—Ireland (1847-1852)—Wales (1852-1853). | |

| CHAP. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| XIX. 58TH, 1843-1879 | 199 |
| Australia—New Zealand—Ohaiaawai—Ruapekapeka—Boulcott's Farm—Drummer Allen—Wanganui—Auckland—Wreck of the <i>Alcmene</i> —Departure from New Zealand—Memorials—England and Ireland (1859-1864)—Presentation of Colours—The Old Colours—India (1864-1874)—England (1874-1879). | |
| XX. 48TH, 1853-1892 | 216 |
| The Crimean War—Capture of Sevastopol—Malta and Gibraltar (1856-1858)—Overland to Suez—India (1858-1865)—England and Ireland (1865-1868)—Malta and India (1868-1880)—Ireland and England (1880-1892)—Presentation of Colours (1889). | |
| XXI. 58TH, 1879-1880 | 227 |
| The Zulu War—The Battle of Ulundi. | |
| XXII. GENERAL CONDITIONS, 1800-1914 | 235 |
| The Cardwell Reforms—Linking of Battalions—New Badges and their Origin—The Officer—Abolition of Purchase—Education of the Officer—The Pay of the Soldier—Enlistment—Discipline—Barracks—Soldiers' Wives—Dress—Organization—Bands—The Colonel of the Regiment—Tactics and Drill. | |
| XXIII. THE MILITIA | 246 |
| The Old Constitutional Force of England—Early Embodiments—Method of Raising—Annual Training—The Napoleonic Wars—Quelling a Mutiny—Proofs of Loyalty—Draft-finding for the Regular Army—Rutland Militia Volunteer for Service in the Peninsula—The Crimean War—Service at Gibraltar (1855)—Amalgamation of Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia—Formation of a Second Battalion—Amalgamation with 48th and 58th—Service in South Africa (1902)—The Special Reserve. | |
| XXIV. 58TH, 1880-1885 | 254 |
| The First Boer War—Private J. Osborne, V.C.—The Battle of Laing's Nek—Lieutenant A. R. Hill, V.C.—The Battle of Majuba Hill—Company at St. Helena—58th in South Africa. | |
| XXV. 48TH, 1892-1914 | 269 |
| India (1892-1897)—The Tirah Campaign—Action at Saran Sar—India (1898-1910)—Aden (1910-1911)—England (1911-1914). | |
| XXVI. 58TH, 1899-1914 | 284 |
| The South African War—The Battle of Belmont—Battle of Graspan—Modder River—Action at Enslin Station—Battle of Magersfontein—Modder River Camp—Arrival of Volunteers—Relief of Kimberley—Operations in the Orange Free State—The Pursuit of de Wet—Clearing the South-Western Transvaal—The End of the War—The 3rd (Militia) Battalion—England—Malta—Egypt. | |
| XXVII. THE VOLUNTEERS AND TERRITORIALS | 305 |
| Early Volunteer Movements—The Northamptonshire Volunteers and Local Militia (1797-1814)—The Northamptonshire Fencibles (1794-1802)—The Volunteer Movement of 1859—Formation of Local Corps (1859)—Review by Queen Victoria (1860)—The Northamptonshire Volunteer Rifles (1860)—The First Camp (1864)—The Cardwell System (1881)—Review at Windsor—The South African War—The Territorial Force (1908). | |

| CHAP. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XXVIII. THE GREAT WAR | 324 |
| Losses and Honours—The Territorial Connection—The 1st Battalion—The 2nd Battalion—The 4th Battalion—Service Battalions—The 5th—The 6th—The 7th—Reserve Battalions. | |
| XXIX. THE REGIMENT, 1919-1934 | 333 |
| Changes in Tactics and Equipment—Organization—Pay and Conditions—Dress—Colours—Colonels—Allied Regiments—The Depot Week—Reorganization of the Territorial Army—The 4th Battalion (1920-1934)—The 5th Battalion (1920-1934). | |
| XXX. 48TH AND 58TH, 1919-1934 | 339 |
| 48th: Ireland (1919-1922)—Sinn Fein—England (1922-1927)—China (1927-1929)—Malta, Palestine and Egypt (1929-1932)—Move to Iraq by Air (1932)—India (1932-1934). 58th: England (1919)—India (1919-1926)—Sudan (1926)—England (1928-1934). | |
| EPILOGUE | 350 |
| NOTES ON CHAPTERS | 351 |

APPENDICES

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| I. THE COLONELS OF THE REGIMENT | 379 |
| II. BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES ON COLONELS | 380 |
| III. SUCCESSION LIST OF LIEUTENANT-COLONELS | 392 |
| IV. SUCCESSION LIST OF ADJUTANTS | 397 |
| V. THE COLOURS | 401 |
| VI. UNIFORM, ARMS AND EQUIPMENT | 409 |
| VII. THE CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE, NORTHAMPTON | 426 |
| VIII. THE 15TH (NORTH) AUCKLAND REGIMENT | 431 |
| IX. THE LAKE SUPERIOR REGIMENT OF CANADA | 433 |
| X. SHORT HISTORY OF THE 48TH BATTALION (THE TORRENS REGIMENT), AUSTRALIAN MILITARY FORCES | 436 |
| XI. A SHORT HISTORY OF THE 58TH BATTALION (ESSENDON RIFLES), AUSTRALIAN MILITARY FORCES | 439 |
| XII. MESS PLATE | 442 |
| XIII. THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENTAL DINNER CLUB | 446 |
| XIV. COMRADES' ASSOCIATION, THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT ... | 447 |
| XV. OFFICERS WHO DIED IN THE GREAT WAR | 449 |
| XVI. REGIMENTAL MARCHES OF THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT ... | 454 |

ILLUSTRATIONS

COLOUR

| | FACING PAGE |
|--|-------------|
| THE COLOURS: 1ST AND 2ND BATTALIONS | I |
| PRIVATE (1742), 48TH REGT. ; GRENADIER (1742), 48TH REGT. ; GRENADIER, (1769), 58TH REGT. | 18 |
| A VIEW OF THE TAKING OF QUEBEC, SEPTEMBER 13TH, 1759 | 41 |
| ATTACK ON GIBRALTAR, 14TH SEPTEMBER, 1782 | 75 |
| THE LANDING AT ABOUKIR BAY, 8TH MARCH, 1801 | 93 |
| PRIVATE (<i>circa</i> 1805), 58TH REGT. ; OFFICER (<i>circa</i> 1814), 48TH REGT. ; PRIVATE (<i>circa</i> 1814), 48TH REGT. | 124 |
| THE BATTLE OF TALAVERA, 28TH JULY, 1809 | 141 |
| THE BATTLE OF ALBUERA, 16TH MAY, 1811 | 151 |
| PYRENEES, 1813 | 175 |
| OFFICER (1825), 48TH REGT. ; OFFICER (1832), 58TH REGT. ; OFFICER (1850), 48TH REGT. | 236 |

MONOCHROME

| | |
|---|-----|
| LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR HARRY H. S. KNOX, K.C.B., D.S.O., THE COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT | vii |
| LIEUTENANT-GENERAL THE HON. JAMES CHOLMONDLEY, COLONEL 48TH REGIMENT, 13TH JANUARY, 1741, TO 13TH MARCH, 1743 | 4 |
| GENERAL THE HON. HENRY SEYMOUR CONWAY, COLONEL, 48TH REGIMENT, 6TH APRIL, 1746, TO 23RD JULY, 1749 | 20 |
| LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT ANSTRUTHER, COLONEL, 58TH REGIMENT, 28TH DECEMBER, 1755, TO 3RD DECEMBER, 1767 | 28 |
| LOUISBURG FROM THE LIGHTHOUSE, 1758 | 31 |
| GENERAL THE HON. SIR WILLIAM HOWE | 34 |
| THE DEATH OF WOLFE, 1759 | 43 |
| SORTIE FROM GIBRALTAR, NIGHT OF 26TH-27TH NOVEMBER, 1781 | 73 |

| | FACING PAGE |
|---|-------------|
| MARTINIQUE, 1794 | 81 |
| MAJOR-GENERAL PATRICK TONYN, COLONEL OF THE 48TH FOOT, 23RD MAY, 1787, TO 31ST DECEMBER, 1804 | 87 |
| BATTLE OF ALEXANDRIA, 21ST MARCH, 1801 | 95 |
| THE BATTLE OF MAIDA, 4TH JULY, 1806 | 115 |
| CHARLES DONELLAN, <i>circa</i> 1790, WHILST SERVING IN THE 15TH FOOT ... | 133 |
| THE BATTLE OF TALAVERA, 27TH-28TH JULY, 1809 | 135 |
| THE STORMING OF BADAJOZ, 5TH APRIL, 1812 | 157 |
| THE DRUM-MAJOR'S HORSE | 164 |
| THE PENINSULAR DRUM, CAPTURED FROM THE FRENCH 58TH | 173 |
| GENERAL LORD LYNEDOC, COLONEL, 58TH REGIMENT, 10TH FEBRUARY, 1823, TO 5TH SEPTEMBER, 1826 | 185 |
| THE 58TH AT OHAIWAI, 1845 | 204 |
| COLONEL R. H. WYNARD, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL, 58TH REGIMENT, 30TH DECEMBER, 1842, TO 25TH OCTOBER, 1858 | 204 |
| OLD COLOURS OF THE 58TH | 212 |
| 58TH REGIMENTAL MEDALS | 241 |
| 58TH REGIMENTAL MEDALS | 256 |
| LIEUTENANT A. R. HILL, V.C. | 258 |
| COLOUR-SERGEANT BRIDGESTOCK, D.C.M. ; PRIVATE J. OSBORNE, V.C. ; PRIVATE GODFREY, D.C.M. | 258 |
| "FLOREAT ETONA," THE BATTLE OF LAING'S NEK, 28TH JANUARY, 1881 | 262 |
| OFFICER'S SHOULDER BELT PLATE, 1820-1855 | 280 |
| OFFICER'S WAIST BELT PLATE, 1855-1881 | 280 |
| OTHER RANKS' CROSS BELT PLATE, worn prior to 1855 | 280 |
| OFFICER'S WAIST BELT PLATE, 1855-1881 | 280 |
| OFFICER'S WAIST BELT PLATE, 1881-1902 | 280 |
| THE BATTLE OF BELMONT, 23RD NOVEMBER, 1899 | 289 |

| | FACING PAGE |
|--|-------------|
| OFFICER'S HAT PLATE, <i>circa</i> 1816-1828; OFFICER'S HELMET PLATE, 1877-1881; OFFICER'S HELMET PLATE, 1881-1901 | 304 |
| 1ST NORTHAMPTONSHIRE RIFLE VOLUNTEERS: THE OFFICERS. ALTHORP PARK, AUGUST, 1882 | 319 |
| YPRES, 1916 | 326 |
| THE MENIN ROAD, 1918 | 330 |
| THE CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE, NORTHAMPTON | 336 |
| PORTION OF THE 1ST BATTALION ARRIVING AT MOASCAR, ON RETURN FROM IRAQ, JULY, 1932 | 344 |

AUTHOR'S NOTE

THE Author wishes to take this opportunity of placing on record an acknowledgment of the debt he owes to all those who have assisted him in the production of this volume, and particularly to the following :—To W. Y. Baldry, Esq., O.B.E., and A. S. White, Esq., the War Office Librarians, for their constant and generous assistance ; to Colonel C. W. Barton, C.M.G., D.S.O., for permission to use his short history of the 58th and for his notes on the campaign in South Africa ; to Major C. A. Markham for the use of his " History of the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia " ; to Colonel G. S. Eunson for his comprehensive notes on the 4th Battalion ; to C. T. Atkinson, Esq., M.A.Oxon., for his expert criticism of the whole manuscript ; to P. W. Reynolds, Esq., for suggestions with regard to the appendix on Dress ; and to Major H. G. Parkyn, O.B.E., for his assistance particularly in the matter of badges and buttons. He must also thank Colonel E. L. Hughes, D.S.O., O.B.E., for his constant labours ; Captain J. Lingham, M.C., and Lieutenant C. J. M. Watts for the tedious work of proof-reading ; and Mr. C. S. Seager, of Messrs. Gale & Polden, Ltd., for all his help in the matter of publication. Space does not permit him to thank by name the numerous officers who have helped in various ways. He must thank his wife for the many hours of work she has devoted to the production of the book and for drawing a large proportion of the maps, and finally, his fellow members of the History Committee—Lieut.-General Sir Harry H. S. Knox, K.C.B., D.S.O., Colonel E. L. Hughes, D.S.O., O.B.E., Lieut.-Colonel G. St. G. Robinson, D.S.O., M.C., Major W. G. A. Coldwell, D.S.O., and Lieut.-Colonel E. G. Warren—for all their help.

R. G.

PLYMOUTH,
March, 1935.



1st Battalion. Presented 23rd July, 1889.



**2nd Battalion. Presented 10th May, 1860.
THE COLOURS.**

Plate presented to the History by Lieut.-Colonel F. W. L. Bissett, D.S.O., M.C.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

CHAPTER I

(48TH, 1741-1742)

THE REGIMENT—WAR OF AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION—FORMATION OF 48TH—PURCHASE OF COMMISSIONS—ENLISTMENT OF MEN—PAY OF THE SOLDIER—DRESS—DISCIPLINE—DRILL AND TACTICS.

As in the case of human beings, every regiment has its own distinct character.

This lasts from generation to generation, though the individuals of which it is composed are constantly and rapidly changing. The soul of a regiment, represented materially by the regimental colour, is a very real and constant inspiration. Its character depends on many factors, of which tradition and national origin are probably the most vital. The traditions of the Northamptonshire Regiment are based on its past deeds; its roots lie in the heart of rural England.

The particular attributes of the British Army are its good humour under trial and its power of recovery after defeat. The armies of other nations may be at times more brilliant in attack, more vigorous in pursuit, more rapid in their grasp of a situation and display more military imagination. It has been said that "in war the British Army wins only one battle and that the last one," and it is an extraordinary fact that almost every war in which we have been engaged has commenced with a severe reverse and often retirement. The Peninsular War opened with the retreat to Corunna, and the victorious campaigns of 1811 and 1812 followed the withdrawal to the lines of Torres Vedras; we were retiring when the Battle of Waterloo was fought; the war in South Africa opened with failure; and, finally, in the Great War the retreat from Mons was followed by the victory on the Marne, and the defeats of our armies in March and April, 1918, by the advance to ultimate victory a few months later.

In times of trial the British infantry never know when they are beaten, and in victory they are merciful and kind to a degree unknown in some other armies. They fight like gentlemen and their characteristics make them the best infantry in the world.

Infantry is the foundation on which the army is built up, and the county regiments are probably the best example of the British Army as a whole. By reason of their very reliability their deeds often receive less notice than those performed by more spectacular corps, and their steadiness and reliability are taken for granted. The Northamptonshire is typical of the county

regiments ; its record may be described as essentially British, and contains more of stern, stubborn fighting than of deeds of sudden brilliance. It is the type of regiment welcomed by commanders as the backbone of their force, and to which they feel as Napoleon did to his 32nd Légère, of whom he wrote after Lonato, " The 32nd were there. I was easy."

The Northamptonshire Regiment now consists of four battalions, the 1st and 2nd being Regular battalions and the 4th and 5th belonging to the Territorial Army. The 3rd (Militia) Battalion (The Northampton and Rutland Militia) still retains its identity in name only ; this battalion has been territorial in character since its formation, and forms the earliest link between the Regiment and the county. It might justly claim to be the parent battalion round which the present Regiment has been formed.

The 1st Battalion, the old 48th Regiment of Foot, was formed in 1741, and it was not until 1779 that it obtained its official territorial connection and received the name of the Northamptonshire Regiment. At the same time the 58th Foot, which later became the 2nd Battalion, was named the Rutlandshire Regiment. These two Regiments had separate identities until 1881, when under the Cardwell system they were combined as the 1st and 2nd Battalions of The Northamptonshire Regiment, and " Rutlandshire " was dropped as an official title, except for the Militia.

Of the two Territorial Army battalions, the 4th has its headquarters at Northampton. The 5th Battalion, which is the latest addition to the Regiment, was previously the Huntingdonshire Regiment, and now has its headquarters at Peterborough.

In addition to the above, special Service battalions were formed during the Napoleonic Wars and during the Great War. In the former an extra battalion was added to both the 48th and 58th, and these battalions were known as the 2nd/48th and 2nd/58th respectively ; both saw heavy fighting in the Peninsular War. In the Great War three special Service battalions, the 5th, 6th and 7th, formed part of fighting formations, and were on continuous active service in France and Flanders from 1915 until the end of the war, gaining many honours for the Regiment. Reserve battalions have also been formed from time to time, the Regiment reaching its maximum strength during the Great War, when it consisted of thirteen battalions all told.

The 1st Battalion, or 48th Foot, was formed in the following circumstances :—

**Formation of
the 48th.**

On the death of the Emperor Charles VI a dispute arose between the nations on the question of his successor, and the possession of the hereditary dominions of the Hapsburgs. Before his death Charles had drawn up an instrument called the " Pragmatic Sanction," recognizing Maria Theresa, his daughter, as his heiress ; and to this England, France, Spain, Prussia and Russia had all assented. The Elector of Bavaria alone had refused to accept the Sanction. On the death

of Charles, however, France, Spain and Prussia, forgetful of their promises, allied themselves with Bavaria, and Maria Theresa, surrounded by enemies on all sides, had only England to whom to turn for help. The appeal met with a ready response, for we were already struggling with Spain and France to secure the trade of the world. The ensuing war is known to history as the War of the Austrian Succession.

The requirements of the war necessitated an increase of the army, and in January, 1741, the raising of seven new regiments was ordered. Included among them was the 48th, which was formed and embodied at Norwich under Colonel the Hon. James Cholmondley¹ on 17th January.

At the time of formation the 48th Foot, as we now know it, took precedence as 59th of the Line; in 1748 its position was changed to that of 48th in consequence of the reduction of a number of regiments of Marines. We will, however, anticipate this date and refer to the Regiment from now onwards as the 48th. The position as 48th of the Line was first held by the fifth of six Marine regiments, known as Cochrane's Marines, which had been raised on the outbreak of the war with Spain in 1739. The official numbering of regiments did not come into force until 1753, but their precedence was fixed according to rules set up under William IV; the number, if not part of the title, denoted a regiment's position in this table of precedence and was used unofficially.

There is in the Record Office a copy of the Warrant authorizing the formation of the Regiment, which is reproduced below.

GEORGE R.

"These are to Authorise you by Beat of Drum or otherwise, to raise Volunteers in any county or part of Our Kingdom of Great Britain for a Regiment of Foot under your command which is to consist of ten Companeyes of three Sergeants, three Corporals, two Drummers and seventy effective private men in each Company, besides Commission Officers. And all the Magistrates, Justices of the Peace, Constables and other Our Civil Officers whom it may concern are hereby required to be assisting unto you in providing Quarters, impressing carriages and otherwise as there shall be occasion.

"Given at Our Court at St. James this 3rd day of January 17th 41 in the Fourteenth year of Our Reign

"By His Majesty's Command

"WILL YONGE.

*"To Our Trusty and Well beloved
James Cholmondley Esq,
Colonel of one of Our Regiments
of Foot, or Officers appointed by
You to raise Volunteers for Our
said Regiment."*

Regiments at this time consisted of ten companies, the leading or right-hand company being the grenadier company and containing the tallest and best men in the Regiment. They were dressed in a more imposing manner than the men of other companies and wore a tall mitre-shaped hat. Their special function was to attack the enemy with hand grenades, but this seems to have ceased about 1750 when they became the *corps d'élite* of each regiment.

As the highest regimental rank for which pay could be drawn was that of Captain, the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major each had a company, the Colonel's company being commanded by the senior subaltern, who was known as Captain-Lieutenant, which term is to be found in the Army List up to 1803. The rank then ceased to exist because the three field officers no longer had companies of their own, it having proved most inconvenient to have so few captains. The three field officers were often Generals in the Army and it was very rare for a Colonel or even a Lieutenant-Colonel to do any regimental duty.

Before dealing with the particular history of our own Regiment, the reader should understand the conditions prevailing in the British Army at this period.

**Purchase of
Commissions.**

The first action on raising a new regiment was the appointment of officers ;² the Colonel was allowed the privilege of selling commissions to the officers whom he nominated, in return for the trouble and expense incurred. These officers, on retirement, were allowed in their turn to sell their commissions to their successors. In addition, a number of free commissions were given to officers who brought in a certain number of recruits. These also were saleable on retirement.

"Another perquisite of the Colonel was the pay of vacant commissions, and thus regiments were sometimes kept in a state of inefficiency to enrich the Colonels, and some scandalous transactions were the result of the system." Colonel Cholmondley, however, does not appear to have resorted to this malpractice in the formation of the 48th.

The system of obtaining commissions by purchase continued in the Army until 1868 when it was abolished by Act of Parliament. At times efforts were made to control it by fixing prices for the various ranks.

The tariff in force in 1776 was as follows :—

| | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| Lieutenant-Colonel | ... | ... | ... | £3,500 |
| Major | ... | ... | ... | £2,600 |
| Captain | ... | ... | ... | £1,500 |
| Captain-Lieutenant | ... | ... | ... | £800 |
| Lieutenant | ... | ... | ... | £550 |
| Ensign | ... | ... | ... | £400 |

In spite of all regulations, this scale was seldom adhered to, and the fixed price was generally exceeded. On the death of an officer the next



LIEUTENANT-GENERAL THE HON. JAMES CHOLMONDLEY.
Colonel, 48th Regiment, 13th January, 1741, to 13th March, 1743.

Reproduced by the courtesy of the Inniskilling Dragoons.

senior was promoted, without payment, but at the same time acquired the power to sell. The faults of the system are obvious, and it is surprising that it survived until 1868, but the problem of compensating officers for the loss of their invested rights presented a financial problem which it was difficult to overcome. No test of efficiency existed before promotion ; there was no encouragement to an officer to apply himself with zeal to his regimental duties or to study the science of war. To do so would have been of no avail unless he was able to buy the rank to which his qualifications entitled him.

The purchase system, however, was not without its advantages, and in its time played a valuable part in the creation of our Army.

"The regiment became the property of the Colonel, and its companies the property of the Captains. It was, in fact, a possession carrying with it all the pride and delight of ownership, and a peculiarly interesting possession, since it consisted of disciplined men. It was also a little close society—a kind of military congregation—bound by the implicit vows of obedience and sacrifice, with its colours as the emblem of its corporate unity, and its Colonel for president or high priest. It was absolutely self-contained, for all its incidental expenses were defrayed by an allowance of fictitious men on the muster-rolls. The financial business was discharged by the Colonel's own clerk, known as the agent ; and the physical and spiritual needs of all ranks were under the care of two of the Colonel's own servants, called the Doctor and the Chaplain. A regiment, in fact, at the outset was more of a private than a national affair.

"It was in virtue of this independence that the little group of regiments was able to withstand the hatred, malignity and stinginess of Parliament, and the contempt and scorn of every citizen. The only result was to make the survivors cling more closely together. Maltreated and despised sects—and such were the regiments of the eighteenth century—are likely, especially if they be English, to gain vitality rather than lose it. Regiments were sent abroad to foreign garrisons in vile climates, ill-housed and ill-fed, to perish from cold in one quarter, to drop dead of heat in another. The officers only became more assiduous in lightening the heavy burden of their men, and the men, as a natural consequence, became the more attached to them. At home soldiers were vilified, bullied and oppressed ; and the officers, though they did what they could, were often powerless to shield them. With complaint, though not with the less good discipline, they endured with patience, for the honour of their regiments."³

Some advice with regard to the choice of ensigns is given by Bennet Cuthbertson, an officer of the 5th Foot, in a work entitled "A System for the Complete Interior Economy of a Battalion of Infantry" (1779), from which we quote the following extracts :—

"Gentlemen who have been well educated in principles which are a credit to their friends, should be the only ones chosen for so honourable a

profession. . . . A good figure, at least a genteel one, is a circumstance to be also considered in the young gentleman who offers himself for a pair of Colours, as it must be allowed that a well looking corps of officers are as striking to the eye, as a fine body of private men. From sixteen to nineteen is the best age for entering the military profession, lads being then strong enough to bear any sort of fatigue, and may be by that time supposed to have acquired some branches of polite and useful knowledge, particularly French, Drawing and Fortification."

In view of conditions at the time, it is surprising that men were induced to join the Army in any circumstances. Conditions were hard, the pay was meagre, and punishments, even for trivial offences, were of the greatest severity.

**Enlistment of
Men.**

They were to be enlisted "by beat of drum or otherwise." Although the drum has an undoubted effect in arousing martial zeal, at the time of the formation of the 48th military service was far from popular, and the more usual method of recruitment would probably be classified as "otherwise."

The normal term of a man's engagement was for life, but in view of the Seven Years' War a short-term engagement for three years was introduced, and a bounty of £4 given to all recruits so enlisting.

Until 1744 enlistment was voluntary, in theory, but when it was found that the system was producing insufficient recruits a law was passed which gave power to magistrates to press as soldiers "such able-bodied men as do not follow or exercise any lawful calling or employment or have not some other lawful and sufficient support and maintenance." The Act ordained that churchwardens and constables were to be employed in searching for and securing able-bodied men, and were to receive a reward of £1 for every man they pressed. As, in addition, the parish received £3 for every recruit obtained, the corruption which accompanied the system can well be understood.

Even when enlistment was voluntary the methods used were bad enough. It was a common practice for those employed in recruiting to "ingratiate themselves with a young, unthinking boy, whom they deemed likely to answer their purpose. He is plied with spirituous liquor till he is intoxicated and is then persuaded to enlist." In many cases criminals condemned to death or to long sentences were pardoned on condition of enlistment; in those days, however, a man might be a most excellent fellow although a "criminal," for men were sentenced to death, deportation and long terms of imprisonment for the most trivial offences. The competition for this class of recruit was so keen that a regular roster was kept, in fairness to all regiments, the reason for their popularity being that they cost nothing in bounty and were often of fine physique.

On enlistment men had to be "able-bodied men, free from rupture and any other distemper"; they must not be "Papists, Irishmen, nor under 17 years of age or above 45." The minimum height was five feet four inches.

Cuthbertson advises that "sailors and colliers never make good soldiers, being accustomed to a more debauched and drunken way of life, than what a private Centinel's pay can possibly admit of."

Opinions with regard to hair differed largely from the present day, and "fine hair was particularly desirable, it being so great an adornment and addition to the appearance of a soldier."⁴ Only those men who "from age or infirmity had no hair of their own were allowed to wear wigs." Men were advised to comb their hair morning and night, not only to keep it free from vermin, but also to preserve its growth.

After enlistment the articles of war against mutiny were read to all pressed men, who were then deemed to be enlisted soldiers, and subject to the discipline of war.

The pay of a private of the Line was 8d. a day, and this rate of pay covered the whole cost of the maintenance of the soldier in time of peace, except as regards his arms and ammunition, which were supplied by the Board of Ordnance. He was not supplied with food or barrack accommodation by the State, but was billeted on innkeepers, victuallers and publicans, and received a fixed sum a week to enable him to pay for his billets. For these billets he paid, out of his subsistence money, 4d. a day, which included his food and beer.

The difficulty facing a landlord in providing not only accommodation, but also food and beer, for the hungry troops after a long march can be appreciated, and it is not surprising that it was the custom of some landlords to give a preliminary course of "fat pea soup or greasy suet dumplings."⁵

The residue of the man's pay was kept back to meet charges for clothing, accoutrements, necessities, agency, etc. The gross pay of 8d. a day was therefore divided into two portions: Subsistence money at 6d. a day, and off-reckonings at 2d. a day. The gross off-reckonings amounted to £3 os. 10d. yearly, which were distributed by the Paymaster-General as follows:—

| | £ | s. | d. |
|--|-------|----|-----|
| Poundage (for the Paymaster's subsistence) ... | 12 | 2 | |
| One day's pay to Chelsea Hospital ... | | 8 | |
| Allowance to Agent ... | 2 | 0 | ½ |
| To the Agent to enable him to pay the bills for clothing on account of the Colonel of the Regiment ... | 2 | 5 | 11½ |
| | <hr/> | | |
| | £3 | 0 | 10 |

Out of the money he received, the Colonel was, by Royal Warrant (14th January, 1708), bound to provide:—

"A good full-bodied cloth coat, well lined, which may serve for the waistcoat for the second year.

A pair of good Kersey breeches.
 A pair of good strong stockings.
 A pair of good strong shoes.
 Two good shirts and two neckcloths.
 A good strong hat well laced."

Sergeants, corporals and drummers had to be clothed "in the same manner as the soldiers, but everything better in its kind in proportion to their off-reckonings."

The subsistence money of 6d. a day amounted yearly to £9 2s. 6d., and was issued to the Captain of the company :—

| | £ | s. | d. |
|--|-------|----|----|
| (a) For issue to the soldier at the rate of 3s. a week ... | 7 | 16 | 6 |
| (b) To pay for washing, necessities, extra clothing, medicine, shaving and repair of arms, 6d. a week | 1 | 6 | 0 |
| | <hr/> | | |
| | £9 | 2 | 6 |

It will thus be seen that the soldier received in cash 3s. a week, out of which he had to pay 2s. 4d. for billeting, leaving him, if he was lucky, with the large sum of 8d. a week for himself.

The 6d. a week retained by the Captain was only to be used for—

Shoes, stockings and gaiters.

Shaving.

Loss or damage to clothing caused by the soldier's negligence.

Payment to Surgeon ($\frac{1}{2}$ d. a week).

Payment to Paymaster ($\frac{1}{2}$ d. a week).

To provide a nucleus of non-commissioned officers the Regiment received from Colonel Thomas Whetham's Regiment (12th Foot) "a draught of fifty private men such as are qualified to be made Sergeants or Corporals besides two drummers."⁶ According to an order dated 21st February, these were to be sent to Colonel Cholmondley at Grantham.

Appointment
of N.C.Os.

Cuthbertson's advice with regard to the selection of sergeants and corporals was that "honesty, sobriety, attention to detail, and neatness in dress are essentials"; they should also be able to "read and write in a tolerable manner," and he adds that "size and a remarkable figure" are recommendations to which consideration must be given. In the drum-major a "remarkable degree of honesty" was also necessary, as he is usually employed in "carrying the officers' letters to and from the post." "His dress and appointments should all tend to promote the character of a coxcomb, as it is absolutely necessary for him to strut, and think himself a man of consequence." Two centuries have not modified the essential attributes of a drum-major.

The uniform of the Regiment at that time was a square-cut red coat, worn with broad facings and cuffs. The facings were buff-

Dress. coloured and remained so until 1881, and it is on account of this that buff is included in the colours (buff, black and blue) worn by the Regiment. The edging of the coat, lapels, cuffs and pocket flaps were trimmed with the regimental lace. The ample skirts of the coat were looped back, showing the waistcoat and breeches, which were red. White gaiters were worn high above the knees, and over the left shoulder was carried a broad leather belt supporting a huge black ammunition pouch, brass buckle in front, from which hung the little brush and picker used for the flintlock musket. A broad waistbelt carried a screw bayonet and sword. The hat was three-cornered and trimmed with white lace.⁷

Punishments for crime were of the utmost severity, and it was not unusual for a man to be shot for deserting the colours, after which his

Discipline. body may have been dragged round the Regiment to impress the example on the others.

For lesser crimes the punishment was flogging, or occasionally running the gauntlet. For the latter the Regiment was paraded in two lines, each man being armed with his belt or a stick; the unfortunate victim had to pass between the lines, each man striking at him as he passed. To prevent him moving too fast, he was preceded by a sergeant with pike reversed, and any man in the ranks observed being idle in administering his blows was liable to share the victim's fate.

For floggings the drum-major was the castigator-in-chief, and a thousand lashes were no unusual punishment. All men of the Regiment were assembled as spectators, and the Surgeon was always in attendance. Cuthbertson advises that "where a soldier is so abandoned and incorrigible as not to be subdued by the severest corporal punishment, which by being frequently inflicted on his back renders it callous, it will be extremely proper in that case to alter the part for receiving the lashes and apply them to his posteriors."

For minor offences nothing "met with more success in reducing many soldiers to a proper sense of their duty than confinement in a black hole or some other retired place for a certain number of days, during which they should be allowed no more than a two-penny loaf of bread for twenty-four hours with as much water as they chose."

"Another excellent punishment which rather may be called a method of publicly shaming soldiers into good behaviour was for every company to have an iron fetter with a chain two feet in length, and at the end of it a log of wood of about four pounds, which when locked upon a soldier's leg, at the same time as he wears his coat turned inside out, exposes him at roll callings so much to the ridicule of his brother soldiers, that if he has the smallest sense of shame, he will certainly avoid being again disgraced."⁴

Tactics, training and drill of the period are laid down in a pamphlet, "Exercise for the Foot Forces," printed by John Baskett, **Drill and Tactics**. Printer to the King's Most Excellent Majesty, in 1739. It consists of three parts—"The Manual Exercise," "The Grenadier Exercise," and "The Evolutions." The Manual Exercise gives in detail the words of command for loading, firing, fixing bayonets, presenting arms, etc. Before each movement the cautionary order is given, always commencing with the words "Take care" (*e.g.*, "Take care to Present your Arms.") To give an example of the orders, we will quote those for loading and firing, which give some idea of the number of actions required and the consequent delay between each round. The orders were:—"Half cock your Firelocks," "Handle your Primers," "Prime," "Shoot your Pans," "Cast about to Charge," "Handle your Cartridges," "Open your Cartridges," "Charge with Cartridges," "Draw your Rammers," "Shorten your Rammers," "Put them in the Barrels," "Ram down your Charge," "Recover your Rammers," "Shorten your Rammers," "Return your Rammers," "Cast off your Firelocks," "Right hands under your Locks," "Poise your Firelocks," "Cock your Firelocks," "Present," "Fire." It will be fully realized that rapid fire was quite out of the question.

To compensate for the slowness the "Evolutions" provided a drill, whereby rear ranks could replace the front rank immediately it had fired, the cautionary order for such an evolution being "Rear half files take care to Double your Front." During an operation the battalion was told off into a number of "Fires," a number of platoons being allotted to each fire; the various fires then discharged their pieces in rotation, the front rank moving to the rear after firing. The formation was generally in three closed ranks shoulder to shoulder. Having advanced to within about fifty yards of the enemy to ensure getting fire effect, volleys were fired; this was followed by the assault with the bayonet.

"In retreating," the instructions continue, "the battalion keeps moving, and the Platoons as soon as they have fired, gain their Intervals, and load as they march, observing the above directions in casting their Eyes to the Colours." The method to be used upon "an enemy's sudden approach and attacking a Battalion in Order of Battle" were as follows:—

"The two Rear Ranks to be the first Fire.

"The Front Rank and Grenadiers the second Fire.

"And again the Rear Ranks the third Fire.

"At the PREPARATIVE, the two Rear Ranks make ready, and at the same time the whole Front Rank kneels and drop the *points* of their Bayonets to the Ground.

"At the word FIRE, the Rear Ranks fire; the Front Rank and Grenadiers keep their fire, the Rear Ranks fall back two paces and load with Expedition.

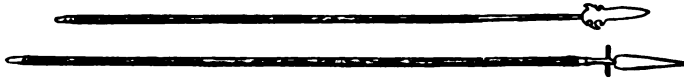
"At the second word PRESENT, the Front Rank and Grenadiers present,

and at the Word of Command they fire, then rise and Charge, their Bayonets Breast high.

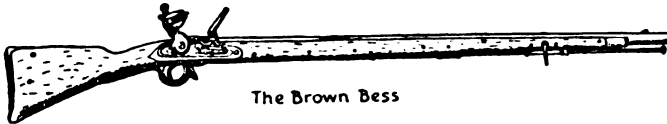
“ At the THIRD PREPARATIVE the two Rear Ranks make ready and, at the Word of Command, present and fire.”

The whole instructions, if printed to-day, would probably amount to less than two chapters of any one of our many training manuals.

The general yearly allowance of ball to a regiment, when not on service, was only four balls to each man, and it was therefore the practice for the “ butts for firing at to be fixed against a bank,” so that the lead could be collected and re-cast in moulds kept by the regimental pioneers.



Officers Spontoon and Sergeants Pike



The Brown Bess

CHAPTER II

(48TH, 1742-1755)

WAR OF AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION—FLANDERS—THE '45 REBELLION—BATTLE OF FALKIRK—
BATTLE OF CULLODEN—FLANDERS, 1747—BATTLE OF LAFFELT—TREATY OF AACHEN—
IRELAND.

(See Maps, pages 16 and 18.)

IN 1742 the Regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Hopson, marched to London, where it was reviewed by King George II, moving
Flanders. thence to Salisbury, where it remained until 1744.

By this time war had been formally declared by France upon England and Austria, and the French were concentrating their forces under the famous Marshal Saxe for an attack on the Austrian Netherlands, where, owing to Dutch slackness and Austrian preoccupation, the Allies were unprepared. It was important, therefore, to reinforce the British troops in that quarter, and in May, 1744, four battalions—the 4th, 34th, 36th and 48th—were ordered to Flanders¹ to join the Army of the Duke of Cumberland.

The 48th was the first of the newly-raised regiments of 1741 to be sent on active service, and whether this was due to its Colonel's influence or to its being more efficient than the others is matter for speculation. It embarked for Ostend in June, 1744, under Lieutenant-Colonel George Stanhope, who had come in as Lieutenant-Colonel from the 12th Foot in April, 1743.

Thus the Regiment was destined to receive its baptism of fire in the land where 170 years later, in 1914, it was to supply five battalions to take part in the greatest war the world has known.

On arrival at Ostend the Regiment, as the "youngest of the reinforcing battalions"² was added to the garrison of that place, the British base, for which the high command were anxious. There it continued for the rest of 1744 and the spring of 1745, during which time, along with other regiments in Flanders, it was augmented by two companies, making twelve in all; these additional companies acted as recruiting companies, and did not go abroad. The Regiment did not miss much by avoiding the field operations of 1744. An Austrian invasion of Alsace forced Marshal Saxe to adopt the defensive in Flanders and to transfer troops to the Rhine. Wade could not induce his Dutch and Austrian colleagues to risk an attack on the French positions, and though the Allies marched into French territory and demonstrated against Lille, they could not draw the French to battle.

In the spring of 1745 the Austrians had withdrawn from Alsace, and this

set the French free to reinforce Saxe and enabled him to renew his offensive in Flanders in superior force. He began by advancing against Tournai, and it was to relieve that town that Cumberland attacked his strong positions at Fontenoy, in which battle only Dutch backwardness prevented him from gaining the victory which the gallantry and steadiness of the British and Hanoverian infantry seemed to have secured.*

Fontenoy had been costly and several battalions had been reduced to half their strength. Cumberland therefore sent the five most shattered battalions back into garrisons, drawing out into their place those hitherto in garrison, among them the 48th. By this time Lord Harry Beauclerk, who had become Colonel of the Regiment on 14th March, 1743, on Colonel Cholmondley's appointment to the 34th Foot, had himself been shifted to the 31st. He had been succeeded, on 22nd April, 1745, by Colonel Francis Ligonier,⁴ a younger brother of the famous Huguenot refugee, the Field Marshal, who was in reality Cumberland's Chief of Staff. Francis had himself a great fighting record, and was Lieutenant-Colonel of his brother's regiment, the 7th Dragoon Guards, then known as the Black Horse.

After Fontenoy, the army withdrew to Lessines, and thence to Grammont to cover Brussels. The 48th moved with the field army, and had a "miserable march." Faulkner, Cumberland's secretary, wrote: "But the sun shone on the General and his troops yesterday, and it now looks as if that planet might get the better for a season." The French at one time threatened battle, at which prospect, Cumberland wrote, the British and Hanoverians displayed "great eagerness," contrasting markedly with the backwardness of the Dutch. The attack, however, did not materialize, and the French proceeded to operate against the towns in western Flanders, capturing Oudenarde⁵ and Ghent and threatening Cumberland's communications.

He therefore retired again to Vilvorde, where he took post behind the canal connecting Brussels with Antwerp, to which place he had been compelled to transfer his base. Whether he would have been able to maintain his position must remain uncertain, for on 24th August, he received startling news from home, with the unexpected warning that "the necessity of affairs here" might oblige him to make a considerable detachment from his army for the defence of His Majesty's dominions.

Encouraged by Louis XV of France, Prince Charles Edward, the "Young Pretender," had landed in Scotland on 19th July, and was quickly joined by many of the Highland clans. There was but

**The '45
Rebellion.**

a scanty force in Scotland, England itself had been denuded of troops for the campaign in the Netherlands, and before long the progress of the Jacobites made it necessary for Cumberland to put ten picked battalions under orders to return home. Their return had been ordered nearly a fortnight before the disastrous defeat of Sir John Cope at Preston Pans on 21st September, and on the news of that disaster urgent orders were despatched for the return

of another eight battalions which were to proceed straight to Newcastle. Among these the 48th was included, and on the 15th October it marched from Vilvorde to Williamstadt, where it was to embark. Bad weather delayed the transports' departure and made the passage across the North Sea most unpleasant ; gales from the south-west dispersed the ships, and it was with some difficulty that they managed to make various ports along the east coast of England, some reaching South Shields, others Newcastle, the 48th for the most part finding their way to Berwick in the last days of October.

Newcastle had been chosen as the destination of the second detachment, because it was essential to bar the east coast route from Scotland to the advance of the Highlanders. Marshal Wade, with a small force, was already on the march to Newcastle,⁶ but progress by road in autumn weather was bound to be slow, and transport by sea, however unpleasant for the troops, offered a speedier means of reinforcing the endangered spot. By the time the 48th landed, Wade and his infantry were at Northallerton ;⁷ but the Highlanders had already missed their chance. After Preston Pans so many had returned to their homes to dispose of their plunder, that the Prince could have mustered barely 2,000 men for the advance into England. By the time his followers had returned to their colours and he had collected a force large enough to warrant an advance, Wade had five regiments of cavalry and a dozen battalions, while another force of about the same strength was moving forward through the Midlands towards Lancashire.

When the Highlanders started their advance, it looked at first as if the 48th would soon be in action against them, for the main body under the Prince took the east coast route and advanced as far as Kelso before moving away westwards to besiege Carlisle. Wade, hearing of this, started west from Newcastle to the relief of Carlisle, but the roads were bad, the country hilly and barren, and a heavy fall of snow forced him back on Newcastle with many sick men. The Prince's departure from Scotland meanwhile had allowed his enemies in that country to lift up their heads again, and several districts had passed back into the hands of George II's supporters. Edinburgh Castle had never surrendered, and Wade now despatched two regiments of dragoons and two battalions, the 14th and 48th, to reoccupy the Scottish capital. This was accomplished without opposition on 14th November, and the news that Edinburgh was again in their enemy's hands did much to discourage the Highlanders and to induce them to counsel Charles to turn back from Derby.

The Regiment remained in Edinburgh until 9th December, when they marched to Stirling to assist in holding the line of the Forth against a force of French Auxiliaries under Lord John Drummond, which had landed at Montrose. Here it remained until 25th December, when it returned to secure Edinburgh, on which Prince Charles was marching on his return from England.⁸

By being sent to Edinburgh the 48th had escaped the wearisome marches which would have fallen to their lot had they remained with Wade and tried

to bring the Highlanders to battle in England. This neither Wade nor Cumberland, for all the latter's energy, could accomplish, and by the end of the year Charles was safely back in Scotland. He made no attempt, however, to recover Edinburgh, but moved by Glasgow to Stirling and sat down to besiege the town which, like Edinburgh Castle, was holding out for King George. He was still engaged in this task when, on 16th January, 1746, he heard that the English forces had reached Falkirk.

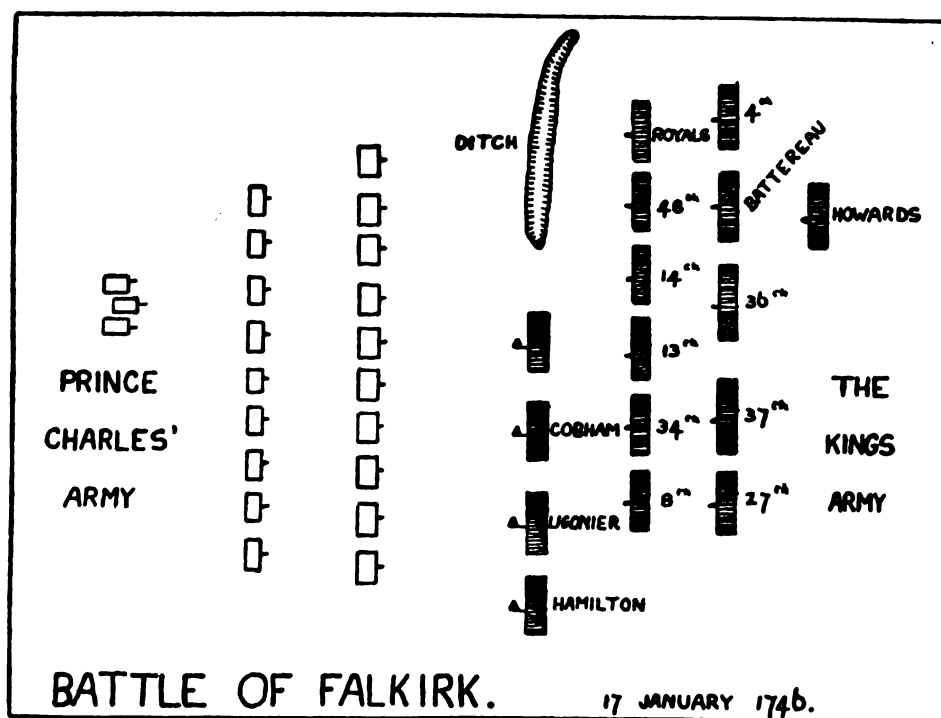
Charles would perhaps not have been left unmolested so long had not an alarm that the French were about to attempt an invasion led to the recall to the South of England of Cumberland and the bulk of his troops, leaving General Hawley, who had succeeded Wade, with no more than three regiments of dragoons and twelve battalions for the relief of Stirling. In this force the 48th were included. They had before this time again lost their Colonel, Ligonier having been transferred as from 1st October to the command of a Dragoon regiment. No one had yet been appointed in his place, though Lieutenant-Colonel Russell of the 1st Guards, an officer whose letters give an admirable account of the Dettingen campaign and those of 1744, 1745 and 1747, had applied for "the regiment vacated by Ligonier."⁹ It was not until 9th April, indeed, that the vacancy was to be filled, and until then the Regiment is usually described as "Late Ligonier's."

Hawley's force had reached Falkirk on 16th January, 1746, and encamped on the west side of the town. About eleven o'clock the next morning it was heard that the rebel army was on the move.

**Battle of
Falkirk.**

The following description of the move to the battle is given by Colonel Cholmondley, the old Colonel of the 48th, who was present as a Brigadier: "Upon this orders were given for the men to be ready to turn out at a moment's warning. About one, information was received that the rebel army was marching towards us, and the army was immediately ordered to stand to arms in front of the encampment. The two lines of infantry were ordered to face to the left, and in this position we marched them to the left near a mile and a half, but as we had hollow roads and very uneven ground to pass over we were in great confusion. Here we formed again, in my opinion a very good situation, but we were no sooner formed than ordered again to take ground to our left, and as we marched all the way up hill and over uneven ground the men were greatly blown."

The two armies then drew up facing each other, the twelve battalions of the King's army in two lines, with the three cavalry regiments on the left and the Buffs in reserve. The 48th was the second regiment from the right of the front line¹⁰, being between the Royals and the 14th, and a large ditch formed an obstacle between their portion of the line and the rebel army. General Hawley, himself a cavalryman, had great faith in the efficiency of cavalry against Highlanders, and opened the fight by sending forward his mounted men to the attack; the Highlanders, however, waited till they were



within ten yards and then poured in an effective volley. Two of the regiments were immediately dispersed and galloped off in disorder, but the third stood firm until the Highlanders, throwing themselves on the ground, thrust at the bellies of the horses with their dirks, causing this regiment to retire also.

At this time a storm was raging, beating in the faces of the King's troops, preventing them from seeing what was in front and rendering a fourth of the muskets temporarily useless. Being at their backs, this did not incommode the Highlanders who, encouraged by their success against the cavalry, now advanced. The infantry of the King's army, shaken by the overthrow of the cavalry and half-blinded by the sleet, received the Highlanders with an irregular volley, the ineffectiveness of which, through the dampness of their powder, further increased the feeling of unsteadiness which existed. The Highlanders returned the fire and then, throwing down their muskets, drew their swords and attacked the regiments on the left of the King's army. At once panic seized the army, and all regiments, except two, turned and fled. These two, "the 4th and 48th, stood firm, their front rank kneeling with bayonets fixed, while the middle and rear ranks fired and repulsed the left wing of the rebels."¹¹ Portions of the Royal Scots, 14th and Buffs soon rallied also, and after a while these regiments, keeping up a steady fire, made an orderly retreat, with drums beating and colours flying.

That the situation was saved was largely due to the personal efforts of General Huske and Colonel Cholmondley, who describes the fight as follows : " Barrell's Regiment (4th) kept their ground, and I got my late regiment (48th) to form on their right. In this situation we kept our ground and, with the assistance of the officers (who deserve the greatest praise for the spirit they showed), I got the men to be quite cool, as cool as I ever saw men at exercise, and when the rebels were down upon us, we not only repulsed them but advanced and put them to flight. During this time General Huske was rallying the other troops that had been broke ; then I told these two battalions that if they would keep their ground I would go back and rally the Dragoons. They promised they would, and *kept their word*. Accordingly I went to the Dragoons and rallied about 100 of them, and told them I had repulsed the enemy with two weak battalions and that if they would march up I would lead them, and that I would order the two battalions to march up briskly at the same time to give them their fire and that they should fall in—sword in hand. They were greatly pleased with this and with many oaths and Irish exclamations swore they would follow me. . . . My chief inducement in giving this minute account is to do justice to the officers of these two battalions who behaved so well that their stand stopt the Rebels from pursuing our troops, which else would have been cut to pieces."¹²

The 48th remained on the field of battle for half an hour after the fighting ceased and then drew off, bringing three guns (all there were horses for, the rest of the horses having bolted) with them.¹³

The remainder of the army had rallied at the camp, but night was coming on, for the battle began a little before four o'clock, and the storm of wind and rain continued as violent as ever. Before it grew dark General Hawley gave orders to set fire to the tents and, marching the army through Falkirk, returned to Linlithgow.

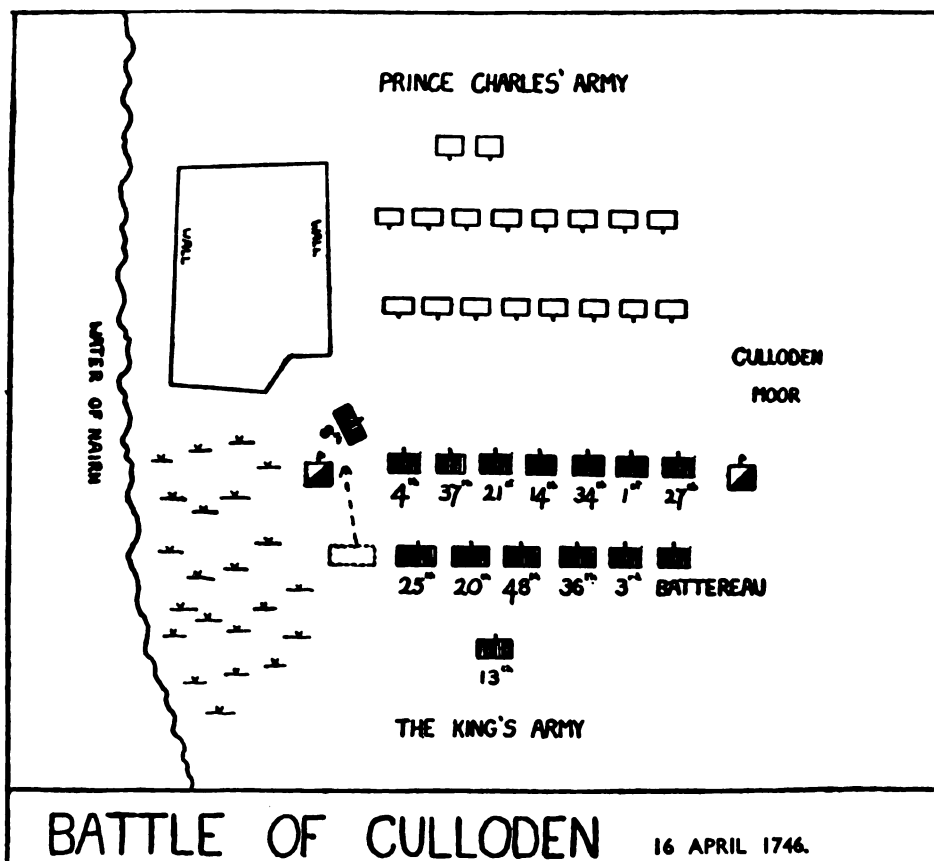
The excessive fatigue Colonel Cholmondley had undergone, and the continued exposure to the severe weather, deprived him of the use of his limbs for some time after the battle. Colonel Ligonier, being ill at the time, was not present at the beginning of the battle. He left his sick bed, however, to rally the Dragoons, and contracted pleurisy of which he died a few days later.

On hearing the result of the Battle of Falkirk, the Duke of Cumberland, who had returned from Flanders to replace General Hawley in command of the army, hurried to Edinburgh, whither the army had returned. It is reported that he travelled night and day with such speed that he completed the journey from London to Edinburgh in six days, and at once began to train his troops in the formations which had been so successfully adopted by the 4th Foot and 48th Foot at Falkirk. It had been found that the Highlanders, armed with target and broadsword, had been able to parry the bayonet thrust with the target and to get to close quarters with the sword ; but by each man in the English ranks turning half right, the Highlanders were unable both to guard themselves and fight.

On 31st January, 1746, the Royal forces again advanced, whereupon Prince Charles raised the siege of Stirling Castle and retreated towards Inverness. Cumberland followed as far as Perth, where the severity of the weather caused a halt; the march

was resumed on 20th February, but again heavy rains necessitated a halt at Aberdeen, and it was not until early in April that touch was obtained with Prince Charles' army at Culloden Moor, near Inverness.

Hearing that Prince Charles' army had taken ground to give him battle, the Duke of Cumberland set out at break of day on 16th April and, breaking his column into two lines of foot, flanked with horse, and having a strong reserve, advanced towards the enemy. The 48th was in the second line covering the gap between the 14th and 21st Foot in the first line;¹⁴ Cumberland had deliberately left gaps between his battalions, so that the Highlanders should crowd into them and then find the gaps covered by a regiment in the second line, who could fire into them without fear of shooting their front line



in the back. When the King's army came within five or six hundred paces of the enemy, part of the ground in their front was so boggy and soft that the horses which drew the cannon were unable to advance ; whereon the soldiers, slinging their muskets, dragged the cannon across the bog. As soon as the cannon were brought to firmer ground they were placed by the Duke of Cumberland in the intervals between battalions of both the first and second lines.

It was now about noon and the two armies were drawn up facing each other. The battle started with a brisk cannonade on both sides, during which the Duke of Cumberland, who was everywhere greeted with cheers and cries of " Flanders ! " by the soldiers, rode down the lines, making several changes in the dispositions. Among other changes Wolfe's (8th) Regiment was moved forward on the left flank and faced inwards so as to enfilade any attack on that flank. Soon Prince Charles' army, who were suffering severely from the cannonade, became impatient and commenced a premature attack, advancing with their usual fury and armed with the broadsword and target. The King's army were ready and, meeting the attack as though it were a cavalry charge, they presented a triple line of bayonets by doubling the files and making the front ranks kneel. The fierceness of the attack, however, broke through Barrell's (4th) Regiment and Monro's (37th) Regiment, but those of the enemy who survived were brought up by the bayonets of the second line. The attack being held, the Duke of Cumberland now gave the order to advance, driving the enemy, disheartened and disorganized, before them ; and later, taken in flank by the English horse, the clans were broken and the retreat turned into a rout.

The 48th went into the battle with a strength of 386, and the casualties were slight, one man being killed and Captain Spark and four men wounded. The regimental documents record the capture in the battle of one French standard.

The news of the victory was received with great rejoicing in London, and the City voted a sum of £4,000 for distribution among the soldiers present in the battle, whereof a sum of £400 was set aside for extra gratuities to the wounded.

A large silver medal was struck in commemoration of the battle and presented to the General Officers and officers commanding regiments. It was oval in shape, and is stated to have been suspended by a crimson ribbon with green edges and worn round the neck.

The Regiment seems to have remained in Scotland for the rest of the year, being employed in disarming the Highlanders and pacifying the Highlands.

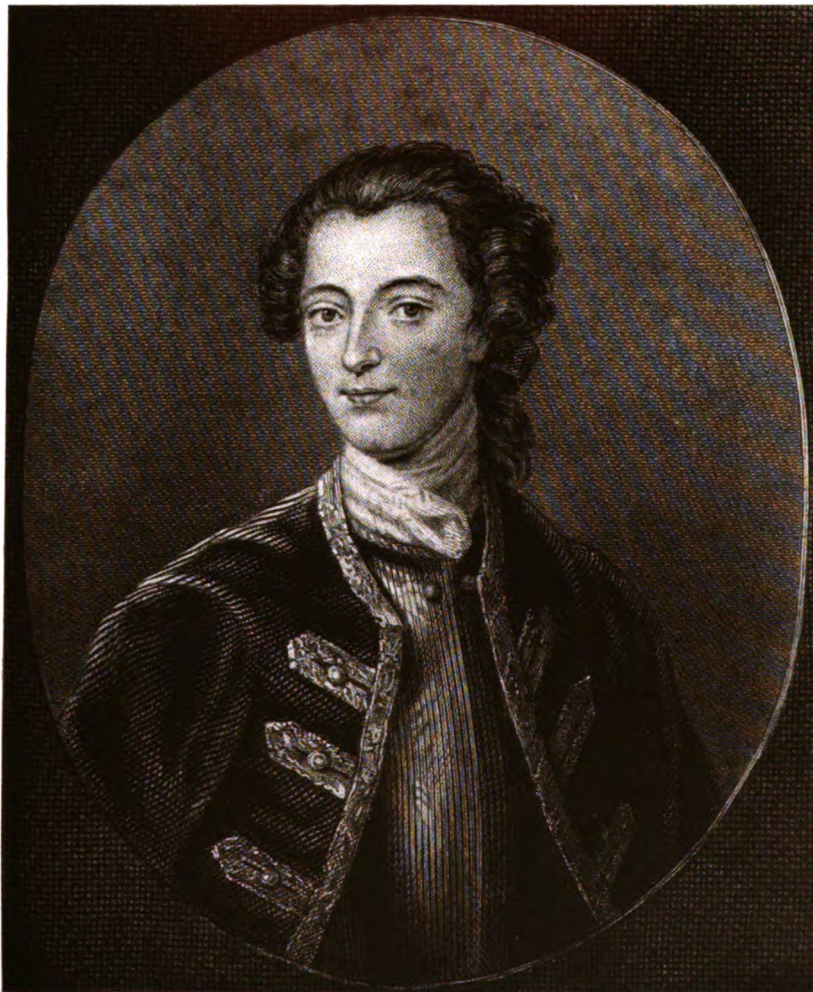
The withdrawal of the English army from Flanders in 1745 had given the French an advantage in the Netherlands. They overran the whole of the Austrian provinces, and in 1746 threatened the frontier of Holland. It was therefore decided early in

**Battle of
Laffelt
2nd July, 1747.**

1747 to make another attempt to roll back the tide of victory. The Duke of Cumberland was despatched to Holland in January, and concentrated his force, together with the allied Austrian and Dutch contingents, at Breda in April. Of British troops Cumberland had four regiments of cavalry, two battalions of Guards and twelve of the Line, which included the 48th, who had embarked from England in February. Meanwhile, Marshal Saxe had concentrated the French army in the neighbourhood of Brussels, Malines and Louvain, and had obtained control of the Flanders coast and the fortresses of the Scheldt. Cumberland's supplies could therefore no longer reach him by water, but had to be sent overland from Bergen-op-Zoom and Breda. Towards the end of May the Allies marched straight against the French, but Saxe, strongly entrenched, remained immovable for three weeks, and Cumberland despaired of bringing him to action.

For a considerable time the armies remained strongly encamped within twenty miles of each other, each commander waiting for the other to move and give him a suitable opportunity for attack. In June the French at last moved, with the apparent intention of laying siege to Maestricht. Cumberland followed, and on 29th June was encamped just south-west of Maestricht near the village of Laffelt.

A battle now appeared inevitable and Cumberland took up a position on some rising ground along a chain of villages, with his left on the River Jaar, south of Maestricht. The Austrians were on the right of the line with their flank thrown back to Bilsen, then came the Dutch in the centre of the line, whilst the Hanoverians and British¹⁵ held the villages of Vlytingen (Val), Laffelt and Kesselt on the extreme left. The position was occupied on 1st July; the French army was in sight and the soldiers spent the night under arms. Vlytingen was the point at which Saxe had determined to break through the Allies' lines, so against this village, held by the 13th, 25th and 37th Regiments and a Hanoverian battalion, and the neighbouring village of Laffelt, he launched a mass attack. The British artillery raked the French brigades as they advanced and made great havoc, but failed to check the attack. The first onset by four French brigades was manfully repulsed, but fresh French troops were hurled into the fight, and the village of Val was carried. The 8th, 19th, 48th and a foreign corps were ordered to aid in retaking the village. They stormed the avenues in gallant style and, though assailed by volleys of musketry, they raised a loud shout and, rushing along the street, cleared it of opponents at the point of the bayonet. The French commander was, however, determined to carry this post; he ordered forward fresh brigades, and many times the village was lost and won. Referring to the battalions in his dispatch, the Duke of Cumberland stated: "They rallied and charged into the village four or five times each; the French but once as they could not be rallied but were always replaced by fresh troops." In a further dispatch he states: "The infantry behaved so well, one and all,



GENERAL THE HON. HENRY SEYMOUR CONWAY.
Colonel, 48th Regiment, 6th April, 1746, to 23rd July, 1749.

(Reproduced from an engraving of the original painting by Eckardt.)

that he could not commend any one regiment without doing injustice to the rest."

For some time the decision was doubtful, but at last the French attacks were seen to be weakening, and the Duke of Cumberland gave the order for a general advance. But Saxe, at the same time, with the assistance of twelve fresh battalions (making thirty-seven battalions in all), was in the act of leading his final assault against Val and Laffelt. As this huge body of troops came in contact with Cumberland's advance, Saxe saw at once that the advance would be stayed, and ordered his cavalry to charge the Dutch in the Allied centre. The charge was successful, the French cavalry pierced the infantry and fell on the Dutch cavalry in the rear, who did not wait, but turned and galloped from the field. The allied centre was broken. The British cavalry, under General Ligonier, performed astonishing feats of valour and heroism, and though unable to retrieve the fortune of the day, allowed the army to retreat to Maestricht in good order.

Colonel Russell writes¹⁶ that the whole miscarriage was due to the Dutch being in the centre. "The day was as much ours when they ran away as it is now theirs (the enemy's)." He adds that "greater honour would never be gained by British and Hanoverian troops." In their rout, the Dutch cavalry rode down the Hessians and threw some of our own battalions into disorder, and before we could rally and resume the advance Saxe had thrown more troops into Laffelt and overpowered the defenders.

Colonel Henry Seymour Conway,¹⁷ who had been appointed Colonel of the Regiment on 6th April, 1746, appears to have been in the thick of the fight, as the following extract from a letter from the Hon. Horace Walpole, his great friend, will show¹⁸:—"Harry Conway, whom nature always designed for a hero of romance, and who is *déplacé* in ordinary life, did wonders; but was overpowered and flung down when one French Hussar held him by the hair, while another was going to stab him. At that instant, an English sergeant with a soldier came up and killed the latter, but was instantly killed himself; the soldier attacked the other and Mr. Conway escaped, but was afterwards taken prisoner; is since released on parole and may come home to console his fair widow (Caroline, widow of the Earl of Aylesbury) whose brother, Harry Campbell, is certainly killed, to the great concern of all widows who want consolation." Conway was perhaps the most distinguished of the Regiment's early Colonels, commanding a division in the Westphalian campaign of the Seven Years' War with success, and at one time commanding the whole British contingent. He became a Field Marshal and was prominent in politics under George III.

The casualties of the 48th were severe,¹⁹ 42 men being killed, 6 officers and 9 men wounded and 6 officers and 32 men missing. The number of those killed is greater than that of any other regiment engaged. The battle had been costly to the French, their casualties being almost 10,000 compared with

6,000 of the Allies. It is also recorded in the documents of the Regiment that three stands of French colours were captured during the battle.

Although the Allies had been defeated, the Duke of Cumberland had achieved his object—Maestricht was saved for the time being, and Marshal Saxe cancelled the orders he had issued to bring up the siege train and diverted it to Bergen-op-Zoom, which was strongly garrisoned by the Dutch. Soon afterwards both armies went into winter quarters and, during the winter, peace negotiations were initiated by the French, which culminated in the Treaty of Aachen and peace in the spring of 1748.

"The conclusion of the Peace of Aachen was followed by the usual reductions of the forces in Britain. Ten regiments and several other corps were disbanded, leaving in the infantry the Foot Guards and the 1st to the 49th Regiments. The strength of all corps was, of course, diminished and the British establishment was fixed at 30,000 men, two-thirds of them for service at home and one-third for colonial garrisons. The rest of the Army, thirty-seven regiments in all, but very weak in numbers, was, as usual, turned over to the Irish establishment."²⁰

The effect of these reductions, which included the disbandment of the Marine regiments, raised between 1739 and 1741 and of Oglethorpe's 42nd, was to raise the Regiment in order of precedence from 59th to 48th of the Line. It was also one of those selected for transfer to the Irish establishment.

On the final settlement of peace the 48th embarked for Ireland in October, 1748. On the voyage they suffered shipwreck in which five companies were stranded on the coast of Normandy and did not rejoin the battalion until May, 1749. As an insight into travelling conditions at the time, it is reported that the voyage from England to Ireland, which was greatly dreaded, was "seldom more than forty-eight hours, with ye wind tolerably fair."²¹ From 1748 until January, 1755, the 48th were quartered at various stations in Ireland.²² There was plenty of social life apparently, and a certain degree of decorum was insisted on, for at the balls at Waterford no dancing was allowed "after tea, which is to be made at twelve o'clock, and nobody to dance in a night gown, as they have all this summer at ye card rooms."²¹

Lieutenant-Colonel John Wilson had been transferred from Barrell's (4th) Regiment in March, 1748, after some forty-five years' service, and was now in local command. He remained with the Regiment until succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel R. Burton, in 1754.

During this period the command of the Regiment was changed three times. George, Viscount Torrington,¹⁷ replaced Colonel Conway on 24th July, 1749, on the latter's appointment to command the 29th Regiment. On his death, William, Earl Home,¹⁷ was appointed on 11th August, 1750, but held the command for less than two years, Colonel Thomas Dunbar¹⁷ being appointed on 29th April, 1752.

CHAPTER III

(48TH AND 58TH, 1755-1759)

THE SEVEN YEARS' WAR—BATTLE OF MONONGAHELA—FORMATION OF THE 58TH—THE WAR IN AMERICA—SEA TRANSPORT—THE CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.

(See Maps, pages 24 and 34.)

THE struggle for world supremacy between England and France continued, though the two nations were not openly at war. In America, while France held Canada commanding the St. Lawrence, and Louisiana commanding the mouth of the Mississippi, Britain had colonies all along the coast from Nova Scotia as far south as the Spanish colony of Florida. Both nations were rapidly expanding their territories, the English colonists pushing westward towards the Mississippi, while the French were extending along its banks. The French further claimed that their Louisiana territories extended up to the headwaters of the great river, and it was their object to connect it up with Canada by a string of forts along the Mississippi and its tributary, the Ohio. Had this been effected the English would have been cut off from any expansion in the continent to the west. Continuous friction existed between the rival colonists, and the construction, by the French, of Fort du Quesne on the Ohio led to open hostilities. An attack on the fort was made by the Pennsylvania and Virginia Militia under Major George Washington in 1754, and, when this attack failed, application was made to England for Regular troops.

The Government allotted two regiments—the 44th (now 1st Battalion The Essex Regiment) and the 48th, both serving in Ireland at the time; and these were embarked at Cork in January, 1755, under the command of General Braddock of the Coldstream Guards, who is described by Sir J. W. Fortescue as "rough, brutal and insolent, and a martinet of the narrowest type, but wanting neither spirit nor ability, and brave as a lion." These two regiments were the first substantial force of the British Regulars that had ever landed on American soil, and though despatched ostensibly as a protection to the colonists, the real intention was to employ them in a movement to check the French occupation of the Ohio Valley. The home Government claimed that this disputed territory was by rights British, under treaty with the Indians, and that its occupation and the expulsion of the French intruders was in no sense aggressive but a defensive act.¹ The troops arrived in Hampton Roads at the end of March, and, ascending the Potomac in their transports, camped at Alexandria on 14th April, 1755.

Both regiments had been augmented to 500 rank and file before leaving Ireland ; this was done by drafting men from other regiments in Ireland, and one can well imagine that the chance was taken by these regiments to get rid of men they could well spare. To this were added a further 200 American recruits for each battalion, and one feels sorry for General Braddock having to take such doubtful material on so difficult an expedition. Throughout the campaign which led to the conquest of Canada it was the British Regular soldier who formed the backbone of the Army.

**Battle of
Monongahela
9th July, 1755.**

On their arrival it was decided to make an attack on Fort du Quesne, where Washington's colonial force had been defeated in the previous year. By 10th May, after much difficulty in obtaining transport, Braddock assembled his force at Fort Cumberland, having marched his army across the Alleghany Mountains, over a rugged, pathless and unknown country, through unfrequented woods and dangerous defiles. The 44th and 48th had in the meantime been raised by local recruits to a strength of 700 men, and in addition the force contained 100 men of the Royal Artillery, 30 sailors and 450 men of the Virginia Militia. There were also 50 Indian warriors. They marched from Fort Cumberland on 10th June, 300 axemen leading the way, cutting a road 12 feet wide through the forest. The army, "moving always in dampness and shade," made very slow progress, and the conditions attacked both their morale and health. Hearing that French reinforcements were on their way, Braddock decided to push on with only 1,200 selected men, and arrived on 8th July within ten miles of the fort without meeting opposition.

Hearing of the British advance, the Commander of Fort du Quesne sent, under Captain Beaujeau, a detachment of 900 men, of whom 650 were Indians and the remainder Canadians and Regular troops, to meet and ambush the British on the march. About noon on 9th July Braddock's force unexpectedly came upon the position Beaujeau had taken up in the forest. After the first few exchanges of volleys, in which Beaujeau was killed, the Canadians fled from the field and the day seemed won. But the French Regulars stood firm and checked the advance, while the Indians streamed round on either flank of the British and opened a deadly fire from the cover of the forest, firing from behind trees and bushes. The British could "see no foe and yet the bullets rained continuously on them like showers from a cloudless sky." Soon they were thrown into disorder and great confusion was created by the tumultuous pressing on and crowding of the men behind, who earnestly requested instructions how to proceed. The Virginians alone, who were accustomed to forest fighting, took shelter behind the trees and began to answer the Indian fire in Indian fashion. Some of the British strove to imitate them, but Braddock would tolerate no such disregard of orders and discipline, and drove both British and Virginians back to the ranks with his sword. Then, noting that the fire was hottest from a hill on the right flank of his

advance, he ordered Lieutenant-Colonel Burton to attack it with the 48th, but Burton was wounded and the attack failed. All was then disorder ; sixty out of eight-four officers had fallen, and after the slaughter had continued for three hours Braddock ordered the retreat.

He was still struggling to bring the force off in some order when he fell from his horse, the fifth that the Indians had compelled him to mount on that day, pierced by a bullet through his lungs. Two days later he died, and Fortescue reports that his last words were " another time we shall know how to deal with them." Notwithstanding his bravery, he had failed because he did not adapt his tactics to the country and the enemy opposed to him. " But the lesson was not lost on his successors, and it may truly be said that it was over the bones of Braddock and his force that the British advanced again to the conquest of Canada."

The conditions had been all against the British troops, with their enemies under cover and they themselves in the open affording conspicuous targets in their red coats ; but there was no panic, and as long as their ammunition lasted they held their ground for something like three hours.

The British losses had been heavy, 700 of the 1,200 men being killed or wounded. There is no record to show how many of these belonged to the 48th, but from among the officers the Regiment lost 6 killed and 12 wounded.^a

Lieutenant John Hart, one of the wounded, was taken prisoner, but as he could not walk back with his captors to Fort du Quesne he was killed and scalped.

It is also recorded that clothing and accoutrements to the value of £509 18s. were lost by the Regiment.

On Braddock being wounded the retreat was ably conducted by Major George Washington who, in after years, was to fight against the British Army in the American War. When they joined the remainder of the force, Washington handed over command to Colonel Thomas Dunbar, Colonel of the 48th,^a but in view of his impetuous retreat he went into retirement as Lieutenant-Governor of Gibraltar and was succeeded as Colonel of the 48th by Colonel Daniel Webb^a of the 7th Dragoon Guards, on 11th November, 1755. Colonel Webb arrived in New York to take over command on 7th June, 1756.

After Monongahela the fighting spread and both England and France sent reinforcements to America, yet it was not until the spring of 1756 that war between the countries was declared. The 44th and 48th returned to Philadelphia to be re-organized and recruited, and from there were sent to the Hudson Valley early in 1756. At first it was proposed to employ them in an attack on Fort Frontinac on Lake Ontario, but this idea was dropped ; it was then decided to use them as stiffening to the Provincial levies who were being collected for an attack on Crown Point, the chief French port on Lake Champlain. Actually the 48th were sent to Fort Edward on the Hudson,

and Colonel Burton was put in command there, being specially selected as likely to get on well with the Provincials.⁴

Loudoun at this time spoke of the 48th as "one of his best corps";⁵ it had been recruited up to establishment, the Colonials enlisting readily in it.

Detachments were constantly employed on minor operations, and it is recorded that a party of a sergeant and thirty men under Captain Titcomb, while scouting between Saratoga and Fort Edward, was ambushed on 3rd August, 1756, and suffered several casualties, Captain Titcomb and one soldier being killed. The following year the 48th were withdrawn to New York.

The story of this campaign has been included by Thackeray in "The Virginians," some of his characters being imaginary members of the 48th Regiment.

The failure of the American campaign of 1755 caused considerable alarm in England, and it was decided to augment the strength of the Regular Army. With this in view, eleven additional regiments of infantry, ranking 50th to 60th of the Line, were

formed at home, while four battalions of Royal Americans, later to become The King's Royal Rifle Corps, were raised in America. Of the eleven new regiments the 60th was to become the 2nd Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment, and two years after formation was raised in rank to the 58th of the Line by the disbandment of the 50th and 51st.

The Regiment has retained its ranking of 58th from 1757 until the present day. The first regiment to be ranked 58th of the Line was added to the Army in 1741, at the same time as the 48th, but on account of the disbandment of a number of Marine regiments after the Peace of Aachen it took its present place as 47th of the Line and is now the 1st Battalion The Loyal Regiment. The next 58th Regiment was formed in 1755; two years later it became the 56th Regiment, and is now the 2nd Battalion The Essex Regiment.

On 28th December, 1755, the following letter of service was addressed to Colonel Robert Anstruther,⁶ Lieutenant-Colonel of the 26th Foot (The Cameronians), an officer who had served with distinction since 1715 and had fought at Dettingen, Fontenoy and Culloden, authorizing him to form the regiment.

"GEORGE R.

"These are to authorize you by beat of drum or otherwise to raise men in any County or part of Our Kingdom of Great Britain for a Regiment of Foot under your command which is to consist of ten companies of three Sergeants, three Corporals, two drummers and seventy-five Private men in each company besides Commission Officers. And all Magistrates, Justices of the Peace, Constables and other Civil Officers whom it may concern are hereby required to be

assisting unto you in providing quarters, impressing carriages and otherwise as there shall be occasion. Given at Our Court at St. James this 28th day of December, 1755, in the twenty ninth year of Our Reign."

By His Majesty's Command.

BARRINGTON.

*To Our Trusty and Wellbeloved
Robert Anstruther Esquire Colonel
of Our 60th Regiment of Foot to be
forthwith raised, or to the Officers
appointed to raise men for Our said
Regiment.*

At the same time orders were issued to the 12th Foot (The Suffolk Regiment) and the 37th Foot (1st Battalion The Hampshire Regiment) to turn over to the 58th "8 Sergeants, 8 Corporals, 4 Drummers and 40 of the best Private men." The 12th Foot, in addition, transferred three officers, Lieutenant Lawrence Reynolds, and Ensigns Roger Woolcomb and John Grant. It is a coincidence that the 12th Foot had also provided the nucleus on the formation of the 48th, and that both battalions of the Regiment must be indebted to the Suffolk Regiment for their first training.

Other officers were quickly appointed,⁷ the names of the senior officers appearing in the *London Gazettes* of the 28th December, 1755, and the following dates. The names of the subaltern officers are published in the *Gazette* of the 24th January, 1756, together with a notification requiring them to repair immediately to the Regimental Headquarters at Plymouth "Where Commissions will be issued and their pay commence to such gentlemen, who shall be approved by the Commanding Officer of the Regiment provided such approbance and approbation shall be before 24th of March, 1756."

The uniform of the Regiment on formation was red with either black or buff facings.⁸

The whereabouts of the Regiment in its first days are somewhat uncertain. The *London Gazette* gives the recruiting rendezvous as Plymouth, but an entry in the War Office marching order book of 28th January, 1756, directs that the Regiment should rendezvous at Gloucester. Another, of the 5th February, directs the drafts from the 12th and 37th Foot to join Colonel Anstruther at Uxbridge, while an order of 26th February, 1756, directs the Regiment to march from Uxbridge to Hereford.

An order sent to the Regiment at Hereford is of interest, showing that in those days the press gang was not unknown in inland towns. It is dated 6th April, 1756, and sets forth that "My Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty having represented that Captain Fortescue, R.N., has great difficulty in obtaining men for His Majesty's Fleet in Shrewsbury, a Captain's Guard of



LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT ANSTRUTHER.
Colonel, 58th Regiment, 28th December, 1755, to 3rd December, 1767.
(From the original painting in possession of Lady Anstruther at Balcaskie, Fife, N.B.)

the 60th is therefore to be dispatched from Hereford to Shrewsbury without delay there to be aiding and assisting in guarding press'd men from that town to the tenders waiting to receive them in the River Dee."

At the end of April, 1756, the Regiment moved from Hereford to Exeter, thence continuing its march to Plymton Mudbury, and other adjacent places in south Devon. The next year was passed in the same neighbourhood, the Headquarters appearing at different times at Exeter, Falmouth and Plymouth.

In April, 1757, the Regiment was transferred to the Irish establishment, but it was not long before it was ordered on active service to America.

At this period our colonies in America formed little more than a strip along the shores of the Atlantic, with New York as the main harbour. These colonies were shut in on the west by the

**The War
in America.**

Alleghany Mountains, beyond which the only white inhabitants were a few adventurous settlers, who carried on a precarious existence with the constant threat of Indian raids. France, on the other hand, controlled those two great highways provided by the Rivers Mississippi and St. Lawrence, which gave them a supreme advantage in exploiting the vast and as yet untapped resources of the North American Continent. Any extension of British colonization to the west was thus rendered almost impossible by the difficulties of communication, which could always be interrupted by the French moving north up the Mississippi or south from Montreal or the Great Lakes.

The control of at least one of these great waterways was therefore essential to the progress of our colonization, and the Government decided that the St. Lawrence should be the first objective. The French fully realized the value of this great trade route for their possessions in Canada, and Quebec had been developed into a fortified port on the river. In addition, to secure the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, a fortified naval base had been prepared at Louisbourg, on Cape Breton Island, and while the French retained possession of this base no hostile force could operate against Quebec.

On the death of General Braddock at Monongahela, Major-General The Earl of Loudoun had been appointed to the supreme command in America, but pending his arrival Colonel Daniel Webb of the 48th had been in temporary command. War with France had been declared on 18th May, 1756, and on 22nd July General Loudoun arrived at New York with orders to reduce Louisbourg and then to proceed against Quebec. By May, 1757, he had concentrated a force of six thousand men, including the 48th, with considerable siege material at New York and awaited the arrival of reinforcements and a fleet from England.

When the promised reinforcements did not arrive, he decided to move his force nearer the scene of operations, though he had a fleet quite inadequate for the escort of his transports, and in June, risking the hazard of being

destroyed at sea by the French, he transferred his force to Halifax in Nova Scotia, which he had decided upon as the advanced base for his attack on Louisburg, and while waiting practised the troops in landing operations and attacks on fortified positions.

The 58th was included among the reinforcements promised to Lord Loudoun, and on 29th January, 1757, orders were issued for their despatch with seven other regiments⁹ from Ireland to North America, these corps being placed on the British Establishment from 24th December, 1756.

The force, however, remained at Cork until the end of April, 1757, and "it was greatly to the credit of the people of Cork that instead of raising the price of commodities and lodging on the soldiers, as was the custom in other parts of Great Britain, the citizens gave them of their best at the lowest prices, and in addition raised large subscriptions for the support of the women and children who were left behind."¹⁰

When at last they embarked, the convoy consisted of fifteen ships of war and fifty transports, the latter averaging some 250 tons apiece, very different from the present transports of 10,000 tons and upwards. Each regiment required about six transports to convey it, while each vessel flew a pennon denoting the regiment that it was carrying. At this time it was the custom for the troops to wear their uniform coats inside out whilst on board ship, and this practice, at least on one occasion, was almost the cause of an action between our own transport ships and men-of-war, the sailors mistaking our troops for those of the enemy.

At last, in July, the fleet and reinforcements arrived at Halifax, and the 58th met the 48th for the first time. After a short delay, General Loudoun embarked his whole force on 1st August, preparatory to sailing for Louisburg, when information was received that the French fleet at Cape Breton had been strengthened by twenty-two ships of war, and the garrison increased to seven thousand men. On this Loudoun decided to abandon the enterprise for the season and returned to New York for the winter.

William Pitt, the head of the Government, was dissatisfied with the delays, and at the end of the year recalled Lord Loudoun, appointing in his place General Abercromby and promising further reinforcements. A powerful fleet under Admiral Boscawen sailed from Portsmouth on 19th February, 1758, but, being delayed by unfavourable weather, did not reach Halifax until 9th May. Here the whole force, including troops already in America, were assembled once more.

Various orders for the preservation of health were at this time published in General Orders. We will give two examples :—

"Experience having discovered that ginger and sugar mixed with the waters of America prevents the ill effects of it and preserves the men from fluxes and fevers better than anything yet found out, Brigadier Lawrence does therefore in the strongest manner recommend the use of it to the troops."



LOUISBURG FROM THE LIGHTHOUSE, 1758.

(Reproduced from a drawing made on the spot by Captain Ince, 35th Regiment.)

Reproduced by courtesy of The Sherwood Foresters (Nottinghamshire and Derbyshire Regiment).

"Spruce beer to be brewed for the health and convenience of the troops, 8 quarts of molasses to make 32 gallons of beer. The beer not to be drunk until 2 days old. Allowance 2 quarts per man daily."

This liquid was considered an excellent preservative of health, especially when feeding on salt provisions, being an excellent anti-scorbutic. The soldiers were obliged to draw their ration for which they were mulcted 9½d. a week—one more deduction from their miserable pittance.

Before embarkation a picked Light Infantry corps of five hundred and fifty marksmen was formed from different regiments with the particular object of competing with the Indians. General Amherst's order on the subject dated 3rd June is of interest. "A body of light troops are now training to oppose the Indians and other painted savages of the Island. Indians spurred on by our inveterate enemies the French are the only brutes and cowards in creation who were ever known to exercise their cruelties upon the sex, and to scalp and mangle the poor sick soldiers and defenceless women. When the light troops have by practice and experience acquired as much caution and circumspection as they have spirit and activity, these howling barbarians will fly before them."

A corps of pioneers was also formed, and an order dated 27th May orders thirty private men from each of the 15th Regiment, 48th Regiment and Highlanders "to repair on board the *Restoration* transport and to be employed hereafter as pioneers; a pickaxe and spade for each man has already been put on board."

A number of wives must have accompanied the expedition, for an order reads: "No women are permitted to land until the Army are all on shore, and their tents, blankets, provisions and necessaries are likewise landed."

On the 8th May once more the force embarked and the whole fleet, numbering one hundred and seven sail, sailed eastward for Louisburg.¹¹

**The Landing
at Louisburg,
8th June, 1758.**

The French garrison of the port, under the Chevalier de Drucour, consisted of some seven thousand French Regular troops and one thousand Canadian militia, in addition to a considerable fleet, but even so, were largely outnumbered.

After a favourable passage the whole fleet came to anchor in Gabarus Bay, near Louisburg, about five in the morning on 3rd June. The harbour of Louisburg is an almost landlocked bay; and though it has a width of some two and a half miles, the entrance narrows down to less than a mile. Half of this entrance is protected by a chain of rocky islands, while across the remainder a strong boom was placed, and inside the French fleet were at anchor.

On the western promontory enclosing the bay stood the town of Louisburg, now known as Pittsburg in honour of the British Minister. Vast sums had been spent upon its defences, and it was the strongest fortress in French or British America. The three other sides being protected to some extent by the sea, the more formidable works had been erected on its western face,

which contained four bastions named, from north to south, the Dauphin's, the King's, the Queen's and the Princess'.

On the arrival of the British fleet, the French, who had long been expecting an attack, redoubled their efforts to strengthen their position. Some three thousand Regulars, and Irregulars and Indians were posted along the shore at all the possible places of landing, behind breastworks which were fortified at proper intervals by cannon and swivels.¹³ They had erected redans with cannon to prevent flanking movements, while all the approaches to the front lines were protected by fallen trees whose tops pointed to the shore and whose branches were so interlaced as to make it wellnigh impossible for men to pass through even when unopposed by cannon and musket. This defence was so inconspicuous that, from a distance, the prostrate trees had the appearance of a continuous green, and the guns which they concealed could not be seen at a greater distance than their effective range.

For nearly a week after the arrival of the fleet thick fogs, storms and gales rendered all question of landing impracticable. One attempt was made, but the troops, after being transferred to boats and tossed about by the sea for some hours, were returned to the transports on report of the Captain of the Fleet, who judged that the surf was too high for a landing.

On the 8th June a second attempt was made. There were four possible landing-places—Freshwater Cove, about three miles west of the town; Flat Point, a little nearer; White Point, close to the ramparts; and another place east of the bay. It was decided to threaten all these places simultaneously, though only a small demonstration was to be made to the east of the town.

The force was consequently divided into three wings under the three Brigadiers—Wolfe, Lawrence and Whitmore. The main attack was to be at Freshwater Cove, on the left, under General Wolfe, whose force contained the Grenadier companies of all regiments and the Light Infantry. The centre and right wings each contained two brigades.¹³

The 48th and 58th were with the 17th Foot in the 3rd Brigade, which, with the 1st Brigade, commanded by Colonel R. Burton¹⁴ of the 48th, formed the right wing under General Whitmore. Thus the 58th was to receive its baptism of fire fighting by the side of the 48th.

The plan was for the left wing under General Wolfe to attack first, covered by fire of the ships, and when the fire was considered sufficient the signal was given to row for the shore. The men plied their oars with a will, "and piqued themselves mightily which boat could be most dexterous and active in getting first on shore."¹⁵ The French held their fire till the boats were close to the land, and then on a sudden they opened a tremendous fire of grape, red-hot balls and musketry, causing casualties and sinking some of the boats.

The fire and surf were such that Wolfe signalled the flotilla to retire. In the meantime, however, a party of about one hundred Light Infantry, under Lieutenant Thomas Hopkins of the 48th, Lieutenant John Grant of the 58th,¹⁶

and Lieutenant Brown of the 60th, discovered a protected place on the east of Freshwater Cove and landed there. They were quickly followed by the remainder of Wolfe's Brigade. The French defences were immediately charged and captured, and the remainder of the force hurried ashore.

The troops had forced the landing with very few casualties, except that twenty-two Grenadiers were drowned through the staving and upsetting of their boats in the surf. An eye-witness says with regard to the roughness of the sea : " I believe we benefited by it in a very eminent degree, for when the boats were lifted up by the violence of the swell the enemy's shot which would probably have done execution had we been on even water passed under us ; and in a like manner some flew over us in our quick transition from high to low."

Another report states that the surge was " extremely violent, most of the boats being staved and the rocks came out so far that the greatest part of the army landed to their middles in water. Many were much hurt, others crushed to pieces, being carried away by the surge, and the boats driving over them with the return of it."

The remainder of the troops being landed, line was formed, and the French driven back inside the walls of Louisburg.

The next few days were devoted to the landing of baggage, artillery and stores, though it was a slow business on account of bad weather.

**The Capture
of Louisburg,
27th July, 1758.**

In the meantime the British camp was formed along the line of a little stream which ran into the sea just east of Flat Point, about two miles from Louisburg. Even on active service economy in uniform was not neglected, and an order was issued that men employed on fatigue duty, unloading stores, should " turn their coats inside out."

After landing the army was reorganized into three brigades, the 48th being under Brigadier-General Whitmore in the 1st Brigade (with the Royals, the 22nd, 40th and 3/60th), while the 58th were in Brigadier Lawrence's 2nd Brigade (with the 15th, 28th, 45th and 78th), and Louisburg was completely invested.

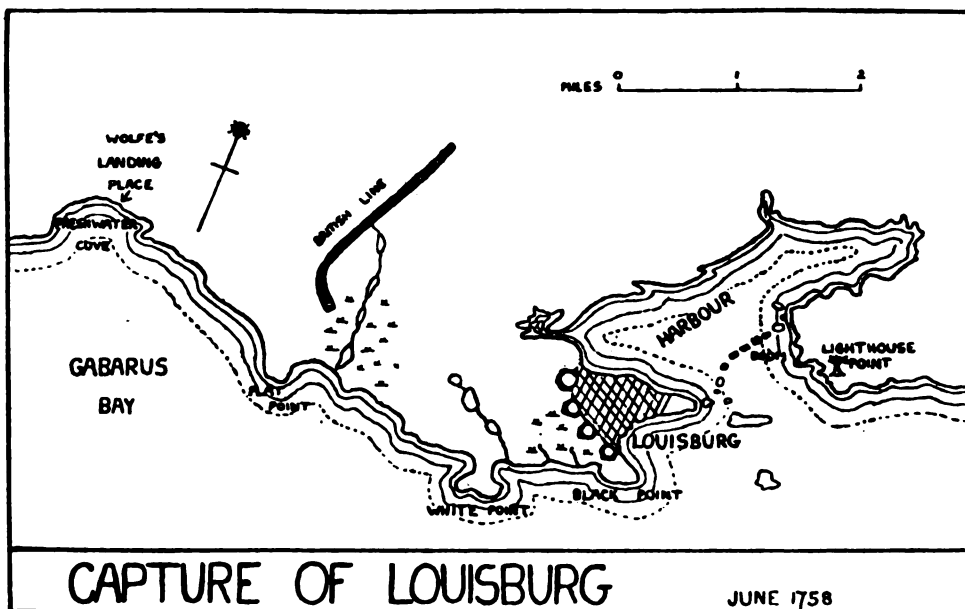
General Amherst at once appreciated the value of Lighthouse Point, the promontory facing Louisburg on the eastern side of the harbour mouth, and on 12th June despatched a force under General Wolfe to seize it and open batteries upon the town and the ships in the harbour. Included in Wolfe's force was a special composite battalion of 1,200 men formed from detachments of each unit.¹⁷

Major Ross of the 48th was posted in charge of a detachment of this battalion at the north-east of the harbour, and successfully beat off enemy attacks on his post on 13th and 14th July, while General Wolfe, with the remainder, seized and held Lighthouse Point.

The next task of the main force was to open trenches and batteries against

the town, and all men available were employed in making fascines, pickets, etc. In an order of the day it is stated that "Any men who choose to be employed on this work out of their turns shall receive half a pint of rum, with one fish and a shilling." The men all appear to have worked with a will, and the batteries were quickly advanced on the town.

Day by day the British trenches drew nearer to the fortress, additional guns were brought into action, and the condition of the besieged garrison became desperate. One by one the enemy guns were put out of action, on 21st July three of their largest ships of war were burned to the water line, and,



four days later, a party of our sailors rowed into the harbour and captured one ship, burning another. Finally, on the 26th the last gun on the ramparts was silenced and the gallant Chevalier de Drucour surrendered the town. The whole garrison had put up a brave defence against superior numbers.

Nearly 6,000 officers and men were captured, together with trophies of war including 221 cannon, 18 mortars, 15,000 stand of arms and 11 stand of colours, besides quantities of ammunition and other stores. During the siege the French had lost over 1,000 men, while the British losses amounted to 21 officers and 150 men killed and 30 officers and 320 men wounded.¹⁸

The following day the 58th and the 3/60th marched from the line and encamped on the glacis, and a few days later, on the 9th August, the French garrison was embarked for England, the embarkation being attended by the Grenadier companies of the 40th, 47th, 48th and 63rd Regiments.



GENERAL THE HON. SIR WILLIAM HOWE.

By courtesy of Thomas H. Parker, Ltd., Berkeley Square, London.

For their services at Louisburg both the 48th and 58th received their earliest battle honour. Permission to carry the honour was not, however, granted to the 48th until 29th April, 1882, and to the 58th five years later. There is no doubt that the 58th distinguished itself in its first campaign, as the following extract from a letter by General Wolfe will show: "Our old comrade Howe is at the head of the best trained battalion in all America; and his conduct in the last campaign corresponded entirely with the opinion we had formed of him. His Majesty has no better soldier in these parts—modest, diligent and valiant."¹⁹

Lieutenant-Colonel Howe, to whom Wolfe refers, commanded the 58th during the campaign and previously had served with him in the 20th Regiment. He was later to distinguish himself at the Siege of Quebec.²⁰

Their task being fulfilled, the majority of the troops sailed at the end of August for their winter quarters, leaving four battalions as garrison of Louisburg. The 58th embarked on 21st August, and sailed on the 28th for Halifax, while the 48th followed two days later, destined for Boston, whence they marched to Albany and passed the winter in Connecticut.

After a two-months sojourn in Cape Breton, the 58th, with the 15th and 2/60th, were despatched under Brigadier-General Wolfe for the destruction of Gaspé and other French fishing settlements on the Gulf of St. Lawrence, returning to Halifax on completion of their unpleasant task.



The Anstruther Arms
Argent three pikes issuing from
The Chief Sable

CHAPTER IV

(48TH AND 58TH, 1759)

QUEBEC CAMPAIGN—BATTLE OF MONTMORENCY—THE ASCENT OF THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM
—THE BATTLE—DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE—FALL OF QUEBEC—GENERAL MONTCALM.

(See Maps, pages 24 and 38.)

THE plans of the British Government for 1759 consisted first and foremost in the capture of Quebec, the main centre of trade between Canada and the rest of the world. A force of ten battalions,¹ totalling some 8,500 men, which included both the 48th and 58th,² was allotted for this operation, and command given to General Wolfe.

Orders were issued for the force to rendezvous at Louisburg on 20th April, but so bad was the weather that it was not until the end of May that all the troops had assembled.

Much of the history of the siege and capture of Quebec is based on the diaries of two members of the Regiment, Captain Montresor of the 48th, and John Johnson, Clerk and Quartermaster of the 58th. Unfortunately, however, for the Regimental Historian, both diarists deal with the siege generally and contain few details of purely regimental interest. Captain Montresor had seen already considerable service in America; he accompanied the 48th on the unfortunate expedition under General Braddock, and was wounded at Monongahela; he was also present at the capture of Louisburg. During most of his service, however, he was detached from the Regiment and acted as Engineer, and in 1766 he quitted the Army, having obtained a grant of land in Willsboro, Essex Co., New York.

In his preface Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson explains that his memoirs were written "at the particular request of several gentlemen of the 58th Regiment of Foot (to which I was Clerk twenty-eight years from its first raising until after the Siege of Gibraltar), but more especially at the request of Lieutenant McKemptie, the Adjutant and as such was my master." He apologizes for delaying the publication until after his retirement, and adds: that being at length lodged in safety, basking under the bright beam of His Most Gracious Majesty, in Chelsea Hospital, and plenteously provided with every comfortable necessity of life, by the benevolence of his country; and having much leisure time and no profitable employment he set himself down to prepare the memoirs.

On 1st June, 1759, the force sailed from Louisburg in the highest spirits

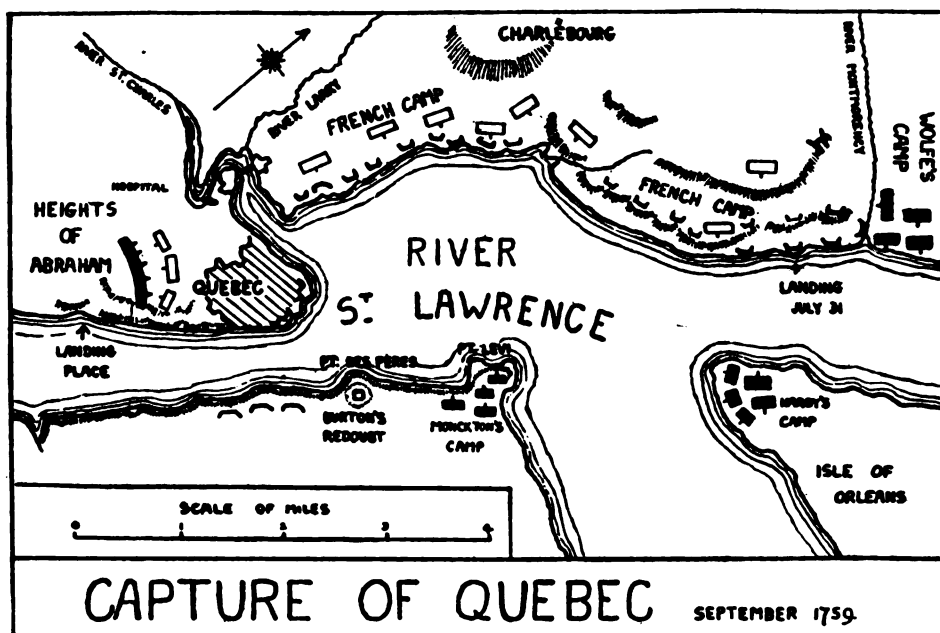
and, on the 26th, after the most skilful navigation in the uncharted waters of the St. Lawrence, the whole fleet came to anchor in safety off the southern shore of the Isle of Orleans, a few miles from Quebec. It is recorded that the 48th did duty as Marines during the voyage, and in the orders of 1st June Webb's Regiment (48th) were instructed to furnish a detachment of one officer and one sergeant and twenty-six rank and file to the *Bedford*, a ship of war of sixty-eight guns. This fact was commemorated by the introduction of a cable underneath the number on the buttons of the 48th, and may also account for the blue in the colours (buff, blue and black) now worn by the Regiment. Journals also record that fishing lines and hooks were issued to the men so that they might obtain fish during the voyage.

The French had relied upon it being almost impossible for the British fleet to pass up to Quebec, through the uncharted and zigzagged channels of the St. Lawrence. Yet so excellent was the seamanship of the British navigating officers that they succeeded in reaching Quebec without the loss of a ship. A good story is told by Knox, in his journal, of the master of a British ship carrying a portion of the 43rd Regiment who, though he had obtained the services of a French pilot, insisted on navigating his ship himself, and succeeded, to the astonishment and admiration of the Frenchman, although the channel at that point formed a complete zigzag.

On arrival the troops were at once disembarked on the Isle of Orleans, and saw the French lines stretching from the natural fortress of Quebec along the north shore of the St. Lawrence as far as the River Montmorency. Quebec, with its fortifications, stands on a rocky headland which marks the contraction of the river from a width of fifteen or twenty miles to a strait scarcely exceeding one mile wide. Immediately north of this headland, the River St. Charles flows down to the St. Lawrence, and seven miles eastward of the St. Charles the shore is cut by a rocky gorge through which pours the cataract of the River Montmorency. It was between these two streams that Montcalm, the French commander, disposed his army, his right resting on the St. Charles, his left on the Montmorency. Along the banks of the St. Lawrence he had constructed entrenchments, batteries and redoubts. South and west of Quebec the French had left no troops, as they thought no ship could pass up the river past the guns of the fort.

The force had only arrived a few days when the French made an attempt to destroy the British fleet by floating fire ships with the tide into the midst of them. Once more, however, the British Navy were equal to the emergency and had no difficulty in grappling the fire ships and towing them out of harm's way.

Seeing that there were no French troops on the south side of the river opposite Quebec, Wolfe sent Monckton's Brigade, which included the 48th under Lieutenant-Colonel Ralph Burton, to Point Levis, and in a few days a battery was constructed at Point Aux Peres which was able to open fire on the



town across the river. This battery was protected throughout the siege by the 48th, who occupied a post a few hundred yards in rear of the battery, which became known as "Burton's Redoubt." On 9th July the remaining troops, including the 58th, moved from the Isle of Orleans to a new camp on the north side of the river, on the far side of the Montmorency stream from Quebec. Here a strong camp was formed covered by redoubts, and batteries were opened against the French works, across the River Montmorency.

For the next few weeks action was confined to minor operations and foraging expeditions, during which the 58th lost nine men killed and forty-eight wounded. The grenadiers of the 48th were also in action, and on the 21st July, with the 3/60th and the grenadiers of the 15th, moved to a point twelve miles above Quebec, took about sixty prisoners and killed several Indians. By these means, by countermarching in view of the enemy, by making feints to cross the river and by many other devices, Wolfe did all that he could to draw Montcalm into action; but the latter warily refused and was content to annoy the English with bands of Indians and Canadians who surprised and scalped the sentries.

Throughout the campaign in America the Indians were a constant source of trouble to small British detachments and individuals, and any men who wandered from their camps were most likely to be killed and scalped. This inhuman practice enraged the men, and drove them to retaliate. Wolfe protested to Montcalm against

this barbarous warfare, but without effect, and it seems from a General Order he published on 24th July, to the effect that scalping was forbidden, "except when the enemy are Indians or Canadians disguised as Indians," that he was driven to agree to this retaliation.

Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson, in his diary, describes vividly the Red Indians' method of fighting :—

"The person who unhappily falls a victim into their barbarous hands, is first disabled and disarmed, so as not to be able to make the least resistance, or in any wise defend himself. . . . If upon their advance towards him they discover any signs of resistance, they again take shelter, as near their victim as possible, and then, taking a cool and deliberate aim, they throw their Tomma Hawk, an instrument made in the shape of our camp hatchets . . . which they throw with great certainty for a considerable distance and seldom miss ; no sooner have they delivered the Tomma Hawk out of their hand, but they spring up to him with their scalping knife ; which is made in every respect like our kitchen carving knives and generally at the first approach rip him open and sometimes take out his heart, but not always ; it often happens that time won't permit to perpetrate that barbarous part of their inhuman cruelty. After all they cut round the top of the crown of the skull-bone and raising up one side of the skin with the knife, with a jerk they tear it off by the hair, and the work is done ; upon this they set up the Indian Whoop, as a signal that the work is finished, as also a shout of Triumph."

A month had now passed since the British arrived, and as the French

**The Battle
of Montmorency,
31st July, 1759.**

refused to be drawn into an attack, Wolfe decided to attack himself by forcing a landing on the north shore of the St. Lawrence between the Rivers Montmorency and Beauport. Monckton's Brigade and the Grenadiers were selected for the task, but the 48th, although forming part of the Brigade, did not participate, being left at Point Levis to protect the battery. The Grenadiers of the 48th, however, took part and were in the van of the attack, as also was Colonel Burton of the 48th, who commanded some of the Grenadier companies, and was wounded during the action. The men were ferried across the river, and on the signal for the attack being made dashed towards the shore, but, having landed, without waiting to re-form, rushed towards the enemy in confusion. They were met by a fire too severe for the bravest of them, and fell back, after suffering great loss, to the shelter of a redoubt which the French had abandoned. Before a further attack could be made a storm of rain broke on the scene, drenching the ammunition on both sides, and the enterprise was abandoned. The pious Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson evidently considered this storm a fortunate occurrence, for he says : "The Good Providence of the Almighty, with his all piercing eye, saw our distressed situation, and of his tender compassion towards us, sent us as in an instant a surprising shower of rain."

The Montmorency attack having failed, Wolfe devoted his attention to other possible points of attack on the French position. In the meantime the bombardment of Quebec was continued and the troops were employed chiefly in foraging parties and in cutting fascines for the batteries and redoubts. It was during

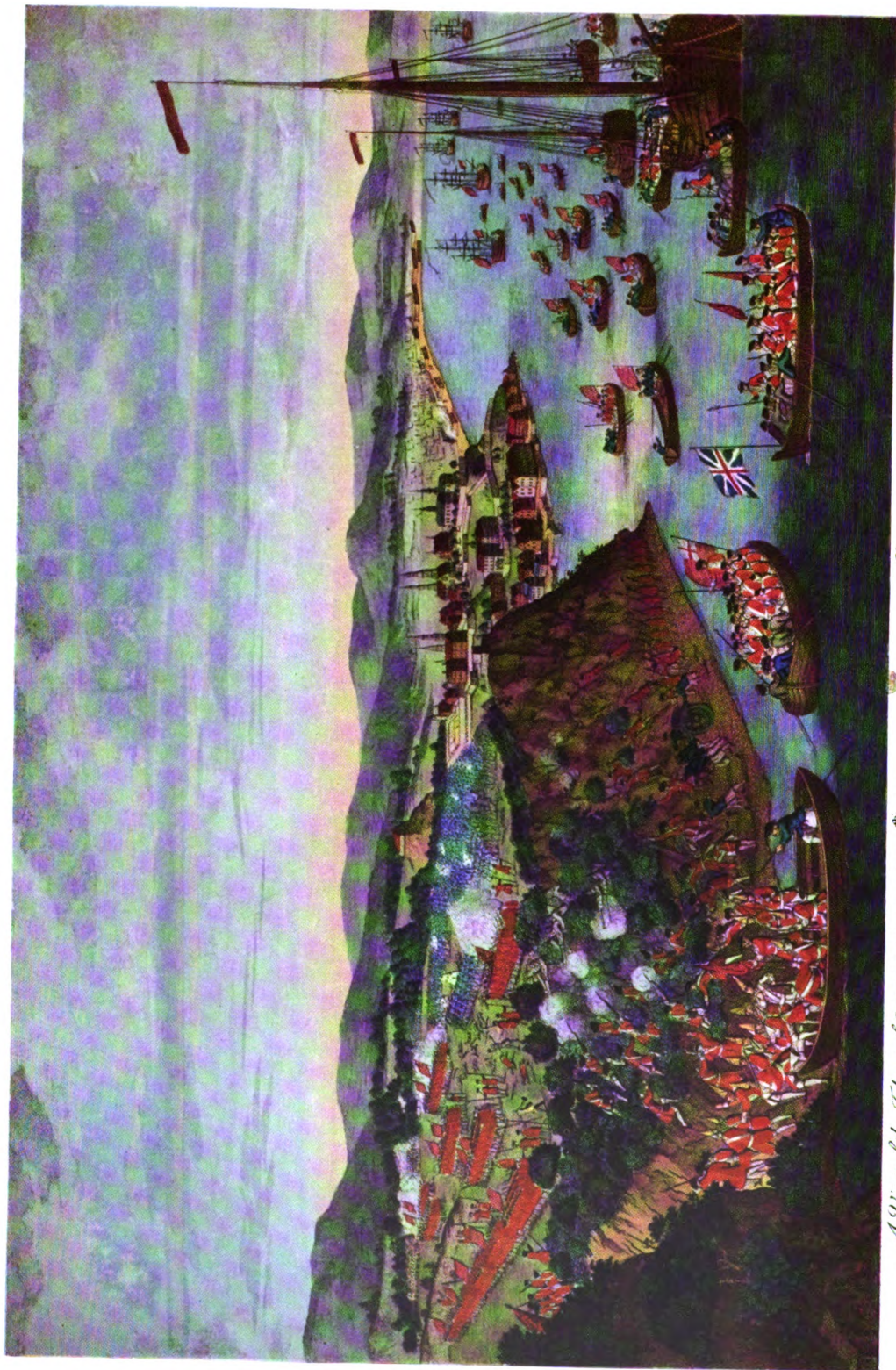
**Ascent of the
Heights of
Abraham.**

one of these expeditions that a sergeant and fourteen men of the 48th, on the 11th August, "being detached to scour the environs of an advanced post, came up with a party of our rangers and, not knowing them, as they were on the inside of a hedge, they fired, which our irregulars under a like mistake returned; but the officer of the latter, luckily discovering the error, called out to the sergeant to prevent further mischief. One soldier was killed and two wounded; the rangers also had two men wounded."³

Wolfe had formed a daring plan for his next attack. Westward of the city of Quebec lies the elevated tableland called the Heights of Abraham, the only place along the whole line occupied by Montcalm left vulnerable. Owing to the steepness of the cliffs, rising 200 to 250 feet above the St. Lawrence he deemed them inaccessible. Here Wolfe decided to land by night and gain the summit by daybreak. Not only would this be a threat to the French rear, but it would also cut off all their supplies and so compel them to fight, though the undertaking was a perilous one.

The force was to be moved by water on the night of September 12th, under cover of darkness, past the walls of Quebec and a landing forced at the Anse du Foulon, a little cove beneath the Heights of Abraham. The Light Infantry, under Colonel Howe of the 58th, were to lead the way, followed by the 28th, 43rd, 47th and 58th in the order named, the remaining troops following in succession. Great secrecy in the preparations was observed, the actual point of attack being kept secret until the last minute. The troops were embarked in boats at about nine in the evening, and orders were issued that "as there will be a necessity for remaining some part of the night in the boats, the officers will provide accordingly; the soldiers will have a gill of Rum extraordinary to mix with their water."

Towards the stroke of midnight a single light was shown at the masthead of the *Sutherland*. This was the sign for the flat-bottomed boats to rendezvous between that vessel and the shore. The men plied their oars as silently as possible, and soon were in their appointed positions. The sky, which up to then had been cloudless, fortunately became clouded over. As the boats were approaching the French side of the river it seemed, for a moment, that the expedition had been discovered, for the challenge of a French sentry rang out. A British captain, who spoke French, instantly replied in a low tone "La France." "A quelle regiment?" inquired the sentry. Fortunately the officer knew that the Queen's Regiment formed part of the French detachment in that neighbourhood, and he replied quickly, "De la Reine." The sentry then allowed the boats to pass, but another whose suspicions were also



A View of the Taking of QUEBEC September 13th 1759
 Shewing the manner of debarking the English Forces, & of the revolted assembling of the light Infantry, on a Woody Precipice to dislodge the Captain's post, which defeated a small entrenched party through which the Troops were to pass. Also a view of the signal Victory obtained over the French regulars, Canadians and Indians, which produced the surrender of Quebec.
 Painted 1759-1761 by LAURIE & WHITTLE 53 Fleet Street, London.
 Reproduced by courtesy of Lt.-Col. C. de W. Crookshank.

Vue de la Prise de QUEBEC le 13 Septembre 1759.

Qui Représente le débarquement des Troupes Anglaises & L'Assemblée de L'Infanterie Légère en Escaladant un Précipice. Représentant aussi le poste de la capitaine qui défendait un sentier retranché par où les Troupes devoient passer. Aussi la vue de la victoire signalée remportée sur les Canadiens & Indiens qui obligea la Ville à se rendre.

aroused challenged, to which the officer replied in French, "Hush, we may be heard by the English on the river." The sentry's suspicions were allayed and all was well, but success had hung by a thread.

Without further incident, the boats reached the place of disembarkation and the men scrambled silently ashore. As we have said above, the advance guard selected by General Wolfe to obtain a footing on the plateau consisted of the Light Infantry under Lieutenant-Colonel Howe of the 58th. At the head of the first detachment went twenty-four brave men who had volunteered for the valorous task. They were under the command of Captain Delaune, and their orders were to surprise and capture the French post on the top of the cliff from the rear. From the narrow strip of river bank on which they had landed the shady cliffs rose almost perpendicularly to the level of the plain sloping westward from the walls of Quebec. Up this cliff clambered the advanced guard as silently as possible, pulling themselves up by the boughs and stumps of bushes, and managed to reach the summit without being discovered by the French post. They were quickly followed by the remaining Light Infantry companies under Colonel Howe, and the post was surprised and captured when it was still one hour before dawn. The moment a footing had been established the remainder of the force followed and soon after dawn the whole force had scaled the cliff—Montcalm, the Governor of Quebec, being still ignorant of what had occurred, and also having his troops widely scattered.

A French battery at Samos, several hundred yards west of the post, and consisting of four 24-pounders, had, however, realized the situation and opened fire on some of the British boats. This battery was protected by a deep gully, through which flowed a brook, swollen at this particular time by the recent rains into quite a mountain torrent. Against this battery Wolfe despatched Brigadier Murray with the 58th and the Light Infantry under Colonel Howe, and the battery was quickly captured and occupied by a detachment of Light Infantry.

The 48th had not embarked with the other battalions, but, being on the south side of the St. Lawrence, were marched to a point opposite to the landing-place. When the other forces were disembarked boats were made available to ferry the Regiment across the river. Hence the 48th were the last regiment to climb the heights and, in consequence, were placed in reserve during the action.

As soon as possible after the army had landed, Wolfe selected his position for forming his line of battle across the Plains of Abraham.

**Battle of
the Plains of
Abraham.**

On the right of the line, overlooking the St. Lawrence, was a single platoon of the 28th, followed in succession to the left by the 35th, the Louisburg Grenadiers, the 28th, 43rd, 47th, Fraser's Highlanders, and the 58th, under Major Agnew, with the 15th protecting the left flank and overlooking the valley of the St. Charles river. Colonel Howe's Light Infantry and the 48th, under Colonel Burton, were drawn up in reserve, each distributed in four subdivisions with wide intervals. Two

companies of the 58th guarded the landing-place, while the 3/60th formed the connecting link between them and the line of battle.⁴

The presence of the British army on the Plains of Abraham was a complete surprise to the French commander, who still expected an attack to the north of Quebec, and he at once hurried his troops across the St. Charles to meet the new situation. The small number of men comprising Wolfe's line of battle and the wide space of ground over which it was necessary to extend them in order properly to secure the flanks only permitted the General to draw it up two deep. The files were at least three feet apart, and there were forty yards or more in the intervals between the battalions—it was, indeed, a very thin red line. By the time the army was fully formed it was after eight o'clock, and about this time Montcalm appeared from Quebec at the head of the French army, which was formed up outside the city walls. In the space between the two armies there were a few clumps of high brush, under cover of which skirmishing was warmly kept up on both sides while the two armies were preparing for battle.

General Wolfe had visited every part of the line to encourage the men and emphasize his order that no man was to fire until the enemy were within forty yards, however they were provoked. Each man was also ordered to place an extra bullet in his musket. "So the minutes dragged on, until at a little before ten, the French line advanced with loud shouts to the true attack, the Regulars in the centre moving steadily, a long streak of white, edged on either hand with red and with blue, and the militia trying to move as steadily on the flanks. The English who until now had been lying down, then sprang to their feet and stood steady with recovered arms. At a range of 200 yards the French muskets opened fire, but with little effect, while much confusion and delay was caused by the Canadian Militia, who true to their instincts as skirmishers threw themselves flat on the ground to reload. Wolfe was shot through the wrist, but he merely wrapped his handkerchief round the wound, and called to the men to be steady and reserve their fire. The French recovered their order somewhat and again came on, filling the air with their cries, while the British stood calm, silent and immovable, knowing their chief and trusting him. Nearer and nearer drew the parti-coloured line, gayer and gayer as the blue and scarlet facings on the white coats came into view, brighter and brighter as the detail of metal buttons and accoutrements cleared themselves from the distance, till at length the time was come. Thirty-five yards only⁵ separated the opposing armies, when the word rang out, and with one deafening crash, the most perfect volley ever fired on a battlefield burst forth as if from a single monstrous weapon, from end to end of the British lines. A dense bank of smoke blotted the French from sight, and from behind it there arose a horrible din of clattering arms, and savage oaths and agonized cries. The sharp clink of ramrods broke in upon the sound as the British reloaded; and when the smoke rolled away, the gay line was seen to be shivered to fragments while the bright



THE DEATH OF WOLFE, 1759.
(Reproduced from the original painting by Edward Penny, 1763.)
By the courtesy of the Society for Army Historical Research.

coats strewed the ground like swathes of gaudy flowers, there was hardly a bullet of that volley that had not struck home. Then Wolfe gave the order to advance, and after one more volley, the scarlet line strode forward with bayonet and claymore to complete the rout."⁶

On the right of their line some French irregulars and Canadians made a determined stand, but after a gallant fight were beaten off by the 58th and the 78th Highlanders, though not without considerable loss. This, however, did not prevent the Highlanders from pursuing as far as the Charles River, and the 58th to the walls of Quebec, where they were checked at St. John's Gate by a gun which the townspeople had brought up.

**The Death
of Wolfe.**

Wolfe, contrary to the advice of many of his officers, had donned a new uniform on the day of the battle, the brightness of which made him an easy mark for the enemy's sharpshooters. In spite of the fire and the danger, he spared himself not at all, and early in the battle was wounded in the wrist by an enemy ball. Painful as it must have been, he bound a handkerchief round the wound and informed no one ; later he was again wounded, this time in the groin, but took no more notice of this wound than the first one. When the battle was at its height he was at the head of the 28th and the Louisburg Grenadiers on the right of the line, and while advancing at their head he was hit once more, a ball piercing his breast. An officer helped him to the rear and laid him on a soldier's coat near the spot where the 48th were formed up in reserve. Here he was attended by Surgeon Watson,⁷ assistant surgeon of the 48th, but he was beyond human aid.⁸

Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson describes his last moments as follows :—
“ No sooner did the officer who supported General Wolfe, see the enemy give way, but he immediately cries out, ‘ They run ! they run ! ’ but the General in ecstasy as if awoke out of sleep cried out ‘ Who runs ? ’ The officer answered hastily ‘ The enemy. ’ ‘ What,’ said the General, ‘ do they run already ; then I shall die happy. ’ ” Knox gives a similar description, and adds that, when the General heard that the enemy were giving way, he said : “ Go, one of you, my lads, to Colonel Burton—tell him to march Webb's Regiment (the 48th) with all speed to Charles River, to cut off the retreat of the fugitives from the bridge.” Then, turning on his side, he added, “ Now God be praised, I will die in peace,” and thus expired.

There is great similarity in all the reports of the death of General Wolfe, but the details with regard to those who were present at the time vary. Knox states in his report : “ Various accounts have been circulated of General Wolfe's manner of dying, his last words, and the officers into whose hands he fell ; and many from a vanity of talking, claimed the honour of being his supporters, after he was wounded.” The subject is dealt with exhaustively in Doughty's “ Siege of Quebec,” though when this was written Johnston's letter⁹ had not come to light, which confirms the presence of Surgeon Watson.⁷

All authorities agree that one of those present was a private man, and it is not unlikely that this was a soldier of the 48th, who were in reserve close to the spot where he died. It is supposed to be in memory of Wolfe that the black line was introduced into the lace of the men's clothing. This is confirmed by the records of the Regiment, written some years after, which state: "Captain Lieutenant John Campbell, son of the late Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, declared that his father had often told him that such was the case, and moreover that he was one of the officers of the Grenadier company of the 48th Regiment present at the Battle." The claim of the Grenadier is also supported by contemporary pictures of the death of Wolfe which show a Grenadier with buff facings, the 48th being the only English regiment at the battle with these facings; this latter fact, however, cannot be accepted as proof, as it has been established that the best-known picture, that of Sir Benjamin West, is most inaccurate in other respects.

Immediately after the battle, the first thought of the British was to establish a fortified camp on the scene of their victory. Apart from the danger of attacks by the Indians, there were possibilities of a sortie by the French from Quebec, or attacks by other French columns marching to the relief of their comrades. The following days were spent in bringing up artillery and ammunition to the heights and in commencing entrenchments for the attack on the town. Colonel Burton of the 48th was appointed to act as Brigadier.

The French, hoping from day to day for reinforcements to raise the siege, kept up a heavy fire on the British entrenchments and camps, and inflicted many casualties.⁹ They carried out the defence most gallantly for a few days, but conditions in the town were bad, and the citizens of Quebec, headed by the Mayor, made a joint appeal to the French commander, Ramezay, to capitulate. As a further British attack was threatening, and prospects of relief seemed remote, Ramezay accepted the inevitable and submitted terms of capitulation, the British entering the town on the afternoon of the 18th September. By the end of September most of the troops composing the French garrison had been embarked for France.

It was not until 29th September that the bulk of the army marched into the town to take up their winter quarters, the delay being due to the necessity of fixing up proper accommodation, most of the buildings available having been destroyed by artillery fire. Quarters were drawn for by regiments, the 48th being particularly lucky in obtaining the "Palace of the Intendant," "the best quarters of the whole."¹⁰ Nevertheless, they remained for several days on the field of battle until their quarters could be completely fitted for their reception.

So ended the campaign, but with little time to spare before the winter set in. Both the 48th and 58th had added another to their credit.¹¹ Once more British arms had triumphed and the foundation-stone had been laid for the British Dominion of Canada.

**General
Montcalm.**

Like Wolfe, General Montcalm, commanding the French, had also been mortally wounded in the battle ; he had fought gallantly, and did not live to see the surrender of Quebec. He is reported to have said to his chaplain before his death : " Since it was my misfortune to be discomfitted and mortally wounded, it is a great consolation to me to be vanquished by so brave and generous an enemy. If I could survive this wound, I would engage to beat three times the number of such forces as I commanded this morning with a third of the number of the British troops."



The Badge of
The Lake Superior Regiment

CHAPTER V

(48TH, 1759-1761)

(58TH, 1759-1762)

DEFENCE OF QUEBEC—A SERGEANT OF THE 58TH—WINTER AT QUEBEC—SURPRISE ATTACK (30TH JANUARY, 1760)—BATTLE OF SAINTE FOY (28TH APRIL, 1760)—CASUALTIES—SIEGE OF QUEBEC—CAPTURE OF MONTREAL—WINTER QUARTERS (1760-61)—48TH MARCH TO NEW YORK.

(See Maps, pages 24 and 38.)

ON 19th September, 1759, Brigadier-General Murray, as Governor, and Colonel Burton of the 48th, as Lieutenant-Governor, marched into Quebec, and when, a month later, the fleet and transports set sail for England, leaving a garrison of some seven thousand all told to hold Quebec, the situation was by no means secure. The victory of 13th September had been far from finishing the conquest of Canada. Levis, Montcalm's successor, had still over four thousand French regulars with many thousands of Canadian Militia and Indians; also the defences of Quebec had been severely damaged by our bombardment and, for want of proper materials, proved very difficult to repair before the winter set in. Moreover, the bombardment had done even more damage to the town; many houses had been destroyed and others rendered almost uninhabitable, so there was great difficulty in housing the garrison properly during the winter. It was the first time British troops had been called upon to face a Canadian winter, and the garrison was ill-prepared for its severities. The result was seen in the rapid rise of the sick rate and the large number of deaths. Already in October over 20 per cent. of the garrison were on the sick list; by the end of the year the proportion had risen to a quarter, and by April to 40 per cent., while over six hundred men had died.

During the winter months, the St. Lawrence being frozen over, we could not expect to be reinforced or supported by the fleet. To obtain warning of any enemy attack, General Murray at once sent detachments into outpost positions at Sainte Foy, Lorette and St. Augustine, a few miles from Quebec.

"In this manner was a Sergeant of the 58th posted with a Corporal and twelve men (that being the usual number of a Sergeant's party) in an advanced situation, when a large body of the enemy got between him and the party from whom he was detached; by which his retreat was entirely cut off, and himself and the party left to the tender mercy of the enemy. Notwithstanding his hopeless situation, and which must appear so extraordinarily distressful, yet

by his sagacity and military talents, added to the assistance of divine providence, who inspired him with an undaunted courage and resolution . . . he behaved in such a way that the fourth day after he had been so abandoned he arrived at Quebec with his party, with the loss of one man killed and one man so badly wounded that he was forced to leave him behind."

On his arrival in camp, General Murray offered him the first vacant commission, which he refused, "and that as his education would not entitle him to be a companion for gentlemen." The General then asked him to name his own reward. The sergeant was "so much confounded at the high commendation that he knew not what to say," but recommended that his Excellency should choose for him, begging that if he should live to be discharged from the Army it should be recommended to His Majesty that "he might be appointed Master Gunner of the Garrison of Carlisle in addition to his pension," which his Excellency did accordingly; at the same time he ordered the Paymaster-General to give him thirty guineas for his gallant behaviour and unparalleled modesty.¹

A sergeant of the 48th also distinguished himself a few months later, but in his case commissioned rank was accepted. This was shown in general orders of March, 1760, which state: "A sergeant of the 48th Regiment, having distinguished himself in the field, and being recommended by his Colonel as qualified in every respect to act up to the dignity of an officer, is appointed Ensign in the same corps."

Winter was fast approaching, and in addition to the repairs to the breaches in the walls and other preparations for defence, there remained much work to be done. Billets had to be prepared for the troops, and working parties laboured incessantly cutting down trees for the provision of fuel. Snowshoes—or "rackets," as they were called—were absolutely essential for either offence or defence, and as inadequate numbers existed, parties had to be sent out to requisition them in the neighbourhood without, however, any great success. Snowshoes and moccasins were also issued, and it was ordered that "snowshoes were to be hung up to prevent them being eaten by rats and mice."

The conditions during the winter were terrible; the cold was intense, rations were short, and disease was rampant. The new year was ushered in with terrible suffering, and during the first nine months at Quebec the British garrison buried a thousand men and latterly had an average sick list of the same number. The lot of the inhabitants was also hard. Among other things they were in great need of salt, and preferred it to specie in exchange for cattle and produce. General Murray thought it "a proper indulgence to the officers, who had gone through so much fatigue, to divide among them according to their ranks" a quantity that had been found among the King of France's stores. He also distributed a quantity of cloth to the soldiers for the making of waistcoats.

The dreadful conditions were not without their effect on discipline, and it is reported that considerable plundering and drunkenness took place in spite of the most severe punishment. Men were ordered such sentences as a thousand lashes, though these were often mitigated to three hundred in consequence of the severity of the weather. An order was issued to recall all licences for the sale of liquor, and any man found drunk was to receive twenty lashes a day until he gave information where he obtained the drink, and Knox records cases of women being whipped through the streets for selling rum to the troops.

Civilians took their part in the defence, and in April, 1760, "All the British merchants were reviewed, and at their own request, formed into an independant company of volunteers, to be commanded by Lieutenant Grant, of the 58th Regiment; this gentleman they made particular choice of, and they, including their sergeants, were about one hundred in number."²

In spite of the dreadful conditions, it is remarkable that the women, who took a very useful part in the work of the garrison, were very healthy. There was an unusually large proportion of women in the garrison, and a return for February, 1760, shows that the numbers drawing rations amounted in the 48th to eighty-two and in the 58th to fifty-three. Knox also reports that the sergeant who brought him the return reported "all well, able to eat their allowance, and fit for duty both by day and night." The women of the garrison were given considerable duties, and a number were ordered away with all detachments to do their washing and to cook for the men. That pressure was brought to bear on them is shown by the following order issued in March, 1760: "As the King victuals the women in order to render them useful to the men, they are ordered in future to attend the sick in the hospitals, instead of the healthy men hitherto employed on the service; these nurses will receive full allowance of provisions and be paid by their regiments for their trouble, such as refuse are to be struck off the victualling roll."

As the winter progressed, the garrison, which was victualled entirely with salt meat, was attacked by scurvy, which further depleted the strength, and there was hardly a man who was wholly free from the disease. One method employed for the cure of scurvy was to bury the patients up to their necks in sand.

Murray was naturally apprehensive for the safety of Quebec; the St. Lawrence river was frozen over, which placed assistance from the sea out of the question, and the French, with considerably superior forces available in Canada, made no secret of their intention to recapture the town.

Petty skirmishes and raids were of frequent occurrence, and in the new danger of surprise attacks by Indians or French, orders were issued and repeated every night for the men to "Lye on their Arms"; no officer or soldier, unless he was sick, was allowed to undress; nor were they "on any pretence allowed to put off their accoutrements during the night, which was an exceeding great hardship."¹

Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson reports: "However insignificant and trifling we thought this precaution at the time, we went through the fatigue of it and we found it at length to be of the utmost consequence; for on the 30th January, 1760, the River St. Lawrence being then frozen over, so as to be able to bear the heaviest carriages; we were alarmed at midnight by a strong party of the enemy having surprised and taken our post at Point de Levis. The alarm being given we instantly assembled on our regimental parades, from whence we were marched down to the ice, where after an obstinate engagement of more than two hours at length the enemy gave way."

They, however, still maintained their position at Point de Levis, and on 12th February a party was sent out to ascertain whether the ice would still bear and to draw the enemy out of their houses to ascertain their numbers. This disclosed about five hundred men, and the following day, a party of light infantry having been sent to cut off their retreat, they were attacked frontally, but, realizing the situation, offered but slight resistance.

During the winter the French, now commanded by M. de Levis, had made every preparation for attack, but it was not until April that the ice began to melt and their advance commenced. The **Battle of Sainte Foy, 28th April, 1760.** precautions he had taken gave General Murray ample warning, and he now ordered the 15th, 28th, 47th, 58th, 2/60th and all grenadiers to be ready to encamp at short notice and form an outpost position, "these corps being made choice of being the strongest and most healthy."^a At the end of April contact was obtained, and slowly the British outpost detachments were withdrawn before the advancing French until, on 27th April, half the British garrison marched out of the town to cover their retreat.

The following day General Murray heard that the French main body had landed at St. Augustine, and he had then to decide whether to fight them in the open or from inside the walls. Although greatly outnumbered, he decided on the former course, for the walls had not altogether been repaired and the men, who had already defeated the French at the Battle of the Plains of Abraham, were full of confidence. He therefore marched his little army of just over three thousand men against the nine thousand of the French, and took up a position in the deep snow on the Plains of Abraham. The 48th, 15th and 2/60th formed the right brigade under Colonel Burton (of the 48th); the 28th, 78th and 47th, the left under Colonel Fraser; while the 58th and 43rd formed the right and left centre respectively, the 35th and 2/60th being in reserve.

They must have presented a sorry sight, and are described by Johnson as "A poor pitiful handful of half starved, scorbutic skeletons; many of whom had laid by their crutches on the occasion; and would not be prevailed upon to stay behind, although many of them were absolutely forbidden, and would not be suffered to fall in the ranks with the men; and who followed us to the gates in the rear, and fell in when we formed line of battle." The effectives

of the 48th and 58th, in fact, numbered 350 and 309 respectively as against 816 and 589 on 6th June, 1759.

Seeing that the French were not yet completely in formation, Murray at once advanced to the attack, and, well supported by the artillery, at first succeeded in driving in the enemy's advanced troops, doing great execution. Numbers, however, told in the end, and we were slowly forced back, the French all the time trying to interpose themselves between our troops and the town. Realizing that he was not only outnumbered, but likely to be outflanked on both sides, Murray gave the order to fall back. "Damn it!" cried the enraged men, "what is falling back but retreating?" But if Quebec was to be saved there was no other alternative. But so regularly and deliberately was the retreat conducted, our men fighting at times almost knee deep in melting snow, that not only did the French fail in their object, but did not follow up with either spirit or energy, and our army reached the town, battered but unbroken.

The casualties during the action had been heavy considering the numerical weakness of the battalions. The 48th lost Ensign Nicholson and 22 rank and file killed, while 9 officers³ and 63 rank and file were wounded. The casualties of the 58th were 1 officer, 1 sergeant and 8 rank and file killed, and 3 sergeants and 46 rank and file wounded.

The following day the French opened their trenches for the attack on the town, and until the 10th May were incessantly employed in landing artillery, ammunition, provisions, scaling-ladders and tools for the attack on the town. An incessant and destructive fire was kept up meanwhile from the English batteries with such effect that, in nine days, the enemy lost five hundred men. On 11th May they unmasked their batteries and opened a tremendous fire on the town.

**Second Siege of
Quebec, 1760.**

To both commanders, the best hope of victory lay in the arrival of a friendly squadron in the St. Lawrence—the worst fear that the squadron, when it arrived, might be that of the enemy. On 9th May a ship of war was reported in the river. Excitement ran high as she began to hoist her colours. Was she friend or foe? A deafening cheer from the ramparts greeted the Cross of St. George as it slowly reached the masthead and floated in the breeze. The ship was the British frigate *Lowestoft*, and she sailed into the basin with the news that she was one of a squadron, the main body of which had already reached the mouth of the St. Lawrence. On the 15th a second frigate arrived, and early the next day this little squadron worked up the river with great spirit and engaged the French fleet, which instantly weighed anchor, but was so closely followed that all their ships were driven ashore in different places and destroyed. Levis saw his last chance had gone; he raised the siege and retreated in hot haste, abandoning all his artillery, ammunition, provisions and stores.

During the investment the casualties had been few, amounting in the whole garrison to not more than thirty killed and wounded.

After their failure at Quebec, the French concentrated at Montreal and strove to keep alive the loyalty of the Canadians, but they were in a desperate situation, as British forces under General Amherst and Colonel Haviland were advancing upon them from New York. Amherst moved by way of Lake Ontario and down the St. Lawrence, thus intercepting the French line of retreat to the Lakes, while Haviland came by Lake Champlain and the Richelieu.

**Capture of
Montreal,
8th September,
1760.**

The threat on Quebec being removed, it was resolved that General Murray should join General Amherst in the attack on Montreal with all available troops. Murray was the first to move. The health of his force was improving, but many men were still unfit for the rigours of active service. Leaving behind 1,700 men for the defence of Quebec, he formed a number of composite battalions of the fittest men. These were placed in two brigades under the orders of Colonel (now Brigadier) Burton of the 48th, and Colonel Hon. W. Howe of the 58th. The 48th combined with the 15th Foot to form the first battalion, while the 58th with the 28th formed the second. Three other battalions and two grenadier battalions were formed.⁴ The grenadiers of the 48th and 58th formed part of the 2nd and 1st Grenadier Battalions respectively, the latter being commanded by Major James Agnew of the 58th, who was specially mentioned by General Murray for his good work.⁵

Murray's troops embarked on 13th July, 1760, in thirty-two vessels, with a number of smaller boats, and sailed slowly up the river, skirmishing with small parties of the enemy, and disarming the inhabitants as he passed. The next day he reached the Richelieu rapids, where the enemy had erected a battery and posted several armed galliots, which engaged the men-of-war. Unfortunately, the wind failed in mid-passage and for twelve days the line was divided, one half lying above and one below the rapids. During this anxious period the troops landed daily on the south bank for marches and exercises and also to secure fresh provisions, and Murray issued repeated proclamations assuring the inhabitants of protection if they abstained from siding with the enemy. On the 27th a fair breeze sprang up and the rapids were passed.

On 8th August the force passed Trois Rivières, where a brisk fire was encountered, occasioning some loss, and after removing a boom placed athwart the river, Murray anchored off Sorrel. At St. Ignatius he was joined by Lord Rollo with the 22nd and 40th Regiments from Louisburg who had followed up the river, and on 7th September a landing was effected at Point au Tremble on the island of Montreal.

The same evening a force under Colonel Haviland, consisting of part of the Royals, the 17th and 27th and other details, appeared on the south bank opposite Montreal, and next day General Amherst, with two battalions of the Black Watch, the 44th, 46th, 55th, 4/60th, 77th and 80th, arrived in sight from New York. This concentration of three bodies of troops at one point within

the space of forty-eight hours—a circumstance sufficiently remarkable when we remember the difficulty of communication and how largely their movements depended on wind and tide—decided the fate of Canada, and on 8th September the garrison capitulated and the campaign was at an end.

Thus, in 1760 the vast territory of Canada passed from the French into the hands of the British. Descendants of both nations now live there in harmony as Canadians and members of the British Commonwealth of Nations. In view of the part taken by both the 48th and 58th in the conquest of Canada, the alliance formed between the Northamptonshire Regiment and the Lake Superior Regiment, with headquarters at Port Arthur, Ontario, is a particularly happy one.

In order to commemorate this campaign in which both the 48th and 58th took part, approval was given by Army Order, 6th November, of 1934, for the centre badge of the Regimental Colour to be “a sprig of three Maple leaves, each charged with a fleur de lys,” this badge being taken from the arms of Quebec.

The 48th spent the ensuing winter in the neighbourhood of Trois Rivières, on the St. Lawrence, between Quebec and Montreal. A **Winter Quarters, 1760-1761.** muster roll of November, 1760, shows that two companies were quartered at Trois Rivières, and one at each of the following places:—St. Francois, Battican, Mashrouge, St. Anne’s on the River, Macheche, Magdalape, Nicolette, and Yamaskia. The 58th returned to Quebec, where they remained as garrison until the spring of 1762. As their brigades were broken up, Lieutenant-Colonels Burton and Howe returned to command their regiments.

In June, 1761, the 48th left Trois Rivières and marched to New York, arriving at Staten Island during August. According to a letter from Lieutenant William Johnston of the 48th, addressed to his father, the first move was made to Crown Point, where they were detained for some time to work at the fort, “which,” he states, “when finished will be a very noble one.” The route to Crown Point was, according to Johnston, “up the Sorrel River (probably the name given by the troops to the Richelieu, which enters St. Peter’s Lake on the St. Lawrence at the town of Sorrel) to Fort Chambly (on the Richelieu), from Fort Chambly to Fort St. Johns, then across to Lake Champlain (*i.e.*, north to south) to Crown Point.” From Crown Point they moved to Ticonderoga, thence across Lake George, by Fort William Henry and Fort England to Albany, and then down the Hudson River to Staten Island opposite New York. New York at this time had a population of but a few thousand, but was about the largest town in the Thirteen Colonies.

**March to
New York.**

CHAPTER VI

(48TH, 1761-1775)

(58TH, 1762-1779)

MARTINIQUE (1762)—WAR WITH SPAIN (1762)—CAPTURE OF FORT MORO (48TH)—EIGHT COMPANIES OF 58TH CAPTURED AT SEA (1762)—CAPTURE OF HAVANNAH (48TH AND 58TH). 58TH: ENGLAND AND IRELAND (1763-1769)—GIBRALTAR (1770-1779)—DISCIPLINE—A DUEL. 48TH: IRELAND (1763-1773)—WEST INDIES (1773-1775).

(See Maps, pages 54 and 82.)

ALTHOUGH Canada had now been captured, the war with France still continued, and the British Government sought further means of attacking her beyond the seas, and so making full use of our naval supremacy. General Amherst was therefore instructed in January, 1761, to make a descent on the French possessions in the West Indian Islands.

**Capture of
Martinique
(48th), 1762.**

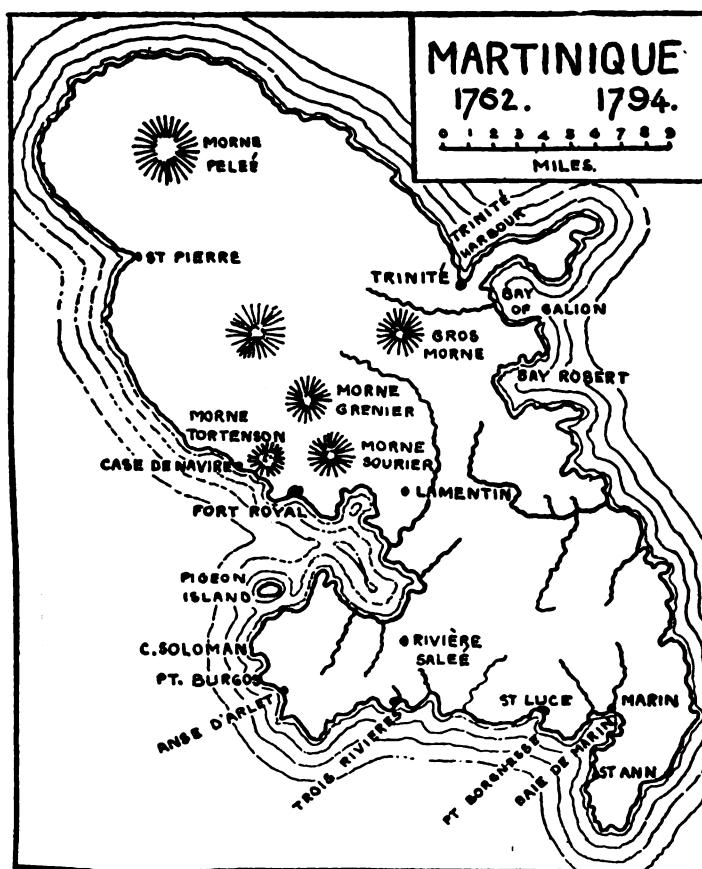
In these days of sailing ships, the strategic position of the various islands in the West Indies was of the greatest importance, and depended largely on the trade winds which blow for three parts of the year from south-east to north-west. A force stationed in the eastward group, or Lesser Antilles, was therefore a constant menace to possessions in the Greater Antilles, but once a force had been despatched to the west it was many months before it could be expected to return. During the next forty years many of these islands were constantly to change hands between the British, French and Spaniards.

At this time the commercial and economic importance of the West Indies was enormous, and the West Indian trade was the biggest and most lucrative part of our commerce. Trade with the East Indies was still comparatively unimportant, and that with China, South Africa and Australia had not yet commenced. France cared very little about Canada compared with her interests in the West Indies.

Though the British held Barbados, the most easterly island of all, it had a poor harbour, and the main base for British ships was the small island of Antigua. Among the French islands, however, St. Lucia, Martinique and Guadeloupe all possessed good harbours, Martinique being the principal naval and military centre. It was against this group of islands that the British attack was therefore directed.

By 6th June, 1761, Dominica was captured and reinforcements were awaited from New York, where the 48th and ten other battalions¹ had been

concentrated under General Monckton. This force, with rangers and artillery, sailed from New York on 19th November, 1761, for Barbados, where they were concentrated by Christmas Day.² Some days were spent in refreshing the troops and taking in stores, and on 5th January, 1762, the fleet sailed to Martinique, coming to anchor in St. Ann's Bay on the south-west of the island.



Soon after arrival, two brigades were landed on the western side of the island on 7th January, with the object of taking Fort Royal in the rear. The road was, however, found to be impossible for cannon and transport, and the brigades were re-embarked. Feints were then made at different parts of the coast, which exhausted the French by the incessant marching they caused, and finally after a heavy cannonading of the shore batteries the entire force was landed in a creek called the Cas Navire on 16th January, hardly more than three miles from Fort Royal, the capital of the island.

Their difficulties had, however, hardly commenced, for the road to Fort Royal passed through deep gullies and ravines and was studded with natural fortifications. On every point of vantage the French had erected redoubts against which batteries had to be erected, which caused delay and greatly impeded the progress of the advance. The main defences of the town were situated on two eminences—Mount Tortensen and Mount Garnier, each protected by formidable ravines. Mount Tortensen was first selected for capture ; a corps was ordered to advance along the seaside on the right to take the redoubts in the low ground, assisted by a thousand sailors who attacked from the sea. Another body of infantry attacked on the left, while the main attack was made direct, covered by the fire of the batteries which had been erected with great labour. The attack of the infantry was made with great enthusiasm ; the British troops, for the most part tried veterans, were vastly superior to the French, whose troops were of the poorest quality, and quickly drove them from post to post, and Mount Tortensen was ours.

Mount Garnier, a stronger and loftier hill, still remained, and some days elapsed before batteries could be prepared for the attack. In the meantime, the French launched a massed attack on our advanced posts. Not only was this attack repulsed, but our men, changing from the defensive to the offensive, counter-attacked and pursued, driving the enemy past the ravines, scaling the hills, seizing the batteries and finally reaching the summit of Mount Garnier itself.^a A few days later, on 3rd February, 1762, the town was surrendered.

St. Pierre, a place of considerable strength, still remained intact, but just as General Monckton was about to embark for the city, the French proposed terms of capitulation for the whole island.

General Monckton, in his dispatch, observes : " I cannot find words to render that ample justice which is due to the valour of His Majesty's troops which I have the honour to command. The difficulties which they had to encounter in the attack of an enemy possessed of every advantage of art and nature were great ; and their perseverance in surmounting these obstacles furnishes a noble example of British spirit."

In recognition of their services the 48th were granted their third Battle Honour—" Martinique, 1762," though the award was not made until 1909.

The surrender of Martinique entailed that of the other French dependencies in the Caribbees, and consequently detachments were sent forthwith to take possession of St. Lucia, St. Vincent, and Grenada, all of which surrendered in the course of February and March, 1762, practically without a fight.

General Monckton was meditating further conquests, when he received news from home that the King of Spain had formed an alliance
Havannah, 1762. with France, which had led to our declaring war on Spain on January 4th, 1762. The Government decided to strike an immediate blow at Spain of such severity as to compel her to sue for peace, and the Spanish port of Havannah on the island of Cuba, the most opulent and

flourishing city in the West Indies, was selected as the first objective. Lord Albemarle was appointed to command the expedition, which was to consist of a force of twelve thousand men, divided into five brigades: the 48th (525 strong), under Lieutenant-Colonel Teesdale, were brigaded with the 9th, 27th and 28th in the second brigade, commanded by Brigadier-General Walsh.

The town of Havannah lay on the western side of the harbour, which is one of the finest in the world; its entrance was guarded by strong forts—Fort Moro on the east and Fort Puntal on the west. The Spanish fleet lay in the basin, but though little inferior in strength to that of the British, they displayed no inclination to come out and fight, and remained in harbour, relying on the strong fortifications and the great difficulties which would attend a besieging army on account of the unhealthy climate. They therefore blocked the harbour entrance with a boom and sunken ships and awaited the British attack with confidence.

On 6th June Havannah was sighted by the British fleet, and the following day the army was landed without opposition a few miles to the north-east of the city. Two days later they advanced towards the capital and, brushing aside the advanced troops of the enemy, gained possession of the Cavannos ridge, at the seaward end of which Fort Moro is situated.

Fort Moro, being the key position of the defensive works covering the town, had first to be captured, and for this purpose the erection of batteries was essential. The ground was so rocky that the construction of trenches was almost an impossibility, and many of the defences were constructed of sandbags filled with earth several hundred yards in the rear and carried forward on the shoulders of the soldiers; bales of cotton were also used. In addition, jungle had to be cleared away and the guns dragged by hand from the shore to their positions, several miles under the burning sun. To make matters worse, there was a scarcity of water; none was obtainable near the trenches, and it was necessary to rely on the scanty supply which could be brought from the ships. Many men dropped dead with thirst and fatigue, while fever carried off many others, disabling nearly half the army. In spite of all difficulties, the work was pushed on eagerly, and on 1st July the British batteries were opened and daily were advanced nearer the fort.

The Spanish guns replied to the British batteries with great spirit, but our damaged batteries were replaced, and at last on 19th July a lodgment was effected on the glacis. Three days later the Spanish made a sortie, but this was repulsed with heavy loss to themselves.

The rapid progress made alarmed the Spanish Governor and he resolved to attempt the relief of Fort Moro. Accordingly on 29th June twelve hundred men were ferried across the harbour and attacked our posts at three different points. But the guards, though surprised, defended themselves with such

vigour that the Spaniards were unable to damage any part of our batteries and were driven off with great slaughter.

This was the last effort to save the fort. On 30th July a mine was sprung under the east bastion, and a breach was made through which dashed our troops, the assaulting party consisting of the 90th Regiment supported by a detachment of the 35th. The garrison was taken completely by surprise, the Spanish Commander, Don Louis De Velasco, killed and the fort captured.

The attack on Havannah called for reinforcements for our forces in the West Indies, and troops were despatched both from home and America. Among the latter were included the 58th, who were then at Quebec, and it seems they undertook a march to New York very similar to that performed by the 48th a year previously. Though no details are available, reference is made in the 58th Records to a difficult march through woods and forests to New York.

On 30th June, 1762, the 58th, with two other battalions (Gorham's Rangers and New York Provincials), sailed from New York for Havannah. The 58th, under the command of Major Agnew, were in five transports, the *Britannia* (187 tons), the *Pelling* (168 tons), the *Young Samuel* (216 tons), the *Betsy and Sally* (184 tons), and the *Anne* (162 tons), and sailed under convoy of H.M.S. *Lizard*, *Enterprise* and *Porcupine* (sloop). On 21st July the convoy fell in with a French fleet between Maya Guanna and the North Caicos, and a number of the transports were captured, including the *Britannia*, *Pelling*, and *Betsy and Sally*, conveying the 58th, and two other ships with New York Provincials. On capture the officers and men were taken to Cape Francois, and from this place Captain Charles Graydon of the 58th, the senior officer captured, sent the following letter to General Amherst :—

Sir,

"On the 21st July our fleet fell in with two French Men-of-War of the line and two frigates, by whom eight companies of the 58th Regiment were taken and brought in here. Included I send you a return of the prisoners and those who have escaped. I dare not send you any particulars as to our treatment, as all our letters will be opened and read before the vessel sails by which this is conveyed."

I am, Sir,

Your most humble Servant,

CHA: GRAYDON,

Captain, 58th Regt.

Cape Francois.

August 24th, 1762.

The return⁴ disclosed that only two of the ten companies and a few details escaped capture, the two lucky companies being those of Major James Agnew and Captain Horace Hayes, who reached Havannah on 2nd August. A report by General Amherst dated 20th October, 1762, states that he had information that all the prisoners had been sent to France.

**Capture of
Havannah.**

After the capture of Fort Moro a line of batteries was erected against Fort Puntal on the other side of the harbour, and other batteries were prepared commanding the town. On 10th August the batteries of Fort Puntal were silenced, and Lord Albemarle sent a message to the Spanish Governor pointing out his hopeless situation, and calling on the Spaniards to surrender and so prevent needless loss of life. The Governor refused, saying he would defend his trust to the last, and immediately opened fire. To convince him that the threats used were no empty boast, Lord Albemarle then ordered a general discharge from the British batteries, which fired with such effect that in a few hours the enemy's guns were silenced and flags of truce were hoisted at many points in the town and by all the ships in the harbour.

Three days later, on 13th August, the capitulation was signed, and the following day the British troops took possession of this valuable settlement. The booty was enormous and included silver to the value of over three million pounds. Great credit was given to the captors for distributing a sixteenth of the booty to the poor of the place. The troops also received considerable benefit.⁵

Pestilence had raged furiously during the siege and continued after the capitulation, but while disease had been the main cause of loss, the numbers killed and wounded had also been severe.⁶

After the siege both regiments remained for some time at Havannah as garrison. There was at this time a considerable white population both in America and the West Indies, which had been provided largely by the transportation of "undesirables" from Great Britain. This transportation had been going on ever since the beginning of the seventeenth century. At first these "white servants," as they were called, had been provided mainly from the criminal classes, but later, the Civil War, the conquest of Ireland and the subdual of Scotland had provided a new element. The numbers were increased after the Monmouth rebellion and by the ill-fated victims of Judge Jeffreys.

Regiments at both these stations were expected to maintain their strengths very largely by locally raised recruits, and it appears that in 1762 a number of the regiments engaged in the West Indies sent recruiting parties to North America, and records show that the 48th were recruiting at Rhode Island in December, 1762,⁷ and also that in September, 1762, forty-seven recruits raised in Massachusetts Bay were sent to join the 58th.⁷

In the autumn of 1762 the Peace of Paris was concluded, and the Seven Years' War was at last at an end. Under the terms of the treaty, Havannah was returned to Spain, but our successes and gains had been great; Canada had been added to the British possessions, and France, after a gallant struggle, beaten to her knees.

As a result of the peace the garrison was withdrawn from Havannah, and by July, 1763, all had departed. England now remained at peace for twelve years, until 1775, when the War of American Independence broke out.

The 58th sailed from Cuba towards the end of 1762, and, having landed at Southampton, marched to Bideford. Here it was joined by the companies captured in 1762, which had been repatriated as a result of the Peace of 1763. Before leaving Bideford, the Regiment was reduced to the Irish establishment of nine companies (380 all ranks), and in June, 1764, it embarked for Ireland and landed at Cork. The Regiment remained in Ireland for six years, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel J. Burgoyne, during which period it was stationed at various times at Galway, Dublin and Kinsale.

On December 14th, 1767, Lieutenant-General Anstruther, the old chief of the 58th, who had formed the Regiment twelve years before, died, and was succeeded by Lieutenant-General Robert Cunningham, who later became Lord Rossmore.⁸

In the autumn of 1770 the 58th, with the 56th Foot, were ordered to Gibraltar in relief of the 19th and 30th Foot. A Horse Guards Order dated 6th October, 1770, addressed to the Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland, points out the desirability of the regiments going complete, and for that purpose ordered that a draft of twenty-seven men should be sent from the 61st to the 58th. The Order states that the draft should be selected from the "recruits last raised, who may be fit for service and volunteers if a sufficient number shall turn out." It continues: "Regiments finding the drafts to be indemnified by the regiments receiving them at the rate of £5 for each man, and that the Captains who recruit the drafts are to advance for the debts of the men to their respective Captains as far as sixteen shillings worth. The men are to leave with the regiments to which they now belong their arms, accoutrements and clothing as they will receive all these particulars from the regiments to which they are appointed."⁹

The regiment embarked at Cork, and on arrival at Gibraltar appears to have passed a monotonous existence for the next nine years. "The most friendly intimacy existed at the time between the British military and the Spaniards resident in the adjacent villages. Parties were reciprocally visiting each other, and the officers constantly making excursions into the country. These excursions, with others to the coast of Barbary (which in the season superabounds with various species of game), were pleasing relaxations from the duties of the garrison and rendered Gibraltar as eligible a station as any to which a soldier could be ordered."¹⁰

The main incidents recorded refer to matters of discipline. In March, 1779, the Governor told the commanding officers of regiments that he expects the officers should be able to go through the Manual themselves; that he proposed to see them do it; that he supposed the Captains could, or had a proper excuse of age, stiffness, etc.; that the young subalterns particularly were to be very alert at it."¹¹

**58th Foot :
England and
Ireland,
1763-1769.**

**58th at
Gibraltar,
1770-1779.**

**Discipline
and a Duel.**

In 1771 a duel was fought between Lieutenant-Colonel J. Burgoyne, commanding officer of the 58th, and Captain T. Osborne, who also was a member of the Regiment. In consequence they were tried by court-martial and sentenced to be dismissed. Each officer then submitted an appeal on behalf of himself and his opponent in the duel. The following is an extract from Captain Osborne's appeal, dated 18th August, 1771, which is preserved in the Public Record Office.

"The endeavour to make interests in order to be re-instated in the favour of my Sovereign, in the predicaments in which I now stand, would be ridiculous. Nothing can be of any sort of service to me but a faithful narrative of the facts and the natural goodness of heart of my King.

"A few days ago a-riding in Spain, Lieutenant-Colonel Burgoyne and me happened to have some words of warmth and a challenge was the natural consequence. We were on our return to Gibraltar put under arrest, and Lieutenant-Colonel Burgoyne having heard that a paper had some time since been posted up of a scandalous nature, and tending to stab him in the dark by accusing him of want of personal courage, thinking this a fit opportunity to convince the world that he wanted no accomplishment that is fit for a soldier, therefore sent to me to force me to break my arrest having appointed the place and having declared he would be there.

"In this dreadful situation I thought I should stand a better chance to be forgiven by my King a breach of an article than a want of spirit to justify my own honour; for the man who has no courage to defend himself is not to be depended on by his King. Colonel Burgoyne and I met and the affair terminated to the acknowledged honour of both parties and we are now friends in the highest sense of the word."

He continues with an appeal that both he and Colonel Burgoyne may remain in the Service, and that he may continue to serve in the 58th. In forwarding the case the Governor-General states: "I cannot help observing the merit Lieutenant-Colonel Burgoyne has with respect to the 58th with all the difficulties and jarrings in that corps; it is the best disciplined and best appointed regiment I ever saw come from Ireland."

It seems that the appeal succeeded in the case of Lieutenant-Colonel Burgoyne, for he remained in the Regiment until July, 1773, when he surrendered the command to Lieutenant-Colonel R. C. Bayley. Captain Osborne, however, though he may have remained in the Army, was not allowed to remain in the 58th.

Another court-martial on an officer took place in August, 1779, the accused being charged with cheating at play with dice, but acquitted. "It was a most extraordinary court-martial, a box of dice standing constantly on the table for the evidence to show how he did it, and for him to confute them. It appeared he had won of a very young gentleman near £200. Such a man is a great acquisition to us. Three very young men of the 39th were those he played with."¹¹

During this period two new Colonels were appointed. In October, 1775, General Cunninghame obtained command of the 14th Foot, and was succeeded by the Hon. George West,⁸ who died after holding the appointment for a year, when his place was taken by Colonel Launcelot Baugh⁸ on 19th February, 1776.

The 48th remained at Havannah until the spring of 1763, when, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel R. Ross, they sailed for
48th Foot, England on board the *Aquilon*, a 74-gun ship captured from
Ireland, the Spaniards, and disembarked at Plymouth in August, 1763.
1763-1778.

On arrival they were quartered at Granby Square, and were reviewed by the Duke of York. It is reported in the Diary of Doctor William Paget,¹² the Surgeon of the Regiment, that the Duke of York gave a ball and "danced in the same set with the regiment."

In November they were transferred to Ireland, where they remained at various stations¹³ until October, 1773.

In 1769 Lieutenant-Colonel B. Gordon became Lieutenant-Colonel of the 48th, and retained the appointment for twenty-six years, although he was promoted Major-General in 1782 and Lieutenant-General in 1796. Such were the evils of the purchase system.

On 18th December, 1766, General Webb was transferred to the Colonelcy of the 8th Foot and was replaced as Colonel of the 48th by Major-General William Browne,⁸ who at that time was Colonel of the 73rd.

On the death of General Browne in 1773, after seven years in command, he was replaced by Major-General William Alexander Sorrell,⁸ whose prior service had been in the 2nd Foot Guards.

While at Cork new Colours were presented to the Regiment on 24th June, 1766, and it seems likely that they were lost when five companies of the Regiment were captured at Grenada in 1779.

On 25th May, 1771, the 48th were inspected at Waterford by General William Browne, the Colonel of the Regiment. The following are extracts from his inspection report, a copy of which is preserved in the Officers' Mess.

- " OFFICERS. ... *Made a good appearance, well armed and saluted well. Their uniform, lapelled to the waist with buff, buff waistcoats and breeches. Buttons numbered.*
- " MEN. ... *Good size, well made and appeared very clean under arms—steady and attentive. Hattes well cocked—Black gaiters according to orders.*
- " CLOTHING. ... *Very good and well fitted and made agreeable to the King's orders.*
- " ARMS. ... *Extremely clean and in perfect order.*

" **TRAINING AND MANŒUVRES.** *Fired twice by companies from right and left to center . . . twice by grand divisions chequered . . . twice by wings . . . march . . . fire twice by companies from center to right and left, twice by grand divisions . . . Retreat . . . March in Battalion . . . form a column by companies from the center . . . form battalion . . . wheel to the right by companies . . . perform street firing, once advancing and once retreating . . . form battalion . . . change front to the right . . . general fire . . . charge . . . General Salute . . .*"

A parade of this kind was considered a thorough test of the efficiency of a regiment for active service, as all fighting was still carried out, except by light companies, in close formation, where discipline, steadiness and precision alone mattered.

On 26th October, 1773, the 48th sailed once more for the West Indies and were distributed as garrisons, five companies at Grenada, three at Dominica and two at Tobago. These small detachments were recognized as being totally inadequate to deal with external attack, but were retained in the islands mainly owing to the fear of negro insurrection.



Officers Bone Backed
Gilt Button. circa 1780



Officers Gilt Coatee
Button. prior to 1855



Officers Tunic Button
1855-1881



Officers Tunic Button
1855-1881

CHAPTER VII

(48TH, 1775-1781)

(58TH, 1779-1784)

THE WAR OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE—WAR WITH FRANCE—EIGHT COMPANIES OF 48TH CAPTURED AT DOMINICA AND GRENADA (1778)—WAR WITH SPAIN—GIBRALTAR—THE SIEGE COMMENCES (13TH SEPTEMBER, 1779)—INCIDENTS OF THE SIEGE—INTENSE BOMBARDMENT OPENED—DEATH OF CAPTAIN BURKE—THE SORTIE (27TH NOVEMBER 1781)—THE ATTACK BY SEA, 1782—RELIEF BY LORD HOWE (18TH OCTOBER, 1782)—TREATY OF VERSAILLES.

(See Maps, pages 24 and 67.)

WHEN in 1775 the long-imminent conflict between Great Britain and the North American Colonies developed into an actual clash of arms at Lexington, neither the 48th nor the 58th found themselves in the theatre of war, or likely to be sent there.

**The War of
American
Independence.**

The strategical importance of the West Indies, whither the 48th had returned in 1773, on the one hand, and of Gibraltar, where the 58th were stationed, on the other, made it unlikely that troops would be withdrawn from either station. This was especially the case as the scarcely ambiguous attitude of France made a widening of the area of war highly probable should any misfortune overtake the troops engaged in the reduction of the colonies to obedience.

With the country's energies concentrated on the colonial struggle and the great increase in the demands on the recruit market, drafts were hard to come by, and the gaps in the ranks of the 48th, which the West Indian climate inevitably produced, remained mostly unfilled. The detachments of the 48th in the West Indies were all very weak when they became involved in active operations, and even the 58th at the healthier Gibraltar were not up to establishment.

The companies at Dominica were the first of the 48th to come into action.

**48th in the
West Indies
(1778-1781).**

The declaration of war by France (March, 1778) had found the British squadrons in the West Indies down to a low level, and though France was not much more strongly represented, the Marquis de Bouillé, who commanded at Martinique, was able to assemble a sufficient force to escort an expedition to Dominica, which he knew to be but weakly held.

The garrison consisted, in fact, of but three weak companies of the 48th, besides the local Militia, and was a force designed rather to police the island against negro insurrection than to protect it against external aggression.

" On Monday, 7th September, 1778, a French armament consisting of a forty-gun ship, three frigates and about thirty sail of armed sloops and schooners, having on board two thousand regular troops, and a lawless banditti of volunteers, about half that number, appeared off the island. Part of the troops having soon afterwards landed without opposition, the enemy proceeded to attack Fort Cashacrou, the chief defence of the island.

" This fort was built on a rock, about three hundred feet in perpendicular height, surrounded on three sides by the sea, and was considered so very defensible, that it was supposed that a few hundred men well provided, would maintain it against many thousands. Great, therefore, was the astonishment when it was perceived by the French colours flying on it that this fort had surrendered without resistance ; but strange as it may seem, the case appeared afterwards to have been that some of the French inhabitants had insinuated themselves into the fort a few nights before, and having intoxicated with liquour the few soldiers that were there on duty, had contrived to spike the cannon !

" Having made themselves masters of Fort Cashacrou, the enemy landed their whole force about noon, and began their march to the town which was defended by Forts Melville and Loubiere." Few of the militia, however, many of whom were of French nationality, turned up to assist in the defence. " The small force, however, that was collected behaved with great spirit and gallantry. Three times was the enemy driven out of Fort Loubiere, of which they had possessed themselves, and twice were the colours which they had hoisted thereon shot away. But gallantry was unavailing against such superiority of numbers ; the bravery of the garrison, however, was such that when it was no longer possible to hold out, most honourable terms of capitulation were granted."¹

The following year further attacks were made by the French on our West Indian possessions, and in July, 1779, having captured St. Vincent without the garrison firing a shot, the French descended on Grenada. " On 2nd July, 1779, a French armament consisting of a fleet of twenty-five ships of the line, ten frigates and 5,000 troops appeared off the town and harbour of St. George. The whole force of the island was composed of ninety men of the 48th, which was all that remained of five companies, three hundred militia of the island and one hundred and fifty seamen from the merchant ships ; and its fortifications consisted chiefly of an entrenchment, which had been hastily thrown up round the summit of Hospital Hill. This entrenchment the French invested the next day with three thousand of their best forces, and after a hard conflict and the loss of three hundred men, they carried the lines. Never did so small a body of men make a nobler defence against such inequality of numbers. The Governor, Lord Macartney, and the remains of his little garrison, immediately returned to the old fort at the mouth of the harbour ; which, however, was wholly untenable, being

commanded by the Hospital Hill battery, the guns of which had unfortunately been left unspiked. At daybreak the French opened a battery of two 24-pounders against the wall of the old fort. In this situation the Governor had no recourse but in the hopes of obtaining favourable terms of capitulation and herein he was disappointed and unconditional surrender was insisted upon by the French."²

Among those captured was William Paget, the Surgeon, who records in his diary that he was taken to Cape Francois, but allowed to go on parole to Barbados and was later exchanged for the Surgeon-Major of the Cape Regiment.

In 1780 the eight captured companies of the 48th were restored by France to Great Britain and were landed at Tynemouth, remaining in barracks at this place until joined by the remaining two companies which sailed from Tobago the following year.

If the 48th had been far from fortunate in the opportunities which the War of American Independence offered, the 58th had a different tale to tell. The defence of Gibraltar is one of the most satisfactory pages in the story of the war, and the regiments who shared in it are rightly proud of the honour of "Gibraltar."

**The 58th at
Gibraltar.**

From the earliest times the strategical importance of Gibraltar, standing on guard at the entrance of the Mediterranean, has been recognized. Mons Calpe, to call Gibraltar by its older name, and Mons Abyla on the opposite coast of Africa are known in mythology as the Pillars of Hercules.

The first record of use being made of its natural strength is by the Saracens in the eighth century, when a castle was erected on the face of the hill. In honour of their General Tarif, the place was known by the Saracens as Gibel-Tarif, or the mountain of Tarif, which in time developed into the name Gibraltar, by which it is at present known. For the next few hundred years wave after wave of invaders swept into Spain, and many times Gibraltar was captured and recaptured. It was after being taken from the Moors by the Duke of Medina in 1462 that the present arms were obtained in the following manner. The news of the conquest was so acceptable to Henry IV of Castile and Leon that he added to it his royal titles and gave it for arms "Gules, a castle, proper, with key pendant to the gate, or" (an allusion to its being the key to the Mediterranean). It was in 1704 that Gibraltar was wrested from the dominion of Spain by the English under Admiral Sir George Rooke. This officer had been sent into the Mediterranean, with a strong fleet, to assist Charles, Archduke of Austria, in obtaining the crown of Spain, and after a heavy bombardment from the ships, the defences were captured by a landing party. Great efforts were made by the French and Spaniards combined in the autumn of 1704 to recapture Gibraltar, but without success, though the siege lasted until March, 1705. It was attacked again in 1726-7 with no greater success, and as it was realized that further attacks would be made at the first suitable opportunity, considerable energies and money had been expended in strengthening the defences.

The strategical situation, when Spain became involved in the Seven Years' War in 1761, was too unfavourable to the Bourbons to allow of any attempt to recover Gibraltar, though that had been one of Spain's motives in forming the alliance with France, but the idea was never lost to sight at Madrid and the entry of France into the war on behalf of the revolted colonists gave Spain the opportunity for which she was waiting. Accordingly, on 16th June, 1779, a hostile manifesto was presented by the Spanish Ambassador at the Court of London, and on 21st June communication between Spain and Gibraltar was closed by an order from Madrid and a blockade commenced.

"Two days previous to this event General Elliott, the Governor, accompanied by many field officers of the garrison, paid a visit to General Mendoza, the Commandant of the Spanish lines, to congratulate him on his promotion. This gentleman, it is said, received them very coldly, and did not ask any one, except the Governor, to take chocolate or anything else, which made them suppose he had then some intimation of the rupture that was about to take place."

The garrison of Gibraltar consisted of just over 5,000 officers and men under General G. A. Elliott as Governor, and Lieutenant-General R. Boyd as Lieutenant-Governor. This force included five regiments of British infantry (12th, 39th, 56th, 58th and 72nd Royal Manchester Volunteers) and three Hanoverian regiments, in addition to detachments of Artillery and Engineers. The 58th were commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Gavin Cochrane, whose diary throws many interesting sidelights on the siege. He had obtained his company twenty-three years previously in the Royal Americans, and had later been a major in the 69th, from which regiment he was promoted into the 58th.

The Major, William King, had the longest service with the Regiment, being the only officer remaining who had joined the Regiment on formation, his commission as Ensign being dated 1st January, 1756. The senior Lieutenant, Thomas Woods, had 17 years' service, having been an Ensign in 1762.³

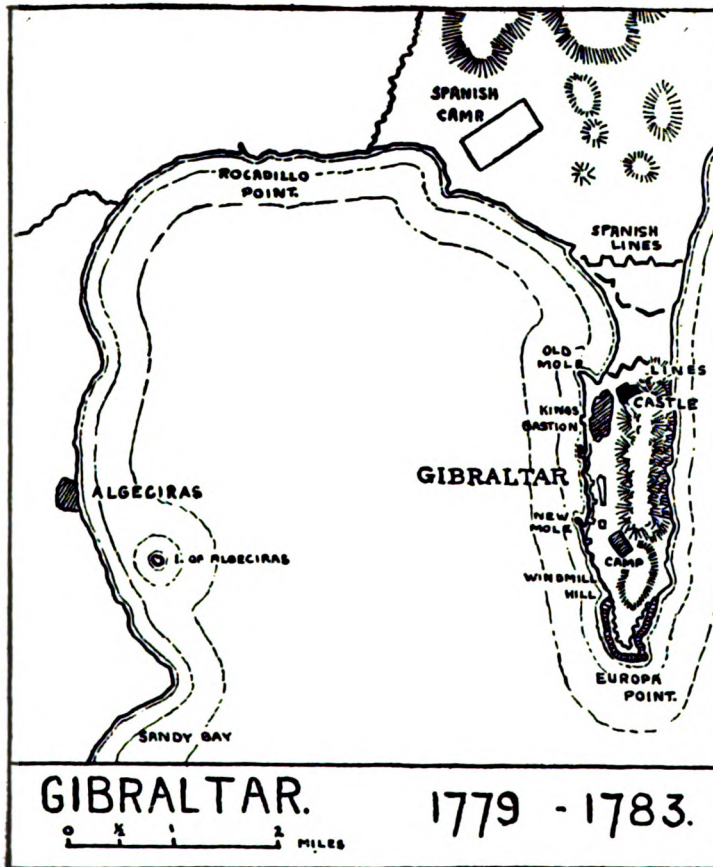
Much information regarding the siege can be obtained from a diary written by Sergeant Ancell of the 58th, who was present throughout the siege. The diary is in the form of a number of letters written by Sergeant Ancell to his brother, and was published by A. Edwards of Cork, the fourth edition being printed in 1793. Of the list of 450 subscribers over 50 were members of the 58th (36 officers, 12 sergeants, 6 corporals), almost all of the serving officers having purchased a copy.

As an attack on the fortress now seemed probable, preparations were hurried on for the improvement of the defences. Empty hogsheads and casks were purchased from the inhabitants and filled with earth to strengthen and repair the fortifications, and the neutral ground at the north of the rock was levelled and cleared so as not to give cover to an attacking force. On 3rd July a

**The Siege
Commences,
12th September,
1779.**

detachment of 180 men from the infantry were attached to the artillery, "to be taught the practice of the great guns."

One of the first indications of the grave turn matters were taking was an order issued on 21st July that troops would mount guard with their hair unpowdered, "a circumstance trifling in appearance, but which afterwards proved to be of great importance, and evinced the Governor's great attention



and prudent foresight in the management of the stores." This remark will be understood when it is realized that flour was used for this purpose.

Towards the middle of August the enemy intensified the blockade, and though their intention appeared to be the reduction of the fortress by famine, their army in front of the place was steadily increasing in size. When, on 11th September, it was noticed that they had started the preparation of what appeared to be batteries, the Governor considered it imprudent to let them proceed any longer with impunity and active operations were decided

upon to commence the following day. The following is an extract from Sergeant Ancell's diary for 12th September :—

" A Council of war being held yesterday at the Convent it was resolved unanimously to commence a cannonade on the Spanish works ; and accordingly this morning we opened our batteries on the enemy, employing every piece of ordnance that could possibly bear upon them. An Officer's lady, whose curiosity had excited to our batteries, was encouraged to discharge the first gun ; and having taken a lighted match (with an intrepidity not peculiar to the sex) General Elliott pronounced in a true heroic style ' Britons strike home,' and immediately every battery and angle bellowed with rage, and vomited forth tremendous flames.

" At the first discharge our shot dropped short so that their advanced guards had time to escape to their lines and their precipitate retreat almost occasioned a general laugh, to view the Dons tumbling over another as they fled from the showers of shot. As I came up the street about two hours later, I could not but remark the timidity and fearful apprehension pictured on the countenance of the inhabitants, as they minutely expected a furious return from the enemy. The Jews and Jewesses exhibited the most descriptive amazement ; terror had taken such possession of their minds that they sought shelter at the southward, leaving their houses and effects exposed to dangers that must have ensued, had the enemy opened upon the town. About four in the afternoon we began to throw shells into their forts, and the enemy who had secured some indifferent retreat from our shot, now found themselves most inconveniently annoyed, as we after perceived that their guards and parties were thrown into disorder."

The firing having been started was maintained from day to day whenever the enemy working parties offered suitable targets, but at present the reply of the Spaniards was weak and only occasional rounds were fired at the defences of the Rock.

Towards the end of the year (1779) the situation of the garrison was becoming alarming. There was a shortage of almost everything and the price of food was rising daily. It was about this period that the Governor made a trial as to what quantity of rice would suffice a single person for twenty-four hours, and actually himself lived eight days on four ounces of rice a day.

Though occasional ships with provisions managed to evade the Spaniards and slip into the harbour, the blockade was generally effective and the few supplies received had little effect on the general situation. However, on 15th January, a brig, flying the British flag, appeared in the offing and though chased by several Spanish ships, managed to reach her anchorage under the walls. The whole garrison was assembled to welcome her in ; but words are insufficient to describe their transports on being informed that she was one of a large convoy under Admiral Rodney approaching to their relief. She brought, however, the disquieting news that the convoy had met a Spanish

fleet off Cadiz, but had no knowledge of the result of the action. The following day, however, a further brig arrived laden with flour and bringing the joyful news that not only had Admiral Rodney been victorious at the famous "Moonlight Battle" off Cape St. Vincent, but ten days earlier had captured fifteen Spanish merchantmen fully laden. There was also additional good news, that not only were supplies and stores being brought, but also a whole regiment, the 73rd Foot (later the 71st), to reinforce the garrison. By the 29th the whole convoy had been safely brought into harbour.

The whole state of the garrison was now altered, spirits once more were high, the stores and magazines were full, a new reinforcement had joined the garrison, who realized they were not being forgotten by the friends at home.

The siege, however, dragged on monotonously with food again gradually becoming more scarce, and in addition smallpox, scurvy and other diseases attacked the garrison. In spite of their illness, many of the men with scurvy carried on with their duties long

**Incidents
of the Siege.**

after they were unfit to do so, and it was not uncommon to see men supporting themselves to their posts on crutches and even then being able with difficulty to drag themselves along. It is not surprising that this state of affairs caused depression among the garrison, and a soldier of the 58th having been reported for saying "If the Spaniards come, damn me if I will not join them," the Governor considered that he must be mad and gave orders "for his head to be shaved, for him to be blistered and bled, kept on bread and water, to wear a tight waistcoat, and to be prayed for in church."

Drinkwater reports that about this time a singular method of hatching chickens was practised by the garrison and describes a form of incubator which proved most successful. He continues to describe how a capon was taught to rear them. "To reconcile him to his trust, the feathers were plucked from his belly and breast; he was then gently scourged with a bunch of nettles and placed upon the young hatch, whose downy warmth afforded such comfort to the bared and smarting parts that he from that day reared them up with the care and tenderness of a mother."

One day (6th May, 1780) the garrison were entertained by a field day held by the Spaniards to practise the assault of the garrison. It is described by Sergeant Ancell as follows:—

"This afternoon the Spanish army were arranged in two divisions and about 4 o'clock began a sham fight similar to an attack upon the garrison. One division took post on the rising ground under the Queen's chair (supposed to be British), while the other division endeavoured to dislodge them, and take possession of their intrenchments; the fire was well supported on both sides for three hours, when the British forces were entirely routed. They had several field pieces and cannon with them. I assure you that the fight afforded great entertainment, and the army displayed some merit in their performance; they had been practising for several days. It is evident they mean to

familiarize their troops to the nature of an attack, so that they may be more expert when they make a regular assault."

In June, 1780, the enemy introduced a new form of attack and sent a number of fire-ships among the British shipping in the harbour. The fire-ships, however, were intercepted and towed away with great skill and gallantry by the men of the Navy, and were broken up to become a welcome addition to the fuel of the garrison.

"At one period the Governor was surprised to see certain of the soldiers constantly intoxicated, although the sale of spirituous liquors was strictly prohibited. It was at length remarked that the men were desirous to obtain water from one particular well, and considering there must be some reason for this performance, it was resolved to examine it, when the water was found to be impregnated with rum. This circumstance was accounted for by the fact that the Governor had received a quantity of rum, and for its greater security and to keep it from the knowledge of the soldiers, it was buried near the well, close to where a shell had exploded; this tearing up the earth and bursting the casks, caused the spirit to flow into the adjoining well."⁴

By the end of 1780 the provisions provided for the garrison by Admiral Rodney's fleet in January were once more running low, and in the early months of 1781 the situation had once more become serious. A soldier's ration for a week at this time consisted of only "5½ lbs. of bread, 13 oz. of salt beef, 18 oz. of pork (both of them almost in a state of putrescence), 2½ oz. of butter (which was little better than rancid congealed oil), 12 oz. of raisins, ½ pint of peas, 1 pint of beans, 1 pint of wheat (which they ground into flour for puddings), 4 oz. of rice and ¼ pint of oil; what then must have been the sufferings of those who had a family of small children to support out of this pittance?"⁵

In view of their state, the joy of the garrison can well be realized when on 2nd April a British cutter put in, with the news that she had left a fleet at anchor in Torbay about to sail for their relief. The entry in Sergeant Ancell's diary for 3rd April shows their state of mind. "We seem to be another people—no depression of spirits—every countenance is adorned with satisfactory smiles."

For the next few days excitement was intense awaiting the arrival of the relief, and on the night of 11th April a cutter sailing ahead of the fleet reported it was near at hand under the command of Admiral Darby. Sleep was instantly forgotten and the whole garrison turned its eyes to the sea. At day-break on the 12th they came into view from the signal house on the top of the Rock, but could not be seen from below on account of a thick mist. "As the sun, however, became more powerful the fog gradually rose, like the curtain of a vast theatre, discovering to the anxious garrison one of the most beautiful and pleasing scenes it is possible to conceive. The convoy, consisting of near a hundred vessels, were in a compact body, led by several men-of-war. Their

sails just enough filled for steerage, whilst the majority of line-of-battle ships lay to under the Barbary shore, having orders not to enter the bay lest the enemy should molest them with their fire-ships."⁸

"A shout of joy instantly ensued from every corner, battery and height."⁹

As the convoy approached the bay about fifteen Spanish gunboats advanced on them and opened a cannonade on the nearest ships ; a British line-of-battle ship and two frigates, however, soon put them to precipitate retreat.

Sergeant Ancell, who had evidently been writing his diary as he was watching the fleet come in, finishes with the sentence " One ship has just dropped anchor. A call to arms prevents my further writing ; the enemy have opened all their batteries on the town ; confusion and consternation are everywhere to be seen ; adieu dear brother, I must hasten to the alarm post."

**Intense
Bombardment
Opened.**

Information had been received some time previously that if the garrison was a second time relieved the Spaniards would bombard the town. The relief had proved that the Rock would never be captured by blockade alone and the Spaniards must now rely for any success on destruction and offensive action. From this date, therefore, the bombardment became intense, and was not directed only against the walls and batteries but also against the town and dwellings of the civilians. Sergeant Ancell gives a vivid description of the first day's bombardment. " When a few ships had entered the bay they opened with all their batteries with shot and shell on the town. The bombardment commenced when the inhabitants and soldiers were amusing themselves with the aspection of the shipping. This sudden alarm spread universal consternation and the joy produced by the arrival of the fleet was now turned to an indescribable sorrow. The soldiers hastened to their posts and the inhabitants to their houses, many of which were instantly in flames from the effect of the enemy shells. The obviousness of grief on their part is feelingly expressive. Their property consuming with rapidity—the uncertainty of self-preservation—the anxiety for their relatives—the loss of their valuables. The mangled spectacles of some already fallen from the cannonade impelled them to fly from such a scene of horror and they fled in crowds to the heights of the rock out of reach of the enemy's fire. Here appalled, they mingle together indiscriminately, within sight of their former dwellings, now in a state of incineration—shells explode over their heads, cries echo, and vivid flashes pierce the clouds of smoke, the thunder of the cannon reverberate dreadfully to their ears and every concussion renews their trepidations."

Shells were also directed against the shipping in the harbour, which caused some casualties but did little damage. Sergeant Ancell reports that " a shell which entered a house in Southport Street in the explosion blew a Genoese woman out of a window, but fortunately she only received a bruise by the fall."

He continues : " The town is deserted by all but the soldiery, who amidst

the roar of guns, mortars, howitzers and shells, are busy in retorting on the enemy the woes of war—one minute a shot batters a house about your ears, and the next a shell drops at your feet ; here you lie prostrate, waiting the mercy of the explosion ; if you escape unhurt you are perfectly stunned and almost suffocated with an intolerable stench of powder and sulphur."

The bombardment continued day after day with greater severity, and the response of the garrison was equally vigorous. One of the effects of the bombardment was to burn down some wine shops in the town and this disclosed large stocks of liquor. The merchants had been concealing their stores, to raise the prices, and the disclosure of this store enraged the soldiers against the merchants and much liquor was stolen. A large number of soldiers became intoxicated to such a degree that they died immediately, while others " were with difficulty recovered by oils and tobacco water." Discipline was overpowered and, regardless of punishment or the entreaties of their officers, they were guilty of many and great excesses. This lack of discipline led to stern measures of repression, and there is a record that on 5th May a soldier of the 58th was executed for plundering, at the place where the crime was committed, with a label on his breast denoting the same. He was left hanging till sunset. It is also reported that three soldiers' wives were marched through the camp and whipped by the hangman for buying stolen goods.

From this time also attempts at desertion increased in number, but the unfortunates who made the experiment were seldom successful. On 29th May, 1782, three men of the 58th tried to escape from the Sugar Loaf and in so doing fell from a precipice and were dashed to pieces. They had procured a rope and fastened it to a cleft in the rock, but it was not of sufficient length to reach the bottom.

Day by day the shelling continued and the casualty list grew steadily, though there were marvellous escapes. On 6th August, 1781, " A shell fell into a tent occupied by the two men of the 58th. They were not awakened by the fall, but a Sergeant in an adjacent tent heard it and ran nearly 40 yards to a place of safety, when he recollected the situation of his friends. Thinking the shell had fallen blind he returned and awakened them ; both immediately arose and continued debating on their narrow escape when the shell exploded and forced them with great violence against the garden wall but miraculously did no further mischief than destroying everything in the tent."

Another day (21st May, 1781) the sentries at Land Point saw a Spaniard advancing to the works who, instead of answering when challenged, immediately dropped flat. Lieutenant Whetham of the 58th, the officer on duty, suspecting that he had come to reconnoitre, instantly, with the sergeant, went out to seize him, but, the man rising, he pursued him and was within a short distance of securing him when he fell into a shell hole.

When brisk firing was going on, one of two boys in the garrison who were possessed of great quickness of sight were always stationed with any large



SORTIE FROM GIBRALTAR, NIGHT OF 26th-27th NOVEMBER, 1781.

party of men, to warn them when the Spaniards fire was directed on them. Their sight was so good that they were able to see the enemy's shot almost the instant it quitted the gun. One day, one of the boys had been reproving the men for not attending to his warnings, and had just turned his head when he observed a well-directed shot approaching and instantly called out a warning ; no attention, however, was paid to his caution and the shot was so well aimed that it took off seven legs.

Captain Edward Burke, Adjutant of the 58th, had been appointed Town Major of Gibraltar on 29th July, 1779. On the evening of 18th September, 1781, he was sitting at table with two Majors of the 39th when a shell entered the house and struck Captain Burke in the thigh, severely wounding him and also wounding his two companions.

"The rubbish which fell from the ceiling extinguished the candle and the only light remaining was from the fuze of the shell. The two Majors in their wounded condition instantly rose to escape, when taking hold of Captain Burke, they found him in a state deprived of action or expression. Self-preservation became necessary (one minute longer delay would probably have terminated their existence) ; they instantly retreated in pain from the scene of misery, which they had scarce effected when the shell burst with a furious explosion, and tossed the Town Major from the place he had fallen to another part of the room ; he was soon after removed in a mangled and torn condition, which feelingly affected the soldiers, who carried him to the Naval Hospital, where he soon afterwards expired."⁶

Day by day the enemy's batteries were being brought nearer the town and Rock, and at last the situation was becoming so menacing that on 26th November General Elliott decided to make a sortie to destroy them. Accordingly he ordered a considerable detachment to assemble on the Red Sands at midnight with devils, fire faggots, working implements and other means of destruction. The attacking force was to be under the command of Brigadier-General Ross and was to consist of the 12th and Hardenburg's Regiments, with all the Light Infantry and Grenadiers of the garrison, and detachments of engineers, artillery and seamen. The 39th and 58th Regiments were to parade at the same hour on the Grand Parade to sustain the sortie should it be necessary.

The attack is described by Sergeant Ancell as follows :—

"At two o'clock, when the moon had set, the detachment assembled to storm the enemy's advanced works. The word 'Steady' was the counter-sign. The Spanish centinels, posted in the gardens, soon discovered the English troops advancing, upon which they fired their muskets to spread the alarm and then retreated. The British army in a spirited and intrepid manner rushed on, and after some opposition, gained possession of the Spanish works, which struck such panic to the enemy, that the greatest part stationed to defend the place fled with consternation to the lines, while the others fell from the fire of our musketry."

Certain parties were detailed to hold the trenches against counter-attack while the others carried out the demolitions. "The business now commenced, the workmen and seamen began with their tomahawks, devils (an inflammable composition bound in small bundles which after the bands of the fascines are cut, are stuck in between the openings) and warlike combustibles, to set the batteries on fire while the artillery spiked up ten mortars and 18 pieces of cannon. Thus successful the whole body gave three huzzas, which consequently must sensibly aggravate and vex the foe. We kept up a hot cannonade from the garrison upon their two forts to cover our men and prevent them sallying out. The enemy fired upon our detachment with round and grape, but their cannon, from want of being sufficiently depressed, had not the desired effect as most of the shot flew over our people's heads."

The detachment having carried out all that men could do and having completely destroyed many batteries and magazines, retreated to the garrison. The following day they were thanked in Garrison Orders, in the following words:—

"The bravery and conduct of the whole detachment, officers, seamen and soldiers, on this glorious occasion, surpasses the Governor's utmost acknowledgements."

Spanish attempts to starve the garrison into submission had failed, bombardment had also failed, the sortie by the garrison in November, 1781, had shattered their hopes of a successful land attack, and the British seemed as secure at Gibraltar as they had been at the commencement of the siege three years ago. There remained one last hope—an attack from the sea. In April news reached Gibraltar that a large fleet of floating batteries was being prepared at Cadiz, lined with cork and rendered shell proof; other ships could be seen throughout the summer being prepared in a similar way.

**The Attack
by Sea.**

This new threat necessitated counter-measures, and the scheme was devised of firing red-hot shot at the enemy's ships to set them on fire. A trial of the experiment was made early in July, by firing at a vessel wrecked on the coast, which was most successful, as also was a further trial of the shot against the enemy's land batteries. Accordingly grates for heating the shot were distributed at the different batteries and stores of fuel collected.

Day by day the bombardment intensified, and early in September it was realized that the attack could not be far distant. Casualties steadily increased, and among others Ensign Gordon of the 58th was killed on 8th September.

At last, on 13th September in the early morning, the whole Spanish fleet could be seen on the move and it was realized by all that the great attack was about to be launched. Crowds of spectators could be seen on every eminence inside the Spanish lines, and on the shore, who had been invited to see the capture of the Rock which had so long defied their army and fleet. The British garrison at once stood to their posts and watched the fleet approach.



ATTACK ON GIBRALTAR, 14th SEPTEMBER, 1782.

From a coloured engraving of a picture by Richard Paton, engraved by John Boydell, Cheapside, London, 1794.)

Presented to the History by The Regimental Dinner Club.

So certain were the Spaniards of success that the officers wore a key tied by a ribbon round their necks. This key is now worn by every soldier of The Northamptonshire Regiment in his cap badge.

At nine o'clock the Spanish ships reached their stations and a tremendous cannonade was opened, the Spanish land batteries joining in to assist their ships. The floating batteries, which were completely roofed in, so that no Spaniard was visible, at first seemed impervious to our shot. "Our astonishment," says Sergeant Ancell, "was raised to highest pitch, on beholding our heaviest shot rebound from their sides, and an unusual anxiety seemed to possess the minds of all ranks, when a thirteen inch shell, which dropped on the roof of the Admiral's ship, resisted penetration." The fires for heating the shot had been kindled when the action commenced and by 12 o'clock the first supplies of red-hot shot were available and "the exertions of the men employed at the guns became more animated."

Throughout the day the cannonade continued, and the issue seemed still in doubt in the evening, when clouds of smoke were seen to be issuing from the Spanish flagship. The spirits of the defenders were revived by the prospect of success and the hope that the hot shot was at last taking effect, and a fire more tremendous, if possible, than before was directed from the garrison. In a short time a second ship was seen to be on fire. Throughout the night the battle continued. By midnight the Spanish flagship was completely in flames, and by two in the morning was a continued blaze from stern to stern. By the light of the flames our artillery was able to fire all night with the greatest precision, and by four in the morning six other ships were also burning.

The fire from the enemy's ships had now ceased, and those of the crews who were able were escaping from their doomed and burning vessels, which one by one exploded and sank. Over 350 of the Spaniards were saved and taken prisoners by the naval detachment in Gibraltar which put out boats as soon as it was possible to do so. The Spanish losses in killed, drowned and wounded must have been very heavy, while those of the British garrison amounted only to one officer and fifteen other ranks killed, and five officers and sixty-three other ranks wounded. Of these the losses sustained by the 58th were one other rank killed, and Lieutenant Whetham (who had permission to act as artillery officer) and four rank and file wounded.

It is of interest that among the Spanish prisoners were fifty-nine Walloons who elected to join the British and were embodied in those corps who chose to receive them. The 39th and 58th entertained ten each, the remainder being incorporated with the Corsican company.

The red-hot shot had proved so successful that kilns were now erected at various positions in the garrison, where a number of shot were kept continually heated ready for any surprise attack. They were not, however, to be required, for the Spaniards

Relief by
Lord Howe,
18th October,
1782.

never again risked a mass attack by sea. The land bombardment, however, still continued, though with less vigour than formerly. The prisoners captured brought the good news that a British fleet was preparing at home under Admiral Lord Howe, the brother of Colonel Howe who had commanded the 58th at Quebec, once more to relieve the garrison. It was not, however, until October 11th that Lord Howe appeared off the bay, and then with a fleet numerically inferior to that of the Spaniards and French. The wind being unfavourable, the British fleet was unable to make the harbour, and on the 13th the enemy's fleet put to sea to attack it. For many days no news of the action was heard, but ultimately it transpired that though it had been indecisive, the enemy had been driven to harbour at Cadiz. In the meantime, on the 18th two fresh regiments, the 26th and 59th, brought by Lord Howe for reinforcement of the garrison, had been landed.

February opened with an animated fire from the garrison, which was returned by the enemy, but on the 2nd of the month a letter was received from the Spanish Commander that the preliminaries of peace had been signed between Great Britain, France and Spain. Accordingly on 6th February all hostilities ceased, though the usual guards were maintained until official confirmation should come from England. For many days nothing was heard, but at last on 10th March the frigate *Thetis* arrived confirming the good news that peace was at last declared, and that Gibraltar was to remain in the possession of Great Britain. Calls and compliments were now exchanged between the respective commanders, and it is recorded that on 18th March the Duc de Crillon dined with General Elliott, and that on his return as he passed through the camp each regiment turned out without arms and gave him three cheers, which greatly surprised and pleased him.

At last the siege was over. General Elliott with his 5,000 men had succeeded in defending the fortress against nearly 100,000 supplied with an immense train of siege artillery for three and a half years. For their splendid courage during the defence, the Regiment was given the honour of wearing the badge of the Castle and Key and the name of Gibraltar with the words "Montis Insignia Calpe."

The successful defence had produced far more than a local effect on the war, for it had distracted the Spaniards from the Channel, which should have been the scene of their main venture. In 1779 and again in 1781 the French and Spaniards were in superior force in the Channel and seemed in a position to try an invasion of England. Each time one reason for the failure to take the chance was that the Spaniards were so set on taking Gibraltar that they preferred to continue the attempt by direct rather than by indirect means. In other words, the political objective distracted them from the strategical objective.

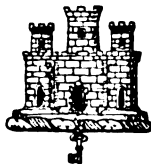
On St. George's Day (23rd April) a grand parade was held on the Red

Sands at which detachments from all the regiments in the garrison were assembled. At this parade messages of congratulation and thanks were read from the King and both Houses of Parliament. A grand *feu de joie* was then fired by the troops. This ceremony was followed by the presentation of the Knighthood of the Order of the Bath to General Elliott at the King's Bastion. The troops lined the streets and a procession was formed. Details of the procession are given by Drinkwater, and it is of interest that immediately before General Elliott was "Music—The 58th Regiment." Two other regiments also provided "music," the 12th at the head and the 56th at the rear of the column.

Early in 1784 the Regiment was relieved at Gibraltar, and returned to England. "Although the news of the destruction of the combined flotilla and the successful termination of the defence had been hailed in England with the most extravagant joy, it is curious to note how little attention the arrival of the defenders attracted. Beyond a line to say that such and such regiments from Gibraltar had landed at Portsmouth, the public prints of the day are silent on the subject." The soldiers were quickly forgotten.

On 22nd April, 1784, approval was given for the word "Gibraltar" to be placed on the Colours of the 58th, their grenadier and light infantry caps, and upon their accoutrements and drums, this being the first honour ever put on the Colours of any infantry regiment in the army. On 13th May, 1836, approval was further given in the *London Gazette* for the "Castle and Key" and the words "Montis Insignia Calpe" to be borne on the Colours. A letter was issued by the War Office in 1900 that the Castle of Gibraltar was represented by a different design in each regiment, and an approved design was issued taken from the seal of Gibraltar granted in 1502 and used subsequently upon the coinage.

The original warrant for the Arms of Gibraltar given by Ferdinand and Isabella runs as follows :—" . . . We give you as Arms an escutcheon on which two thirds in the upper part shall have a white field, in the said field set a Red Castle, underneath the said Castle as the other third of the escutcheon which must be a red field in which there must be a white line between the castle and the said red field, on this a golden key which shall be on that with a chain from the Castle as they are shown."



The Castle as depicted on the ancient seal of Gibraltar

CHAPTER VIII

(48TH, 1781-1797)

(58TH, 1784-1798)

THE 48TH IN SCOTLAND AND IRELAND (1781-1788)—THE 58TH AT HOME (1784-1793)—AYTOUN'S DIARY—THE HON. A. WELLESLEY SERVES IN 58TH—THE FRENCH REVOLUTION (1789)—SITUATION IN THE WEST INDIES—ATTACK ON MARTINIQUE (1793)—48TH IN ENGLAND AND JERSEY (1794-1795)—MARTINIQUE 1794 (58TH)—ST. LUCIA, GUADELOUPE AND GRENADA—58TH IN ENGLAND (1795-1798)—48TH RETURN TO THE WEST INDIES (1795)—ST. LUCIA (1796-1797).

(See Maps, pages 82 and 86.)

DURING the crisis of the Siege of Gibraltar, the remnant of the 48th had been doing their best to refill their depleted ranks, a difficult process when the competition for recruits was so great. In 1781 the Regiment moved from Northumberland into Scotland, headquarters being established at Stirling, with detachments at Glasgow, Alloa and Kilmarnock.

**The 48th in
Scotland and
Ireland
(1781-1788).**

Whilst at Glasgow one of the band was inhumanely murdered by a party of sailors. The enraged soldiers paraded the streets, threatening to retaliate on all they met, "but were restrained from acts of violence by the authority of their officers."

New Colours were also presented in 1781, presumably to replace those captured in the West Indies in 1778 and 1779.

On 10th October, 1783, the Regiment left for Ireland.¹ The establishment since arrival in England had been reduced from ten to eight companies,² a total of 26 officers and 445 rank and file.

On the death of General Sorrell in 1783, Lieutenant-General Robert Skene³ was appointed to the command of the 48th. Having held command only four years, General Skene died, and in his place was appointed on 23rd May, 1787, Major-General Patrick Tonyn,⁴ who remained in command of the Regiment until his death at the end of 1804.

The 48th Regiment remained in Ireland for five years, when they embarked once more for the West Indies.

Early in 1784 the 58th had been relieved at Gibraltar, and returned to England, being quartered successively at Guildford, Daventry and Liverpool. In May the following year (1785) they moved to Edinburgh, and the following July (1786) to Whitehaven, with detachments at the Isle of Man.

**58th at Home
(1784-1798).**

We have a sidelight on the Regiment from the diary of a soldier, James

Aytoun, who enlisted into the Regiment on 14th January, 1786, at Edinburgh Castle.⁴ He was then about eighteen years old, raw from the country, and with little knowledge of the world. "It was Lieutenant-Colonel Cochrane that Passed me," he says. "He Looked at Me Through a Glass." We have already shown the importance Cochrane paid to the enlistment of good recruits only, and can imagine the feelings of this young soldier on being quizzed by his future commanding officer. This recruit, on joining, received one and a half guineas as bounty; and as he had plenty of shirts, the Quarter-master-Sergeant bought for him, out of the bounty, only two more at five shillings a piece, with some good white stockings.

Six months later the Regiment left Edinburgh for Ireland. "It was a warm day and I was overladen"—with six shirts, three pairs of stockings, two of shoes, two of gaiters, two of breeches, an extra waistcoat, a red jacket, and a complete regimental suit besides, with arms, accoutrements and ammunition. Doubtless a good load for a young soldier, but the infantry are overloaded almost by tradition.

On the march the Battalion passed through Glasgow, where the weavers were generous, and filled the men "drunk as pipers," in spite of which (let us be charitable) young Aytoun was taken ill with the fever and ague, and was under the necessity of paying threepence a day to an honest Highland lad who was a deserter suffering the custody of the rearguard, for carrying his pack. The Regiment embarked at Port Patrick for Belfast, and after a few rests at places here and there settled at Drogheda.⁵

Aytoun's diary continues: "When in Drogheda we were commanded by Major Brawen. He was the junior Field Officer in the Regiment. There were eight companies in the Regiment and all the eight companies were commanded by Field Officers, and all these Field Officers were continually on leave of absence, except for Major Brawen, who, so long as I was in the Regiment, continued in the Command excepting once a year in June, when Major Horsfell came to Drogheda to command the Regiment. At a Review, had the men known as little of their exercises as Major Horsfell, the Regiment would have been drilled by the General's orders; but the soldiers led the officers who depended implicitly on the right- or left-hand man of the company for direction and the manœuvres were so much in rotation that the men in the ranks knew when one manœuvre took place what was the next."

"Here I have to remark a practice at that time in the army, viz., an officer having command of a Regiment contrived to put his sons on the muster roll as Sergeants, Corporals or Privates although not three feet high. This accounts for Major Brawen being the only Field Officer who was continually with the Regiment, because had he been under the immediate command of a senior Field Officer, he could not have had baby sergeants, corporals and privates in the muster rolls of the Regiment. He had a large family and I believe nothing to depend on but his and his children's pay. He was something of an eccentric character—a keen disciplinarian."

Unfortunately for the Regiment, Private Aytoun volunteered for service abroad with the 9th Foot two years after his enlistment, and the Regimental Historian is therefore robbed of a delightful diarist. (If only officers and men would keep diaries how much easier the task of the historian would be !)

It was while stationed at Youghal, on 30th June, 1791, that the Hon. Arthur Wellesley, who afterwards became the Duke of Wellington, obtained his company in the 58th. The appointment is contained in the *London Gazette* of 1st October, 1791, which shows that Captain William McMyne was promoted Major, to fill a vacancy caused by the resignation of Major Bromhead, and "Lieutenant Honble. A. Wellesley from 12th Dragoons to be Captain vice McMyne." He was twenty-three years old at the time and had five years' military service. His total service in the 58th amounted to one year four months, most of which was spent on recruiting duty in Dublin. He was then transferred to the 18th Light Dragoons (*vide London Gazette* of 29th December, 1792).

The Regiment remained in Ireland* for six years until July, 1793, when they returned to England and were stationed at Plymouth.

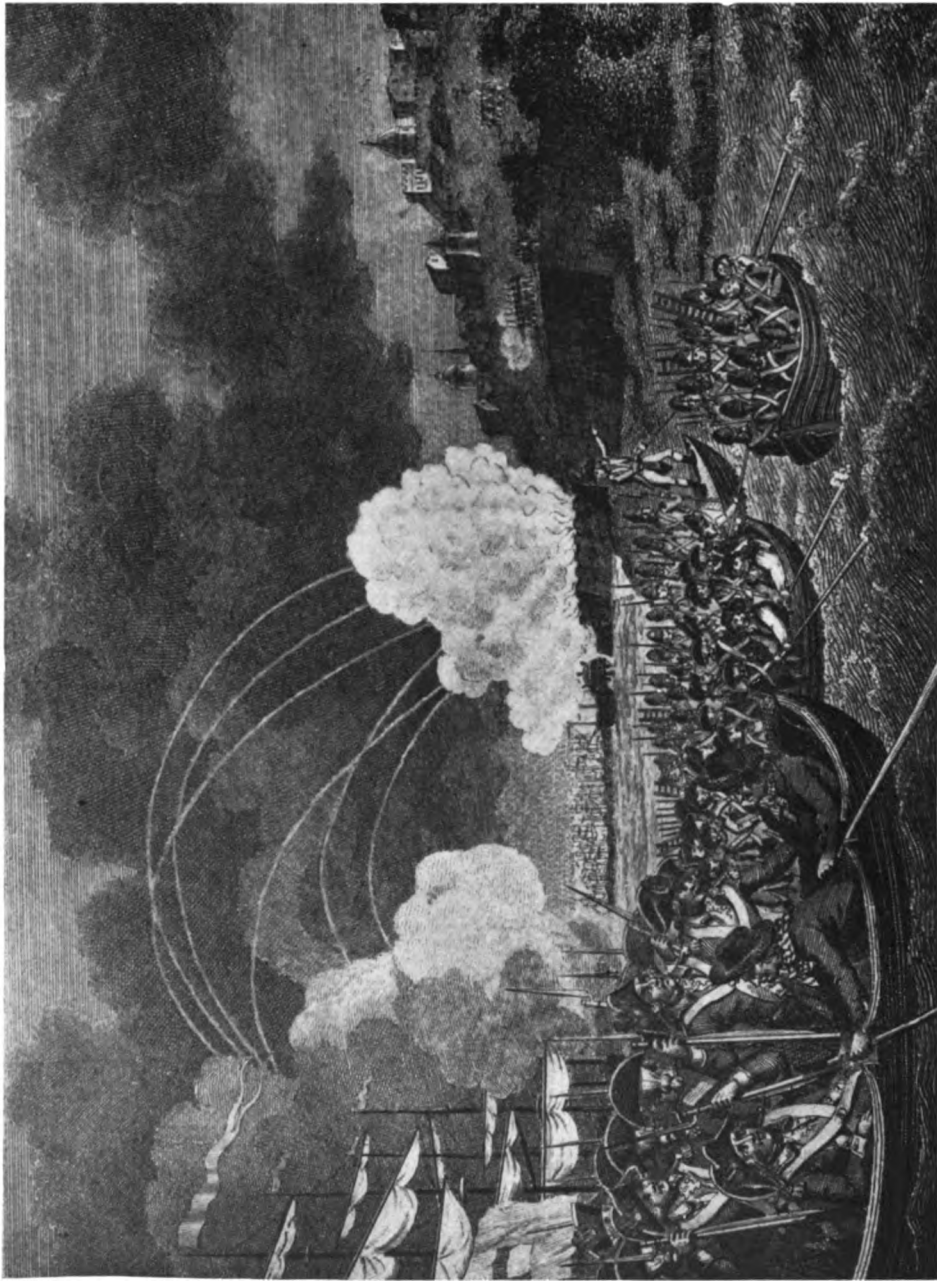
In 1789 Europe was startled by the outbreak of the French Revolution.

The French Revolution.

At first the attitude of England was to stand aside and let France work out her own salvation, and even on the declaration of war by France on Austria in April, 1792, England maintained a neutral attitude. Before long, however, the growth of revolutionary violence in France, as manifested in the attack on the Tuileries, the September massacres, and the proclamation of the Republic, alienated English opinion, and when in November the French proceeded to overrun the Austrian Netherlands, to throw the Scheldt open to commerce in defiance of the treaties which had closed it for the benefit of the Dutch, and to promise assistance to all nations seeking to recover their liberties, even Pitt could not but recognize that the country's vital interests were threatened by French aggression.

It was, however, by France that war was declared on England and Holland on 1st February, 1793, ten days after the execution of King Louis XVI, and shortly afterwards Spain and Sardinia were added to the anti-French alliance, commonly called the First Coalition. The war was famous particularly for the rise of Napoleon, and on land France was at first everywhere successful ; at sea only did she suffer defeat.

To make the best use of our supremacy at sea, Pitt, the Prime Minister, decided to strike at France through her overseas possessions. Just as during the Seven Years' War Canada had been won for the Empire, so Pitt planned to gain the wealth of the sugar islands, where great fortunes were to be made. He had, however, no knowledge of the local conditions. The soldiers, as they arrived, were swept off in thousands by disease. In addition, the slaves in the islands were being rapidly increased and were becoming more and more unmanageable, being stirred up by French revolutionary propaganda and



MARTINIQUE, 1794.

Reproduced by courtesy of The Welch Regiment.

agitators ; thus each new island captured carried with it as a legacy the responsibility for the maintenance of order and a consequent garrison of troops.

We have already outlined in Chapter VI the strategy of the West Indies, and the necessity of garrisoning the eastward or windward islands in order to secure the larger islands more to the west. In the eastern islands England still held as her main bases Barbados and Antigua, while Martinique, St. Lucia and Guadeloupe served a similar purpose for the French. For the next ten years a fluctuating struggle was carried on between England and France in the West Indies ; islands were captured and recaptured with the greatest regularity, with insurrections of the negroes occurring from time to time to break the monotony. During the period many expeditions left England, captured a few islands, were ravaged by disease and returned as skeleton units to enlist, probably only to return a few years later to repeat the process.

To cover the campaign as a whole would be impossible in the short space available, and we must therefore deal only with those incidents in which the 48th and 58th played a part.

The declaration of war found the 48th serving in the West Indies. Sailing from Monkstown in Ireland on 10th January, 1788, they had arrived at Barbados on 1st April and at Antigua on the 19th. Here they remained for five years, finding detachments of two companies at Montserrat. In January, 1793, they had moved to St. Vincent's, providing detachments throughout the island to preserve order. In May an expedition was planned under General Bruce for the capture of Martinique. His force consisted of some eleven hundred men formed from the flank companies of the 9th, 15th, 21st, 45th, 48th, 4/60th and 67th Regiments, and the task was considered an easy one in view of the promised assistance of the French Royalists on the island. The force landed at Case Navifre on 16th June, but a panic which set in among the Royalist levies decided Bruce that it was hopeless to trust them and he returned to Barbados.

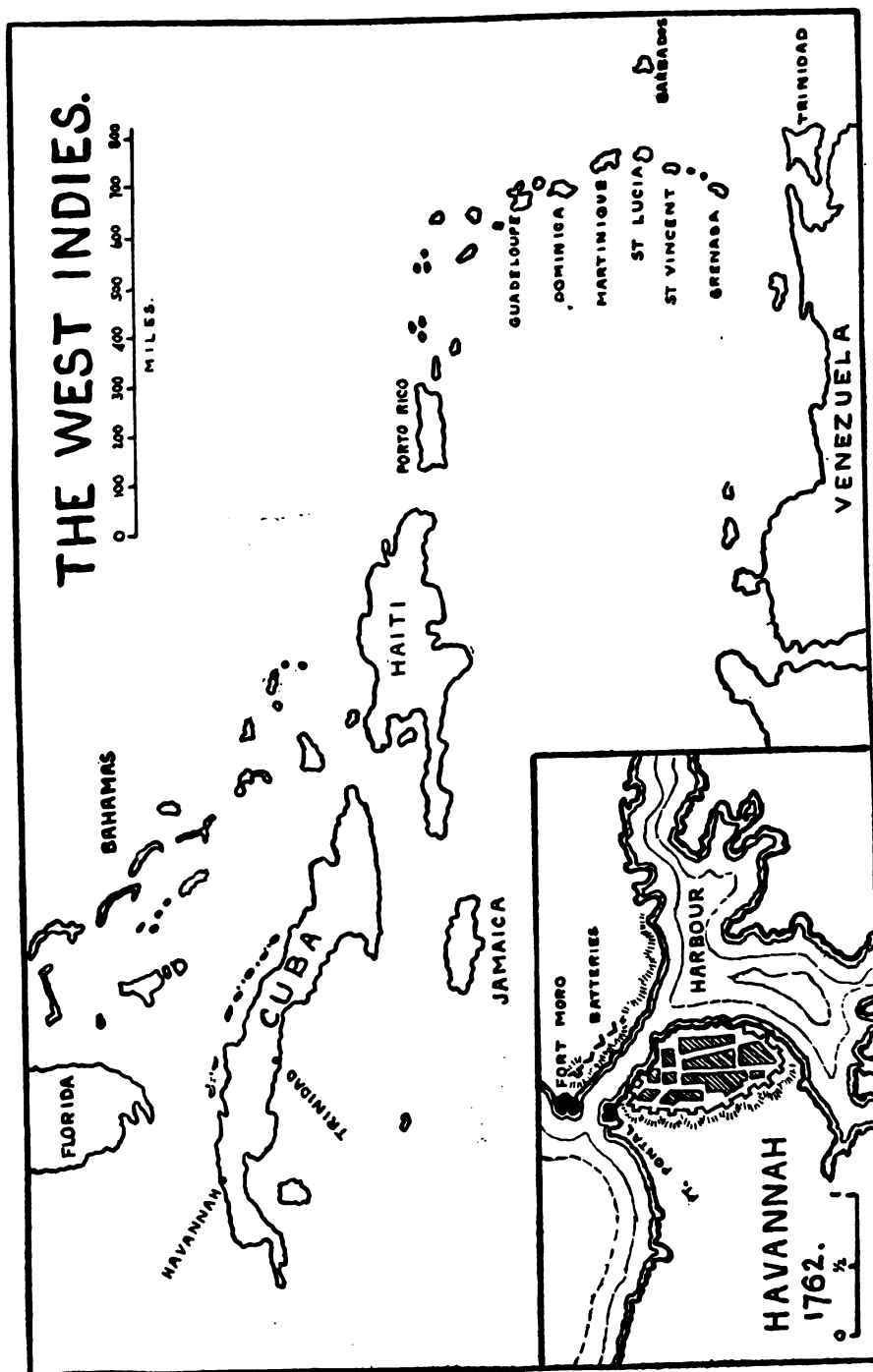
Here they remained until October, 1794, when the privates of the 48th were drafted to other corps serving in the West Indies, chiefly the 55th, and the cadre of the Regiment returned to England, landing at Plymouth. Here the Regiment was filled up with drafts from the 120th Regiment and moved to Jersey for six weeks, returning via Plymouth to Southampton.

The failure of the attack on Martinique in 1793 decided the authorities at home that reinforcements were essential if successes were to be gained in the West Indies, and an expeditionary force, including the 58th, was collected in the south of Ireland under Lieutenant-General Sir Charles Grey. This officer had been

**The Capture of
Martinique
(58th), 1794.**

known in the American War of Independence as the " no flint General " from his habit of making surprise attacks with the bayonet, after removing the flints from the soldiers' muskets as an effectual safeguard against firing.

G



In November, 1793, the convoy sailed from Cork, but very rough weather was encountered, and it was not until 10th January, 1794, that the force assembled at their rendezvous in Carlisle Bay, Barbados. Once more the objective was Martinique, the strongest of the French possessions, which was garrisoned by six thousand men under the French General Rochambeau.

Sir Charles Grey's force was about seven thousand strong and contained three brigades each of three battalions, and in addition three grenadier battalions and three light infantry battalions formed of the flank companies of his own and other regiments.⁷ It was escorted by a powerful squadron under Sir John Jervis, afterwards Lord St. Vincent.

On 3rd February the force sailed from Barbados for Martinique. Sir Charles Grey knew that the French garrison had been dangerously dispersed, and decided to land his force at three different points on the island—St. Pierre (in the north-west), Galion Bay (in the east), and Trois Rivières (in the south). All three landings were successfully carried out on the 5th, 6th and 8th of February. Whyte's Brigade (including the 58th) was responsible for the landing at Trois Rivières, and immediately moved northwards towards Fort Royal Bay. By 9th February the troops came into view of Fort Bourbon, the centre of the defences covering Fort Royal itself. On 11th February, Pigeon Island, which governed the entrance to Fort Royal Harbour, was captured and our fleet sailed into the bay.

All that now remained was the capture of the defences of Fort Royal, the capital of the island. The French had taken up a strong position on Mount Sourier to the north of the town, and this position was captured on 18th February by the third grenadier battalion and two of the light infantry battalions. Forts Bourbon and St. Louis were the next objectives, and their capture necessitated the construction of batteries. It is reported that the sailors of the fleet were landed and performed invaluable work in making roads and dragging heavy guns to the hilltops selected as their positions. "Among the many compliments paid to the seamen none pleased them so much as a heavy battery appointed solely for them where they used to relieve one another by turns, without even an additional allowance of grog as an encouragement."

On 7th March the batteries opened fire. The French garrisons of the two forts made a stout defence, but on 20th March Fort Louis was attacked by the boats of the fleet and carried by escalade by the sailors, headed by the gallant Captain Faulkener. The town of Fort Royal was captured at the same time by two of the flank battalions.

Seeing the loss of the town, with all his stores and supplies, his garrison reduced and having no hope of relief, General de Rochambeau capitulated on 23rd March. The garrison of Fort Bourbon had held out till the end, and in consideration of its brave defence was allowed the full honours of war and sent to France on the one condition of not serving again during the war.

The capture of the island had cost the British in casualties 89 killed and 236 wounded. To commemorate the capture the 58th were allowed to bear on their Colours the honour " Martinique, 1794."

After the capture, the 58th were left with the 15th, 39th, 56th, 64th, and 70th, under General Prescott, to garrison Martinique, while **St. Lucia, Guadeloupe and Grenada.** General Grey, with the 6th, 9th, 43rd and the flank battalions, proceeded to the capture of St. Lucia. Landings were effected on 1st April, 1794. On the 3rd the enemy's outposts were carried, and the next day Morne Fortuné surrendered, the island being subjugated without the loss of a single man. French resistance in the Windward Islands was now broken, and the island of Guadeloupe was captured a few days later.

On the departure of the army for St. Lucia, General Prescott distributed his six regiments throughout the island, the 58th with the 70th forming the garrison of Fort Bourbon, which had been renamed Fort George. The health of the garrison now gave cause for serious alarm, and during the months of April, May and June an epidemic of yellow fever raged throughout the islands, causing appalling loss of life, and it is estimated that of the seven thousand men who sailed from Barbados with General Grey, not less than five thousand perished during 1794 alone.

Ten officers^s of the 58th, including Lieutenant-Colonel R. Stewart, were among those who died of the disease.

We now seemed to have obtained complete control of the West Indies, and on 20th May, 1794, the thanks of both Houses of Parliament were sent to General Grey and his troops, and orders were given for the garrisons of the islands to be reduced to a minimum, though this had already been done by disease. Unfortunately, the home authorities had not realized that a powerful French squadron had slipped out of Rochefort in April and was well on its way to the West Indies.

In June the French squadron arrived, succeeding in recapturing Guadeloupe, but General Grey at once returned to the island and regained it for the British. During these operations, in which the flank companies of the 58th were employed, Captain C. Morrison of the 58th lost his life, and Willyams reports: " He was killed by a musket ball through his head as he was leading his men on to the attack; he fell regretted by all who knew him, being an accomplished, able and brave man. The Commander-in-Chief, who knew his worth, paid the tribute of applause to his memory; and the Admiral when he heard of his fall exclaimed, ' He has left few equals behind him! '."

Lieutenant A. Hennis of the 58th was also killed during the expedition.

Later in the year (1794) the 58th proceeded to Grenada, under Lieutenant-Colonel W. Houston, where they remained until May, 1795.

So terrible had been the yellow-fever epidemic, that a year in the West Indies had reduced the 58th to a skeleton quite unfit for service, and on 1st May,

1795, they embarked from Grenada for home, arriving at Gosport the following July.

During the next few years they were stationed at Farnham, Beverley, Chatham, Bath, Cirencester, Isle of Wight, Poole, Barnstaple and Plymouth.

**58th in England
(1795-1798).**

In February, 1797, the extraordinary news was received that an invading force of 1,200 men in three French frigates was about to land at Ilfracombe, then only a small village, and had already attempted to destroy the shipping in the haven. To meet this threat the 58th made a hurried move to North Devon, but before either the 58th or the North Devon Volunteers could reach Ilfracombe, the force had sailed away to the north.

The enemy force turned out to be a gang of ruffians, dressed in uniform, and sent out by the French Directory to burn Bristol, raise insurrection and make trouble generally. Ultimately they landed at Fishguard, where they were overawed by the Pembrokeshire Yeomanry and other land levies and "by the red cloaks of the Welsh women who crowned the surrounding hills to witness so interesting a spectacle,"* and at once laid down their arms.

In June, 1797, the 58th embarked for Jersey, where they remained with headquarters at St. Heliers until July, 1798, when they returned to Portsmouth.

In December, 1794, Guadeloupe was once more recaptured by the French ; St. Lucia also fell in June, 1795, but we still held Martinique.

**St. Lucia (48th),
1796.**

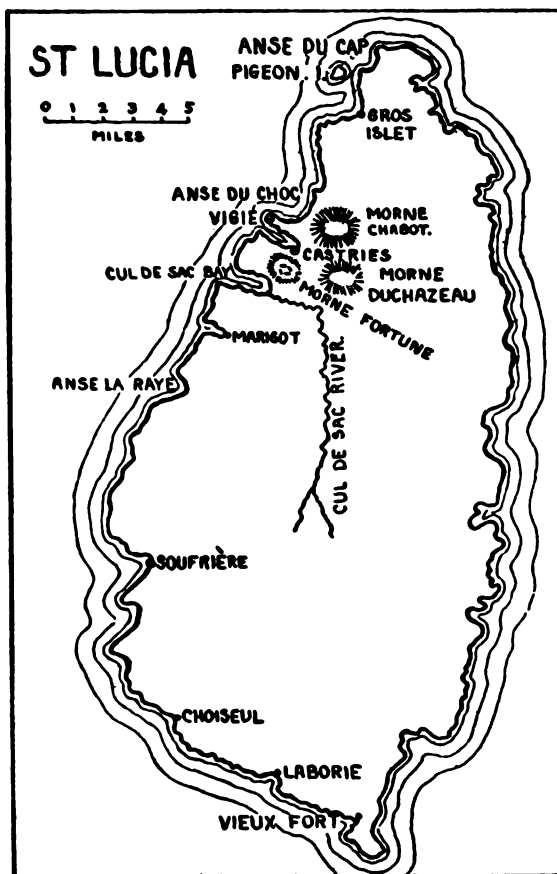
The garrisons, however, of all the West Indian Islands were sadly depleted by sickness ; battalions were such only in name, their average strength being less than one hundred men. To make matters worse, revolts of negroes were taking place in all the islands and the small forces available were quite inadequate to control the bands of brigands which roamed the islands. There were constant threats also of French attacks. At last in March, 1795, a convoy of five battalions arrived at Barbados, followed by four more battalions in September.

This force was still quite inadequate to deal with the situation, and it was once more the turn of the 48th to sail to the West Indies, whence they had returned barely a year before.

The Government had at last realized that a really large force was essential to restore our position. A force of sixteen battalions,¹⁰ including the 48th, was therefore collected, and placed under the command of Sir Ralph Abercromby.

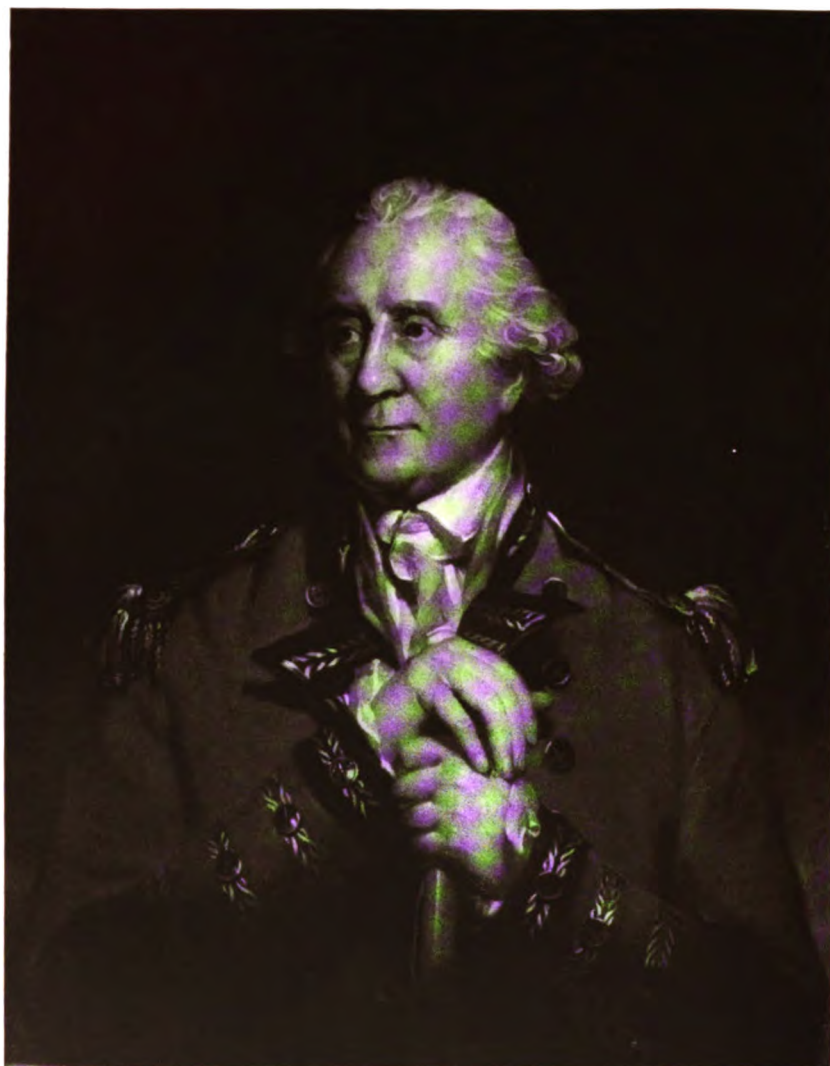
On 16th November, 1795, the transports sailed from Portsmouth under convoy of a squadron commanded by Admiral Christian. "On the 18th they were off Weymouth, standing down channel with a light breeze and every stitch of canvas set, a sight so beautiful that thousands stood watching it from the shore. On the same afternoon the wind changed to the south-west, freshening continually until at night it attained to the force of a hurricane. The men-of-war took shelter at Portland and many other vessels at Weymouth ;

but many more, overladen or ill-handled, were driven ashore by the storm, and several were lost with all hands. For a week the shore from Portland to Abbotsbury was strewn with corpses, of which very many were those of soldiers, and the convoy put back to Portsmouth having suffered much damage."*



Once again, on 3rd December the fleet put to sea, but was again dispersed by a gale in all directions; some ships returned to England, others reached Gibraltar, and more were captured by the French. A few ships even reached the West Indies, including two companies of the 48th under Captain Airey. A final attempt was made at the end of February, 1796, when the fleet once more sailed from Portsmouth and this time succeeded in reaching the West Indies during April, too late to save many of the islands.

The task on which the 48th was employed first was the recapture of St. Lucia. A considerable force was concentrated by Abercromby in St. Ann's



MAJOR-GENERAL PATRICK TONYN.

Colonel of the 48th Foot, 23rd May, 1787, to 31st December, 1804.

(From the painting by M. A. Shee, Esq., R.A.)

By courtesy of Thomas H. Parker, Ltd., Berkeley Square, W.1.

Bay at Martinique, where it anchored on the evening of 23rd April, 1796. The French main strength was concentrated about Castries, the capital of the island, and to the south of the town they had a strong redoubt on the heights of Morne Fortuné. The town was protected by further works on Morne Chabot to the north and on Morne Duchazeau to the south-west. In order to disperse the defenders of the island, Abercromby decided to land in three separate places—the Anse du Cap at the north of the island, eight miles from Castries ; the Anse du Choc, five miles farther south ; and the Anse la Raye, six miles to the south of the town.

At daybreak on 26th April the landings were made, the 48th being at the Anse du Cap with the 14th, 42nd Highlanders and a battalion of grenadiers under Brigadier-General John Moore. The 14th and 42nd were first ashore and were quickly supported by the 48th and grenadiers. The skirmishers were engaged all day with small parties of the enemy, but no serious fighting occurred. Early the following morning Moore moved southwards down the coast ; and the enemy defending the Anse du Choc, finding their batteries taken in the rear, at once abandoned them. A second division of troops was disembarked, and the same evening an advance was made on Morne Chabot which overlooked the town from the north.

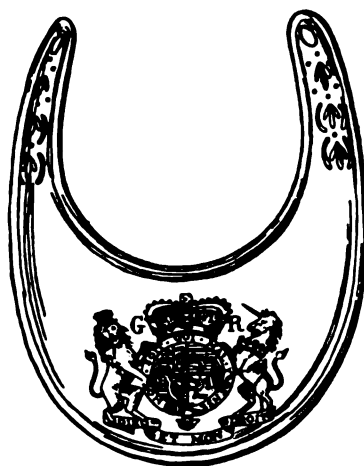
Starting at midnight, the two divisions made a converging attack on Morne Chabot on the morning of 28th April. Moore's column arrived first, and he saw how the capture of Morne Duchazeau to the south would help his operations. This height he captured, leaving the 48th and 53rd to watch the enemy on Morne Chabot, which was next captured. The 48th were supporting this attack and lost in killed and wounded thirty men.

The third division was now landed at Anse la Raye and advanced on Castries from the south. Though the town was completely invested, the capture of the redoubt on Morne Fortuné was essential to open the harbour for the fleet. Batteries were opened on Morne Duchazeau and on 24th May General Moore at the head of the 27th stormed a *flèche* which formed the principal outwork of Morne Fortuné and beat off two determined efforts of the French to recapture it. The same evening the enemy sent out a flag of truce, and on the following day a capitulation was signed and the garrison marched out and laid down their arms. St. Lucia was ours once again, but its capture had cost us five hundred men.

A force of four thousand men, including the 31st, 44th, 48th and 55th Regiments, under Brigadier-General (afterwards Sir John) Moore, was detailed to occupy the island. The possession of the island was not destined to be quiet and inactive ; small bodies of French, who had deserted from the different fortresses at their capitulation, withdrew into the interior and joined the runaway slaves. Taking advantage of the impenetrable nature of the country, they formed themselves into bands for the purpose of molesting the British and plundering the planters and other residents on the island.

Brigadier-General Moore accordingly took the field and penetrated with his force into the wildest quarters of the mountains in order to eradicate these predatory bands.

In addition to this harassing duty, the garrison suffered intensely from sickness. Yellow fever once more broke out and the hardships were further aggravated by the use of salt provisions and the absence of tents. Here the 48th remained until August, 1797, and so dreadful had been the effects of the climate that when ordered to give over the remaining men to the 87th Regiment there were not more than fifty ; yet only eighteen months had elapsed since they had embarked 847 strong from England.



Gorget . circa 1800.

CHAPTER IX

(58TH, 1798-1802)

NAPOLÉON AND THE MEDITERRANEAN—CAPTURE OF MINORCA (1798)—EXPEDITION TO CADIZ (1800)—EXPEDITION TO EGYPT (1800)—MARMORICE BAY—THE LANDING AT ABOUKIR BAY—BATTLE OF MANDORA—BATTLE OF ALEXANDRIA—ONE HUNDRED YEARS LATER—CAPTURE OF ROSETTA—FALL OF CAIRO—CAPTURE OF ALEXANDRIA—THE SPHINX.

(See Map, page 93.)

By the time the two regiments escaped from the West Indies and returned home, the situation in Europe had changed completely. While we were throwing away lives in the West Indies the First Coalition had been shattered in 1795 by the defection of Spain and Prussia and the conquest of Holland. In 1796 Sardinia had to surrender, and in 1797 Austria followed suit, leaving us face to face with a victorious France. Napoleon now conceived the plan of striking at England's position in the East by an expedition to Egypt, and the Directory took up the scheme. This brought the Mediterranean back into the middle of the picture, for the Battle of Camperdown (October, 1797) had dissolved all danger in the North Sea and made it possible for England to reinforce the Mediterranean Squadron substantially, so that we could re-enter that sea from which we had withdrawn at the end of 1796 after Spain joined France against us. Thus it was not remarkable that, within a short time after returning home, both the 48th and 58th found their way to the Mediterranean.

The 58th were the first of the two battalions to arrive. Actually, after recruiting themselves nearly up to establishment, they were detailed for service in India, for which they sailed from Portsmouth under Lieutenant-Colonel W. Houston in September, 1798, along with the 42nd, but were diverted to Gibraltar on the way. Here an expedition, under General Sir Charles Stuart, was in preparation for the capture of Minorca from the Spaniards.

The situation had just been appreciably altered by the victory gained on 31st August by Admiral Nelson over the fleet which had escorted Napoleon to Egypt. The Battle of the Nile had not, indeed, prevented Napoleon from consolidating his position in Egypt; it had, however, cut him off from France and greatly encouraged the formation of the Second Coalition which came into being early in 1799.

The force under General Stuart for the capture of Minorca, consisting of the 28th, 42nd, 58th and 90th Regiments, sailed from Gibraltar on 24th October, reaching the island on 6th November.

**The Capture of
Minorca, 1798.**

They landed in the Bay of Adaya with little opposition, a force of two thousand of the enemy retiring after feeble resistance before

Stuart's First Division, consisting of eight hundred men. There were in the island two principal strongholds, Port Mahon in the south, and Ciudadella in the north; between them lay the mountains. Stuart first severed the communications between the two strongholds by occupying the passes, and then, hearing that the bulk of the garrison had moved to Ciudadella, he captured Mahon without opposition, opening the port to the Navy.

He then turned on Ciudadella, where the Spaniards had prepared an entrenched position before the town. The state of the road, and the multitude of small stone enclosures, rendered the progress of the force most difficult and slow. Little transport was available, and the few light pieces of artillery available were quite inadequate for an attack on a fortified town. On the 13th November he came before the enemy entrenchments, marching in numerous columns to make his force appear larger than was actually the case. The ruse succeeded, and the Spaniards, overawed by the apparent size of the force opposed to them, retired within the walls of the town.

The following day Stuart moved nearer the walls, and once more his judicious arrangements supplied the deficiency in troops and guns. He formed his small army on little eminences, which surrounded the garrison, leaving only a few light infantry concealed in the intervening hollows. By this disposition of his force, large fires being kept up at night, and the fires in the hollows being more numerous than those required for the number of troops engaged, the Spaniards believed they were surrounded by a force of ten thousand men. In addition, he threw up batteries facing the town, which he solemnly armed with his light guns as though they were siege pieces.

He then called upon the Spanish to parley, and they, thinking further resistance useless, surrendered. The Spanish garrison, consisting of three thousand seven hundred men, was allowed the honours of war and transhipped to Spain, while all booty not required for the equipment of the force was sold and the proceeds distributed among the troops. Thus Minorca became once more a British dependency without the loss of a man.

After the capture of the island the 58th remained as garrison of Fort Mahon, where they were joined in May, 1800, by the 48th. For the fourth time the two regiments were serving together, the previous occasions having been at Louisburg, Quebec and Martinique. The following year they were to meet once more at Malta.

Reinforcements had now arrived in the Mediterranean, which meant that troops were available for active operations. General
Expedition to Abercromby was therefore given instructions that the Govern-
Cadiz. ment's policy was the destruction of the Spanish naval forces at Ferrol, Vigo and Cadiz.

Abercromby sailed from Minorca on 31st August with a force of five thousand men, including the 58th. As there was insufficient water at Gibraltar at that time of year, the expedition was ordered to Tetuan, where it was

joined by a much larger force. Here a week was spent watering ; then followed contrary winds alternating with calms which further delayed the operations until October, just before the equinoctial gales were anticipated.

On 4th October the fleet at last anchored off Cadiz, where it was learnt that yellow fever in its most fatal form was raging, and it was unlikely that the British troops, if landed, would escape the pestilence. Added to this, the re-embarkation of the force would have presented great difficulties, and could not be guaranteed by the Navy on account of the approaching gales. These and other circumstances decided Abercromby to abandon the expedition, and the fleet returned to Gibraltar and proceeded thence once more to Minorca, where they arrived in November. Here the 58th remained only a few days before sailing for Malta.

As we have shown already, Napoleon had left in Egypt a French army of thirty thousand men, with, in addition, some fifteen thousand Copts, Greeks and Arabs. The British Government decided that it was essential that this army should be driven out, and Egypt wrested from the French. Three armies were to co-operate. The Turks were to march across the desert from Asia Minor ; a body of British troops, under Sir David Baird, was to be brought from India by the Red Sea ; and the main force, under Sir Ralph Abercromby, was to make a frontal attack from the Mediterranean shore.

It is with this latter force that our interest lies. It assembled at Malta in December, 1800, and was about fifteen thousand strong, the 58th forming part of the reserve under Major-General Sir John Moore, and being brigaded with the 23rd, 28th, 42nd, Corsican Rangers, and De Hompesch's Hussars, and a flank company of the 40th. Other regiments taking part in the expedition were the Guards, the 12th and 26th Dragoons, and the 1st (Royals), 2nd (Queen's), 8th, 13th, 18th, 30th, 44th, 50th, 54th, 79th, 89th, 90th and 92nd Regiments of Foot.

The departure was delayed for some days by adverse winds until 20th December, when the first division got under way, the second division putting to sea the following day. Their destination at first was the Bay of Marmorice, in the Gulf of Makoi, nearly opposite to the island of Rhodes on the southern face of Asia Minor. This bay is one of the finest natural harbours in the world, and had been selected at the instigation of the Turks so that effective arrangements for the co-operation of the two armies could be made.

By 1st January both divisions had arrived. From all accounts there was at the time much sickness in the army, which can be well understood, as they had now been at sea, often in bad weather, almost continuously since May, 1800. The sick were therefore landed and encamped, and the various regiments were also landed in succession and exercised in manœuvres while their ships were being cleansed. It was here on 9th February that they experienced a fearful storm ; incessant lightning, torrents of rain and hailstones as large

as walnuts levelled many of the tents. The wind had parted many vessels from their anchors and driven them ashore. This storm continued for two days and nights.

Particular attention was paid to the practice of landing from small boats in face of an enemy. This manœuvre was frequently carried out and repeated, until it was found that six thousand men could be landed in perfect order, and ready for immediate action, in twenty-three minutes.

The 58th, at this time, was commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel William Houston, and mustered about five hundred and fifty all ranks.¹

After six weeks at Marmorice, although arrangements for co-operation with the Turks were still not altogether satisfactory, General **The Landing at Aboukir Bay.** Abercromby decided to wait no longer. On 22nd February, 1801, the fleet sailed, but a few days later the wind increased to a gale, which blew with tremendous force on the 27th. The sea ran mountains high and the heaviness of the swell made the ships labour exceedingly, some being compelled to leave the fleet and take shelter under the island of Cyprus. On 1st March the fleet at last arrived in Aboukir Bay, but once again weather conditions were unfavourable, and for over a week contrary winds made any question of landing impossible.

The place selected for landing was the eastern front of the peninsula of Aboukir, in a bay measuring about two miles from north to south. Upon the northern horn of this bay stood the Castle of Aboukir, which enfiladed the northern portion of the beach, in the centre of which rose a high sandhill, with a confusion of lower sandhills to the south of it.

On 7th March the sea abated and the landing was decided upon for Sunday, 8th March. The troops selected for the enterprise were, from right to left, the 40th, 23rd, 28th, 42nd, 58th, Corsican Rangers, Coldstream Guards, Third Guards, Royals and 54th. The right of the attack was under the command of General Moore, the 58th being brigaded with the Corsican Rangers and 42nd under the immediate command of Brigadier-General Oakes.

At two in the morning a rocket was fired from the Admiral's ship, which was the sign for all the boats to repair to their appointed ships,² and on their arrival they were silently filled by the troops. Each flat-bottomed boat contained about fifty men, exclusive of the sailors employed in rowing. The soldiers were ordered to sit down in the bottom of the boats, holding their firelocks between their knees. A solemn silence prevailed as the boats pulled to their rendezvous, a distance of about five miles, and nothing was heard but "the hollow and dismal sound of the oars as they dipped into the water." It was not until eight in the morning that the boats were formed into line, and the signal to advance was given.

Every oar was instantly in motion, pulling steadily towards the shore, and at the same time two gunboats of the fleet opened fire on the French positions. The soldiers were packed so tight that they could scarcely move.



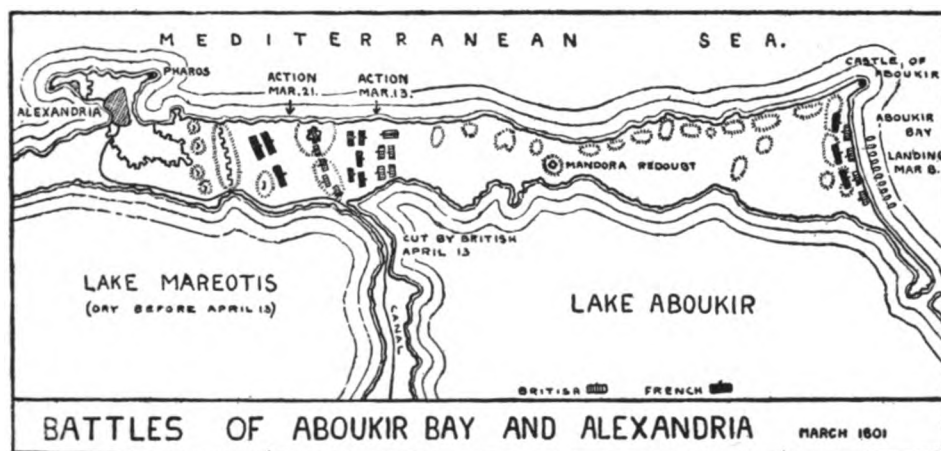
THE LANDING AT ABOUKIR BAY, 8th MARCH, 1801.

(Reproduced from an Aquatint in "Martial Achievements," published by J. Jenkins, 46, Strand, London. 2nd January, 1815.)

Presented to the History by Major M. O. N. Rees-Webb.

Steadily the boats advanced in perfect order ; but now they were within range of the French cannon, and showers of grape were poured upon them, lashing the water into a tempest and drenching the men. Still they advanced, and now the French musketry opened, and added to the grape shot and langrage, it seemed like a violent hailstorm upon the water. Some boats were sunk and many of the men were killed and wounded as they sat motionless and helpless under the storm of shot ; but still obedient to orders, they held their fire, but answered the storm of shot with an occasional hurrah.

At last the boats touched ground, but the French had advanced to the water's edge, and many of the men were shot or bayoneted in the surf as they tried to land. But the training in Marmorice Bay had not been in vain ; the enemy were forced back, and the troops formed by battalions as they



landed. On the right, Moore at the head of the 23rd and 28th rushed the central sandhill. On the left Oakes had not been less successful. Landing a few minutes later than his commander, he had found the French prepared to meet him not only with infantry but with cavalry. The 42nd was the first on shore, and the 58th landed a few minutes later. These regiments formed up under heavy fire as if on parade and repulsed the horsemen with their volleys. Oakes then advanced with the 42nd, followed by the 58th, and drove the enemy from the sandhills, capturing three of their guns.

Still farther to the left, where the Coldstream Guards and Third Guards were to have landed, the boats fell into confusion, and these battalions were consequently hurried into shoal water, intermingled and disordered. They were hardly out of their boats when they were suddenly charged by French cavalry from behind the sandhills, but the 58th, already formed up on their right, checked the cavalry by their fire, giving the Guards time to present a front. A further cavalry attack was briskly repulsed, and an infantry attack

which was developing on the Guards' left flank, seeing them formed in order and boats containing the 54th and Royals arriving in support, fired one volley and then retreated.

The campaign had opened brilliantly, and had been successful along the whole line. If cavalry had been available to follow up the attack the victory might have been decisive. The success had another result : it had shown our troops, many of whom were young and inexperienced, that they were more than a match for Napoleon's war-experienced veterans. They were warmly thanked in general orders issued by General Abercromby the following day.

In this brilliant affair the British loss was necessarily great, 31 officers and 621 men being killed and wounded. Of these the casualties of the 58th were 1 officer (Major Thomas Ogle) and 9 men killed, 2 officers (Captain Thomas Best and Ensign Rolt), 4 sergeants and 41 men wounded and 5 men missing.

During the next few days the troops were employed digging wells and bringing up stores, a service rendered very arduous by the nature of the ground. The nights were bitterly cold and fuel was scarce, only date wood being available, which produced so pungent a smoke that the men were hardly able to use it. Bad weather made the landing of the stores and provisions a lengthy business, and it was some days before camp equipment was allowed to be brought ashore, but the troops made themselves fairly comfortable by making huts with the leaves of the date palms.

**The Battle of
Mandora.**

On 12th March the whole British force moved forward about four miles and encamped in three lines. It was found that the French had taken up a position on a range of heights extending across the isthmus, with six thousand men and thirty guns. General Abercromby determined to dislodge them by turning their right flank. Accordingly, on the morning of the 13th he put his force in motion. The 90th and 92nd Regiments formed the advanced guard, and, though the advance was vigorously opposed the ground was gradually won and the French fell back, fighting from hill to hill. The 90th and 92nd Regiments distinguished themselves greatly, and received the greater part of the hundred casualties suffered that day. The 58th were not seriously engaged this day, and with the rest of the Reserve (23rd, 28th, 40th and 42nd) advanced in column on the right of the line. They did not, however, escape altogether unscathed, for two men were killed and nine wounded.

The position taken up by General Abercromby after the Battle of Mandora extended across the sandy isthmus, on a ridge of sandhills.

**The Battle of
Alexandria.**

The next few days were employed in constructing batteries and redoubts, and bringing up guns, provisions and firewood, a matter of great labour as everything had to be dragged or rolled through the sand by the men on account of the shortage of horses. The left rested on Lake Maadieh and the right on the sea. About a quarter of a mile in advance



BATTLE OF ALEXANDRIA, 21st MARCH, 1801.

of the extreme right, on an elevated piece of ground, and within fifty yards of the shore, were the ruins of an old palace supposed to have been built by the Romans, and known as the Palace of the Ptolomies. Here the 58th were posted, under Lieutenant-Colonel Houston, having the 28th in a redoubt on their left front. The centre of the line was held by the Guards, and other regiments continued the line up to the lake, which at the time was almost dry. The front held by the 58th was considerably more than that usually occupied by a battalion, and even though some parts of the wall were still standing, the Regiment was scarcely able to fill the gaps between,

In rear of the position held by the 58th and 28th were the 23rd, 40th and 42nd and the Corsican Rangers, ready to support should occasion arise, this portion of the front being under General Moore. Every precaution was taken to guard against surprise ; the troops stood to arms each day an hour before daybreak until some time after sunrise, and those in the forward positions slept always in their accoutrements. This position was left unmolested until the 20th, the French being entrenched opposite our army in an almost parallel line upon a lofty ridge of hills.

On the memorable Saturday, 21st March, 1801, the troops had been under arms about half an hour, when a musket shot was heard on the left, followed by an irregular fire of cannon and musketry. General Moore, who was General of the day, at once galloped off to the left ; but, impressed with the idea that it was a feint intended to distract attention from the right, he returned again and had hardly reached his own brigade when a loud huzza, followed by a roar of musketry, announced the real intentions of the enemy, who were coming up fast.

The morning was unusually dark, cloudy and close. The French advanced in silence until they approached the advanced posts, when they gave a shout and rushed in. The 58th were the first to feel the attack, but Colonel Houston reserved his fire until the glazed hats of the Frenchmen could be distinguished in the gloom ; then he sent several volleys among them, which had the effect of stopping the advance and driving the column to take shelter in a hollow on the left. There it joined another column, and the two made a dash at the redoubt where the 28th were stationed. Our troops were hardly able to see their assailants, the smoke and flashes rendering the darkness still more perplexing. The shouts of the French soldiers and the rattling of their drums was heard above the volleying musketry.

Meanwhile other French columns attacked, and a demi-brigade known as the "Invincibles," with a 6-pounder gun in front, taking advantage of the unusual darkness of the morning and the thickness of the atmosphere, pushed between the Guards and the British right and, wheeling to their left, got in between the front and rear wings of the 42nd Highlanders, making for the rear of the 28th and 58th. Colonel Paget of the 28th, turning his rear rank about, fired into them, and Lieutenant-Colonel Crougey, who commanded the left wing of the 58th, observing their advance through the openings,

wheeled back two companies and, after two or three rounds of fire, attacked them with the bayonet. The 23rd Fusiliers and the 40th then appeared on the scene, and for a while the encounter became a general mêlée; the 28th and 58th presented the extraordinary spectacle of troops fighting at the same time to the front, flanks and rear. In the end the frontal attacks were again repelled, and the gallant survivors of the "Invincibles," a battalion of the 21st Demi-Brigade, had to lay down their arms. A simultaneous attack on the centre of the British line was also repulsed.

During the continuance of these struggles with the British right and centre, a tremendous fire of cannon and musketry was kept up incessantly on both sides. As the morning began to dawn the enemy became sensible that they could make no effect with their infantry, and brought up their cavalry, of which they had a large and efficient force; the mounted attacks failed just as those of the infantry had done.

At 10 a.m., after a six-hours contest, the action ceased altogether, the victory remaining with the British. The French loss was considerable, including, with prisoners, four thousand men, four hundred horses and several guns. Besides the loss of General Abercromby, their veteran chief, who had that day received his mortal wound, the British also had a heavy list of approximately one thousand five hundred casualties. The high and massive stone walls of the ruins in which the 58th were posted, some of them ten to twenty feet in height, had proved efficient cover, and, though hotly engaged, the Regiment suffered much less than others close at hand. The casualties amounted to 1 officer (Lieutenant R. S. Jocelyn), 1 sergeant and 1 private killed, and 2 officers (Lieutenants Edward Curry and Toole) and 19 privates wounded, and 2 privates missing.

General Bunbury, in his narrative, states with regard to the battle: "It was a fair trial of strength and valour between the soldiers of England and France, and great valour was shown on both sides; in numbers they were nearly equal. The French were the older soldiers, more practised in their business, and familiar with victory. The British had some advantage in their position, though this advantage was impaired by the darkness of the hour at which the enemy made his attack. Had it not been for the provident order that every battalion should be under arms and at its post an hour before daybreak, some part or other of our line might have been taken by surprise; but all were on the alert, and the cool intrepidity of the 28th and 58th Regiments baffled the furious and protracted assault of the confident Republicans. Never was the discipline and determined valour of the British infantry more signally displayed than on the shores of Egypt."

"Though victory had been gained, the British commander, Sir Ralph Abercromby, had been mortally wounded. He had been in the thick of the fight when the French broke through our line, and only saved from instant death by a soldier of the

**Death of General
Abercromby.**

42nd. Till the defeat of the French army was accomplished, he concealed the fact that he had been wounded by a ball in the thigh early in the action, but when victory was no longer doubtful the General allowed the wound to be examined." He was taken on board the Admiral's ship, where he died on 28th March, but before his death he desired that the troops should be thanked "for their conspicuous and brilliant conduct in the action of the 21st, which has dismayed an insolent enemy, has raised the glory of their country and established their reputation for ever." His body was afterwards embalmed and taken to Malta for burial, where the funeral took place on 29th April. Lieutenant-Colonel Gordon of the 48th was one of the pall-bearers, and the funeral was also attended by the officers and the band of the 48th.

Rather more than a hundred years later, in 1914, the Regiment once more visited Alexandria and occupied Mustapha Pasha Barracks, which are on the site of the old battlefield of Alexandria. **One Hundred Years Later.** Whilst digging, to improve the barracks, some skeletons were unearthed, and among them were buttons of the 18th and 32nd French Regiments, against whom the Regiment had fought on that occasion. The French consul was consulted, and desired that the remains should be transferred to Cairo for burial, and in May, 1914, in the presence of the French community, they were finally handed over to the consul. A funeral service was held on the spot where they had been found, after which the coffin, covered with a tri-colour, was placed on a gun-carriage and escorted to the station.

A memorial stone^a was placed by the Regiment on the spot where they were found. In 1920 the buttons were sent to the 32nd French Regiment, which has one of the finest records in the French Army. It was known by Napoleon as the "Colonne Infernale," and about which he said after Lonato, "J'étais tranquille, la brave 32me était là!" In acknowledgment the 58th received a beautifully bound volume containing a record of the service of the 32nd. Inside the cover appear these words: "Hommage de Fraternité d'armes, et remerciements au 58e (2e Northamptonshire) Regt. de l'armée Britannique, dont la gloire pendant la grande guerre a été intementement liée à la notre."

So by this strange coincidence the two former enemies were brought together and united in a friendship which we all hope may be perpetual.

Sir Ralph Abercromby was succeeded in command by Major-General Hutchinson. The new commander realized at once that, **Capture of Rosetta.** in spite of the importance of their victory, the French still held a position covering Alexandria which was too strong to be taken by the forces at his disposal. He was also faced with the possibility of the French garrison being reinforced and re-victualled from Cairo, and the danger of disease to his own troops. His first object was to isolate Alexandria, and this he did by strengthening his position and letting the sea-water into the dry bed of what had once been Lake Mareotis.

Having secured the position at Alexandria, he now decided to detach a force for the capture of Rosetta, a town on the left bank of the Nile and near its mouth, with the object of making use of the resources of this fertile portion of the country. Accordingly, on 6th April, he despatched, under Colonel Brent Spencer of the 40th, a detachment consisting of the 58th, the flank companies of the 40th, and a detachment of Hompesch's Mounted Riflemen against the town. After a most painful and arduous march across the desert, the first night being spent at Edku, Rosetta was reached and reduced on 14th April, the French garrison withdrawing to Fort St. Julien at the mouth of the river. Colonel Spencer, who had now been reinforced, at once invested this fort, which surrendered after a gallant defence on 19th April.

General Hutchinson now joined the force at Rosetta and decided to move up the Nile against Ramanieh, an entrenched camp from which a considerable French force under General Lagrange was operating, and the junction of the canal connecting Alexandria with the Nile. His force for this operation comprised some nine thousand men, five thousand, including the 58th, being British troops and four thousand being Turks.⁴

The advance commenced on 5th May, and the French steadily retired before it. A show of resistance was made at Ramanieh, but after a skirmish the town was captured, and two days later the advance was continued towards Cairo. This decision was criticized at the time, as it was thought that to attempt to reach the capital with so small a force and during the hot season must be courting disaster.

General Stewart, in his account of the 42nd, records that a French cavalry deserter had given his cloak in return for some act of kindness to a soldier of the 58th employed as a clerk in the Adjutant-General's Department. The soldier was seized with the plague the next day and died. Fortunately, by his duties as clerk, he had a small tent to himself in which he wrote and slept. This, with all that belonged to him, was burned to ashes, and thus the pestilence was prevented from spreading.

The advance steadily progressed through the hot summer days. The main body moving up the left (west) bank of the Nile, with a detachment on the east bank. Algam was reached on 16th May and Charlahan on 9th June. On the 18th the troops had their first view of the Pyramids, and on the following day they encountered one of those hot winds which darkened the atmosphere with sand, making it so difficult to breathe that several horses and camels died; the ground was heated like the floor of a furnace, everything metallic became burning hot, and the thermometer was 120° F. in the shade. On the 21st June the city was invested, and six days later the French capitulated on condition that the troops should be conveyed back to France. They numbered 13,672 and left three hundred and twenty pieces of heavy ordnance in the hands of the British. It was not, however, until 9th July that the French

evacuated the city, and in the meantime the men made excursions to the Pyramids and visited the Sphinx which was afterwards to adorn the colours of the Regiment.

Shortly after the capture of Cairo the bulk of the troops returned to Rosetta, and the 58th, with the 2nd Royals, were posted between the Turkish camp and Rosetta to prevent the Turks from entering the town. With the exception of Alexandria, the French were now cleared out of Egypt, and General Hutchinson determined to pursue the siege with vigour. For this purpose, early in August, he reorganized his force into six brigades and a reserve. This reserve, still under Generals Moore and Oakes, consisted of picked regiments, and on being re-formed was almost identical with the old reserve which had fought so well on the 8th and 21st March. It now consisted of the 2nd Queen's, 23rd, 28th, 42nd, 58th, the 40th Flank Companies and the Chasseurs Britannique^s, but strengths were low, and the 58th only mustered 238 effectives rank and file on 9th August.^a

One by one the French outposts were captured, and finally, seeing that all further resistance was hopeless, they capitulated on 2nd September.

Together with the other corps engaged, the 58th received the thanks of Parliament and the Royal permission to bear on their colours and appointments the Sphinx and the word " Egypt " in commemoration of their services there. Gold medals were awarded by the Grand Signior to all the officers, which varied in size according to the rank of the officer ; in addition, Lieutenant-Colonel Houston, the commanding officer, received the honour of knighthood.

The 58th remained in garrison at Alexandria until early in 1802, when it returned home, and, disembarking at Cork in February, marched to Kinsale, moving on to Waterford in April, where it remained for the next eighteen months.



Shako Plate. circa 1800.

CHAPTER X

(48TH, 1799-1801)

ENGLAND (1797-1799)—MARY ANNE WELLINGTON—DAN LONG—FORMATION OF THE BAND—
GIBRALTAR (1799)—AN ATTEMPTED DESERTION—MINORCA (1800)—EXPEDITION TO GENOA
—CAPTURE OF MALTA.

THE skeleton of the 48th arrived at Gravesend from the West Indies towards the end of September, 1797, whence they marched via Chatham and Huntingdon to Norwich. While here one Thomas Hewitt enlisted, and it is fortunate for the Regiment that he did so, for the biography of his wife gives us intimate details of the Regiment from 1797 to 1844.

His wife was Mary Anne Wellington, and her biography was written by the Reverend Richard Cobbold, Rural Dean and Rector of Wortham.¹ She was the daughter of George Wellington, a private in the Royal Artillery, stationed at Gibraltar during the siege (1779-1782); and his father, grandfather and great grandfather had all been in the Service. On 18th April, 1789, his daughter was born, and on the arrival of the 48th at Gibraltar in 1799, she met Thomas Hewitt, a clarinet player in the band, marrying him on the return of the Regiment to Gibraltar on 15th December, 1805. The biographer states that it is on the diaries of Thomas Hewitt, and Daniel Long, the Drum-Major of the 48th, and their correspondence, that the biography is based. The author vouches for the truth of the narrative as far as possible "within the compass of anyones enquiry."

From their marriage onwards until Hewitt's death in 1844 she served almost continuously with the Regiment, and in 1845 was living at Norwich. The preface to the biography states "Her husband died in 1844 and the widow has since fallen into distress. She is greatly respected by all who know her in the City of Norwich, where she still resides. Her Most Gracious Majesty the Queen, Her Majesty the Queen Dowager and His Grace the Duke of Wellington have all been temporary benefactors to her; and Her Majesty the Queen Dowager has most graciously consented to accept the dedication of her history."

From the biography of Mary Anne Wellington it appears that Thomas Hewitt was born at Hingham in Norfolk in 1783 and was the illegitimate son of a gentleman whose name is not disclosed. In consequence he lived with his mother's sister and her husband, and a good education was provided for him at his father's expense. His mother, in the meantime, was known as

Mrs. Hewitt and lived in Ber Street, Norwich. He records how, on account of his education, he was disliked by his foster father ; a man of violent temper, who treated him cruelly, beating him and throwing him in the village pond. At length, at the age of fourteen, he could bear it no longer, ran away from home, and walked to Norwich.

This is his account of what happened. " As I entered the suburbs of the city I overtook an old soldier. As I passed him he touched me with his stick saying ' Halt ! ' and I did so. ' Come,' said he, ' I've met with many fools who could not take a word of command. So far so good ! Right about face ! Good again ! Now, boy, what do you say to becoming a soldier ? ' ' I don't care if I do,' said I ' if you will take care of me.' ' Well younker, if you'll take care of yourself, I'll take care of you. What are you ? Where do you live ? What's your age ? How long will you enlist for ? ' and many more such questions, he asked which I could not find time to answer.

" We turned into an Inn in the City and I soon found I had got into the company of Dan Long " (who later became Drum-Major of the 48th). " He took me down to barracks in King Street, near the river, introduced me to a Sergeant, who gave me a shilling to drink, as he called it, took down my name and asked if I would serve His Majesty and accept the bounty, to which I answered ' Yes, I will.' "

Hewitt's terms of enlistment were for service in Europe only, which is not surprising in view of the reports which the Regiment must have given regarding the unhealthiness of service in the West Indies.

On 21st December, 1797, the 48th left Norwich and marched to Diss, here they stopped one night only and then marched to Ipswich and the following day to Colchester. The 24th December being Sunday, the Regiment halted ; the next day they moved to Witham and then on to Chelmsford Barracks. Whilst here Hewitt reports that they were sharing barracks with the Buckingham Militia ; " and the Colonel of the Bucks was a noble buck himself, for on the 1st January, 1798, he gave, according to his annual custom a good dinner to all in barracks ; and which with a sufficient quantity of ale to make all thankful, without excess, formed a treat and the first generous feast I was ever at. The Regiments separated after this truly British and loyal feast, without the slightest dispute ; and I believe I may say that every man was gratified and thankful."

In February, 1798, the march continued to Worcester, by way of Epping, London, Oxford and Chipping Norton, recruiting as they went. At Worcester, in March, they received recruits from Wales, Hereford, Birmingham and Shropshire. Also, while at Worcester, they were joined by their new commanding officer, Lieutenant-Colonel Martin Hunter ; also Mr. Hughes, Paymaster, and Mr. T. Magee, the Adjutant.

Here also the Band was formed, the officers having engaged a German bandmaster. It paraded for the first time on Easter Sunday, 1798. War

Office orders had been received for six boys to be enlisted for it, and as Hewitt had learnt to play one or two tunes on a fife "given him at Hingham Fair," he was selected as a fifer.

The Drum-Major was Daniel Long, the man who had originally enlisted Hewitt. He appears to have been a great character. He was one of the oldest soldiers in the Regiment, and had seen all parts of the world, and was known in the Regiment as "Old Discord." Hewitt describes him as follows :— "He was something under five feet in height and might more properly have been called Dan Short than Dan Long. But if nature had not been bountiful to him in height of body, she had not failed him in spirit or wit ; for there never was a man like Dan for readiness of invention, cheerfulness of disposition and peculiar powers of entertainment. He can not only play all instruments but he can imitate the voices of all birds and beasts and many a time have I known the whole troop turn their heads to see if a tiger had sprang down beside them. It was wonderful to hear him imitate the roar of a lion, the lowing of an ox, the barking of a dog or the crowing of a cock. If you suspected nothing and knew not that it was Dan you would be deceived. He loves the army, and would rather live and die among soldiers than among any class of men. He used to be full of fun off parade, but when on duty no man ever caught him playing tricks. He was, with all his eccentricities, a man most sincerely respected in the Regiment and to this day is called 'the chronicler.' For the last 40 years Dan can tell you every man who has been in the Regiment."

We shall hear more of the doings of this gallant old soldier.

As we have shown in the previous chapter, the policy of the Government was to wrest from Napoleon the control of the Mediterranean.

Gibraltar. On 9th June, 1799, the 48th, being then at Worcester, received orders to move to Poole in Dorsetshire, preparatory to embarkation ; and marching via Tewkesbury, Gloucester, Salisbury and other places they reached their destination in July, and marched into barracks near the quay. While at Poole new Colours were presented to the Regiment.

Hewitt states "we had not received our regimentals, and we expected them at Lymington but they came not to hand ; so that we received orders to embark for Gibraltar before we had any regular outfit."

In August they embarked at Lymington, 800 strong, on board the *Calcutta*, a ship of 44 guns, reaching Gibraltar the following month.

George Wellington and his daughter Mary Anne, who was then only ten years old, were still stationed at Gibraltar when the 48th arrived. General O'Hara, the Governor of Gibraltar, had posted himself on the rising ground to inspect the troops on their arrival, Wellington and his daughter being among the crowd of spectators. In his description "never did a more motley group of irregulars in costume present themselves to notice." They had "as many different facings as the rainbow" and to add to their troubles they had

been cooped up in a ship in such high seas that they had been compelled to put back into Falmouth.

"It was a matter of merriment to some to see these poor fellows disembark, and looking upon them at the moment, no one would suppose that they would so soon prove themselves such good men as they afterwards did."

While George Wellington was "smiling at the substitutes which some had adopted for regimentals, one young man particularly attracted his attention, appearing in the comical attire of a drum case." (*i.e.*, the green baize cover.)

"Whatever may you be?" said Wellington to him as he moved along towards the camp.

"I am a soldier, as good as yourself," was the smart reply. "You must not judge by our present exterior; I have lost everything on board except the drum case, which affords me covering until some one finds me a better."

General O'Hara observed the man, also Wellington speaking to him, and judging that the poor fellow had lost his kit, he asked the artilleryman if he could supply him with something better. Wellington said he would do so, and permission being given for him to leave the ranks, he was despatched, under guidance of Mary Anne to her mother, while Wellington himself went to the town to purchase some clothes. It was a curious sight, the "Maid of the Rock" escorting the strange object in a green baize bag past the barracks in sight of all the General's Staff. On arrival at Wellington's cottage, the soldier's wife substituted one of her husband's artillery greatcoats for the drum case, and the young man looked already what he was, a good soldier.

The soldier was Thomas Hewitt, whose early service we have already described. In the meantime Wellington had returned. "A good suit of half and half" had been purchased at a Jew brokers in Water Port Street, consisting of a pair of grey drab trousers, a military jerkin and a soldier's undress cap. In addition to other kindnesses, Thomas Hewitt was given a good meal and a comfortable bed.

Daniel Long was still serving as Drum-Major of the 48th, and he and Hewitt were constant visitors to the Wellington's cottage as were many others of the 48th during their stay at Gibraltar.

About this time there were rumours that some of the regiments were to be transferred to Egypt, and a party of fourteen bad characters, of various regiments, decided they would desert.

**An Attempted
Desertion.**

They asked Hewitt to join them, but he refused and reported the matter to Daniel Long. The escape was fixed for a night when a Sergeant Armstrong was sergeant of the guard, as he had agreed to desert with the others. Daniel Long determined to try to save them from their folly, and he went to the guard house, told Armstrong that everything was known of the proposed attempt, and prayed him to let him take his duty while Armstrong went back to warn his comrades. But Armstrong was not to be dissuaded, and fearing Long's interruption, felled him with a blow of his musket. He

then picked him up, thinking him dead and intending to hurl him over the ramparts into the sea, but hearing someone approaching he threw the body into a cave where ammunition was kept. But Dan Long was stunned, not dead, and in a few days was as well and alive as ever.

Soon after, Armstrong let his thirteen companions through the gate and followed himself, but they had not gone far when they were surprised by a party of men sent out from the garrison, and led by George Wellington. Twelve were captured, but two escaped and climbed the Rock, and when pursued threw themselves off from the great height and were dashed to pieces. The men were court-martialled and condemned to be shot, but after the sentence had been carried out on the two ringleaders, the remainder were reprieved by the Governor.

In 1800 troops were being concentrated at Minorca, and the 48th were transferred to that station, where the 58th were stationed at the time. On 11th May, the 48th embarked on board the **Minorca**. frigate *Negro* and "sailed out into the bay amidst the farewells, good wishes and waving hands and handkerchiefs."

There are few records of their doings while at Minorca, but the following letter from Drum-Major Dan Long to the Wellingtons is published by Cobbold :

Island of Minorca,

June 4th, 1800.

"*Mr. and Mrs. Wellington,*

"*It is our good King's birthday, and we have all been playing 'God Save the King,' in such glorious style, that you would have rejoiced to hear us. We had a good passage here ; were only five days on board, in sailing to this harbour ; but we were detained two days before we landed. We were marched, on landing, to the Glacis of Fort St. George, and here we met with two battalions of the 17th Regiment, and the 8th King's Own [sic]. Young Hewitt has not been well since he landed ; indeed all the regiment almost, excepting myself, have been attacked with the scarlet fever, but yet we have lost but one man. I went through the whole West Indian campaign, and never had any fever. We are here only as in a place of convenient rendezvous for our future movements. Hewitt says, when he gets well, if I will let him, he will write to you all three. He has done nothing but practise himself upon one theme since he left Gibraltar, and that is the praise of yourselves, and your daughter. His notes all seem to be wrong. He is making false pauses in the quickest movements, and running on at random when he ought to be performing a slow passage : I cannot make him keep time at all ! In short, I think of getting him discharged, and sent to Gibraltar, that he may regain his music ; for whether it be the air of Minorca, or the want of the stimulus of Gibraltar, I do not know what to make of him. Tell your daughter I shall put*

him in a drum-case, and send him home to her guidance and protection. I will write to you again from Egypt ; so keep up your spirits, and believe me,

" Your old friend,

" Dan Long."

" D.M. 48th Regiment."

The concentration at Minorca was preparatory to a proposed landing at Genoa, in Italy, to support the Austrians, under General Melas, against the French. The force consisting of eight battalions, and including the 48th, sailed, under Sir Ralph Abercromby, on 23rd June, but it was too late. The Battle of Marengo had been fought, and the Austrians defeated, and when Sir Ralph arrived the city and port of Genoa were once more in possession of the French. He therefore sailed for Leghorn, where the British fleet, under Admiral Nelson, was lying, and on investigation decided it unwise to risk his small force in an adventure of doubtful value. The troops therefore returned to Minorca without landing.

Malta was the next objective. This island as we have shown, had been captured by the French in 1798 from the Knights of St. John, but in 1799 the Maltese, exasperated by the continual oppression of their masters, revolted, and having massacred part of the garrison, penned up the remainder in the town of La Valette. An English squadron, meanwhile, prevented communication by sea and so the French remained blockaded until March, 1800, when the 30th and 89th Regiments were sent to join the Maltese, and were followed in July by the 35th and 48th.

By this time the French garrison was reduced to the greatest possible distress through want of provisions, but still continued to hold out. At length, seeing no possibility of relief, and having but three days' scanty supply of bread, they surrendered to the British forces on 5th September, 1800. The Floriana Gate was occupied by the grenadiers of the 48th under Captain Brooke, and the King's Colour of the Regiment was planted on Fort St. Angelo. Here the 48th remained until 1802.

In December, 1800, General Abercromby had sailed for Egypt with an army which included the 58th, but as the 48th contained many men who had not enlisted for service outside Europe, they were not included in the expedition. Their exclusion was due to no fault of their own ; in fact, Walsh reports : " It is a circumstance not to be omitted that the 48th Regiment in the handsomest manner, and totally unsolicited by their officers, also volunteered for Egypt ; but Sir Ralph Abercromby was obliged to decline its offer regretting that the weak state of the garrison would not allow him to avail himself of it."

" At a subsequent period the 48th Regiment was actually embarked and on the point of sailing for Egypt when *El Carmen* arrived at Malta with the information of the surrender of Alexandria."

Some details of the conditions at Malta are given by Walsh. "La Valette," he writes, "possesses an opera house, small indeed but neat, though much out of repair. Italy and Sicily supply it with very tolerable vocal performers and it is a very agreeable entertainment for the garrison. It was excessively crowded every night by the officers of the expedition to whom it was a great source of amusement. The price of admission is one shilling. Prostitutes of all ages from the lively girl of sixteen to the crazy dame of sixty swarm throughout the town; and their acquaintance is extremely dangerous, as few of them are free from a certain disorder of a pernicious and inveterate nature."



Officers' Shoulder Belt Plate
1800 - 1815

CHAPTER XI

(1/48TH, 2/48TH AND 2/58TH, 1803-1809)

(1/58TH, 1802-1812)

NAPOLÉON THREATENS INVASION—SERVICE BATTALIONS FORMED (1803)—THE 48TH IN ENGLAND AND IRELAND—AT GIBRALTAR—THE 58TH IN ENGLAND AND JERSEY—THEY RETURN TO THE MEDITERRANEAN (1805)—EXPEDITION TO NAPLES—EXPEDITION TO CALABRIA—BATTLE OF MAIDA—SIEGE OF SCYLLA—SICILIAN COMPANIES—CAPTURE OF ISCHIA—DEFENCE OF SICILY.

(See Map, page 113.)

As we have shown already, the 58th had returned from Egypt in February, 1802, on the declaration of the Peace of Amiens, in accordance with which we evacuated Egypt, restoring it to the Turks. **Formation of Service Battalions.** Disembarking at Cork, they were stationed with headquarters at Waterford and a detachment at Dungannon Fort, with recruiting parties at Manchester, Glasgow and Paisley, and in various parts of Ireland. Here the Regiment received some volunteers from the Irish Militia and also a draft from the Loyal Nottingham Fencible Infantry, when that corps, which had been stationed in Ireland since 1798, was disbanded. From Waterford the 58th moved to Kinsale.

The 48th soon followed. Four companies, containing all the limited-service men, returned from Malta to England in 1802, and in September, 1803, the remaining six companies followed and, disembarking at Portsmouth, marched to Manchester.

The peace, however, was destined to be of short duration and was in fact little more than a truce. Napoleon treated it as if it were binding on his enemies but not on him, and it is hard to resist the conclusion that he had all along treated it as a temporary thing, merely intended to give him time to rebuild his navy for another struggle with England. This he could only do when peace had freed him from the grip of English sea power. He had been successful against all his enemies, with the exception of England, and the English alone prevented him from obtaining complete mastery of the world. He therefore planned an invasion of England, and massed troops, stores and ships on the coast of the English Channel. Fevered preparations were made in England to meet this threat, and the Army at home was increased.

An "Army Reserve Act" was accordingly passed on 11th July, 1803, which directed that thirty-five new battalions were to be raised in the United

Kingdom for limited service therein only. Of these thirty-five battalions, nineteen were to form (limited-service) second battalions to existing Line regiments,¹ twelve being raised in England, three in Scotland and four in Ireland; sixteen were to form independent battalions, which figured in the Army List under the head of "Army of Reserve." Of the latter, eleven were raised in England, two in Scotland and three in Ireland.

Both the 48th and 58th were amongst the regiments thus ordered to form second battalions, the former in England, and the latter in Ireland. The officers appointed to the new battalions were taken chiefly from the Half-Pay List.² Both these battalions served throughout the war and saw heavy fighting and were only withdrawn and disbanded when almost obliterated by casualties.

The 2/48th was formed at Manchester, whither the 1/48th had moved on arrival from abroad, 1,684 men being gazetted from the Army Reserve of Lancaster, Westmorland and Cumberland.

The 58th being in Ireland, the 2/58th was formed there in September, 1803. In the following year the "Additional Forces Act" of June 29th, 1804, was passed, by which forty Line regiments, including the nineteen double-battalion regiments mentioned above, were ordered either to form second battalions or to reinforce those they possessed by volunteers from the Army of Reserve, so as to absorb the sixteen independent battalions of Reserve. In this way the 2/58th was to receive Reserve men from Cork city and county and from County Kerry.

Later in 1803 both battalions left for Horsham in Sussex, after which the 2/48th moved to Aylesham Barracks, and the 1/48th to Eastbourne in November, thus taking their places in England's front line of defence against Napoleon's threatened invasion.

**The 48th in
England and
Ireland.**

In June, 1804, the 1/48th were grouped at Beachy Head with the 8th, 23rd and 88th Regiments. Here they were reviewed in September by H.R.H. the Duke of York, after which they moved to Aylesham Barracks and then to Freshwater and other places in the Isle of Wight. Here they remained until the following year, when they returned to Gibraltar.

The 2/48th occupied Aylesham Barracks until their departure in January, 1804, for Portsmouth, at which time, having received all the limited-service men from the 1/48th, their strength was 1,114. They remained in barracks at Gosport waiting for transports to take them to Ireland, where they arrived in March, 1804, disembarking at Cork under Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel Pearce. They were quartered at Mallow until August, 1804, whence they marched to camp at Killady Hill near Cork, returning on 18th September to Mallow and detaching the light infantry company to Limerick. Major Froome now succeeded Colonel Pearce in command on the latter's appointment to the command of the 15th Foot. This officer was replaced by Colonel Leslie. On Colonel Leslie being appointed Major-General, Lieutenant-Colonel Charles

Donellan took over command in December, 1804. In May, 1805, the battalion moved to Clonoony Barracks near Banagher, and in July to the Curragh. In September they moved to Dublin (Kevin Street Barracks).

Orders were received in October, 1806, to march to Birr in King's County. Previous to the march the remaining men of the Army Reserve were transferred to a Garrison Battalion, forming at Clonoony. On 20th January, 1807, a route for England was received. The battalion embarked on 24th January, 1807, and arrived at Liverpool on 26th January, 1807, and at Northampton on 22nd February. This is the first record of a battalion of the Regiment being stationed at Northampton, and they remained here until 9th September, when the march to Chelmsford commenced, where they arrived on the 17th. Five hundred and twenty-nine volunteers were received at this time from Northampton, West Suffolk, East Middlesex and Hertford Militias. All these regiments were quartered at Ipswich and Woodbridge in the district commanded by Lieutenant-General Lord Charles Fitzroy, Colonel of the 48th, and it was due to the estimation in which their Colonel was held that the corps received so large a proportion of volunteers. The battalion, being thus completed, marched *en route* for Ireland, arrived at Liverpool on 21st November and embarked on 29th November. The transports met with such boisterous weather on the passage that some were driven back and others nearly lost. They all, however, arrived safely at Dublin on 16th December.

From Dublin the 2/48th marched to Clonoony in December, and were in quarters there until June, 1808, when they marched to the Curragh, and thence to Dublin (Kevin Barracks) on 2nd August. While here Lieutenant-Colonel Duckworth assumed command on the transfer of Colonel Donellan to the 1st Battalion. In December the battalion was moved to the Royal Barracks, and on 27th February, 1809, commenced its march to Cork, preparatory to embarking for the Tagus, having been selected as one of seven battalions to reinforce the troops left in Portugal by Sir John Moore, the command of which had now been given to Sir Arthur Wellesley.

Early in 1805 the 1/48th moved from the Isle of Wight to Winchester, and after a short stay returned to Portsmouth to embark
The 48th at Gibraltar. once more for Gibraltar. They arrived in May, 1805, and among others George Wellington and his daughter were waiting to welcome them. Mary Anne Wellington was now sixteen years old, and at once resumed her childhood friendship with Bandsman Thomas Hewitt of the 48th. Their romance is well told in Cobbold's "Mary Anne Wellington." On 15th December, 1805, they were married in the garrison chapel at Gibraltar, and the following is a copy of the certificate in the Marriage Register.

" Thomas Hewitt, soldier in the 48th Regiment, Bachelor ; and Mary Anne Wellington, Spinster, belonging to the Royal Artillery, were married by Banns in the King's Chapel in this Garrison this 15th day of December of the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and five, by me.

*J. HUGHES, A.M.,
Chaplain.*

" This marriage was solemnized between us

*THOMAS HEWITT.
MARY ANNE WELLINGTON.*

in the presence of

*GEORGE WELLINGTON.
ANNE BELL.
ISAAC ARBERRY.
SUSAN CARTER."*

(Isaac Arberry is shown in the muster rolls of the 48th as one of the drummers.)

It is recorded that the wedding " though in humble life, was not overlooked by many in the higher circles, neither did the Governor, his Colonel, or the numerous friends of Hewitt forget to add to the bridal festival some little delicacy, so well deserved by both parties."

While the Regiment was at Gibraltar, General Patrick Tonyn, the Colonel, died and General Lord Charles Fitzroy³ was appointed as Colonel of the Regiment.

The 48th remained at Gibraltar till the spring of 1809, when they received orders to join Sir Arthur Wellesley in Portugal. It is reported that Sir Hew Dalrymple and Colonel Donellan, who had succeeded Colonel Wemyss in command of the battalion in 1808, watched the Regiment arrive by companies to embark. " The Governor addressed the officers and soldiers uncovered ; thanked them for their uniform good conduct, expressed a hope to hear of the same display of gallantry in the fields of Portugal and Spain as they had exhibited in previous campaigns ; and shaking the Colonel and several officers by the hand, he raised his hand as a signal, and immediately the Rock sent forth such a thundering salute from its guns, that the words of parting could be heard no more."

Mary Anne Hewitt, with the other wives, accompanied the Regiment to the war, but before long, as she was shortly to have a child, she returned to England.

At the end of 1803 both battalions of the 58th moved from Ireland to Jersey. In January, 1805, they divided, the 2/58th remaining at St. Heliers, while the 1/58th moved to Portsmouth and thence to Winchester. The 2/58th were in Jersey for the next three years, with recruiting parties at Athlone, Bedford, Birmingham,

**The 58th in
England and
Jersey.**

Cork, Dublin, Glasgow, Ipswich, Maidstone, Manchester, Nottingham, Wells and other places—in fact, almost in every quarter except where they were supposed to have a local connection. In the meantime, like other second battalions similarly situated, they volunteered for general service, and in 1809 returned to Portsmouth, embarking in June for Portugal.

Early in 1805 it was decided to concentrate a British force in the Mediterranean with the object of defending Egypt and our other possessions, and also with the possibility of joining with a Russian army and driving Napoleon from those portions of Italy which he had overrun. The force was placed under the command of Lieutenant-General Sir James Craig, and included the 1/58th. Mustering 982 all ranks, and under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Johnstone, they returned from Winchester to Portsmouth in March, 1805, and there embarked with the 39th, 44th and 81st Regiments.

The expedition left Spithead on 15th April, 1805, crossed the Bay of Biscay in safety, and then, learning that the French fleet was abroad, ran down the coast of Portugal and took refuge in the Tagus. On 10th May they again put to sea and reached Gibraltar, where they remained till the end of June, when they proceeded to Malta.

The next five months in Malta were spent in incessant drillings and inspections, while the authorities were in communication with the Russian commanders at Corfu.

In October, 1805, a concerted plan was at last made with the Russians, and it was decided to land a force near Naples and so, by creating a diversion, to assist the Austrians who were fighting the French in Northern Italy. In the last week of October, 1805, the force embarked, consisting of eight battalions and mustering 8,500 all told,⁴ and finally sailed on 3rd November. They joined the Russian fleet off Cape Pessaro and proceeded to the Bay of Naples, where the troops landed on 20th November, the English at Castellamare and the Russians at Naples. Regimental muster rolls show the 1/58th at Torre-Cel-Annunziata between Castellamare and Naples in November. On 9th December the 58th with the rest of the British contingent, moved forward via Capua to the neighbourhood of the fortress of Gaeta on the extreme left of the proposed line of defence. Here they remained until January, 1806, when news of the French victory against the Austrians at Austerlitz showed the Allies that with that small force their position was impossible. They therefore re-embarked at Castellamare on 7th January, 1806, and moved to Sicily, arriving at Messina on 19th January, where they were kept six weeks waiting for permission to land from the Court of Naples.

Apart from the political and diplomatic advantages of occupying Sicily as a check on Napoleon's conquests, it was essential to the maintenance of our fleet on the Mediterranean. With nearly every other country closed to us, we depended on Sicily for our supplies and even water. The troops who held

it were therefore doing good service, even if they were not used with much effect offensively. In addition, the threat of an offensive from Sicily forced the French to maintain considerable forces in Southern Italy which might have been used elsewhere.

After delay and much scheming on the part of the old King's advisers, consent was reluctantly given, and the troops disembarked and occupied the towns of Messina and Barcelona. During the next few months they held the northern coast of the island, their left being fortified at Milazzo, and their outposts on the right stretching as far as Taormina.

Meanwhile the French occupied the remainder of the Kingdom of Naples and the Neapolitan Court fled to Sicily for the protection of the British.

Discipline was very strict in Sicily at this time, and the most minute attention to parade details was exacted. Officers for guard and piquet were regularly inspected, to see that their swords and buttons were bright, otherwise they were sent back and the officer in waiting taken on. Members of courts-martial were sent back if their hair was not properly powdered.

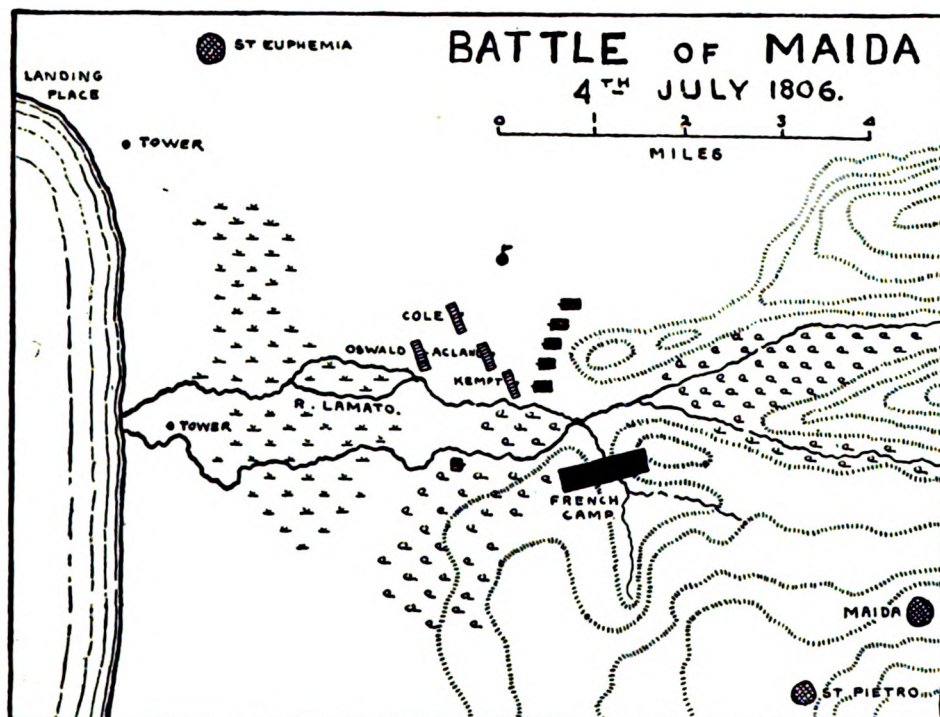
General Craig having returned to England sick, the British force in Sicily was now under Major-General Sir John Stuart. His army **Battle of Maida.** consisted in all of some ten thousand men, while the French under Joseph Bonaparte had some forty thousand men distributed in the Kingdom of Naples, of which some ten thousand were under General Regnier in Calabria. To clear the country of the French was manifestly impossible, but Stuart would not remain idle, and decided to make a raid into Calabria, and selected the Bay of Euphemia as his landing-place.

In his force were a light battalion and a grenadier battalion, formed of the flank companies of the various regiments, the 20th, 27th, 58th, 78th and 81st, also six companies of Watteville's Swiss Regiment. In discussing the troops, General Bunbury in his narrative states: "The 27th was the only regiment of old soldiers; the flank companies of the 20th, 27th, 35th and 61st were also hard biting fellows of long standing; but the 58th, 78th and 81st were young regiments." Yet these young soldiers in a hand-to-hand fight in an open plain, with all the odds against them, were to meet and overthrow a superior force of the veterans of France. Stuart divided his force into four brigades under Generals Kempt, Cole, Acland and Oswald, the 58th being in the latter brigade with six companies of Watteville's Regiment.

The flank companies of all regiments had, however, been detached from their regiments and formed into separate flank battalions of grenadiers and light infantry. These flank battalions, we are told, were fine-looking men, and there existed great pride and jealousy amongst the several companies to keep up the credit of their respective corps. Thus the light company of the 58th was in Kempt's Light Infantry Brigade and the grenadier company in Cole's Brigade.

On 30th June the British force arrived secretly in the Bay of St. Euphemia,

and the landing was made at 1 a.m. on 1st July in a heavy downpour of rain. The Light Battalion was first on shore, quickly followed by the 58th and the remainder of Oswald's Brigade. After a short skirmish the village of St. Euphemia itself was captured, and the French driven back with a loss of thirty killed and one hundred prisoners. By the evening of 1st July every man had been disembarked, and the British had taken up a position with their right on the sea and their left extending to the height of St. Euphemia.



Hearing of Stuart's landing, Regnier, quitting Reggio, and collecting troops as he marched, moved forward to accomplish the threat so often repeated in history, of "driving the British into the sea," and on 3rd July took up a strong position on the side of a woody hill below the village of Maida with about seven thousand men.

The position occupied by Regnier was a strong one, protected in front by the River Lamato, the flanks being covered by dense underwood. Stuart reconnoitred the position and, in spite of its strength, decided to attack and attempt to turn the French left flank. At 3 a.m. on Friday, 4th July, the British started to advance. Their course at first ran along the shingly shore, where patches of marsh here and there impeded their progress and greatly

delayed the movement of the guns. Soon the sun rose with the full heat of July, and before the open ground was reached the men were tired, thirsty and hot.

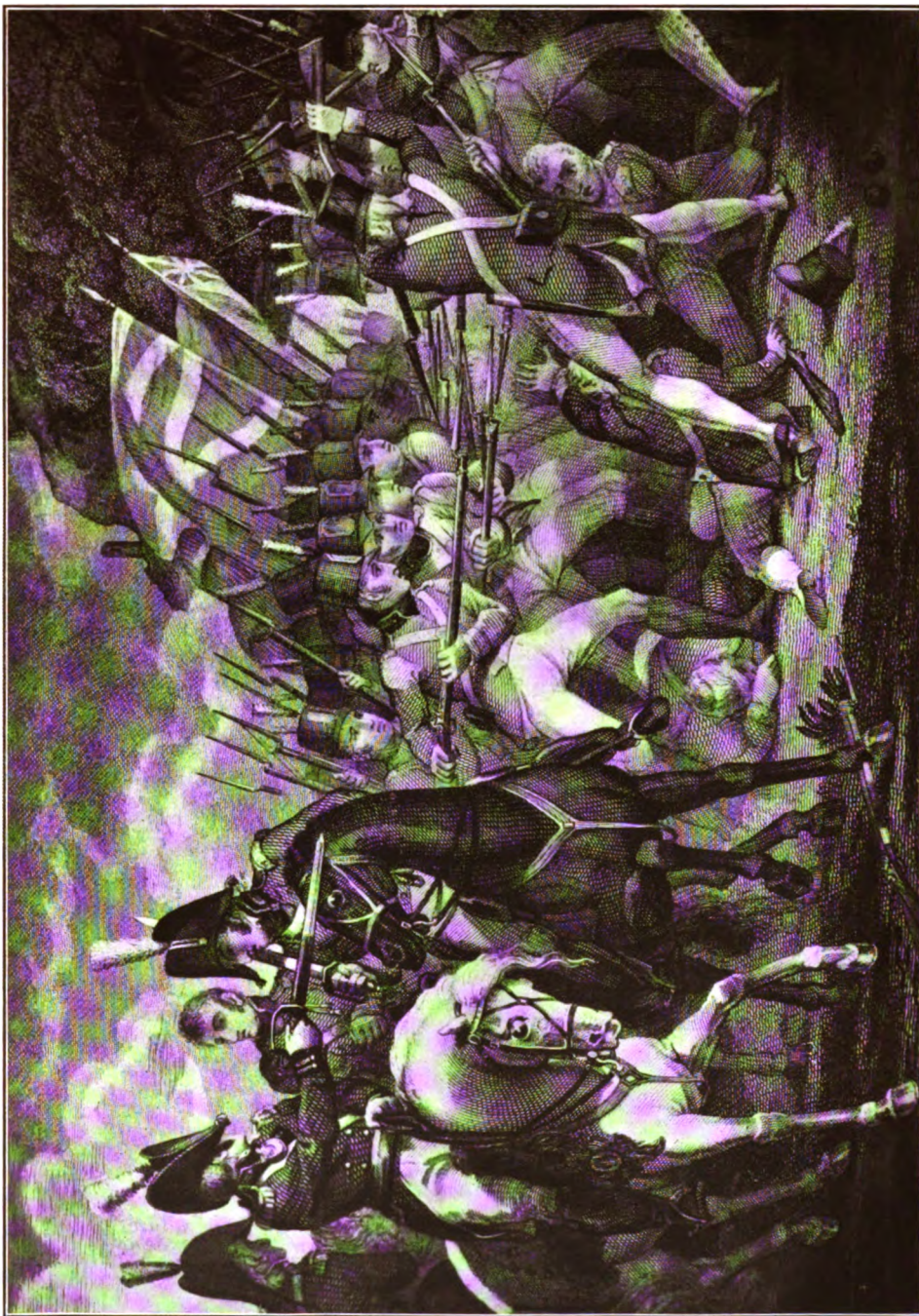
Realizing that the British were not only tired and inferior in numbers, but also deficient in cavalry, Regnier decided not to await the attack, but to cross the Lamato and attack himself from the east. Stuart formed up in order of battle with three brigades (Kempt's Light Infantry Brigade, Acland's Brigade and Cole's Brigade) echeloned back from the right which rested on the River Lamato ; Oswald's Brigade, which contained the 58th (less flank companies) being in reserve. In this order they advanced.

The French, through crossing the river, were in a similar formation, echeloned back by brigades from their left which rested on the river. For some time our troops could see nothing of the French except their cavalry, which manœuvred across our front, making feints of charging and raising a great dust, which completely screened the French infantry. The extreme heat also produced a mirage which reduced the visibility.

" Suddenly, however, the enemy's cavalry moved rapidly away beyond the front, and as the dust cleared off we saw the enemy's infantry formed for attack and marching rapidly on us. We saw at the same time that the enemy outnumbered us considerably."⁵ The oblique advance of the two armies brought the French 1st Légère (three battalions), supported by a regiment of Poles, face to face with Kempt's Light Brigade. " A crashing fire of musketry soon opened on both sides, but it was too hot to last so short a distance, and the fire of the English was so deadly, that General Compère spurred to the front of his men, and shouting ' En avant ! en avant ! ' he led them to the charge with the bayonet." Kempt then gave the word and his men pressed forward. The bayonets crossed and at this moment of crisis the French broke, and endeavoured to run ; but it was too late, they were too close to escape, and, overtaken by the most dreadful slaughter, they went down like grass before the mower.

Bunbury, referring to the 1st Légère, states : " The superb brigade (I may use the term, for never did I see a more soldierlike body of men) were utterly dispersed with fearful slaughter, which was continued over a long extent of plain and the lower falls of the hill of Maida."

After the defeat of the 1st Légère the other French brigades ceased to advance, being alarmed for the safety of their flanks, as Oswald's brigade with the 58th were now advancing. On the British left, however, the French with superior numbers were holding up Cole's grenadiers, until the 20th Foot, which had been detached, arrived and, advancing through the brushwood on Cole's left, opened a shattering fire on the French right flank. This decided the action and the French were driven from the field. Had the British possessed but two or three squadrons of cavalry, it is Bunbury's opinion that hardly a man of Regnier's army would have escaped.



THE BATTLE OF MAIDA, 4th JULY, 1806.

Reproduced by courtesy of The Loyal Regiment (North Lancashire.)

Our columns continued to pursue until the enemy abandoned the plain of Maida and retreated rapidly up the valley beneath the town of that name. The fugitives were pursued over the hills for some distance by the Light Brigade whilst the rest of the troops, their ammunition spent and without food or water, were brought back to the beach.

During the Battle of Maida, five thousand young British troops had met six thousand four hundred French veterans in the open field with no advantage of circumstances and inflicted upon them a crushing defeat. The British losses were surprisingly small, and, for the whole force, numbered only 45 killed and 282 wounded; of these the battalion companies of the 58th had but two men wounded.

In recognition of the gallant conduct of the troops engaged, the various regiments were allowed by War Office authority dated 24th February, 1807, to add the word "Maida" to their colours, and Lieutenant-Colonel Johnstone, with the other commanding officers, received a medal.

After their march and battle, on account of the intense heat, Stuart decided that his army was unfit to pursue, and ordered them back to the beach for repose, allowing each brigade in turn to bathe in the sea. The men of Cole's Brigade were enjoying this privilege when a false report was received that the French cavalry was approaching. Immediately the men rushed out of the water, seized their boots and muskets and fell into line with ordered arms ready to fight and give a good account of themselves without a shred of clothing, giving us some insight into the spirit and discipline of old soldiers of the past.

The army bivouacked on the beach, and on the 6th advanced in pursuit of the enemy, Oswald, with the 58th and Watteville's Regiment, leading the way. He marched on the French depot at Monteleone, took six hundred prisoners, the French military chest and baggage, and destroyed a large quantity of stores. The force then moved down the Calabrian peninsula and laid siege to Scylla Castle. The troops were encamped on the mountain of San Meglio, overlooking the castle and town, and as the garrison was expected to hold out some time, they were ordered to hut themselves as a protection against the sun. This was done with boughs of laurel, myrtle and oleander, interspersed with geranium bushes and wild roses, so that the encampment is said to have presented a singularly picturesque appearance.*

On 21st July the French garrison capitulated, and on the last day of the month the troops re-embarked at Reggio for Messina. The 58th, with the 81st, were sent by sea under Brigadier Acland to threaten the coasts near Salerno and to relieve a small force of Corsicans holding the isle of Capri, but after a few weeks they, too, were withdrawn, but not before malaria had occasioned severe loss, carrying off in the 58th alone the Colonel and eight other officers and a large number of men. On their return to Sicily the 58th were once more quartered at Messina.

In the meantime a Horse Guards Order, dated July, 1806, had directed that a company of Sicilians, one hundred rank and file, should be attached to regiments serving in the Mediterranean. These Sicilians were to be enlisted for general service under the British Crown and to receive seven guineas bounty. They were to be paid and clothed like other companies of their regiments and when numerous enough to form companies of themselves, and were to be officered from second battalions of regiments. Subsequently these Sicilian companies were formed into a separate corps called the Royal Sicilian Volunteers, commanded by Count Rivarola, afterwards Colonel of the Royal Malta Fencibles. To the former corps the Sicilians of the 58th, about thirty-eight men, were eventually transferred.

By the spring of 1809 the British force in Sicily had largely increased in numbers, but it had not improved in morale. Amongst the **Capture of Ischia.** men, the new cheap wines of Sicily were the cause of much drunkenness with its inevitable consequences; while the unpopularity of the English commander amongst his officers had transgressed all bounds. Indeed the picture which General Bunbury gives of the relations between Stuart and his brigadiers shows a state of affairs happily almost unique in English history.

To quell the discontent, if possible, Stuart now determined to carry out a pet project of his of seizing the islands of Ischia and Procida, and thence menacing Naples, where Murat had lately assumed command, and was making vast preparations for a descent on Sicily.

Accordingly, in May, 1809, a force of thirteen thousand men,⁷ including the 58th, was assembled at Messina, and on 11th June sailed from Milazzo. Thirteen days later the force came to anchor between Ischia and the mainland. On 26th June a landing was made on the eastern side, and siege was laid to the castle which surrendered a few days afterwards. The adjoining island of Procida capitulated as soon as summoned. In these operations one thousand five hundred prisoners and one hundred guns were captured at a cost of fewer than twenty killed and wounded. This threat to Naples so alarmed the French that they moved a large force there under General Murat. In the middle of July, on account of a French threat to Sicily, the 58th and 62nd returned to Messina. The remaining troops were recalled in the autumn and concentrated about Messina, the 58th encamping close to the shore on the western side of Faro Point.

As our ships of war based in Sicily were doing great injury to the enemy's gunboats and store ships, General Murat determined to invade the island. Every regiment posted for the defence of the coast threw up an epaulement, and here from June to September, 1810, the 1/58th took up its position every night until it was light enough to see if the enemy's boats were troop-launches, and not until the coast was reported clear did they march back to camp to sleep during the day.

Just across the Straits lay the French army, waiting for an opportunity to attack, their transport boats hauled up upon the open beach and covered by mounds of shingle thrown up in front to secure them from a cannonade. For three months Murat kept up this state of tension, sometimes launching his boats and embarking his men for exercise.

On the night of 17th September, 1810, a small force of Corsicans and Neapolitans, under the French General Cavaignac, crossed the Straits and landed about seven miles south of Messina, but surrendered to the 21st Fusiliers.

The main army meanwhile embarked in a vast flotilla between Scylla and Reggio under the very eyes of the British, and on our side every battalion was at its post, but as soon as the enemy heard of the defeat of their covering force, they gave up all hope of a successful attack and withdrew from Calabria.

So ended the threatened invasion of Sicily.

During the winter of 1810-1811 the 1/58th was stationed at Milazzo, and in the summer of 1811 it encamped on the Curcuracci heights, moving in 1812 to the neighbourhood of Palermo. This move was shortly followed by the detaching of a force from Sicily for service on the east coast of Spain.



Shako Plate, circa 1814

CHAPTER XII

CONDITIONS OF SERVICE TO 1800

COUNTY TITLES—DRILL AND TACTICS—OFFICERS—ACCOMMODATION OF THE SOLDIER—HIS
PAY AND SUBSISTENCE—ENLISTMENT—TRANSPORT BY SEA—CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT—
ADMINISTRATION—DISCIPLINE.

THE early days of the nineteenth century found the British Army about to engage in one of the greatest wars in its history, pitted against the veteran armies of France which had been created by Napoleon. Before we deal with the details of the war, it would be well to consider the state of the Army at the time and the changes which had taken place since the formation of the 48th and 58th some fifty years before. On the whole, the changes had not been far-reaching; until England had been faced by the threat of landing by Napoleon, the Army had been starved of money, and experience had shown that few reforms are possible without expense.

Strangely enough, one of the most important innovations made, though its full significance could not have been realized at the time,

County Titles. cost nothing to the nation. This was the territorial connection between regiments and the counties of England.

During 1779 the threat of a landing by the French and Spanish in England caused a large increase in recruiting, and certain counties had affiliated themselves to particular regiments for the purpose. These affiliations were regularized by the War Office, who on 13th May, 1782, addressed a letter to the agents of every regiment asking if they had "any particular connexion or attachment to any particular county, or any reason for bearing the name of any particular county." There is no record of the replies which were sent by either regiment, but on 31st August, 1782, the following letter was addressed to the Colonel of the 48th :—

"His Majesty having been pleased to order that the 48th Regiment of Foot, which you Command, should take the County name of the 48th or Northamptonshire Regiment and be looked upon as attached to that County, I am to acquaint you, it is His Majesty's further pleasure you should in all things conform to that Idea, and endeavour by all means in your power to cultivate and improve that connection so as to create a mutual attachment between the County and the Regiment which may at all times be useful towards recruiting the Regiment. But as the completing of the several Regiments now generally so deficient, is in the present Crisis of the

most important Concern ; you will on this occasion use the utmost possible exertion for that purpose, by presenting the greatest diligence to your Officers and recruiting parties, and by every suitable attention to the Gentlemen and considerable inhabitants ; and as nothing can so much tend to conciliate their affections as an Orderly and polite behaviour towards them and an observance of the strictest discipline in all your Quarters, you will give the most positive Orders on that Head ; and you will immediately make such a disposition of your Recruiting parties as may best answer that end.

I have the honour to be

Sir

*Your most obedient and most
humble servant.*

(sgd) H. S. CONWAY."

On the same date a letter worded in the same terms was sent to the Colonel of the 58th Regiment attaching that Regiment to the County of Rutland.

Some seven weeks later the following letter was sent to each Regiment :—

GEORGE R.

" Whereas We have been pleased to direct that our 48th (58th) Regiment of Foot under your command shall take the county name of the Northamptonshire (Rutlandshire) Regiment, and are to be considered as attached to that County. These are to authorize you by beat of drum or otherwise to raise so many men in that county as are or shall be wanting to recruit and fill up the respective numbers of Our said Regiment to the numbers allowed upon the Establishment. And all Magistrates, Justices of the Peace, Constables and other of our Civil Officers whom it may concern, are hereby required to be assisting unto you in providing quarters, impressing carriages and otherwise as there shall be occasion. And for so doing this Our Order shall be and continue in force until the 25th day of March next.

*" Given at Our Court of St. James
this 11th day of October 1782 in
the twenty second year of Our
Reign."*

In the case of many regiments these instructions seem to have been honoured more in the breach than the observance, and the officers do not seem to have exhibited any desire of becoming identified with the county. This does not apply to the 48th and 58th ; their muster rolls of the period and through the Peninsular War show that they contained many men from their counties, and in the case of the 48th the arms of Northampton were introduced in the ornamentation of the breastplate worn by the officers in 1792. This was of gilt metal, oval in shape, about two and a half inches high, having all

the ornamentation engraved; the design being the arms of the town of Northampton in the centre; above the Royal cypher and crown; below the word "Northamptonshire"; on the sides "48th Regt.". This is probably one of the earliest instances of a regiment's connection with a county being displayed on the equipment.

Gradually and steadily through the period of one hundred and fifty years the ties between county and Regiment have grown closer; in our garrison church in the heart of Northampton rest our most cherished possessions; beside the old Colours of the 48th and 58th representing, as it were, the traditions of the past, hang the Colours of the service battalions, tokens of the common sacrifice of county and Regiment in the Great War of 1914-1918, and joining the two in an unbreakable union.

At the beginning of the century, drill and tactics were in a somewhat transitory state. During the past forty years considerable differences had grown up between the tactical doctrines of those officers who had served in America and those of the Prussian school who based their ideas on the battlefields of Europe. The former favoured a reduction in depth from three to two ranks, and considered that there should be intervals between the men and that movements should be conducted loosely and irregularly, giving independence of action to individuals and small units. They considered that production of fire was the main essential, that shock action with the bayonet should be reserved for the culmination of the fight, and that the greater the frontage of fire that could be developed the better.

On the other hand, the Prussian school "saw the infantry also manœuvre in flexible columns, but deploying in battalions and brigades with beautiful accuracy in their appointed alignment, not with intervals between the files or even between companies, but shoulder to shoulder, solid and steady, three ranks deep."¹ They agreed that advance of columns would fail of its object in the backwoods, but they argued that to attempt Indian methods in open ground against European armies was to court destruction. The one school advocated the training of the individual, the other placed its hopes on a disciplined but massed force. This latter school won the day, and in 1789 Colonel David Dundas published his "Principles of Military Movements," which was officially adopted. This book was a great advance on anything which had previously been published, and at least it gave to the Army a co-ordinated system of drill. It laid down for the first time instructions for teaching the recruit how to march, his pace being regulated by the pace stick and plummet. The formation in three ranks was, however, retained, and the whole science of military evolution was distributed into eighteen manœuvres.

An order was issued about 1790 that the manual was to be performed in two and a half minutes. This increased the rapidity of fire and therefore

involved greater expenditure of ammunition. Accordingly the waistbelts were transferred to the right shoulder so as to carry a second cartridge pouch, and the number of rounds was raised to fifty-six. This originated the crossbelt of later days.

The right company of each regiment had since 1678 been the grenadier company, consisting of men selected for their physique and height. Originally they had carried out their rôle as grenadiers, but since about 1750 they appear to have fought in the same way as the other battalion companies. In 1771 a light company was authorized on the establishment of each battalion, their special rôle being that of skirmishers. The light company was the left company of each regiment.

The vicious practice had grown up of massing the flank companies of regiments, the light infantry and grenadiers, into separate units. This was most unpopular with regiments, as the personnel of these companies were all picked men, and battalion commanders were loath to let them go. It was discontinued during the Napoleonic Wars, and Wellington always left his regiments intact ; in fact, his tactics demanded that every regiment should have its skirmishers. His methods fell half-way between the American and the Prussian schools.

The Revolutionary armies of France had gained their victories by covering their front with a swarm of skirmishers, whose fire shook the ranks of the opposing infantry, rendering them easy victims to the assault of dense columns with the bayonet which followed. Wellington regarded fire as the proper preparation for the bayonet assault, and in order to produce the maximum fire effect he met the French columns in line two deep. Their skirmishers he matched with skirmishers of his own, and the men of any company, not only the light infantry, were expected to be able to act in this rôle. The skirmishers gradually cleared from the front before the advancing enemy, and only when the dense masses of the enemy were shattered by our volleys did he commit his troops to the assault.

As in the case of the men, the pay of the officers was altogether inadequate for their needs ; it must be remembered that it represented **Officers.** not only remuneration for their services, but also the income return on the capital they had invested in the purchase of their commissions. The rates of pay in 1780 which remained in force with little change for many years were as follows^a :—

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----------------------|----|-----------|
| Lieutenant-Colonel | ... | ... | 17s. a day, or £310 | 5 | 0 a year. |
| Major | ... | ... | 15s. a day, or £273 | 15 | 0 a year. |
| Captain | ... | ... | 10s. a day, or £182 | 10 | 0 a year. |
| Lieutenant | ... | ... | 4s. 8d. a day, or £85 | 3 | 4 a year. |
| Ensign | ... | ... | 3s. a day, or £54 | 15 | 0 a year. |

The Field Officers until 1803 received the pay of company commanders as well. In 1803 the rates were altered and the Field Officers ceased to be

company commanders. The change was made on account of the frequency with which captains found themselves in command of regiments, as the Colonel was usually a General in the Army, as also on occasions were the Lieutenant-Colonel and the Major. It was for this reason that between 1794 and 1801 a second Lieutenant-Colonel and Major were allowed for each regiment.

Thomas Simes, writing in 1780,³ urges the necessity of increased pay, and in support of his argument gives the following details of the necessary expenses of an ensign for his living alone.

SCHEME FOR AN ENSIGN'S CONSTANT EXPENSE.

| | | | | | | <i>By a Day.</i> | <i>By a Year.</i> |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------------|-------------------|
| | | | | | | s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Breakfast | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6 | 9 2 0 |
| Dinner | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1 0 | 18 4 0 |
| Wine and Beer | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6 | 9 2 0 |
| 4 Shirts, 4 Stocks, 4 Handkerchiefs a week | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2 | 3 0 8 |
| 4 prs. Stockings and 2 night caps a week | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1 | 1 10 4 |
| Hair powder, pomatum, soap, blackball, pens, paper, ink, wax and wafers | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2 | 3 0 8 |
| Soldier to dress your hair, shave you, etc. | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1½ | 2 12 0 |
| | | | | | | <hr/> 2 6½ | <hr/> 46 11 8 |
| Your Subsistence | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | — | 54 15 0 |
| Balance | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | — | 8 3 4 |
| Yearly Arrears | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | — | 7 14 3 |
| Total Balance | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | — | 15 17 7 |

(Neither cloaths nor pocket money included.)

It can well be realized that the officers regarded that they had few obligations in peace, and were seldom with their regiments, as we have already shown (Chapter VIII). In the absence of their seniors, the subalterns shirked their duties and killed the long hours by drinking, gaming and sports. In spite, however, of their inefficiency in peace, their gallant leading of troops in war and their disregard for danger cannot be denied.

A General officer reporting on the Army in 1794 writes:—"We are the most undisciplined, the most ignorant and the worst provided army that ever took the field. There is not a young man in the Army who cares a farthing whether his commanding officer, his Brigadier or the Commander-in-Chief himself approves his conduct or not. His promotion depends not on smiles or frowns—his friends can give him a thousand pounds with which he goes to the auction room in Charles Street and in a fortnight he becomes a Captain."⁴

"When a young man found himself gazetted to an ensigncy his first business was to write to the Regimental Agent, to find out through him where his regiment was stationed and all particulars of uniform. He had then to discover if his uniform could be made up at the regimental headquarters and

if the quartermaster was likely to have all the necessary accoutrements. When these preliminaries had been arranged and he had joined his regiment, the young officer was given the standing orders of the battalion to study and was put to learn his drill. It was the Adjutant's duty to teach him the sword salute, and he was advised to accustom himself to long marches. He was recommended to study the eighteen manœuvres by the aid of wooden blocks, a recent invention to elucidate the drill book of David Dundas."⁸

The following is taken from "The Military Guide for Young Officers," by Thomas Simes, published in 1772, and shows the requirements of an officer for that period :—

" Things necessary for a Gentleman to be furnished with, upon obtaining his first commission in the Infantry :—

" A full suit of cloaths, two frock suits, two hats, two cockades, one pair of leather gloves, sash, and gorget, fuzee or esponton, sword, sword-knot and belt, two pairs of white spatterdashes (if in the foot guards), one pair of black, and tops, one pair of short, one pair of garters, one pair of boots (all regimentals), a case of pistols, a blue surtout coat, a Portugal cloak, six white waistcoats, one dozen of white and two black stocks, eighteen pairs of stockings, ten handkerchiefs, one pair of leather breeches, six pairs of shoes, two dozen of shirts, eight towels, three pair of sheets, three pillow cases, six linen night caps and two yarn, a field bedstead and a painted canvas bag to hold it, bed curtains, quilt, three blankets, bolster, pillow, one mattress and pallace. Those articles should be carried in a leather valise. It is also essential that he should have a watch that he may mark the hour exactly when he sends any report, or what he may have discovered that is of consequence. If he is to provide a tent, the ornaments must be uniform according to the facing of his corps."

The past fifty years had seen few changes in the general conditions of soldiering. Billeting was still the normal method of housing troops, though a few barracks existed in garrison towns. It was not until 1792 that the principle of barracks was accepted. Although billeting was oppressive and unpopular as well as detrimental to the soldier, the opponents of a standing army had, up to the end of the eighteenth century, objected to the building of barracks on the ground that it " facilitated the maintenance of an army to the danger of the constitution and to the oppression of the people."⁹

" The provision of barracks was very slow and it was well into the nineteenth century before billeting was discontinued as a normal method of peace accommodation. The lack of a properly organized police force necessitated the scattering of troops in small detachments all over the country. These detachments were not sufficiently stable in numbers or location to justify the erection of barracks, and as an alternative to billets, small buildings were often hired, in which the men were infamously housed. One room was provided

**Accommodation
of the Soldier.**

for every purpose, in which the men ate, slept, and did everything except drill. No space between beds was allowed, and in addition to the men, the wives of soldiers, six of whom were allowed to each company, were accommodated with their children in the same room.

"In billets the conditions were little, if any, better; in the inns the private soldiers and poorer subalterns were not welcome guests, for they could contribute little to the good of the house. The men were crowded in garrets with broken floors and ceilings, or in noisome unfurnished outhouses. If the company officer lacked experience he found himself confronted with a bill for liquor which his men had drunk and for which they could not possibly pay. For a sound man the life was bad enough, but for a sick one it was unalleviated misery."⁶

Conditions in Ireland were worst of all. Here billeting in private houses in addition to inns was allowed by law, and the soldiers were usually "dispersed by pairs, from one to perhaps eight miles round the country, to habitations of miserable peasants, whose poverty rendered them more the objects for charity than to be considered fit to entertain His Majesty's troops."⁷

In barracks, the only means of cooking provided consisted of two coppers, one to boil the meat, and the other for potatoes. There was no variety of food, which consisted every day of the broth in which the meat was boiled, boiled beef and potatoes.

With the introduction of barracks, messing by groups instead of individual subsistence was becoming normal. The following is a contemporary description of the method:—"Five, six, or eight men being generally the number in a mess, the non-commissioned officers should assemble a man or more from each, and march them regularly to market, and there buy a quantity of good meat and also of vegetables, salt and oatmeal, to serve each mess until the next day for receiving pay. Three-quarters of a pound of meat and one pennyworth of bread, with a proportion of roots, etc., should at least be calculated for each man's mess for a day; but when the cheapness of provisions will admit of it, the allowance of meat should be augmented as the less money the soldier has to spend on drink the better."⁷

Those soldiers who were "married to industrious, sober women" and could "be depended on for eating well" were excused from messing with the others; but if the wives were idle this permission was refused, to prevent the soldiers from being "starved and to oblige the women to pursue some scheme of industry by which alone, it could be possible for their husbands to cohabit with them."

For long the innkeepers had complained of the impossibility of feeding and housing troops for the price of 4d. a day, and when troops were quartered in barracks these complaints were found to be well grounded. In barracks the soldier had to provide his own food, as we have described, and his ordinary

pay of 6d. a day was found to be quite inadequate, especially as it was further reduced for necessities not covered by the 6d. a day deducted by warrant.

It will be remembered (see Chapter I) that the pay of the soldier consisted of 6d. subsistence money and 2d. a day "off-reckonings" retained by the Colonel, and that of the 3s. 6d. a week subsistence 6d. a week was retained by the Captain for the provision of necessities. The amount available for the Captain was quite insufficient to meet his bills; in consequence stoppages were unavoidably made from the 3s. a week which was really intended for the men's food. A warrant was therefore issued that the 3s. was to be paid free from all deductions and applied solely to the soldiers' food.

To reduce the expenses falling on the Captain, an additional necessities allowance was provided and certain items were issued free by the ordnance.⁸ In addition, the pay of the soldier was increased by an allowance of 1½d. a day bread money in view of the increased cost of living. At this time the pay of the soldier can be summarized as follows :—

| | Weekly. | Yearly. |
|--|---------|---------|
| | s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Pay, 6d. a day | 3 6 | 9 2 6 |
| Bread money, 1½d. a day | 10½ | 2 5 7½ |
| Allowance for necessities (approx.) | 1 | 1 5 4½ |
| | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| | 4 5½ | 12 13 6 |

This money was to be applied as follows :—

| | Weekly. | Yearly. |
|---------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| | s. d. | £ s. d. |
| To the soldier for food | 3 0 | 7 16 5½ |
| To the Captain for necessities | | 3 18 7 |
| Leaving a balance of about | 4½ | 18 5½ |
| | | <hr/> |
| | | 12 13 6 |

If at the end of the year any balance of the 18s. 5½d. remained in the Captain's hands after paying for necessities, it was to be given to the soldier. The minimum expenditure, however, worked out at £3 5s. 5d.,⁹ and it is feared that the soldier seldom received more than his 6d. a day, of which he was at once deprived for his food. During the period various minor adjustments were made with regard to stoppages and allowances, but generally the above figures apply.

In 1797 the various allowances of the soldier were consolidated with 6d. a day, and his nominal pay was fixed at 1s. a day. Out of the 7s. a week provided 4s. were paid to the soldier for subsistence, 1s. 6d. to the Captain for necessities and 1s. 6d. given to the soldier in cash subject to deductions for washing and for articles to clean clothing and appointments. It was also ordained that if the rations cost more than the 4s. provided, the difference

might be charged to the Government. It had previously been the custom for the soldiers to receive a free supply of beer, but in 1800 the supply was discontinued and an allowance of 1d. a day called "beer money" was issued in lieu. The beer previously supplied by the publican must have been the thinnest of "small beer" to have been provided out of the sum given him; it seems that beer if not improving in quality was becoming more costly to produce, and the protests of the publicans resulted in 1d. a day beer money.

The normal contract or engagement of the soldier was for life, but this was frequently modified when the Army had to be augmented.

Enlistment. In 1745 a man might enlist for two years, and in 1759 and 1775 for three years or until the end of the war. During the French Revolutionary Wars men could also enlist for service in Europe only. To encourage enlistment a bounty was given which varied with the term of the engagement; it seems, however, that the size of the bounty was the main consideration of the recruits, for most men enlisted for life and to serve in any quarter of the globe.

According to Fortescue, the arrangements for sea transport at this time and until the end of the century were appalling. "The **Transport by Sea.** Board of Transport treated ships merely as ships and not as abodes for soldiers. Consequently healthy men were often embarked for long voyages upon infected vessels, wherein they perished by the score. It is difficult in these days to realize the perils and discomforts patiently endured by the officers and men in leaky transports when frequently they could not sleep dry for weeks together. Not the least of the dangers was the drunkenness and incompetence of the masters and mates, which on at least one occasion compelled a Captain of Infantry to take command and navigate a ship from the West Indies to England."

The last half of the century saw modifications, but few real changes in the clothing and equipment. White gaiters, always damp with fresh pipeclay and a constant cause of rheumatism, were changed for black linen in 1767, and in 1784 the linen was changed for wool. The three-cornered hat lost one of its corners and became the cocked hat, looped back and front and affording no protection from sun or rain.

Clothing and Equipment.¹⁰ Wigs had gone out of fashion with the French Revolution, and frizzing, plastering and powdering the hair had become the mode. Stiff curls were worn on each of the temples, and a long tail behind, the whole plastered and powdered. The officers could perhaps afford pomatum, but the privates used the end of a tallow candle to keep this wonderful head-dress in order. In 1804 the tails were reduced to seven inches in length, and three years later abolished.¹¹

Throughout the ages, the weight carried by the soldier has been a matter of grave concern; in peace it has always been the custom to add more and

more equipment, much of which has to be discarded in war. In 1762 the weight carried by the soldier, in addition to the clothes and equipment he wore, amounted to sixty-three pounds made up as follows :—

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|--------|
| Coat | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5 lb. | 2 oz. |
| Firelock | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11 lb. | |
| Knapsack with 2 shirts, 2 stocks, 2 pair stockings, 1 pair summer breeches, 1 pair shoes, brushes and blackball | | | | | | | | |
| | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7 lb. | 10 oz. |
| Other items and six days' provisions | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 39 lb. | 7 oz. |
| | | | | | | | <hr/> | |
| | | | | | | | 63 lb. | 3 oz. |

At the commencement of the Napoleonic Wars, officers of the grenadier company were armed with fusil and sword, and other officers with a sword and esponton. Sergeants carried a sword and halbert, drummers a short curved sword, and privates a firelock and bayonet, except those of the grenadier company, who carried a sword in addition.

Prior to 1783 the method of raising troops was very much in the hands of the Colonel, whose authority was a sort of contract between **Administration.** himself and the Crown, from whom he received a "beating order" enabling him to enlist men and holding him responsible for maintaining his regiment up to establishment. The sums for recruiting expenses and for pay and clothing were issued to him in gross; and, subject to certain limitations as to the amount of bounties, he and his officers made their own bargains with the recruits.

The sums for recruiting expenses in each regiment were carried to a fund known as the "stock purse," and any balance available at the end of the year was divided between the commanders of companies, one of whom was the Colonel himself. Under this system the officers had a pecuniary interest in keeping down recruiting expenses both by obtaining men cheaply and by prolonging the service of men enlisted. The system led to many abuses, such as the enlistment of the criminal class, as an alternative to deportation, the inclusion of children and other non-effectives as effective men, and even the inclusion of bogus names on the muster roll.

How far these abuses extended to the 48th and 58th we cannot say; the 58th at any rate in 1777 seem to have been particular about the type of man enlisted. This is shown by a letter from Colonel Cochrane to Ensign Forrest, at home on recruiting duty, in which he says: "It is not the getting of many recruits that is the thing, if they are not good ones. I must beg that you will pay regard as to characters as it is for the honour of the Regiment; men of infamous characters are a very bad acquisition, and when I join the Regiment, I shall always endeavour to get rid of such."¹⁸

In 1783 the Pay Office was reorganized and recruiting ceased to be of pecuniary interest to the officers, but was placed in the hands of a central

recruiting department at the War Office. Some of the Colonels made objection to the loss of their "stock purse" and the curtailment of their initiative; but good officers continued to exert themselves for the well-being of their men, while the neglect and eccentricities of extravagant Colonels was diminished.

In the matter of discipline, few changes had been made. Flogging was still the main form of punishment, with the "Black Hole"

Discipline. as the usual alternative for minor offences. The Drum-Major and his assistants were the administrators of discipline, and the Drum-Major was charged to have with him always "his apparatus for punishing, as it is often found necessary to hold regimental courts-martial at the drum head; and it should be an established rule that a man that receives one hundred lashes, or more, should pay the Drum-Major two pence, and if punished a second time for another offence six pence. No cat to have more than nine tails."¹³

Another interesting order at the time was that the private soldier was to retire to his quarters whenever there is any mob, bull baiting or football match, on pain of being punished for disobedience of orders. Football was evidently regarded as an occasion for brawling in those days.

The ordinary salute of the soldier was to remove the hat. This practice dated from the days of armour and represented that the man placed himself in a defenceless position. Owing to the difficulty of a grenadier pulling off his tall head-dress, he was taught to salute "by carrying the back of his hand to the front of the cap." This was to represent the motions of a knight raising his vizor, the open hand to the front showing that though raised it contained no missile. The practice of giving "eyes right" originated from the olden days, when it was the privilege of men at arms to look their superiors in the face, while others must pass with downcast eyes.



Breast Plate Badge 1792

CHAPTER XIII

(1/48TH, JUNE—DECEMBER, 1809)

(2/48TH, MARCH—DECEMBER, 1809)

(2/58TH, JUNE—DECEMBER, 1809)

THE PENINSULAR WAR—PASSAGE OF THE DOURO (MAY, 1809)—ARRIVAL OF 1/48TH AND 2/58TH—COLONEL DONELLAN—THE BATTLE OF TALAVERA—THE MAIN ATTACK—DEATH OF COLONEL DONELLAN—MAJOR MIDDLEMORE—ANNIVERSARY OF THE BATTLE—WITHDRAWAL FROM TALAVERA.

(See Maps, pages 137 and 179.)

THE defeat of the French fleet at Trafalgar in October, 1805, had destroyed Napoleon's hopes for renewing his plans for an invasion of

The Peninsular War.

England. He therefore issued the Berlin Decree, which aimed at shutting out England from the markets of Europe, hoping by these indirect means to bring her to her knees. Portugal, however, refused to be bound by the decree, and Napoleon, in 1807, sent an army under Junot to force her to submission. At the same time an effort was being made by Napoleon to place his brother Joseph Bonaparte on the throne of Spain. The Spaniards, however, revolted, and Junot found himself cut off from France just as an English expedition landed on the coast of Portugal under Sir Arthur Wellesley. Defeated at Vimiero, Junot was, however, allowed by the Convention of Cintra to return with his army to France in British ships.

Napoleon then invaded Spain in person and, sweeping everything before him, set Joseph on the throne in Madrid. It is probable that the Spanish army would have been altogether destroyed had not Sir John Moore drawn off the main striking force of the French in pursuit of his own small British force which retreated to Corunna and in January, 1809, embarked for England.

The only British troops now remaining in the Peninsula were approximately eleven thousand men under Sir John Craddock in Portugal. The situation was serious. At the end of March a French army under Soult had captured Oporto from the Portuguese, and the Spanish Army, under Cuesta, had been defeated by another French army, under Victor, at Medellin, leaving both the northern and southern frontiers of Portugal unprotected. If Portugal was to be saved, drastic measures were necessary, and the British Government decided to continue, despite all that had happened, to maintain the struggle

in the Peninsula, and with that object to reinforce substantially our troops in Portugal. It was considered that active British operations in Portugal, apart from their local effect on Portugal and Spain, would be the most effective assistance to Austria's renewed effort to overthrow Napoleon by containing a large proportion of Napoleon's forces.

It was in these circumstances that the 2/48th embarked at Monkstown on 13th March, 1809, under Lieutenant-Colonel G. H. Duckworth, and arrived in the Tagus on 4th April. Other reinforcements transferred from Ireland at the same time consisted of the 2nd Battalions of the 7th, 30th, 53rd, 66th and 83rd Regiments.

As we have shown, there were two French armies threatening Lisbon, Soult's army holding Oporto at the mouth of the River Douro in the north, and Victor's army on the Tagus in the south. Wellesley decided to deal with Soult first, and, leaving a small force under General Mackenzie to contain Victor, concentrated the remainder of his available forces, British and Portuguese, at Coimbra, the concentration being completed early in May.

On 5th May the troops were reviewed at Coimbra and reorganized in brigades, some of the best of the Portuguese battalions being included in the British brigades. The 2/48th¹ were, however, in an all-British brigade under General Hill along with the 1/3rd and the 2/66th.

While the main body of Soult's army was still north of the Douro, Mermet's division had been thrown across the river, with Franceschi's cavalry pushed out as a covering screen towards the River Vouga, which runs into the sea at Aviero. On 6th May Wellesley commenced his advance on Oporto. There were two roads from Coimbra, one inland by which he moved his main body, and the other along the coast through Aviero and Ovar by which he sent the brigades of Generals Hill (including the 2/48th) and Cameron.

At Aviero the River Vouga flows through a great lagoon before finally reaching the sea, the town of Ovar being at the north end of the lagoon. Wellesley had made arrangements to collect at Aviero all the fishing boats available, and by this means to transfer Hill's troops to Ovar and so take Franceschi in the rear. Hill's own brigade was transported first, but remained concealed at Ovar while the ships returned for Cameron's troops, but by the time they arrived the French had discovered the danger threatening them and had withdrawn. It will be seen that, though in itself unsuccessful, this manœuvre had considerable effect in future operations. The French south of the Douro now fell back steadily, and on the night of 11th May their rear-guard had crossed the river, the bridge of boats had been destroyed, and all boats removed to the north side of the river.

Soult's troops, amounting to some twenty thousand men, were now in what appeared to be an almost impregnable position on the north bank of the Douro. Soult's one fear of attack was that the boats which had moved Hill's

brigade to Ovar would be brought round to the Douro and the same manœuvre repeated of landing the troops in his rear. He therefore concentrated his attention on the mouth of the river and left the river bank at the town of Oporto almost unguarded. Above the town the river is fully five hundred yards across, but from the Convent of Serra it narrows and deepens, flowing between lofty cliffs past the city.

It was then that an officer on Wellesley's staff discovered a skiff on the south side of the river and four large barges were seen apparently unguarded on the farther shore, which he also managed to secure. Wellesley, from the Convent on the south side of the river, seeing few French guards or patrols above the town, immediately ordered Hill's brigade to cross and occupy the Seminary, a large isolated building surrounded by a high wall, which extended to the river on each side. The Buffs were the first to cross, followed in succession by the 2/48th and the 2/66th, and these troops, lining the outer wall of the Seminary and supported by guns from the south of the river, beat off several fierce attacks by at least six French battalions.

In these attacks the French lost heavily, but the British battalions, protected by the walls of the Seminary, lost only 77 men, of whom 17 belonged to the 2/48th. The casualties included Major James Erskine who was severely wounded, 6 rank and file killed and 12 wounded.

Soult, realizing the seriousness of the situation, was now compelled to call on the troops guarding the quays in the neighbourhood of the demolished bridge, hoping with them to clear the Seminary. But the moment they were withdrawn the townspeople hurried to the water's edge, launched the boats secured to the northern bank and paddled them over to the other side. The remainder of Wellesley's force were thus enabled to cross, and, led by the 29th, drove the French from the town.

Hill's brigade (Buffs, 2/48th, 2/66th) were thanked on the spot by the Commander-in-Chief. In his dispatch of 12th May covering the operations of the three days, he states: "I cannot say too much in favour of the officers and troops. They have marched in four days over eighty miles of most difficult country, have gained many important positions and have engaged and defeated three different bodies of the enemy troops." Later he calls particular attention to "the conduct of the Buffs, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Drummond; the 48th, commanded by Colonel Duckworth; and the 66th, commanded by Major Murray."

In an Order dated 10th May, 1837, "His Majesty was most graciously pleased to permit the Regiment to wear on its Colours and appointments the word 'Douro' in commemoration of the distinguished conduct of the late 2nd Battalion of the Corps at the passage of the Douro on 12th May, 1809"; this being the first battle honour gained for the Regiment by a service battalion.

Soult, completely defeated, at once commenced a precipitate retreat. He next heard that a British force under Marshal Beresford had cut off his

road to the west, leaving him only a line of retreat through the bare mountains to the north. As it was impossible for him to take his wheeled transport over these rough tracks he destroyed his artillery, military chest and baggage, and loaded his horses with musket ammunition and sick men. Wellesley was unable to pursue at once; his men were fatigued after their heavy marches of the past few days, his artillery and baggage had to be ferried over the Douro and the troops had outrun their supplies. When at last he was able to move, the French had obtained too great a start and he was unable to bring them to battle. He did follow for a few days, but on the 17th May ceased the pursuit and ordered his army south to the Tagus. The 2/48th with the remainder of Hill's brigade arrived at Coimbra on 26th May, moving on to Abrantes on 2nd June, where they arrived on 7th June.

Though Soult's army had not been destroyed at the Battle of the Douro, it had been thoroughly demoralized and seemed for the moment no longer a danger. Wellesley therefore decided to carry out the second part of his plan and to turn his attention to the southern French army under Marshal Victor. This army had defeated the Spaniards under Cuesta in March, but hearing of Soult's defeat and being short of provisions, Victor had withdrawn from the Portuguese frontier to Talavera.

For some weeks shortage of money and transport rendered a move from Abrantes, where the British army was being concentrated, impossible; but at last on 27th June the advance commenced and the main body, marching through Costello Branco and Coria, arrived at Plasencia on 8th July. Here once more lack of transport delayed the advance, which was not continued until 17th July.

In view of after events, the delay appears to have been fortunate; for it enabled the 1/48th to join the army. The 1/48th had been stationed at Gibraltar, and approval had been given to Wellesley to exchange them and the 1/61st, who were also at Gibraltar, for two younger and less experienced battalions.

The 1/48th under Colonel Donellan had arrived at Lisbon by 22nd June, but was not in sufficient time to be ready to march with the remainder of the army. The strength of the battalion was 52 sergeants, 22 drummers and 906 rank and file, in addition to officers.

On 20th July a junction was made between the British and Spanish armies at Oropesa, and it seems that on this day the 1/48th came up with the remainder of the army.

The 2/58th also joined the Peninsular army about this time, embarking at Portsmouth on 21st June. It is reported that they were 800 strong and accompanied by 85 women and 100 children, including a family of orphans. On arrival they were stationed at Lisbon under Marshal Beresford to guard the base.



CHARLES DONELLAN,
circa 1790, whilst serving in the 15th Foot.

A contemporary officer, writing in "The Naval and Military Sketch Book," of 1844, gives a sketch of the character of Colonel Donellan. Donellan of the 48th, who, he states, was nicknamed "Old Charley" by the troops because of his eccentricities.

He appears to have been immensely popular with the Regiment. It is recorded of him that he commanded without ever resorting to flogging, the normal punishment for more serious offences, with no lack of discipline. He is also stated to have been the last officer in the army to wear the old three-cornered hat.

Another old custom he insisted on maintaining was the powdering of hair, though this had been discontinued officially for many years.

The officer quoted above writes of him :—

"This officer has been styled 'the last of the powderers,' for, in despite of new-fangled customs, he persevered to the last in maintaining the good old cauliflower head, and would as soon have appeared, on parade, without sash and sword, as having omitted to undergo the operation of having his hair dressed with powder and pomatum. From early youth he had accustomed himself to the process, and it formed, in his estimation, a vitally essential part of a soldier's costume.

"'Old Charley' was most remarkable for his close adherence to custom, and he was often heard to mourn over the economy which had reduced the number of iron pins employed, and the animal matter used, from two pounds per head, per diem, to three ounces. The powdering rooms with which barracks were formerly provided, for the express purpose of twisting the tails of the battalion into dense knobs, and beautifying the soldiers' heads with a conglomeration of rancid suet, whiting and meal, were by him held sacred; and he would never permit those sanctuaries to be defiled by their being applied to less honourable purposes. Jack boots and white buckskin breeches were also objects of his adoration. This officer, though most whimsical in many points, was possessed of qualifications of a superior description, he governed his regiment, 2/48th, without flogging; and when reviewed by Sir David Baird, on the Curragh of Kildare, was highly complimented upon its efficiency and general good order."

On 21st July a General Order was issued for the whole army to parade at 5 o'clock in the evening on the right of the high road from Oropesa towards Talavera, to be seen by the Spanish General Cuesta, who arrived on the ground clad in an antiquated uniform of the seventeenth century, and in an old-fashioned coach drawn by mules. Colonel Donellan, with the 1/48th, had just rejoined the army, and on reporting shortly before the review was invited by Wellesley to join his staff on their ride along the array of drawn-up troops. Colonel Donellan had previously been commanding the 2/48th, but on a vacancy occurring had been transferred to the 1/48th, and for some time had lost sight of his old battalion. The 2/48th did not yet know that their old

commander had joined the army, and the following description of the discovery being made is given by one of the officers.

"The battalion which he commanded first, and for the longest time, was the second; but he was removed to the first, on a vacancy occurring, and for some time 'Old Charley' lost sight of his favourite men. Previously to the Battle of Talavera, Lord Wellington reviewed his whole army, on the plain, in order to show to the Spanish General, his ally, a specimen of British troops; and a noble sight it must have been. As the Generals rode along the line, every soldier stood perfectly motionless, not the movement of a muscle of the face being observable. All of a sudden, however, a bustle and murmur was remarked in one regiment—its line had lost its usual statue-like appearance, and caps, heads, tongues, and hands, seemed to be undergoing an electric shock.

"The dismay of the officers in command at these unlooked-for proceedings, may be imagined, and Lord Wellington was evidently chagrined at witnessing such a departure from discipline. The truth is that the regiment guilty of this highly irregular conduct was the second battalion of the 48th, and it was caused by their seeing Colonel Donellan riding among the staff-officers, in his stiff buckskins, powdered hair, and square set cocked hat. The men were those he had formerly commanded; and the sight of him, at an unexpected moment, had given rise to the murmur of 'There goes Old Charley!' 'God bless the old boy!' 'Long life to him!' and such like expressions—all very well merited, but rather out of place. The cause was no sooner explained to the Commander-in-Chief, than he became perfectly satisfied; and all were delighted as 'Old Charley' uncovered his head, and, while showers of white powder were displaced, waved his cocked hat, cordially saluting his old friends, in return for their compliment."

On joining the army the 1/48th were brigaded under Stewart with the 29th and the 1st Battalion of Detachments, formed from convalescents and other details of Sir John Moore's regiments. The 2/48th remained in their old brigade with the 2/3rd, the 2/66th and one company of the 5/60th. This brigade was now commanded by Tilson, and with Stewart's brigade formed the second division under General Hill.²

**The Battle of
Talavera,
27th-28th July,
1809.**

Hearing of the approach of the allied armies, Victor withdrew from Talavera and Toledo and was followed by Cuesta's advanced guard across the Alberche. Being strongly reinforced at Toledo, however, he turned on Cuesta and drove him back. Wellesley, therefore, seeing that the French intended to fight, pushed forward a division on 27th July to delay their advance and cover the withdrawal of the Spaniards across the River Alberche, and sought for a suitable position in which to accept battle.

The position he selected extends for nearly three miles to the north of the town of Talavera, and its general line is marked by the bed of the Portina, a brook, almost dry in summer, which runs from north to south and falls into



THE BATTLE OF TALAVERA, 27th-28th JULY, 1809.

By courtesy of Lieut.-Colonel C. de W. Crookshank.

the Tagus at Talavera. The right of the position rested on the Tagus, where the town of Talavera, with its stout walls and outer protection of gardens and olive groves, almost took the position of a fortress.

For a mile and a half beyond the northern wall of Talavera, the ground, covered by gardens and other groves, is perfectly flat, and then gradually rises to a long open hill, running east and west, the Cerro De Medellin, on which the left wing was to rest.

The eastern front of this hill descends steeply to the ravine of the Portina brook, beyond which rises another hill, the Cerro De Cascajal. To the north of these two hills is a narrow lateral valley only half a mile broad, beyond which rises the mountain range of the Sierra Di Segurilla.

It was decided that the Spanish army should hold Talavera and the enclosed ground for a mile to the north. This position had great natural strength, but Wellesley had already discovered that the Spaniards could not manœuvre and would be safer behind walls than in the open. The junction between the Spaniards and British was a knoll called the Pasar De Vergara, where a battery was placed, on whose left was the Fourth Division. On the north of the Fourth Division the enclosed ground ended and cover ceased. Here were to be placed the First Division with the Third Division as support. Finally Hill's Second Division was to hold the key to the position in the Cerro De Medellin.

About noon on 27th July the French crossed the River Alberche and were engaged by the Third Division, which, having fought a delaying action about the Casa De Salinas, retired to its place in the line.

It was about seven in the evening when Victor's columns emerged from the wood facing the Allied line. He sent forward Merlin's Light Cavalry in the direction of Talavera to feel for the front of the Spaniards. When the Spaniards saw them they opened a tremendous infantry fire along the whole line, though the enemy were too far off to take any damage, and immediately after four Spanish battalions broke and fled to the rear in disorder.

Wellesley, who saw the rout, is reported to have declared that he could see no reason for their behaviour except that they must have been frightened by the crash of their tremendous volley.

The remaining Spaniards, however, stood firm and filled up the gap in the line.

All the British were now in position, except the Second Division, who were drawn up on the reverse slope of the Cerro De Medellin preparatory to making their final depositions. That the summit of the hill was unoccupied was noted by Victor, who realized that if the hill were captured the rest of the Allied line could not possibly be maintained. Therefore, although darkness was coming on, he advanced three regiments; one (the 24th) was to envelope the hill from the north, another (the 96th) from the south and a third (the 9th Legèr) frontally. Of these regiments, the 24th lost their way in the dark,

and the 96th were held up by the left wing of the First Division, but the 9th Legèr reached the summit of the hill. General Hill was at the time giving orders with regard to the disposition of his Division. His description of what happened is as follows: "I found I had not sufficient troops to occupy the ground without leaving considerable intervals between the regiments. During the operation I remember perfectly well that I was with the 48th Regiment, in conversation with Colonel Donellan, when, it being nearly dark, I observed some men on the hilltop fire a few shots among us. Not having an idea that the enemy were so near, I said at the moment I was sure it was the Old Buffs, as usual making some blunder. I desired Donellan to get into line, and would ride up the hill and stop the firing."

He did ride up the hill, but soon discovered his mistake. He was wounded and almost captured, and his staff officer killed, but he managed to get back to Stewart's brigade (including the 29th and 1/48th) and ordered them to charge and clear the hill. The French could not withstand the charge, and soon were rolled back in disorder into the bed of the Portina with a loss of some three hundred men.

Wellesley, in his dispatch of 29th July, states: "Major-General Hill has reported to me, in a particular manner, the conduct of the 29th Regiment and of the 1st Battalion the 48th Regiment in these affairs."

The night was not a peaceful one, the troops being constantly called to "Stand to Arms." The constant movement in the French

28th July. lines gave every indication of a fresh attack at any moment, and this was confirmed by the reports of French deserters. As dawn broke, the French army could be seen drawn up in order of battle from the Cerro De Cascajal on the north to the Pasar De Vergara on the south. The object which drew most attention was an immense solid column at the extreme right of the hostile line, on the lower slopes above the Portina, evidently ready to advance at the word of command. Four batteries were massed on the slopes of the Cascajal Hill, and in the distance behind the infantry were long lines of cavalry dressed in all colours of the rainbow, and to the rear of them more black masses were slowly rolling into view. It was easily seen that little or nothing lay in front of the Spaniards, and that at least five-sixths of the French army was disposed for an attack on the British front, also that the main strength of the attack was to be directed against the Cerro De Medellin, where stood the Second Division, with the two battalions of the 48th. In all there were forty thousand men ready for the advance against twenty thousand sabres and bayonets of Wellesley's thin red line.

At five in the morning the French bombardment commenced, to which the British, who were short of artillery, could only inadequately reply. Wellesley himself, who was on the Cerro De Medellin in the rear of Hill's (2nd) Division, at once ordered Stewart's and Tilson's brigades to withdraw from the skyline and lie down, leaving the front covered by the light

companies. After a few minutes the English position was obscured, for the damp of the morning air prevented the smoke of the French guns from rising, and a strong east wind blew it across the Portina and up the slopes of the Cerro De Medellin. So thick was the smoke that the defenders heard rather than saw the start of the French advance, and only realized its near approach when they saw their own skirmishers returning up the slope on to the main position.

The light companies of Hill's Division filed back slowly and unwillingly, turning back often to fire and keeping their order with the regularity of a field day. General Hill, impatient to clear his front, bade the buglers to sound to bring them in more quickly, and as they filed to the rear in a leisurely way, was heard to shout—it was one of the only two occasions on which he was heard to swear—"Damn their filing, let them come in anyhow."

When the light companies had fallen back, the French were at last visible through the smoke. Protected almost to the last by the fire of their artillery, they suffered little during the advance up the slope, and when they had got within one hundred yards of the skyline, Hill bade his six battalions stand to their feet and advance. The two battalions of the 48th were in the centre of the line, side by side, the 29th and the Battalion of Detachments being on their left and the Buffs and 66th on their right.

As they lined the crest they delivered a splendid volley, whose report was as sharp and precise as a field day. The effect was murderous, as was always the case when line met column.³ In spite of the French superiority in numbers, they lost the impetus of advance, halted and kept up a furious fire for some moments. During the musketry fight Colonel Donellan was riding along the line, steadying and encouraging the battalion, and had two horses shot under him. At one time he perceived a few of his men fall from a discharge of musketry, at such a distance as made him doubtful of being himself in range: "Curse the fellows," said he; "those darned long guns of theirs can shoot at two miles off," and immediately advanced his line to such proximity to the French as to make them shift their ground.

But "when it came to a standing fight of musketry there was never a doubt in any Peninsular battle how the round would end. The French fire began to slacken, the front of the columns shook and wavered."³ Then Stewart called on his brigade to charge, and his three battalions and those of Tilson's brigade "rushed like a torrent down the slope, bayoneting and sweeping back the enemy to the line of black and muddy pools that marked the course of the Portina. Many of the pursuers even crossed the ravine and chased the flying French divisions"³ up the slopes of the Cascajal Hill, until checked by the French reserve. Hill's men were re-formed on the lower slopes of Medellin Hill and returned to their old position unmolested, for Victor made no counter-attack. Thus was defeated the second French attempt to storm Medellin Hill.

There then occurred a strange pause in the fighting, which is thus described by Private Hewitt of the 48th in a letter to his wife :—

“ The fighting was terrific from 5 o'clock until 9 when literally both armies seem to have come to an agreement to halt. The sun was bearing a dreadful power upon us, and increasing our thirst to such a degree that we required water, which could only be obtained at the risk of life.

“ During a long pause in the work of slaughter the men of both armies met at a little stream which ran near the centre of the battle, and met together as friends, with one common desire, to satisfy a craving of nature, more urgent than their affair of war. The British soldiers one side of the stream and the French on the other filled their cans without any molestation of each other ; nay with words of kindred sympathy for one another.

“ Half our band went to the stream for water about 10 o'clock, and each returned, bearing for his thirsty companions under arms the life-giving draught of refreshment ; many a wounded fellow did I that day receive a blessing from, when I held to his parched lips the anticipated cup.” [The duty of the bandsmen, then as now, was to care for the wounded.]

“ It was a generous sight to see the armies for a while, remaining quiet, and assisting to remove the wounded from that field over which they were so soon to pour again the volleys of destruction. That pause saved hundreds who would have been trampled to death. Enemies met as friends, and when the trumpet gave again the sound to prepare for battle, soldiers waved the hand of friendship to each other and resumed their ranks as hostile as ever ! So strange are the incidents of war !”

Victor was not yet finally defeated and prepared a third attack in a great effort to break the line. As in the previous attack, the full **The Main Attack.** force was directed against the British front, only a division of cavalry being detailed to watch the Spaniards. Sir Arthur Wellesley from his position on Medellin Hill soon perceived the French plan, which was to attack the hill frontally and at the same time to envelop it from the north, to meet which threat he despatched a portion of his cavalry and a Spanish division.

It was about 2 o'clock in the afternoon when the French artillery opened, and soon the whole French army was seen to be advancing. In a short time the battle was raging all down the line. On the British right the Fourth Division was holding its own and twice counter-attacked, driving back the French in disorder. These counter-attacks wisely stopped before they had gone far forward among the thickets.

In the centre the First Division was attacked by two French divisions, the men holding their fire till the French were within fifty paces of them ; then having delivered a single volley, the whole eight battalions firing as one man, they charged, driving the enemy in disorder beyond the Portina. Cameron's brigade was halted prudently a short distance beyond the brook,

but the Guards on their right and the King's German Legion on their left pressed on hotly, to find themselves confronted as two isolated and disorganized bodies with the fresh and compact columns which formed the French second line. The French guns on the Cerro De Cascajal were immediately turned on the advancing British, while the untouched French infantry closed upon them and bore them back. In their retreat the Guards and Germans carried Cameron's brigade away with them and the whole were thrown over the brook in disorder—joyfully chased by the French, who appeared victorious at last.⁴

When the Guards first made their rash charge, Sir Arthur Wellesley foresaw the issue of it and the danger in which they and the German Legion were placed. Critical as the situation was, he was equal to it, and the instrument he used to save it was the 48th. Still seven hundred strong even after their earlier losses, the Regiment was the strongest in Hill's Division and in it and Donellan, Wellesley had every confidence. He called to one of his staff : "Where is the 48th? Send the 48th to bring them out,"⁵ and the 48th had been moved down from Medellin Hill although "a rough battle was going on there."⁶

Descending the hill at full speed, the Regiment planted itself across the path of the advancing French in the nick of time. As Napier puts it : "The centre of the British was absolutely broken, and the fate of the day seemed to incline in the favour of the French, when suddenly Colonel Donellan, with the 48th Regiment, was seen advancing through the midst of the disorganized masses. At first it seemed as if this regiment must be carried away by the retiring crowds, but wheeling back by companies, it let them pass through the intervals, and then resuming its proud and beautiful line, marched against the right of the pursuing columns, and plied them with such a destructive musketry, and closed upon them with such a firm and regular pace, that the forward movement of the French was checked. The Guards and the Germans immediately rallied, and the French beginning to waver soon lost their advantage and the battle was restored."

As the 48th advanced, Mackenzie's brigade (24th, 31st and 45th) had come forward farther to the right, and at heavy cost had helped to stop the French advance.

Another account by the officer in the Regiment already quoted is as follows : "We came on double quick and formed in rear by companies, and through the intervals in our line the broken ranks of the Guards retreated. A close and well-directed fire from us arrested the progress of the victorious French, while with amazing celerity and coolness, the Guards rallied and reformed and in a few minutes advanced in turn to support us. As the enemy came on the men gave a loud huzza ; an Irish Regiment to the right (the 83rd) answered it with a thrilling cheer. It was taken up from regiment to regiment and passed along the whole British line. The leading files of the French halted, turned, and fled back and never made another effort."



THE BATTLE OF TALAVERA, 28th JULY, 1809.

Colonel Donellan, being seriously wounded, called the next senior officer, bowed, took off his hat and said, 'Major Middlemore, you will have the honour of leading the 48th to the charge.'

Presented to the History by Colonel R. H. Fraser.

No better example exists of how the fate of a whole army can be decided by the action of a single battalion. The strain of the fighting must have been great, to quote from the Regimental records: " Battles have not often lasted from the rising to the setting of the sun. How severe a trial of the courage, steadiness and discipline of the troops must have been this protracted contest which began on the afternoon of one day and continued through the night, and was not concluded until the evening of the next day."

The battle had hardly ended before a fresh terror arose. The sultry weather had so dried the grass that the smouldering cartridge cases had set it in a blaze. The wounded were seen in frantic agony, rising up and falling down in the flame and many were killed in this way who would otherwise have been saved. Many were the acts of bravery by the soldiers of all ranks in carrying their wounded comrades from the flames. It is recorded by Cobbold that the Drum-Major of the 48th saved a French officer of distinction, Count Rouille, who was lying wounded with a shattered leg, and that this officer, as a token of his thanks, gave him a gold snuff-box.

The percentage of casualties in this battle was among the heaviest known at that time; those of the 48th numbered 247, of which 176 (including 23 killed) were suffered by the 1/48th and 71 (13 killed) by the 2/48th.⁷

The cost of victory had, however, been heavy, for the Regiment had lost Colonel Donellan. It was in the advance of the battalion to the rescue of the Guards that Colonel Donellan was struck, his knee being broken in a most dangerous manner. Painful as must have been his wound, his countenance did not betray his suffering but preserved its usual expression. Calling Major Middlemore, the next senior officer, Colonel Donellan, seated erect in his saddle, took off his hat, bowed and said, " Major Middlemore, you will have the honour of leading the 48th to the charge."

The story of the charge has already been told. Meanwhile the Colonel was carried to the rear by four of the musicians and placed in a straw bed in the town of Talavera, where he had to be left behind when the army withdrew, as it was forced to do a few days later. Had there been surgeons to have amputated the limb on the instant, it is supposed he would have survived, but this not being the case mortification took place and he died on the fourth day after the battle.

Captain Boothby, R.E., who was also a wounded prisoner, reports in his diary that although it is quite impossible for him to refer to his fellow-prisoners, he would " not be satisfied to omit the name of Colonel Donellan, who displayed yet more heroism in contemplating the sure approach of his last hour, than when glowing with glorious courage, and cheering his men, he received his fatal wound."⁸

He was buried by the French, " who showed his remains the greatest respect, and their superior officers joined our own in following them to the

grave, wherein he was laid with military honours."⁸ "Some of them recalled that they had seen him at the head of his battalion, and warmly praised the veteran's gallantry." His soldierlike appearance, too, commanded their regard, and they "carried his body in a cloak to the spot where he had led his Regiment so bravely, and buried him there with the full honours of a soldier."

In the banking account of the 48th in one of the old ledgers preserved by Cox and Co. is an entry debiting Colonel Donellan with "Cash 80 dollars paid you by Lieut:Colonel Guard of the 45th Regt. when left wounded at Talavera in Aug. 1809 by desire of Lord Wellington at 4/6d per dollar—£18."

There is a further entry which shows his executor was Captain Anthony H. Donellan, who was serving, as it happened, in the 58th at the time.

The Regiment was twice mentioned in Wellesley's dispatches on the battle which state: "The advance of the Guards to the
Honours. extent to which it was carried was nearly fatal to us, and the battle was certainly saved by the advance, position and steady conduct of the 48th Regiment." The following is an extract from a General Order published by him on 29th July at Talavera: "The charge made by the Brigade of Guards under the command of Brig.-General H. Campbell on the enemy's attacking column was a most gallant one and the mode in which it was afterwards covered by the 1st Battalion 48th was most highly creditable to that most excellent Corps and to their commanding officer Major Middlemore."

Major Middlemore, who became Colonel of the Regiment in 1843, was specially recommended for promotion by Sir Arthur Wellesley in a letter written to the Military Secretary on 29th July, of which the following is an extract: "He commanded the 1st Battalion 48th Regiment, after Colonel Donellan was wounded. During the greater part of the advance of that corps which tended so much to the final success of the action yesterday by covering and enabling General Sherbrook's Division to form again. He is an excellent officer and if his conduct did not, I almost say, demand promotion, his uniform good conduct and attention to his duty would do so."⁹

In consequence of victory, for which the 48th were so largely responsible, Sir Arthur Wellesley, an old officer of the 58th, was promoted to the peerage with the name and title of Lord Viscount Wellington of Talavera and of Wellington in Shropshire.

By an order published in the *London Gazette* of 12th November, 1816, His Royal Highness the Prince Regent approved the bearing of the word "Talavera" on the Colours and appointments of the Regiment. The anniversary of the battle is still kept by the 48th, the two days being reserved as holidays. Sports and entertainments are held, and a dinner is given by the officers to all available officers of the Regiment. At this dinner the Talavera Cup, which was purchased by the officers of the Regiment in 1877, each officer giving two days' pay, is filled and passed round, and a solemn toast is drunk

to the Regiment and the memory of those who have given up their lives in its service.

On the centenary of the battle in 1909 two silver statuettes were presented to the Mess. The first, subscribed for by old members of the Regiment, represents an officer in 1809, and the other, purchased by the serving officers at the time, represents an officer a hundred years later. The names of those officers who subscribed are engraved on the bases of the statuettes.

On 2nd August Lord Wellington received news that the French army under Soult, which he had defeated at the Douro, had been reorganized, and, descending on his communications from the north through the Pass of Banos, which the Spaniards had failed to block or defend, as Wellesley had expected them to do, had arrived at Placentia. He therefore arranged with Cuesta that the Spaniards at Talavera should watch Victor while he turned once more to attack Soult. In consequence, the British army marched on 3rd August to Oropesa, where Wellington heard that Soult had arrived at Naval Moral, on the Tagus. At the same time he heard that Cuesta, threatened by the French, was retiring from Talavera ; he therefore crossed the Tagus at Arzobispo and, halting ten days at Jaraiceso (10th-20th August), moved on to Guadiana by 3rd September with his Headquarters at Badajoz. Here he remained until the end of the year.

**The Withdrawal
from Talavera.**



The Talavera Cup

CHAPTER XIV

(1/48TH, 1810-1811)

(2/48TH, 1810-1814)

CAMPAIGN OF 1810 IN PORTUGAL—BATTLE OF BUSACO—LINES OF TORRES VEDRAS—INVESTMENT OF BADAJOZ—BATTLE OF ALBUERA—CAPTURE OF MAJOR BROOKE—NARROW ESCAPE OF ADJUTANT DIXON—CAPTAIN CIMITIÈRE—BATTLE SCAVENGERS—MAJOR BROOKE'S ESCAPE—THE LAST OF THE 2/48TH—LIEUTENANT-COLONEL SIR JAMES WILSON—COMBAT AT ALDEA DA PONTE.

(See Maps, pages 148 and 179.)

AT the end of 1809 Lord Wellington received information that the French were threatening an attack on Portugal by way of Ciudad Rodrigo and Almeida. He therefore moved the bulk of his force northwards to meet the threat, and in order to watch the enemy in the south he left Hill with his Second Division, which included both battalions of the 48th.¹

On 4th October General Hill's Division was reviewed by Lord Wellington on the plain at Montijo, and on Christmas Day they moved forward from Portalegre, where they had been stationed, to Abrantes. Later, in view of a French threat to Badajoz, Hill once more returned to Portalegre.

The triumphal finish to his campaign in Austria at the Battle of Wagram (July, 1809) had by May, 1810, enabled Napoleon to reinforce his army in Spain with seventy thousand picked men, in order to drive the British into the sea. Massena, the best General in the French Army after Napoleon himself, was placed in charge of the operations, and, as had been expected, advanced on Ciudad Rodrigo, which fell on 10th July, after a month's siege. Almeida was next besieged and fell on 28th August.

Wellington retired slowly before the advancing French, laying waste the country as he went and leaving nothing behind to sustain his enemies. Meanwhile he had ordered Hill's Division also to withdraw northwards and, by the end of September, the whole army was once more concentrated about Coimbra. Wellington now decided to turn on his enemies, and at Busaco inflicted a sharp check on the heads of Massena's columns.

He selected a position on the Serra de Busaco, a ridge running north from the Mondego about Penacova; this ridge has a total length of about nine miles and rises abruptly from the broken country around; its sides are seamed with ravines, and it is strewn with great boulders and gorse, which make lateral communication difficult for individuals and almost impossible

for formed bodies of troops. Near the northern extremity of the ridge is the Convent of Busaco, surrounded by a wood and enclosed by a wall, and here Wellington made his headquarters. The length of the position was such that Wellington could not possibly hold a continuous line with his available troops, neither could the French attack at every point. He therefore concentrated his troops at the points where roads, of which there were three, crossed the ridge, and at the same time he prepared a lateral road along the western or reverse side of the ridge, along which he could move troops unseen by the enemy and concentrate at any threatened quarter.

Both battalions of the 48th were in Hill's Division, which was posted on the extreme right or southern end of the ridge, the 1/48th, under Inglis, with the 29th and 1/57th, and the 2/48th, under Stewart, with the 1/3rd, 2/31st and 2/66th. The 1/48th were commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Duckworth, who had been transferred from the 2/48th in accordance with his right as the senior officer of the Regiment, while the 2/48th were under the command of Major Brooke. Stewart is described by an officer of the Regiment^a as a "terrible fellow," with so great an affection for light troops that he formed an additional light company from each battalion. The officers of this second company did not wear "Light Bobs" dress, but were distinguished by a piece of lace round the right arm above the elbow.

On the morning of the 27th September the French attacked the centre of the British position in force, but arriving at the summit of the ridge breathless and disordered, they were no match for the British, who followed a volley at close range with a dashing charge. A further attack was made later on the centre, and it was rumoured that Foy's French brigade had broken our line. Hill's Division was hastily summoned from the right, and for some distance the whole of the eleven thousand men moved in one column at the double; they did not, however, come into action, for when they arrived the situation was already restored, and at two in the afternoon Massena gave up the attempt to carry the position; but finding unguarded a pass on Wellington's left which the Portuguese should have held, Massena was able to turn the position and force him to retire.

Lord Wellington had foreseen the possibility of the French army being reinforced, and he had for many months been preparing a triple series of fortifications across the peninsula on which Lisbon stands. The day after Busaco he commenced his withdrawal to these defences, which became known as the Lines of Torres Vedras. Hill's Division moved by Thomar and Santarem and took up their appointed position on the right of the line between Alhandra and Arroda on 10th October. On confronting these lines, Massena recognized that to carry them was a task harder by far than the unfortified Busaco position, and that any attempt to force the defences was doomed to failure; accordingly, on 14th November, he withdrew his army to Thomar.

L

**The Lines of
Torres Vedras.**

But Wellington, on his retirement, had cleared the country of means of sustenance, and the sufferings of the French army were great. The country was unable to support them, and their lines of communication were harassed by raids by Spanish and Portuguese irregulars. Sickness broke out in their camps, and the loss during the winter is estimated at not less than twenty-five thousand men. Seeing that the situation was hopeless, Massena decided to leave Portugal, and early in March, 1811, commenced his withdrawal to Salamanca, leaving, however, garrisons at Almeida and other places.

The 2/58th, which up to now, with the 2/88th and some others, had not been attached to any brigade or division, was quartered in the town of Torres Vedras itself. Later it returned to Lisbon and was once more employed on the toilsome duty of furnishing escorts along the lines of communication.

Meanwhile, on 8th March, Wellington sent a force consisting of Hill's Second Division and some Portuguese, under Sir William Beresford, to relieve Badajoz, which had been invested by Soult since 26th January; the force was, however, too late, for Badajoz fell on 11th March, and Hill's Division withdrew to Abrantes. The strategic importance of Badajoz cannot be overestimated, as it was the fortress controlling on the south the main line of advance of an army operating from Spain into Portugal or from Portugal into Spain. Movement beyond this fortress could be made only so long as it was held or masked by a large force. On 14th March Beresford, now reinforced by the Fourth Division, marched to recapture the fortress, and on 22nd March was concentrated at Portalegre. The advance was continued through Campo Maior and Elvas, and, the Guadiana being crossed on 5th April in spite of great difficulties on account of shortage of pontoons, the army moved to Olivenza.

Here they found themselves in dire need of stores as the Portuguese depot at Estremoz, where Beresford had been told to obtain all his supplies, was found to be empty. However, on 13th April a supply of stores and other material arrived, and on 18th April Beresford moved north again to the siege of Badajoz, and after delays caused by the sudden rise of the River Guadiana, the trenches for the siege were commenced on 8th May. On 11th May Beresford received news that a French corps was marching to the relief of Badajoz, and transferred all his stores to the north of the Guadiana, and on 13th May abandoned the siege and turned to meet the French, leaving the Fourth Division to watch Badajoz.

On 15th May Beresford with eight thousand British and ten thousand Portuguese moved on from Valverde to oppose the French at Albuera, where he was joined during the night by Blake with twelve thousand Spaniards.

The French corps turned out to be a force of twenty-four thousand men collected by Soult, whose advanced guard reached Almendralejo on 14th May, and, hearing that Beresford was at Albuera, turned westward to attack him.

The position selected by Beresford was along the crest of a slope overlooking the Albuera stream from the west, in advance of the centre of the position being the village of Albuera, situated on a precipitous knoll and enclosed by an unusually high wall. In the village he placed Alten's brigade of Germans, and in the rear of it, covering the roads to Valverde and Badajoz, he placed his British troops of the Second Division, on their left being the Portuguese, and on their right the Spaniards.

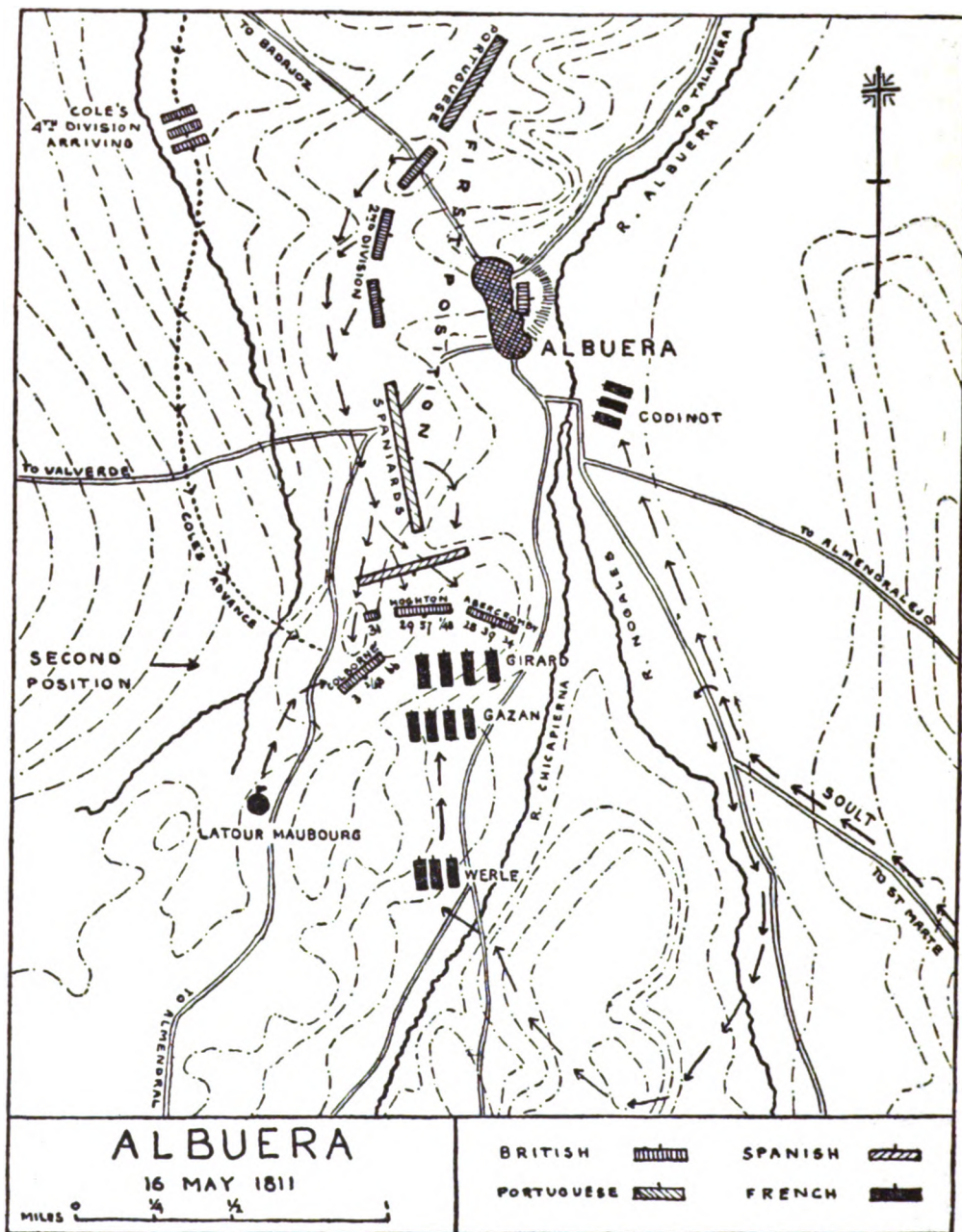
He made these dispositions feeling certain that Soult would attack his centre from the east in order to obtain possession of the road to Badajoz, but Soult, having reconnoitred the position had no such intention. He noticed that a gentle slope led up from the south to the right flank of the Allies, where the Spaniards were situated, and also that by making use of the ground, which was well wooded, he could obtain a concealed approach to within striking distance of their flank. He therefore decided on a feint attack in the centre and moved the bulk of his force against the Spaniards' right flank.

Fortunately a Spanish officer noticed the gleam of the French bayonets in time, and the Spaniards were able to form front to their flank in time to meet the first assault. Soon the attack commenced and, exposed to a heavy fusillade and a tempest of shot, the Spaniards stood most nobly and succeeded in repulsing the first French attack. The assault, however, was renewed, and after an hour's fighting the Spaniards commenced to retire, although they did not break and fly.

Realizing that the main attack was being made against the Spaniards' right flank and that they were hard pressed, Beresford ordered the Second Division, now commanded by Stewart, whose brigade had been taken over by Colborne, to hasten to their support. Rain had been falling, but they moved at a run in their wet clothing over the soaked and slippery grass. Colborne's brigade was the first to arrive, the 1/3rd leading, quickly followed by the 2/48th, the 2/66th and the 2/31st. They found the Spaniards and the French engaged on an equal front, and Stewart quickly realized that if they passed by the Spaniards' right flank they would be able to wheel and take the French attack in flank.

At first the manœuvre succeeded, and the French column, unexpectedly attacked in flank, were thrown into confusion. Volleys from the Buffs, 2/48th and 2/66th were being thrown into them from a distance of sixty paces, and they began to break. Seeing this, Colborne's brigade went forward with a cheer to complete their victory with the bayonet.

But this brigade, by its manœuvre, had left its own right flank and rear exposed, and Latour-Maubourg, commanding the French cavalry, determined to seize the opportunity to save his friends. He was aided by a blinding shower of rain which, with the smoke of battle, helped to conceal his movements as he launched his regiments on the flank and rear of Colborne's battalions. Taken



by surprise, the Buffs were staggered and rolled up in confusion, followed in succession by the 2/48th and 2/66th, and these three battalions were practically annihilated and their Colours captured. The lancers swept upon them like a whirlwind with sabre and lance, giving no quarter and even spearing the wounded as they lay. The killed were out of all proportion to the wounded and prisoners.³

Among those captured in the charge of the lancers was Major Brooke, who commanded the 2/48th. His own description of his capture is as follows : " After having been most severely wounded in the head, and plundered of everything I had about me, I was being led a prisoner between two French infantry soldiers, when one of these lancers rode up and deliberately cut me down. Then, taking the skirts of my regimental coat, he endeavoured to pull it over my head. Not satisfied with this brutality, the wretch tried by every means in his power to make his horse trample on me. From this miserable situation I was rescued by two French infantry soldiers, who, with a dragoon, guarded me to the rear. This last man had the kindness to carry me on his horse over the River Albuera, which from my exhausted state I could not have forded on foot."

The story of how Major Brooke escaped will be told later.

" Lieutenant Dixon, the Adjutant of the 2/48th, who was attached as Orderly Adjutant to General the Hon. W. Stewart, had a very narrow escape, being pursued by several of the lancers, and had his horse shot in the back by the column of the enemy when close engaged. And at this moment the General said, ' It is of no use, gentlemen, we must make the best of our way,' and Mr. Dixon was then closely pursued by two of the enemy's dragoons to the left of the Fusilier brigade (of Cole's Division) ; his poor animal, though having received his death wound, leaped a drain at the left of the fusiliers and by that means escaped, and the two dragoons fell into the hands of the fusiliers."

" The enemy behaved extremely bad to our officers when taken prisoners, taking all their money from them, and cutting and abusing them with their swords, the Major in particular, because he refused to give them his sword and a favourite watch which was a family concern."⁴

Meanwhile, Houghton's brigade (29th, 1/48th and 1/57th) arrived and formed in rear of the Spaniards who, broken at last, came flying to the rear with the lancers thrusting savagely among them. There was only one thing to be done—namely, to fire on friend and foe impartially, and by this means Houghton drove the lancers off. Fortescue says of the Spaniards : " They had stood under a terrible fire from enormously superior numbers for an hour and a half, remaining steadfast even when the British were firing into their rear ; they had fought very well and lost very heavily and their behaviour did them the highest honour."

The rout of the Spaniards left Houghton's brigade and the 2/31st,

Colborne's one surviving regiment, which owed its escape to not having deployed, to face the great mass of the French infantry. There was a short pause while Gazan's Division was replacing that of Girard, hitherto in the front line, and this gave Abercrombie's brigade time to come up and deploy on Houghton's other flank, continuing the line to the left of the 48th.

The following account of the action is taken from Fortescue. Stewart then rode up to his two brigades and called for three cheers, which were given with great enthusiasm, and led them up the slope to the crest. Meanwhile, Soult threw Gazan's Division into the fight, and the masses of men and artillery presented a formidable appearance to the six red-coated battalions when, on reaching the crest, the wind blew the smoke aside and for a moment revealed the enemy. The order of the British was on the extreme right the 2/31st, the only surviving regiment of Colborne's brigade, and then in succession the 29th, 57th, 1/48th, 28th and 34th, something over three thousand men in all, formed in double rank. Silently and steadily they advanced to within sixty yards of the enemy, unsupported as yet apparently by any artillery, and opened fire.

And then followed a duel so stern and resolute that it has few parallels in the annals of war. The survivors who took part in it on the British side seem to have passed through it as if in a dream, conscious of nothing but of dense smoke, constant closing towards the centre, a slight tendency to advance and an invincible resolution not to retire. The men stood like rocks, loading and firing into the mass before them, though frightfully punished, not so much by the French bullets as by grape-shot from the French cannon at very close range.

The line dwindled and dwindled continually, the intervals between battalions grew wide, and the men who were still on their legs edged in closer and closer to the Colours, but not one dreamed for a moment of anything but standing and fighting to the last. The fiercest of the stress fell on Houghton's brigade, wherein it seems every mounted officer fell. Houghton revealed himself as a hero in action; in the early part of the day he had appeared in a green frock-coat and had changed it for scarlet without dismounting, under a heavy fire from the French artillery. Later, though wounded, he remained in the saddle cheering on his men until his horse fell dead beneath him; he scrambled to his feet, but a minute later staggered and fell to rise no more. The Colonel of the 57th also had his horse shot dead under him, but led his regiment into action on foot. "Fifty-seventh, die hard!" was his adjuration to them, and when struck down by grape-shot he refused all help and continued to hearten his men to the fight. Colonel Duckworth of the 48th was shot dead at the head of the regiment.

The fight raged thus without advantage to either side until, at last, Cole's Fourth Division appeared bearing down obliquely on the French left flank. A murderous duel of musketry followed, and at length the French broke and fled; the shattered remnants of the Second Division, forgetting their losses,



THE BATTLE OF ALBUERA, 16th MAY, 1811.

“As the line thinned the men edged in closer to their colours.”

leaped forward with the bayonet to the pursuit. Thus, after six or seven hours of desperate conflict, the Battle of Albuera came to an end.

The losses had been terrible ; the 1/48th, from a strength before the battle of 33 officers and 464 men, had lost 16 officers and 264 men⁵ ; while the 2/48th from an original strength of 29 officers and 423 men, had lost 23 officers and 320 men.⁸ Houghton's brigade was brought out of action by Captain Cimitière of the 48th, and the 1/48th itself by a lieutenant.

Captain G. Cimitière had commenced his service in the ranks of the 14th Foot. On 18th May, 1794, near Tournai, the 14th Regiment was attacked by an overwhelming force, but had managed to hold its assailants in check. The regiment were ordered to retire, but were surrounded by the enemy, and the General on the spot remarked that he thought they would have to lay down their arms. At this juncture Corporal Gilbert Cimitière (a French immigrant personally acquainted with the locality) undertook to lead the regiment through the enclosures. Under his guidance the regiment quitted the main road and escaped.⁶ Corporal Cimitière was rewarded with a commission and appointed ensign in the 6th West India Regiment (1st July, 1795) and on 15th June, 1796, he was, without purchase, promoted to a lieutenancy in the 48th. He received a gold medal for the Battle of Albuera, became a Lieutenant-Colonel in 1824, and commanded the 48th until his retirement in 1828.

The issue of the battle turned mainly upon the valour of the British infantry. Colonel Charles Stewart, Wellington's Adjutant-General, wrote to Castlereagh of the "inextinguishable, unexampled and incomprehensible valour of the British infantry."

"Whence came this spirit which made a handful of English battalions content to die where they stood, rather than give way a single inch? Beyond all question it sprung from intense regimental pride and regimental feeling. Battalions felt that they were about to be tried in the presence of other battalions by an ordeal which would test their discipline and efficiency to the utmost, and hence it was that, when two men in every three had fallen, the survivors were still in line by their Colours, closing in toward that tattered silk which represented the ark of their covenant, the one thing supremely important to them in the world."⁷

Beresford's dispatch on the battle includes the following sentence: "It is impossible by any description to do justice to the distinguished gallantry of the troops ; but every individual nobly did his duty ; and it is observed that our dead, particularly of the 57th Regiment, were lying where they had fought, in ranks and every wound was in the front."

In Mary Anne Wellington's memoirs it is recorded how it was usual, after a battle, for plunderers to follow the troops and to strip the dead and wounded of all they possessed. She also records how she, with thirteen other women of the 48th, determined to prevent such an occurrence after the battle. It

was fortunate for many that they did so, for so few of the army were left that not a man could be spared to look after the wounded, until it was certain that the French would not attack again. As night fell the camp followers came upon the plain, and, like a herd of harpies, began their work of plunder. Old Spanish crones, and Portuguese Jews and Jewesses, forming bands of ravagers, fell upon the slain, and many a brave fellow wounded on that field of battle was killed for the sake of his watch, his purse or even his clothes. At least one life was saved, for it is revealed how Mary Anne, with her band, came upon two or three trampers stripping a body, and a groan was uttered by the man they were thus robbing. "In another moment he would have been no more, for already a Portuguese hag had raised her hammer to strike a blow upon his forehead, when her arm was arrested in the powerful grasp of the soldier's wife. She forced back the miscreant's arm with such violence that it was dislocated and the hammer fell from her grasp," then to discover that the man she had saved was a sergeant of the 48th.

After his capture, Major Brooke was taken to the Prison of the Inquisition at Seville, from which he escaped in the following manner :—⁸

**Major Brooke's
Escape.**

"On the evening of 25th July an unknown Spaniard, who had never been seen in the prison before, entered it and said to Major Brooke, 'Sir, I three days ago, saw you through the iron bars of these windows, since which time I have not been able to rest night or day, in the hope of effecting your escape, led by an impulse I cannot account for.' He then pulled from his shoulders a Spanish cloak and from under that a hat, also an old waistcoat from his pocket and a paper of paint, saying, 'Sir, the mode is now yet dangerous, but we must be desperate and if you dare try, I will return to you in the twilight of the evening.' He then departed and returned according to promise, when he found the Major ready dressed, and disguised by the paint and fully determined. The Spaniard then said he would go about twenty yards in front, as should they be detected, he would inevitably be put to death and most probably the Major, in the scuffle that would ensue, so they arranged to sell their lives as dearly as possible. Besides Major Brooke, five British officers—Captain Allman, Lieutenants Sache, Edward and Marshall of the 48th, and Ensign Leslie of the 57th Regiment—were crowded into a small underground room filled with vermin and filth, an old rotten bed and coarse filthy sheet each, five sentinels over them, one at each window, one at the first door, one in the centre of the passage, one at the outward door, and a strong officer's guard in the passage, all of which he passed, obliged occasionally to put his hand gently against some of them to get by.

"He concealed himself in the house of the same Spaniard until the evening of 28th July, not having determined on what route to pursue, when finding that a reward of 5,000 reals and a situation under the French Government at Seville was offered for his detection, and a promise of not punishing any person

concerned, he deemed it high time to get out of the place, and accordingly succeeded in passing the guards of the city, and those on the bridge over the River Guadalquivir. Getting safe into the mountains, he performed a journey of nearly four hundred miles, sleeping every night among the bushes, wounded and exhausted as he was with three cuts and fractures and grazed by a ball, the whole of his head. It is justice to say, the kindness of the Spaniards, wherever they dared show it to him, and indeed to every British prisoner, was extreme; and where the men dared not come they sent their women with all manner of relief to our prisoners."⁹

Major Brooke not only served himself in the Regiment for thirty-four years, being engaged at the taking of many of the West India Islands and of Malta, but also gave two sons to its service. "The elder, Captain W. H. Brooke, was in his twenty-fourth year when he fell in the breach of Badajoz on the night of the 5th. This gallant and promising young man was truly an *enfant de la guerre*. His military services commenced at the arduous blockade and capture of Malta in 1800, when he was not more than thirteen years of age; at Talavera, Busaco, and Ciudad Rodrigo, besides numerous other minor but not less dangerous enterprises, Captain Brooke was personally engaged and conducted himself with that intrepidity and skill for which he was distinguished to the last moment of his glorious career. His brother, Lieutenant John Brooke, who there is too much reason to fear has been mortally wounded, also commanded a company of the 48th on the memorable night of the 5th. He is not more than twenty-one years of age, and like his lamented brother fought at the battles of Talavera, Busaco, Albuera and Ciudad Rodrigo, having entered the Army as a protégé of his brave father as soon as he was able to carry the Colours of the Regiment."¹⁰

The 2/48th never recovered from the casualties received at Albuera and is a real example of a battalion being killed in action. The skeleton of the battalion remained with the Peninsular Army as a unit until 10th June, 1811, when all the private soldiers

**The Last of
the 2/48th.**

were transferred to the 1/48th.

The remainder of the battalion moved to Lisbon on 13th July for Portsmouth, where they arrived on 13th August. From here they marched to Northampton, arriving on 25th August, and on 21st November to Weedon. They moved on to Chelmsford in July, 1812, but were posted at Banbury during the election on 10th October, 1812, returning again on 23rd October to Chelmsford. During this period drafts were despatched from time to time to the 1st Battalion. Remaining in the Old Barracks at Chelmsford, the Regiment was disbanded on 24th October, 1814, the officers being placed on half pay and the effective non-commissioned officers and men being transferred to the 1st Battalion, moving to Templemore under Brevet Major Bell and arriving on 15th December, 1814.

The officers of the 48th Regiment presented a sword to Lieutenant-Colonel Sir James Wilson when, among other officers of the 2/48th, he was placed on half pay, "as a small mark of the sense they entertain of his zealous and meritorious conduct in the field and his gentlemanlike and conciliatory manners when in command of the Regiment in the Peninsula. This gallant officer was in nearly every action in which the Regiment was engaged, generally in command, and though very severely wounded twice (actually he was wounded at Albuera, Badajoz and Pyrenees and received a Salamanca medal) the ardour of his mind, superior to all selfish considerations, never suffered him to quit the Peninsula for the benefit of his health, though at the imminent risk of his life, that the moment of his recovery might be that of rejoining his Regiment. Through the reduction of the 2/48th the corps has lost a friend and the Service (it is hoped for a short time only) the efforts of one of its most promising officers."¹¹ This sword is now preserved in the Royal United Service Institution in London.

The terrible casualties suffered by the two battalions of the 48th at Albuera made it impossible for either to carry on alone as a unit, and as a result all effective men of the 2/48th were transferred to the 1st Battalion. Similar action had been taken with the two battalions of the 7th Fusiliers, who, with the 23rd Fusiliers, had formed the famous Fusilier Brigade of Albuera, and the reorganized 48th was accordingly transferred to this brigade. This brought the battalion into the Fourth Division (Lieutenant-General Sir Lowry Cole), General Pakenham being its new brigadier.

Five days' rest were given to the troops after the battle as all available transport was required to carry the wounded to Elvas. In the meantime Badajoz had once more been invested by other troops, whom Wellington had brought down from the North, and later the Fourth Division was moved to Almendralejo to cover the siege.

Hearing that the French were concentrating to relieve the town, Wellington hurried on his preparations, and on 5th June an assault was made on the northern defences of the town, which failed, Marmont's army of Portugal having come down from the Douro valley to reinforce Soult. As the French were now approaching the town in greatly superior force, and as the British siege train was of insufficient strength to force a breach in the town's defences, the siege was raised on 19th June. Wellington then moved towards Elvas, preparing to bar the entry of the French into Portugal by the Badajoz road. In the disposition of this army, the Fourth Division were first stationed at Estremoz. A reconnaissance of Wellington's position was made by the French, but despite their numerical superiority, Soult and Marmont decided against risking a battle, and eventually separated, allowing Wellington to move towards Ciudad Rodrigo, which closed the gateway between Spain and Portugal in the north as Badajoz did in the south.

Early in August Wellington decided to blockade Ciudad Rodrigo in the hope of compelling it to surrender for want of provisions. The Fourth Division did not take a direct part in the blockade, but remained on guard on the Portuguese frontier. In September the French, concentrating five divisions, moved in relief of the town, and Wellington drew back his Fourth and Fifth Divisions from the frontier before the advance. On 25th September Marshal Marmont attacked the British rearguard at El Bodon, and Packenham's brigade, including the 48th, was moved up in support, but the gallantry of the 5th and 77th Regiments, who distinguished themselves greatly in effecting their retreat, rendered their interference unnecessary.

The following day the withdrawal of the British was continued towards Alfayates, where Wellington had selected a position of defence. He left the light companies of Packenham's brigade, however, as a rearguard behind Aldea da Ponte, the village being held by its outposts. The first French advance on this village drove in the outposts, but Wellington, seeing that the enemy had only a single division on the ground, refused to allow the village to be lost so lightly, and sent against it Packenham's Fusilier brigade (7th, 23rd and 48th). The whole brigade advanced in line, flanked by a Portuguese regiment in column, and the French were driven out once more. Again the French attacked, strongly reinforced, and again the village was lost, but this time Wellington refused to let Packenham counter-attack, and it remained in the hands of the French.

The British casualties in this contest were exactly 100, of which the 48th suffered 10, 1 officer and 7 men being wounded and 2 men missing.

During the night a further withdrawal was made, and Wellington took up a very strong position in front of the Coa with his right on the Sierra de Meras and his left at Rendo, the 48th being at Albugal. The French did not risk an attack on this position, and the campaign terminated for the winter, the 4th Division moving to winter quarters about Gallegos.



48th Regimental Medal

CHAPTER XV

(48TH, 2/58TH, 1812)

CIUDAD RODRIGO—STORMING OF BADAJOZ—THE CASUALTIES—SACK OF BADAJOZ—BATTLE OF SALAMANCA—ATTACK OF FUSILIER BRIGADE (48TH)—THE CASUALTIES—DRUMMER KELLY (2/25TH)—THE TRUMPETER'S HORSE—SIEGE OF BURGOS (2/58TH).

(See Maps, pages 158 and 162.)

By the end of 1811 Napoleon had reached the pinnacle of his success, and having decided to invade Russia, he withdrew from Spain some twenty thousand men, though even after this the French troops still outnumbered the Allies. This was Wellington's opportunity, for the French armies living on the country were compelled to disperse during the winter for sustenance, whereas the Allies could remain more concentrated and ready to strike when a favourable opportunity offered itself.

Before an advance into Spain was possible, it was necessary that the fortresses of Ciudad Rodrigo and Badajoz should be in our hands, as these towns effectively blocked the northern and southern gateways between Spain and Portugal. The possession of both fortresses was an essential before protracted operations into Spain were possible, as to hold one only left the other route open and a constant threat to the lines of communication. Their capture was therefore Wellington's first consideration.

Accordingly, on 1st January, 1812, he issued orders for the resumption of the attack on Ciudad Rodrigo, and three days later moved Ciudad Rodrigo. up four divisions selected for the siege. Included in this force was the Fourth Division (with the 48th in Packenham's brigade) which crossed the Agueda and moved to San Felices. By 8th January the fortress was invested.

The town stands on a low hill on the northern bank of the River Agueda, and was surrounded by a double wall. To the north were two hills known as the Great Teson and Small Teson, and from this direction Wellington decided to attack. On the Great Teson the French had constructed a formidable redoubt. On 8th January the siege was opened by the capture of this work known as the Fort Francisco redoubt. On the following day trenches for the attack were commenced. By the 17th the fortified convents of Santa Cruz and St. Francisco, on the outskirts of the town, were captured, and batteries were advanced to the Small Teson close to the walls. The siege was pushed on with the greatest vigour as news was received that Marmont was marching to the relief of the fortress, and by the 19th two breaches had been made in the walls.



THE STORMING OF BADAJOZ, 5th APRIL, 1812.

Reproduced by courtesy of Colonel Jourdain, The Connaught Rangers.

The weather at the time was bitter, and each division did twenty-four hours in the trenches in rotation, followed by three days in quarters. Each move backwards and forwards necessitated fording the half-frozen river, and every man "carried a pair of iced breeches into the trenches with him."¹

The Fourth Division was on duty on the night of 19th January when it was decided to storm the city, but the Third and Light Divisions were brought in to form the storming parties, and after a most gallant attack, fiercely resisted, they succeeded. The Fourth Division, having been on duty in the trenches all day, were not called upon to participate in the final assault. Having repaired the breaches in the walls of Ciudad Rodrigo and destroyed his trenches used for the attack, Wellington left a garrison in the town and once more turned his direction south.

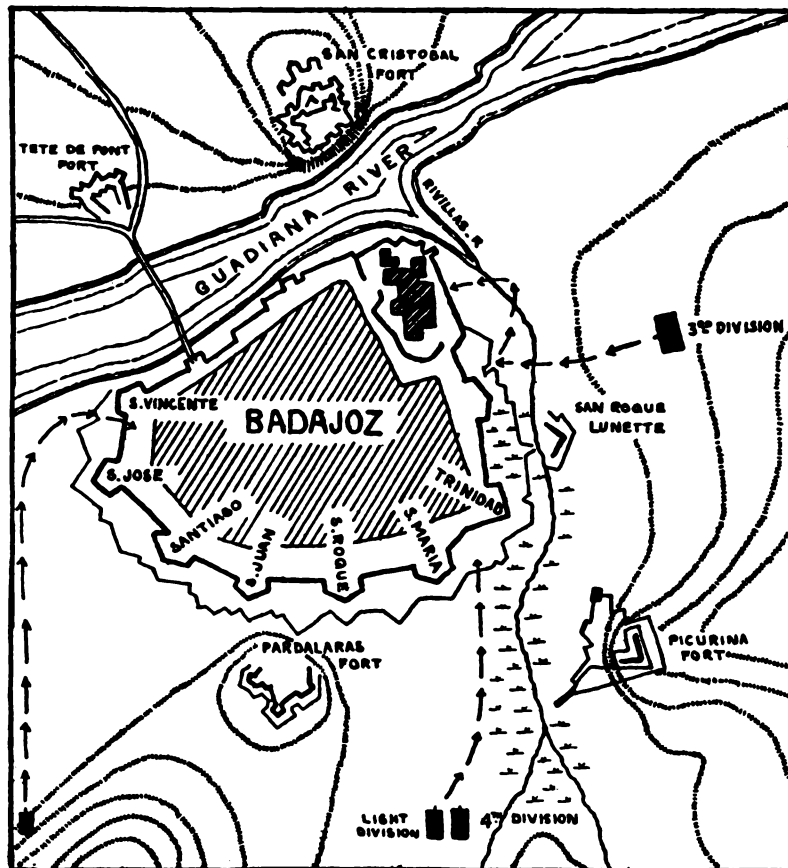
Wellington's plan was to wrest the other fortress, Badajoz, from the enemy before the main armies could interfere in its defence. This operation, so often attempted without success, was to be undertaken at a time when the season added difficulties to the task of capture. The enterprise was daring in view of Marmont's concentration at Salamanca, whence he might invade Portugal from the north; a *ruse de guerre* was therefore employed to conceal Wellington's real design. The battering train and stores were embarked at Lisbon, ostensibly for some distant enterprise, and at sea transferred to smaller craft which conveyed them to Alcazar do Sal on the Setubal estuary. Here transport was collected and the siege train moved to Elvas, fourteen miles west of Badajoz, where it was parked by 12th March. Meanwhile, the army marching from the north had also been concentrated, and on 16th March Badajoz was once more invested, the Fourth Division (including the 48th) bivouacking with the Third Division on the heights to the south of the town. The 48th actually arrived a few days after the remainder of their Division as they had remained in quarantine outside Ciudad Rodrigo for six days, many of the men suffering from "itch."²

Badajoz stands on the southern bank of the River Guadiana, and was surrounded by ramparts of great strength, mounted with heavy guns. The garrison consisted of five thousand picked men under General Philippon as Governor, and was well supplied with provisions and stores.

The point selected for attack was the southern face of the Trinidad bastion, and in order to breach the defences at this point it was necessary to open batteries on the heights of San Miguel to the south-east of the town. These heights being commanded by the Picurina Fort, it was first attacked and taken by storm on March 25th by the Third Division. A second parallel was then opened within three hundred yards of the walls of the town and in front of La Picurina, whence, by 5th April, breaches were made in the bastions of La Trinidad and Santa Maria.

In the meantime Soult was rapidly approaching to the relief of the fortress, and the need for capturing it before he could interfere became urgent. Accordingly, on 5th April, orders were given for the assault to take place at ten in the

evening. The Third Division, furnished with long ladders, was to cross the River Rivillas and attack the castle by escalade. The Fourth Division (including the 48th) was to attack the breaches in the bastion of La Trinidad. The Light Division was on the left of the Fourth, its objective being the bastion of Santa Maria. The Fifth Division were to attempt to carry by escalade the



bastion of San Vincente, by the north-western angle of the fortress. As feint attacks, Major Wilson of the 48th with the guards of the trenches was to storm the lunette of San Roque, while the Portuguese made a feint attack on the bridgehead of the Guadiana.

Shortly before ten Major Wilson's attack opened on the lunette of San Roque, where the British guard in the sap opened fire upon the two faces while the escalading party stole round to the rear. So fully were the defenders occupied by the fire in front that the storming party scaled the rampart almost

unresisted and, coming in upon the backs of the French, mastered the work immediately. Captain C. W. Tonym, of the 48th, is reported to have been one of the first to ascend the ramparts. For this action Major Wilson received his Lieutenant-Colonelcy in the Army.

"Meanwhile, the Fourth and Light Divisions had also opened their attack upon the breaches. In unbroken silence they stole up the glacis to the edge of the ditch, planted their ladders and descended, the enemy observing their every motion but quietly biding their time. Then suddenly, when the ditch was crowded, the French lighted the trains to a series of mines and powder barrels which had been laid in the ditch and, with an appalling explosion, a large portion of the storming parties were blown into the air."³ Farther to the right inundations had been admitted to the ditch, and many men, not waiting for the ladders, sprang down into the water, thinking it to be a mere puddle. The leading files nearly all perished, many by drowning.

The explosion had by now set light to the old carts, broken gabions and other inflammable material which had been placed in the ditch by the French, but in spite of this the British came on, moving into the blazing ditch. Every man as he descended was clearly visible to the enemy entrenched on the top of the breaches, and a murderous fire of musketry and grape was opened by the French. Such men as still survived, constantly reinforced, attempted to storm the breaches in a series of desperate attacks. Fully forty attacks were made between ten and twelve, but few men ever arrived at the top of the breaches, where *chevaux de frise*, made of sword blades firmly fixed in wooden beams and anchored by chains, had been fixed to strengthen the defence. Shells, grenades and balls of inflammable matter were rolled down amongst them. The ditch offered a scene of horrors. The confined space; the large body of men; the explosion of shells and bags of powder, scorching the living and wounded, and lighting up the ghastly spectacle; the constant shower of balls from the well-manned walls above—all these were borne during two hours with unparalleled courage. All that impetuous valour could do was done, but soon after twelve, Wellington, realizing that no chance of success existed at the main attack, sent down orders for the recall of these two divisions. Their losses had been frightful, the casualties of the 48th being no less than 19 officers and 154 men.⁴

The gallant deeds of the Fourth and Light Divisions were not, however, wasted, for the enemy concentrating against the main attack had been compelled to weaken the garrison of other portions of their defences, and the Third and Fifth Divisions forced their way into the town. On hearing of the fall of the castle which the Third Division had escaladed all French resistance broke down, and the remnant of the Fourth and Light Divisions entered the fortress unopposed.

After the surrender of the town, the troops, in accordance with custom at the time in the case of a fortress which had resisted capture, were allowed to

enter for the purpose of plunder. A disgraceful scene followed, for which the only excuse can be the terrible ordeal they had been through. "The greater number at first made for the spirit stores where, having drunk an inordinate quantity, they were prepared for every sort of mischief, and frightful atrocities were committed." This was not, however, general, and many risked their lives in defending helpless females. Though it was a dangerous place for an officer to appear, many of them ran as much risk to prevent inhumanity, as they did the preceding night in storming the town. Among others, Captain Tonyn of the 48th was on the point of being bayoneted for attempting to rescue a female from one of the men. Hearing of the state of affairs, Wellington employed the sternest measures, and order was soon restored.

The main gates to Portugal being now in his hands, Wellington was free to manœuvre, and on 11th April set his army in motion northwards. The 2/58th, about four hundred strong, had now joined the field army, being brigaded with the 1/42nd, the 2/24th, the 79th and a company of the 5/60th in the First Division; on 1st June the battalion was posted to the Fifth Division, though it seems to have remained with the First Division until after the retreat from Burgos.

The position of the French was now that they were divided into two main groups, the army of Portugal, under Marmont, and the army of the south under Soult. The direct line of communication between these two armies across the Tagus was by a bridge of boats at Almaraz. While he was transferring his army to the north of Portugal, Wellington decided to destroy the Almaraz bridge and despatched Sir Rowland Hill for the purpose. Little resistance was made by the French, and on 19th May Hill achieved his object, destroyed the bridge and withdrew.

The French armies being now divided, Wellington prepared for his first great offensive movement since the Talavera campaign in 1809, an advance against Marmont's army at Salamanca. Meanwhile he gave instructions to Hill, who remained in the south, and to the Spanish irregulars to keep Soult's army employed. On 13th June the advance commenced, the Agueda was crossed, and by 16th June Salamanca was reached. Here Marmont had formed a large depot of stores and had constructed works for their protection, but his army not being concentrated, he retired before Wellington, leaving a garrison in the town. Wellington immediately proceeded with the siege, at the same time taking up a defensive position which he hoped Marmont would be compelled to attack in order to relieve Salamanca.

Marmont, however, did not attack, though he threatened to do so, and on 27th June the garrison of Salamanca surrendered. Marmont then withdrew his army to the north and crossed the River Douro, taking up a position on 2nd July about Tordesillas. During the movement he was closely followed by Wellington, who disposed his troops on the south side of the river facing the French.

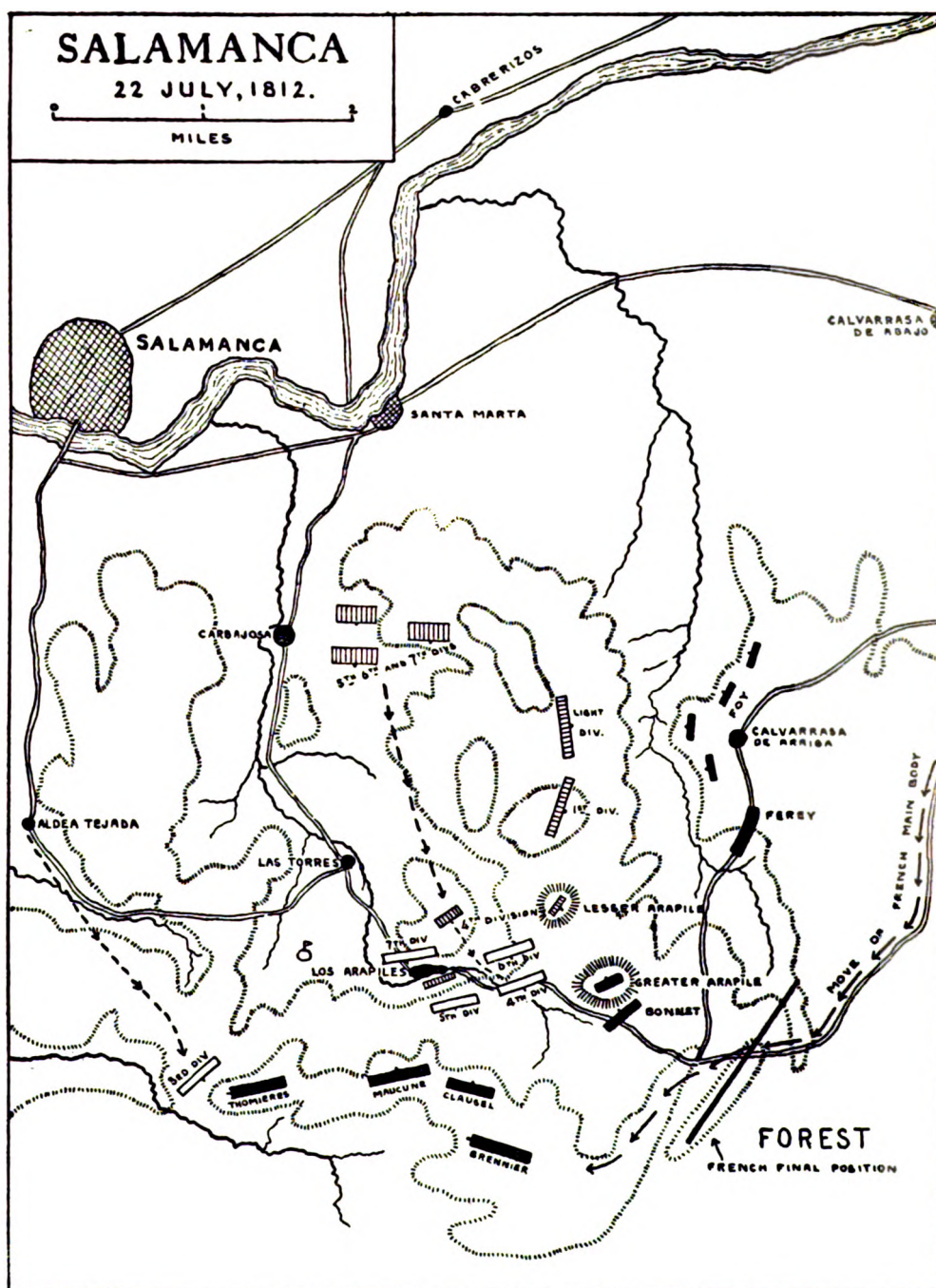
The armies remained in this position until 16th July, when Marmont, having been reinforced, took the initiative, marching down the Douro as though against Wellington's left at Toro. Wellington countered by drawing in his right. Marmont's move had, however, only been a feint and, countermarching up stream, he crossed the Douro unopposed at Tordesillas on the morning of 17th July, and concentrated his army at Nava del Rey. They advanced on the 18th and found facing them the Fourth Division (including the 48th) and the Light Division, who had been covering the westward move and had halted on the afternoon of 17th July at Castrejon on the Trabancos, rather nearer to Marmont at Nava del Rey than to Wellington's main body behind the Guarena. Their situation was full of peril, and only by a prompt and rapid retreat was Wellington able to extricate them. Marmont's men, exhausted by their long marches, just failed to overtake them, and the two divisions safely effected their reunion with the main body, crossing the Guarena with the French hard on their heels after an exhausting forced march in hot, sultry weather, which caused a good many of the weaker men to fall behind and be captured. The 48th, however, had only one such straggler, though five were wounded.

In spite of Wellington's expectations and hopes, Marmont made no general attack upon the Guarena position, but on 19th July commenced a march round the Allied right flank and in the direction of Salamanca. Wellington conformed, and thus, throughout 20th July, the two armies marched side by side, within cannon shot of each other, racing for the Tormes, yet in perfect order, for at any time either army might bring on a general action. Towards the end of the day the courses slightly diverged, the French bivouacking near the ford of Huerta on the Tormes and the Allies about Aldea Rubia.

In the course of 21st July the British were concentrated on the Tormes, occupying the position of St. Christoval. In the evening Marmont crossed the Tormes by the fords of Alba and Huerta, with the apparent intention of gaining the road to Ciudad Rodrigo and cutting the British line of communication. Wellington countered by passing his army over the bridge of Salamanca and the neighbouring fords and took up a position on a ridge with its right resting on a rugged hill (the Lesser Arapile) near the village of Los Arapiles, and its left on the Tormes near the ford of Santa Marta. Soon after dawn Marmont occupied a height known as the Greater Arapile, on the right of Wellington's line, hoping that by manœuvring round it he could turn the British flank. At this time the Fourth Division was echeloned back from the Lesser Arapile, which was held by Anson's brigade, and were holding the ground between that hill and the village of Los Arapiles, which itself was held by the light companies of the Guards and some companies of the 48th.

About two in the afternoon, after a variety of evolutions, Marmont commenced to extend his line rapidly to the left along a ridge, the Monte de Azan, overlooking from the south the valley in which the village of Arapiles lay.

M



He did so thinking that most of the British had withdrawn and that the Fourth Division were portions of a rearguard, whereas most of Wellington's divisions lay concealed from him by folds in the ground. Wellington, seeing the French left extended on the ridge south of Los Arapiles, instantly realized the opportunity of becoming the assailant. He placed the Fifth Division on the right of the Fourth, with the Sixth and Seventh Divisions in reserve. Meanwhile, he had brought Packenham's Third Division from the north side of the Tormes. The First Division, including the 2/58th commanded by Major Ashworth, had meanwhile remained in their original position, facing east with their right flank resting on the Lesser Arapile. On their left was the Light Division, and opposite them the divisions of Ferey and Foy, with whose *trailleurs* the light companies were skirmishing, work which cost the 2/58th its trifling casualties (3 wounded and 1 missing). On this flank things never developed into anything serious, and Wellington ended the day with two of his best divisions fresh and intact.

The Third Division were then ordered to attack the head of the French column while the Fourth and Fifth Divisions attacked the main flank. The fight was started with Packenham's Third Division, which took the leading French Division completely by surprise and drove it in confusion eastwards along the ridge. Meanwhile, the struggle in the centre had commenced. The Fifth and Fourth Divisions attacked the French divisions of Macune and Clausel, while Pack's Portuguese brigade attempted to capture the Greater Arapile.

The attack of the Fifth Division was entirely successful, as also was that of the Fourth in its initial stages. The Fusilier Brigade (7th, 23rd and 48th) under Ellis of the 23rd "went through the end of the village of Arapiles, which it did by files from the right of companies, the companies forming up again on the east side of the place, upon their sergeants regularly sent out as markers."⁵ When they marched forward they suffered severely from the French artillery fire; nevertheless they pushed on, the light companies of regiments acting as a screen.

Struggling forward they managed to reach the crest of the plateau on which Clausel's Division was stationed. With three battalions they beat five French battalions and drove in Clausel's front line, but were counter-attacked by the greatly superior forces of his reserve and thrown back into the valley. Here they were charged whilst re-forming and gaining their breath; they managed, however, to resist the attack until supported by the Sixth Division. On the arrival of these fresh troops the Fusilier brigade soon regained its formation and attacked again on their left flank. The ground which had been lost was once more regained, and the French were driven in disorder into the forests beyond. Of the French army, Foy's Division alone remained untouched and fell back, pursued by the 1st and Light Divisions until nightfall.

The victory had not been gained without considerable loss. The 1/48th had 1 sergeant and 17 men killed, and 10 officers and 87 other ranks wounded.⁶

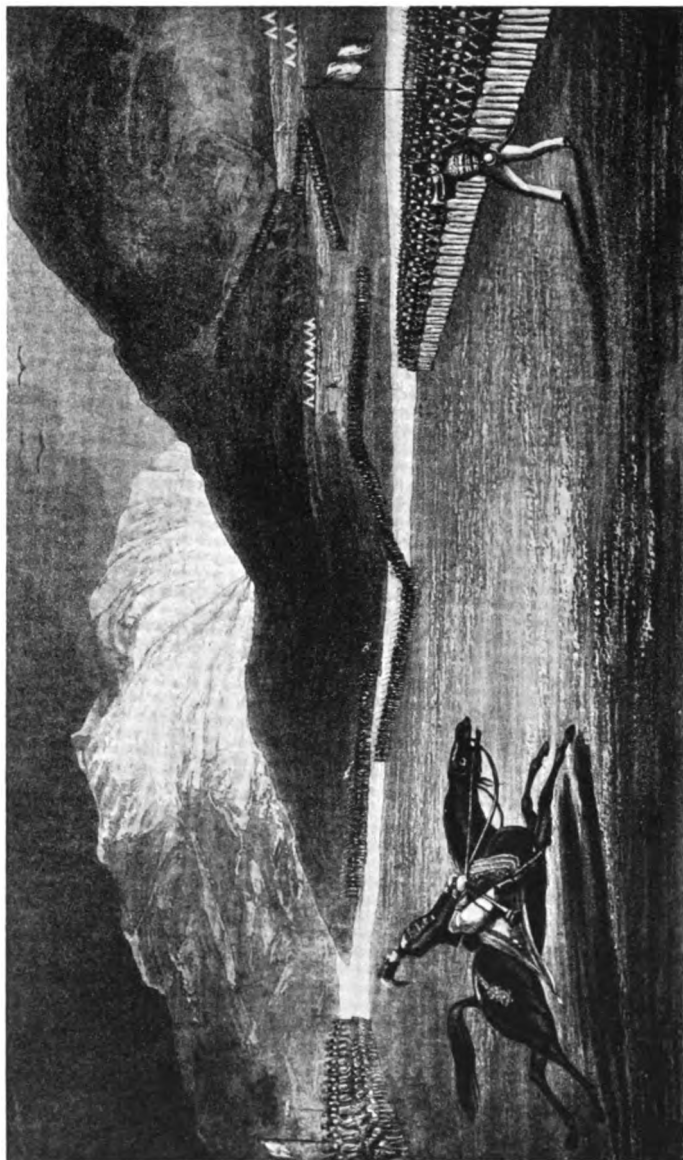
There is in the officers' mess of the 2nd Battalion a drum captured from the French 58th Regiment in the Peninsular War by Drummer Kelly. According to tradition, the capture took place at the battle of Salamanca, but this could not have been the case as the French 58th were not present at the battle. It is probable that the incident took place at the battle of the Pyrenees, when the 2/58th and the French 58th stood face to face.

There is a good story in "Mary Anne Wellington" of how the Drum-Major of the 48th got to Salamanca. The story is attributed to Sergeant Daniel Long, but as this old soldier had already been dead a number of years the detailed accuracy must be accepted with reserve.⁷

The Drum-Major was lying wounded at Badajoz when the order to move was given, and imagined that he would be left behind. But the first trumpeter of the Regiment had been killed and he was required with the 48th as "no other man could blow the 'Charge' as he could." As he could not march he was ordered to mount the Colonel's second horse. The Drum-Major evidently had a "way with horses," having started life in an Irish racing stable, and soon he had trained the horse to do everything to the sound of the trumpet. "His loudest blast was the morning call, to be cleaned, fed, accoutred, mounted and to march; and, let the beast be ranging where he would, the moment the note rang on his ear, he would come galloping and neighing, at full speed and with distended nostrils, to the great delight of all who knew him."

The horse, known by the name of Bellerophon, is described as remarkable, "not for his size, but for his mould and his peculiarities. He had lost an ear by a musket ball, and for the sake of uniformity the other had been docked to the same proportions. He was a jet black, with a star, and not a straight line down the forehead, but one that ran directly to the near side nostril, just from between the eyes. He was a well-bred animal, limbs compact and clean, tail well set on, mane very thin, and a head shaped like a stag's, with a muzzle so small that it could be covered with the palm of the hand. His eyes were so prominent that they and the lids above and below seemed to cover half the face. His *oz frontis* wide, and his arched crest and high shoulder well sloped showed that he had been born where Arab blood had been prevalent."

The night before the battle there was a fierce thunderstorm and, terrified by the storm, Bellerophon broke away in the night and was lost. The following day a cavalry regiment of the enemy wheeled in front of the 48th, and the trumpeter's horse was seen in the front rank of the enemy. The Colonel immediately ordered the Drum-Major to the front, saying that he had heard that he could make the horse do anything, and that if he got the horse back he would be given to him as a present. "With that he applied the trumpet to his mouth, and gave the French Regiment such a loud and merry call, that



THE DRUM-MAJOR'S HORSE.

Reproduced from "Mary Anne Wellington," by the Reverend Richard Cobbold.

they half suspected a charge of cavalry from the British lines. What was their astonishment, however, to find that both regiments were convulsed with laughter. In vain their own trumpeter sought to restrain the English horse. He turned his head and in a moment galloped forward, in sight of all the troops, to the British trumpeter, who kept on blowing his merry call till Bellerophon arrived to receive his breakfast."

Wellington pursued the French army as fast as the supply situation permitted, and on 30th July the army entered Valladolid **Siege of Burgos.** amid loud acclamation from the people. Turning south, he next marched on Madrid, which he entered on 13th August with slight opposition. In September a move was made against the French who had made a stand at Burgos ; the First, Fifth, Sixth and Seventh Divisions participated. On 19th September the British crossed the river above the town and, supported by Portuguese, drove the French outposts from the hill, St. Miguel.

On this hill was a large hornwork with a scarp of twenty-five feet. Orders were given for the works to be stormed the same night ; the attack was made by escalade with great gallantry, but the French were numerous, a heavy fire was opened on the storming party, and every man who reached the top of the scaling ladders was at once hurled down, carrying his comrades below in his fall. After a desperate struggle the work was carried with a loss to the British of 420, of which the 2/58th had 1 man killed and Lieutenant D. Carter, 1 sergeant and 11 men wounded.

The siege of Burgos then commenced, but the defences were very strong and Wellington's siege material insufficient. Five desperate assaults were made during a siege of thirty days, all without success, when the French became so reinforced that it was necessary to withdraw to the Portuguese frontier. At the siege of Burgos the Adjutant of the 2/58th, Lieutenant S. M. Hobson and 15 men were killed, while Captain Peter Dudgeon, Ensign E. Bayley and 23 men were wounded.

On the night of 18th October, when the whole army retired, Lieutenant P. Shea and thirty men of the 58th were left behind in the trenches at Burgos to keep alive the attention of the enemy. Although they did not quit until two hours after the whole army had passed Burgos, they managed to rejoin in safety.

A few days later Captain Ferguson and thirty men of the 58th were taken prisoners near Devonos. They had been left to defend a bridge as rearguard till a mine was sprung, but were surrounded by cavalry.

After many rearguard encounters and skirmishes, Wellington's army reached Ciudad Rodrigo on 19th November, 1812, and went into cantonments. Meanwhile the French armies separated to obtain supplies and the campaign closed for the winter.

CHAPTER XVI

(48TH, 2/58TH, 1813-1814)

WINTER QUARTERS, 1812-1813—CAMPAIGN OF 1813—BATTLE OF VITTORIA—BATTLES OF THE PYRENEES—FIRST BATTLE OF SORAUREN—CHARGE OF THE 48TH—SECOND BATTLE OF SORAUREN—THE 2/58TH AND THE FRENCH 58TH FACE TO FACE—COMBAT AT ECHALAR—CAPTURE OF SAN SEBASTIAN—"A STEELBACK"—CROSSING THE BIDASSOA—BATTLE OF NIVELLE—BATTLES ON THE NIVE—WINTER QUARTERS—BATTLE OF ORTHEZ—BATTLE OF TOULOUSE—PEACE.

(See Maps, pages 168, 171 and 179.)

THE victorious Salamanca campaign being over, Wellington settled down in winter quarters to reorganize his army. Discipline had become slack and, realizing the value to the Army of really good non-commissioned officers, Wellington applied to the home Government for permission to increase the pay of sergeants. On account of shortage of money the Government could not approve this altogether, but granted extra pay to one sergeant in each company, who was to wear the regimental colours embroidered as a badge of honour below his chevron, and to be called the Colour-Sergeant.

Another innovation was that infantry officers for the first time appeared in shakos resembling those of the rank and file, as their cocked hats worn up to now had made them easy targets for the enemy snipers. A further improvement was the issue of small tin camp kettles to be carried by the men, instead of the large iron Flanders cooking-pots, "four to each company and carried on mules, and when available needing much foreword and time to cook the contents." Small tents were also issued as a protection against the weather and overcoats withdrawn into stores before a march began, the men relying on their blankets.

The end of the 1812 campaign had left the Peninsular army in a very weak state, and many battalions had less than three hundred bayonets. The strength of the 2/58th on 29th April is given as 245, while that of the 48th on the same date was 449. For some of these battalions the deficiency was easily replaced by a large draft sent from the home battalion, but other corps, such as the 58th, with both battalions abroad, had only the depot companies to rely upon for reinforcements for both battalions.

This was more than the depot companies could do, and Wellington therefore formed four "Provisional Battalions" each of the remnants of two regiments. The plan was for the effective privates to be transferred to four companies, any men sick and unfit for service with any surplus non-commissioned officers and officers going back to England to raise recruits. The

Duke of York, now again Commander-in-Chief, objected to Wellington's plan and considered that weak regiments should return to England, but the Duke persisted, preferring the hardened, seasoned and experienced men of whom they were composed whom he considered worth twice their number of raw young soldiers who did not know their trade, and the Provisional Battalions remained in the field until the end of the war, being frequently mentioned in dispatches for their good work. The 2/58th, under Major O'Brien, were in the 3rd Provisional Battalion with the 2/24th, which being the senior regiment provided the staff, and this battalion, with the 6th Regiment and a detachment of Brunswick-Oels, formed a brigade under General Barnes in the Seventh Division commanded by Lord Dalhousie. The headquarters and cadre of the 2/58th meanwhile returned to England to recruit.

The 48th remained in General Lowry Cole's Fourth Division, being brigaded under General W. Anson with the 3/27th, 1/40th, 2nd Provisional Battalion (2nd, 53rd) and one company of the 5/60th.

In the winter of 1812 Napoleon had made his disastrous retreat from Moscow, and in order to strengthen his army withdrew some of his best troops from Spain in April, 1813. Wellington, realizing that this must happen, prepared a most ambitious plan for the 1813 campaign. The object was to clear the French entirely out of Spain. He realized that, with the troops they had available, the French were attempting to hold more territory than was possible and, as a result, were weak everywhere. He therefore concentrated on the Douro, proposing to turn the French position on that river by moving his left wing along its northern bank, inside the borders of Portugal, marching through very difficult mountainous country which was believed to be hardly passable for troops. By doing this he calculated, and with good reason, on springing a surprise on the French.

Both the Fourth and Seventh Divisions formed part of the left wing of the army and were concentrated by the end of May ready to advance. At the beginning of June the advance commenced, and in succession the Esla, Carrion, Pisuerga, Arlanzan and Ebro rivers were crossed, the British forcing their way through the deep defiles in the mountains and driving the French before them.

Burgos was reached on 12th June, the main body of Wellington's army being diverted to the north of it, but the French decided the town was not in a fit state to be defended and once more their retreat continued. They also hoped by retreating to gain time until their armies in Spain could be concentrated. Wellington continued his pursuit,¹ not following directly, but moving always to the north of the French, so that he could open lines of communication through the northern ports of Spain, and at the same time threaten the French communications with Bayonne.

To oppose this advance the French selected a position at Vittoria, where they tried to concentrate their forces for a real trial of strength. **Battle of Vittoria, 21st June, 1813.** The position selected covered the approaches from the west behind a sweep of the River Zadorra, its right resting on the river and its left on the heights of Puebla to the south. It was strong and well chosen to meet a frontal attack, but Wellington had appreciated this fact and had no such intention. He divided his force into four different columns ; the right column, containing the Second Division under Hill, was directed on Puebla ; the right centre, in which were the Fourth and Light Divisions, were directed on the centre of the position ; while Dalhousie, with the Third and Seventh Divisions, and Graham with the First and Fifth Divisions, were to move round to the north of the position and take every opportunity of turning the French right flank.

Early in the morning of 21st June the battle opened as Wellington had intended, by the attack by Hill's column in the extreme south of the position ; the attack was partially successful and the village of Salinas captured. Unsuccessful efforts by the French were made to drive Hill back, but in the meantime an unguarded bridge had been found at Tres Puentes and a brigade of the Light Division passed over. The Third Division, supported by the Seventh, now appeared from the north and forced a crossing of the river. The Fourth Division also crossed at Puente Nanclores, and although the French at first offered firm resistance, they were steadily forced back. Graham, now appearing on the Bilbao—Vittoria road, once more threatened the French flank, and the frontal attack being pushed with vigour, the retreat became a rout.

Much booty was captured at Vittoria, both military and civil, for large consignments of gold for the pay of the army, long overdue, had lately been received, and also the French had collected here much of the plunder taken during their six years' sojourn in Spain. The British losses at Vittoria amounted to 3,500 ; of these the 1/48th lost one man killed and 18 wounded, while the 2/58th, who were commanded by Major Campbell, were fortunate in having no casualties.

On 22nd June the pursuit of the French started in two main columns, Graham moving to the north towards San Sebastian, while Wellington himself with the bulk of his army, including the Fourth and Seventh Divisions, moved forward along the main Vittoria—Pampeluna road, arriving at the latter place and opening the blockade on 25th June. Here Wellington heard that Clausel, with three French Divisions, was moving up the River Ebro, and hoping to cut him off from the main French army, Wellington moved south to Tafalla on the 27th, and to Casedo on the 29th, with the Third, Fourth, Seventh and Light Divisions. Here he was unable, however, to gain contact with Clausel and the following day commenced to withdraw once more to Pampeluna, where he arrived on 2nd July.

The army now proceeded to undertake the siege of San Sebastian and the blockade of Pampeluna. Those portions of the army not actually employed for the sieges were covering the operations, being stationed along the frontier, the Fourth Division (with the 48th) being on the right with headquarters at Viscarret, and the Seventh (with the 2/58th) about Echalar, supporting the Light Division which was holding the pass of Vera.

Immediately Napoleon heard of the disaster to his armies at Vittoria he despatched Soult to take over supreme command from Joseph, which he did on 12th July. It was a big achievement for Soult

**The Battles of
the Pyrenees.**

to have been able so soon to reorganize the beaten French army, and he at once planned a French offensive with the object of relieving Pampeluna and San Sebastian, and secretly concentrated the bulk of the French army at St. Jean Pied de Port, opposite the passes held by the Fourth Division under Cole. On 24th July the French advance began, and after a stubborn defence of the passes on the 25th Cole withdrew to Linzoain. The main action was that of Roncesvalles on 25th July, in which Anson's brigade which included the 1/48th, were in reserve and suffered no casualties.

On the same day Soult forced the pass of Maya to the north held by the Second Division, on account of which Wellington withdrew the Seventh Division to Santesteban. Cole continued his withdrawal on the 26th, Anson's brigade acting as rearguard and suffering 168 casualties. These included, in the 48th, 10 men killed, and Lieutenant-Colonel J. Wilson and Captain G. S. Thwaites and 105 men wounded.

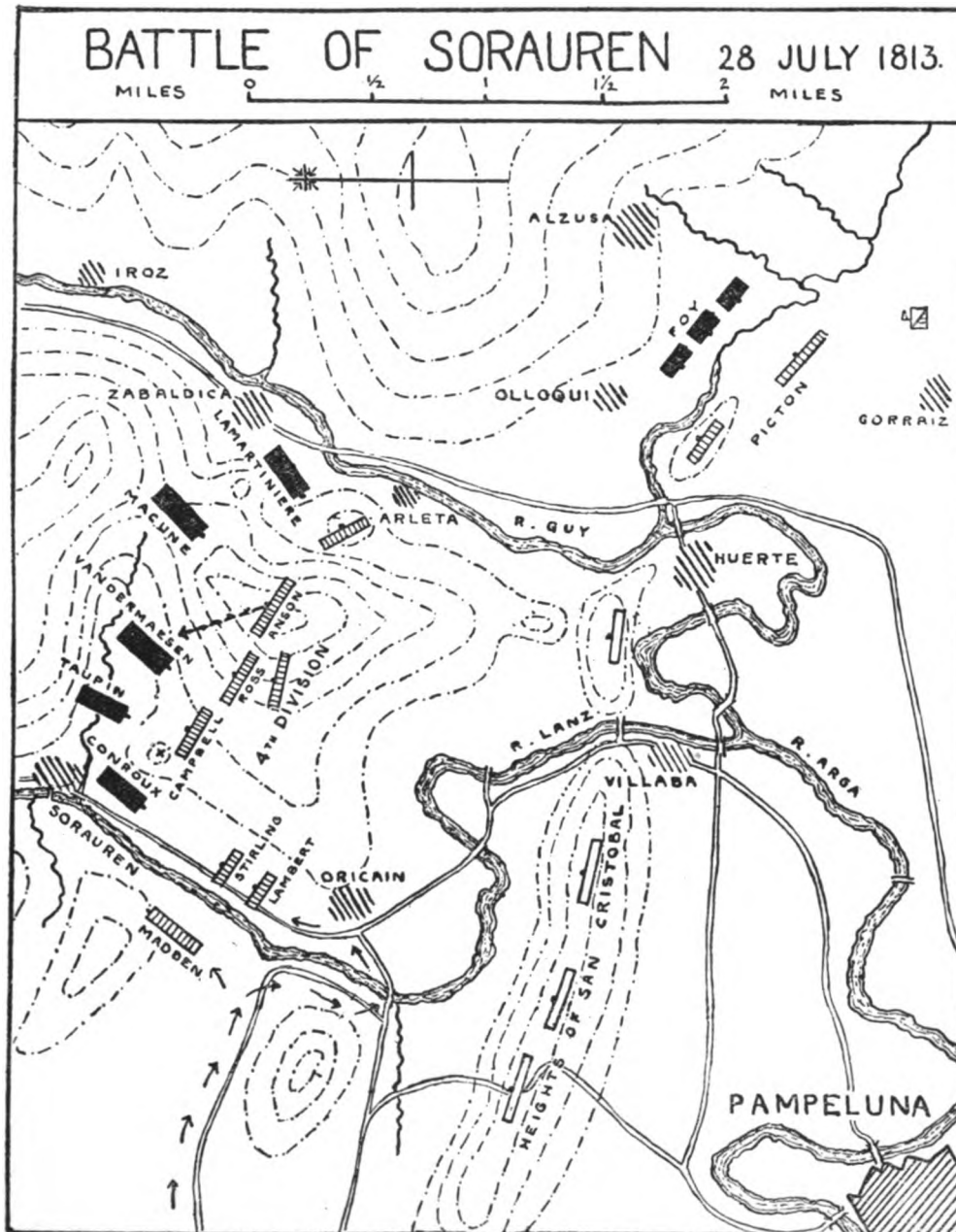
The following day Cole was joined by Picton with the Third Division, and it was decided to make a stand and prevent the relief of

**The First Battle
of Sorauren.**

Pampeluna. This town is overlooked from the north-east by the heights of San Christobal, on which were stationed the Spaniards of the blockading force. About two thousand yards from these heights an advanced position was selected for Cole's Fourth Division on a ridge between the villages of Sorauren and Arleta, while Picton's Division, stationed about Huarte, protected the right flank. In the centre of Cole's Division were the 1/48th, the 3/27th and the 2nd Provisional Battalion of Anson's brigade, immediately supported by Stubbs' Portuguese brigade, on their left being Ross's brigade and Campbell's Portuguese, and on their right the 40th and two Spanish battalions.

During the night of 27th-28th July Wellington had issued orders to the Sixth Division to move to Sorauren from the west, but in spite of this reinforcement the French were in a superiority of almost two to one. It was not until midday on 28th July that Soult's preparations for attack were made, when he launched Conroux's Division from Sorauren village against the British left. This attempt was destined to fail, for Pack's Sixth Division had arrived, and, encompassed by fire on three sides, Conroux was driven back to the village.

Meanwhile the general frontal attack was being delivered, Taupin's and



Vandermaesen's Divisions being thrown against Ross and Campbell, while Maucune attacked Anson. After heavy fighting the French drove back Ross and Campbell by sheer weight of numbers, though they were reinforced by Stubbs' Portuguese, and it seemed as though the day was lost. However, on the highest point of the hill, Anson's brigade (48th and 3/27th) had thrown back Maucune's Division, which was never able to reach the crest, with terrible loss.

It was the fourth anniversary of the Battle of Talavera, and it is a coincidence that for the second time, as he had done four years ago, Wellington personally gave orders to the 48th. In his dispatch he says: "I ordered the 27th and 48th to charge first that body of the enemy which had first established itself on the heights (Vandermaesen), and next those on the left (Bechaud); both attacks succeeded, and the enemy was driven down with immense loss."

The diagonal downhill charge of these two regiments was swift and irresistible; it is thus described by a French observer²: "The enemy's reinforcements which he launched against our divisions, charged at a running pace, but with such order and unity that looking on from a distance one might have thought it was cavalry galloping. Hardly had they repulsed the troops on their right, when they were in on the centre, and after the centre on to the left . . ." This charge decided the battle and the French were everywhere repulsed with heavy loss. The casualties of the 48th had been heavy, however, and amounted to 135, 2 officers and 10 men being killed and 8 officers and 104 men wounded.³

During the charge Ensign Parsons of the 48th was shot dead whilst carrying the Colours and cheering on the men to charge. Major White, who had been commanding since Colonel Wilson had been wounded, was himself badly wounded during the battle, and the command devolved upon Captain Bell. Both these officers received a medal and a step in battalion rank.

Wellington's dispatch reporting this fight says: "In the course of this contest, the gallant Fourth Division which has so frequently been distinguished in this army surpassed their former good conduct. Every regiment charged with the bayonet, and the 48th, 7th, 20th and 23rd four different times. Their officers set them the example and Major-General Ross had two horses shot under him." Later in the dispatch he says, "It is impossible to describe the enthusiastic bravery of the Fourth Division," and it was this description that caused the Fourth Division to be known later as "The Enthusiasts."

After his failure on 28th July, Soult formed a new plan of moving to the north through Otiz and thus placing himself between Wellington's main army and San Sebastian. With this object he commenced to concentrate on his right at Sorauren and on the Sorauren—Otiz road. This move involved a flank march in face of Wellington's army, well placed for a counter-attack and encouraged by their success of the 28th. It was a risky move, and he suffered for it.

During the battle on the 28th, unknown to the French, the Seventh

**The Second Battle
of Sorauren.**



THE PENINSULAR DRUM.
Captured from the French 58th.

Division (including the 2/58th) had been moving with all speed to the assistance of their comrades, marching throughout the night of 28th July. About 8.30 a.m. on 30th July they fell upon the French flank, driving them from their position into the valley. The French soon got locked in a stationary fight with Inglis's brigade, but Barnes's brigade and the Portuguese brigade of the Seventh Division, which had not descended to the river and the road, maintained a steady fire from the slope. Thus three French divisions (those of Conroux, Maucune and Foy) found themselves practically cut off and surrounded at Sorauren, and after putting up a stubborn defence and suffering severe casualties, many of them surrendered.

During this battle the French 58th of the Line, which formed part of Conroux's Division, lost 348 men as prisoners. This division was faced by the Seventh Division, so it is probable that many of these prisoners were taken by the detachment of the 2/58th.

From Sorauren the French retired to the north in great disorder, passing through San Sebastian and moving on to Echalar. Throughout the retirement their rearguard was attacked by the Fourth, Seventh and Light Divisions following in pursuit. Finally, at Echalar, on 2nd August, Soult gathered the remnants of his army, taking up a position on the heights to the north of the town in the hope of checking the pursuit. He had twenty-five thousand men compared with Wellington's twelve thousand, formed of the Fourth, Seventh and Light Divisions, and only the French demoralization made an attack possible. The plan was for the Light Division to work round the French western flank, while the Fourth and Seventh Divisions assaulted the position frontally.

**Combat at
Echalar.**

The morning broke with dense fog, and as it happened Barnes's brigade (including the 2/58th) of the Seventh Division was the first to come into contact with the enemy. Though alone and unsupported, it was at once launched to the attack by its intrepid leader against the divisions of Conroux and Vandermaesen, which outnumbered it by four to one. Once more the 2/58th were face to face with the French 58th of the Line. A lively action followed, but there was no spirit in the French that day; they were taken by surprise and, in spite of their superior numbers, they soon gave way. Wellington, in his dispatches, states: "In my life I never saw such an attack as was made by General Barnes's brigade upon the enemy at Echalar." "They were formed for the attack and advance . . . with a regularity and gallantry which I have seldom seen equalled, and actually drove the two divisions of the enemy, notwithstanding the resistance opposed to them, from these formidable heights. It is impossible that I can extol too highly the conduct of Major-General Barnes and these brave troops which was the admiration of all who were witnesses of it."

It seems probable that it was either on this occasion or at the second Battle of Sorauren on 30th July that the drum of the French 58th, now kept in the officers' mess, was captured.

During the various actions in the Pyrenees from 28th July to 2nd August, the 58th detachment of four weak companies lost 25 men killed and 7 officers and 52 men wounded.⁴ Major Campbell, who commanded until he was wounded, received a medal for this action, and was also promoted Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel. He was replaced in command by Captain B. Stone.

Having now finally driven the French army from Spain, Wellington disposed his troops to protect the frontier, while he continued with the siege of San Sebastian. A previous attack by the **Fall of San Sebastian.** Fifth Division had failed, and there was a feeling in this Division that success was impossible. In order to remove this defeatist attitude, Wellington called for forty volunteers from each battalion in the Light, First and Fourth Divisions "to show the Fifth Division how to mount a breach." This lesson was sufficient, and a brigade of the Fifth Division led the attack, supported by the volunteers, and after stubborn resistance by the garrison the fortress fell. The 48th detachment of volunteers was commanded by Captain R. Grey, who was wounded. In his dispatch Graham, who was in command, mentions particularly Captain J. Taylor of the 48th, who was Brigade Major to the 1st Brigade.

The *Illustrated Sporting and Dramatic News* of 24th December, 1881, contains the following story with regard to the 58th.⁵

A "Steelback." In the operations prior to the crossing of the Bidassoa, a recruit named Richard Hovenden, who had lately joined from Oakham, had signalized himself in the fight. "It was his first time to smell gunpowder, but he behaved well with all the coolness of an old hand.

"A very big French Sergeant was about to despatch one of the Connaught Rangers when Dick sprang up, clubbed him with his musket, broke the butt, and had no resource but to throw himself bodily on another Frenchman, parrying the thrust of a bayonet with the portion of gun stock left, while he clutched him by the throat with his other hand. The struggle was fierce and brief, the Frenchman was as neatly strangled as if the job had been done by Jack Ketch.

"The day after this event there was a disturbance in a wine shop; Hovenden and four others concerned were court-martialled and sentenced to be flogged. The first four bore their punishment without wincing; then Hovenden was led up. He stood the pain bravely till the twentieth stroke, when he gave a sob and fainted.

"Hovenden returned to the ranks, but was avoided by his comrades; no one would speak to him. He asked his own chum why, and was told that the others had taken their punishment properly while he had shrunk like a girl at the twentieth lash. 'Don't you know why we are called steelbacks? Surely the whole army admits that we care as little for flogging as for the Frenchman's steel.'

"Next morning at parade, when the 'dismiss' was sounded, Hovenden



PYRENEES, 1813.

Reproduced by courtesy of the Historical Committee of The Prince of Wales's Volunteers.

walked deliberately to where the Colonel was standing, saluted and said : ' Meaning no offence, Sir, I wish to tell you that you are a fool.' Hovenden was court-martialled on the spot and sentenced to one hundred and fifty lashes.

" The Colonel, however, postponed the flogging as Hovenden had not yet recovered from his previous lashes. He was placed in the cells ; the Doctor tried to find some reason for his behaviour, but could get nothing out of him except that he wished to be flogged again.

" That night the French attacked Tolosa. The 58th, 9th and 88th turned out to repulse the attack.

" Hovenden in his cell heard the fighting. After a time he could stand it no longer. Climbing to the cell window, he wrenched out a bar and dropped to the ground outside, then glided steadily through the darkness in the direction of the sounds of fighting. He picked up a musket beside a dead body and was seen approaching the fighting line. He recognized the familiar voices of men of his own Regiment. Close at hand two men were engaged in the grip of a death wrestle. His Colonel, his sword arm limp by his side and bleeding profusely, was one of them. Hovenden levelled his piece and a bullet sped through the brain of the Frenchman.

" The Colonel sank exhausted to the ground and the private, taking a handkerchief out of the officer's pocket, and forming a tourniquet with his ramrod, stopped the flow of blood.

" A victorious British shout was heard ; the Colonel opened his eyes and stared at him with a startled smile. ' I'm ruined,' said Hovenden to himself ; ' he recognized me. I'll get the guard room sentries into an awful scrape. I think the Colonel is safe now—it's best to get back to the cell while I can.' Hardly had he finished these thoughts when a stray bullet struck him ; but he staggered back wounded but unobserved to his cell.

" Next morning the first request of the Colonel to the surgeon who attended him was that Hovenden, who had saved his life, was to be immediately released. But in his cell Hovenden lay dead from the wound of a spent bullet. ' Poor fellow,' said the kindly Surgeon-Major, ' his wish to be flogged was not gratified ; but I am glad he died with a wound in front and none on his back.' "

More than a month elapsed before Wellington decided to invade France ; but on 7th October he attacked the French positions on the **Battle of Nivelle**. Bidassoa, which he carried mainly by manœuvre. After this Soult withdrew his main line to the line of the River Nivelle, which he proceeded to fortify strongly. Meanwhile, Wellington felt himself unable to advance with Pampeluna still uncaptured in his rear. The fortress, in the grip of starvation, could hold out little longer, and at last on 30th October the garrison capitulated.

His right wing freed by the surrender of Pampeluna, Wellington made hurried preparations for his attack on Soult's position on the Nivelle. This position covered some sixteen miles ; commencing with the defences of St. Jean

de Luz on the right, it rose to the hills of La Rhune and then, strengthened by the redoubts of St. Barbe and Granada, descended to the valley of the Nivelle, rising on the right banks to the heights of Mount Mondarain.

The main attack was to be launched against the French centre at Sarre ; the force for this purpose was placed under Beresford, who allotted to the Fourth Division the capture of the Barbe redoubt, to the Seventh Division the Granada redoubt, and to the Third Division the task of forcing their way down the gorge of the Nivelle and capturing the bridge of Amots, thus dividing the enemy in two. On the left and right of this attack other divisions were to attempt to seize the heights of La Rhune and Mount Mondarain.

At dawn on 10th November the battle commenced. The French skirmishers were driven in and soon the Light Division had captured the redoubt of La Rhune. At about eight o'clock the main attack commenced, but after a concentrated fire the French garrisons evacuated the redoubts of St. Barbe and Granada without awaiting the assault of the Fourth and Seventh Divisions, who pushed on immediately and captured Sarre. This was soon followed by the capture of the bridge of Amots, and the French, divided and disorganized, were driven from the field.

Soult had been driven in a day from a mountain position which he had been fortifying for three months ; he had lost over four thousand men and fifty guns, and his field magazines at St. Jean de Luz. The 48th, who were commanded during the action by Brevet Major Bell, lost 2 sergeants and 5 men killed, and 4 officers, 4 sergeants and 53 men wounded, and 2 men missing, a total of 68 casualties in all ranks.⁶

The Allies having made themselves masters of the defences of the Nivelle, the French concentrated in front of Bayonne, where an entrenched camp had been prepared to receive them. Lord

**Battles of the
Nive.**

Wellington immediately advanced and took up a position within two miles of the enemy, strengthening it with defensive outposts. His left rested upon the sea and his right extended to the River Nive.

As the weather was cold and wet, and heavy rains had materially injured the roads, no further operations could be undertaken at the moment, and the army remained quiet for nearly a month. This was welcome comfort and necessary refreshment to the soldiers, who had endured for many weeks much hardship in their mountain bivouacs. The Fourth Division (with the 48th) had their cantonments at Ascain and Sevres, and the Seventh Division (including the 2/58th) at St. Pee. On 20th November General Barnes, who had commanded the brigade containing the 2/58th detachment, was appointed to command of a brigade in the Second Division, his brigade in the Seventh Division being taken over by General Gardiner.

On 9th December Wellington forced the passage of the Nive with little difficulty, the Fourth and Seventh Divisions being in reserve. Seeing the Allied armies divided by the Nive, Soult made efforts to defeat the two portions

of the army in detail during the succeeding days, but his troops were disheartened by their previous defeats and the superior fighting of Wellington's veterans resulted in the defeat of all French enterprises. On 13th December both divisions containing battalions of the Regiment took part in the Battle of St. Pierre, after which the Allies established themselves on the left bank of the River Adour. They were not, however, in the thickest part of the fighting and suffered few casualties. Captain B. Stone, who commanded the 58th detachment, was promoted Brevet Major and received a medal after this action.

After the battle bad weather prevented all further operations, and both armies went into winter quarters, the Fourth Division lying between Arvaunts and Arcanques, and the Seventh Division at Ustarits.

During the year (1813) three fresh battle honours had been gained by the 48th and 2/58th—" Vittoria," " Pyrenees " (for the actions at Sorauren and Echalar) and " Nivelle."

In order to carry the campaign farther into France it was first necessary to cross the Adour, drive the French from Bayonne and
Battle of Orthez. blockade or besiege the town. It was decided to bridge the Adour below Bayonne, and to cover this and draw French troops away a threat was to be made to turn the French left flank. The bulk of the British army therefore moved eastward along the Adour and across its tributaries, the Saison and the Gave de Pau. During these operations on 23rd February, the Seventh Division drove the French from their works at Hastings and Oeyregave (on the Gave de Pau) with a loss of fifty-five killed and wounded. On 24th February the Fourth Division, having missed the ford at St. Dos on the Saison, lost a few men drowned. The plan had been successful, for on the same day (24th February) the Adour was crossed below Bayonne with little opposition, and on 26th February the town was invested.

On the 26th February the Allies had reached Orthez and were still seeking to force a crossing of the Gave de Pau. An unguarded crossing was at last discovered at Berenx, four miles west of Orthez, and divisions were pushed across before the French could oppose them. Soult then decided to take up a position covering Orthez from the west, his left resting on the town itself and his right on a ridge near St. Boes, three miles to the north of the river. The position was naturally strong, and Wellington had but thirty-three thousand men against thirty-seven thousand of the French. On the morning of 27th February the attack was opened, the Fourth and Seventh Divisions being directed through the village of St. Boes against the French right, while the Third and Sixth Divisions attacked the centre, and the Light Division remained in reserve.

During the first attack, which was only partially successful, Anson's brigade (including the 48th) of the Fourth Division was in reserve and the Seventh Division had not yet come up. Anson's brigade was then thrown into the fight on the left, and a brigade of the Light Division on the right

of the Fourth Division, and the heights were carried. The Fourth Division were too disorganized by their attack, however, to pursue the defeated French, and the Seventh Division (including the 2/58th) passed through them, driving the enemy eastwards.

Meanwhile General Hill with the Second Division had crossed the river above Orthez and was threatening the French rear, and it was only with great difficulty and many casualties that they withdrew across the Luy de Bearn in great disorder.

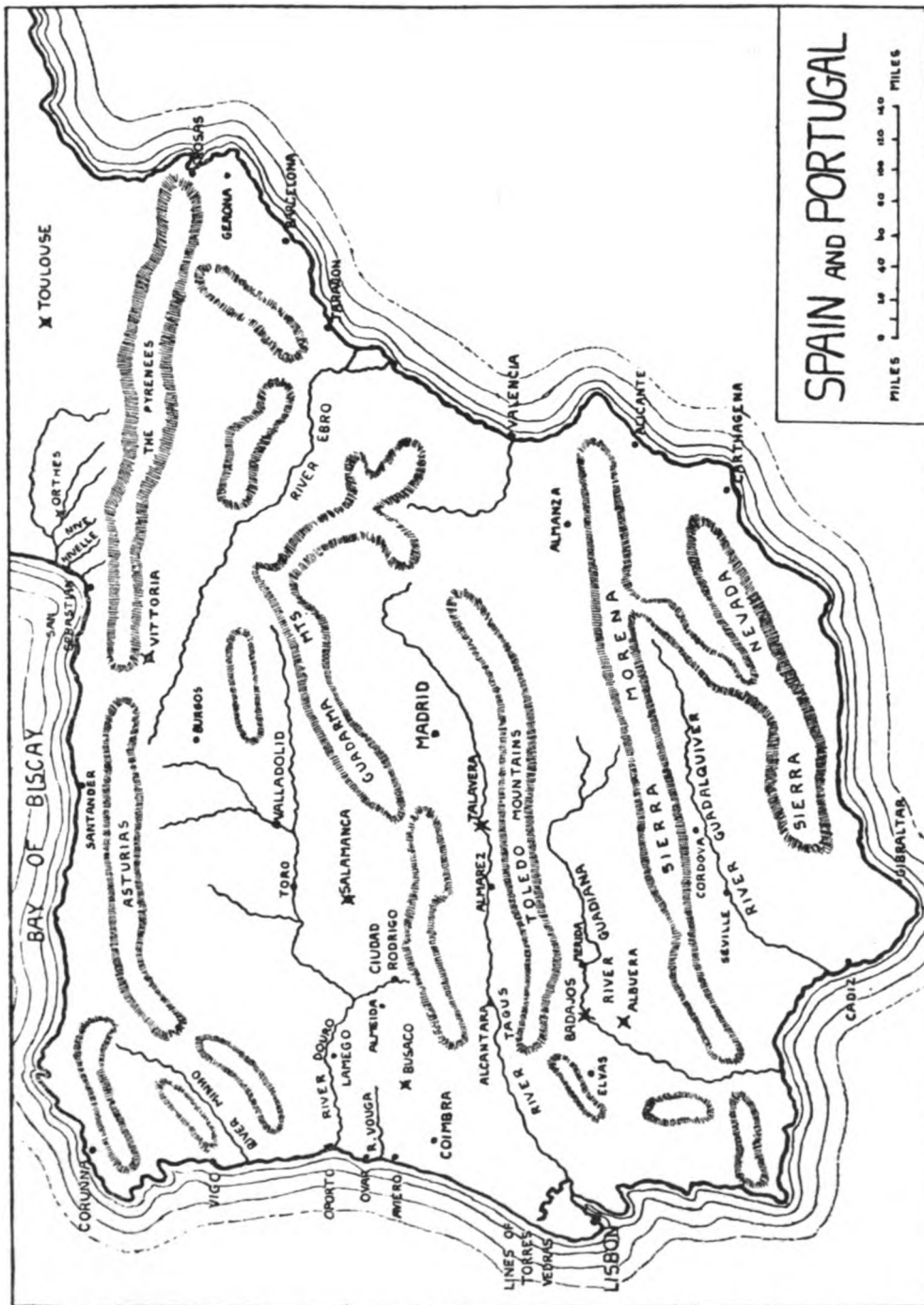
During the battle the 48th, who were commanded by Major Bell, had no officer casualties, the only losses being 1 sergeant and 1 private killed, and 9 rank and file wounded. The detachment of the 2/58th was commanded at this time by Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, who received a medal. Captain Rolt also received a medal and was admitted to the 3rd Class Order of the Bath for commanding the 17th Portuguese Regiment. The losses of the 2/58th in this action were one officer (Lieutenant Lampriere) killed and 5 officers wounded—Captain Wood, Ensign McDonald, Ensign Wood being wounded severely, and Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell and Captain Willoe slightly. In addition about forty men were killed and wounded.⁷ During the action the 2/58th captured three brass six-pounders and one howitzer.

On the morning of 28th February, and during the two succeeding days, Wellington advanced in three columns, the Seventh and Light Divisions on the left moving by Amou St. Cricq and Mont de Marsan. From here Beresford was on 7th March diverted against Bordeaux. This town hoisted the white flag and was entered by him on 12th March, the remaining columns following Soult, who was retreating on Toulouse. The centre column, consisting of the Third, Fourth and Sixth Divisions, marched by St. Sever and Cazerès, and the right column under Hill by Samadet and Aire.

On 26th March Soult, finding himself overtaken by the enemy, withdrew the greater part of his army within the walls of Toulouse, and **Battle of Toulouse.** on the following day the Allies closed in, forming an arc round the western portion of the town with its flanks resting on the River Garonne. The main portion of the city is on the right or eastern bank of the river, which Wellington made preparations to cross.

Hoping to attack the city on its southern or least protected side, portions of the Allied army crossed the Garonne at Pinsaguel to the south of the city, but insufficient roads compelled a withdrawal and caused considerable delay. A bridge was then thrown over the river to the north of the town, between St. Caprais and La Capalette, and on April 5th the Third, Fourth and Sixth Divisions were passed over, while the bands played the "Fall of Paris" to hearten the men at their work.

Heavy rain swelled the river to such an extent that portions of the bridge were carried away on 6th April, and it was not re-established until four days later, when further troops were passed across.



Wellington's main army was now assembled to the north of the city, but on this side the defences were the strongest as the town was protected by the canal of Languedoc, and he still intended to attack from the south-east, where the landing was more open and the defences weaker. In addition to the canal, the French constructed defences on the heights of Calvinet to the east of the town. These heights overlooked the valley of the River Hers, along which the army must pass at close range, and exposed them to grave danger of flank attack. This difficult and dangerous duty was allotted to the Fourth and Sixth Divisions, Anson's brigade, containing the 48th, being selected for the right flank guard. Meanwhile the Second and Third Divisions made demonstrations against the St. Cyprian bridgehead and on the northern front of the town. Arriving successfully at the Toulouse—Caramen road, the Fourth and Sixth Divisions at once deployed for the attack, but Soult, anticipating this, attacked first. A rocket battery, new and unknown to the French, however, threw them into disorder, and they were immediately counter-attacked by Lambert's and Anson's brigades with great success. The attack continued and the heights of Calvinet were stormed, the French withdrawing behind the canal of Languedoc into the inner defences of Toulouse. In his dispatch of the battle Wellington says: "The Fourth Division, although exposed to a very severe fire on its flank, was less engaged than the Sixth and did not suffer so much, but behaved with its usual bravery."

Toulouse was now surrounded on three sides, and only one line of retreat lay open to the French, the road to Carcassonne, by which they escaped during the night, Toulouse being entered on the following day.

During the Battle of Toulouse the 48th lost 1 sergeant and 15 rank and file killed, and 4 officers and 44 other ranks wounded.⁸ Lieutenant-Colonel Wilson commanded the Regiment in this action, and was afterwards appointed a K.C.B.

On the evening of 12th April news arrived from Paris that Napoleon had been deposed, and a convention was signed with Marshal Soult suspending hostilities. Shortly after this the British went into cantonments, the Fourth Division about Cordon, with the 48th at Aulse, where they remained until June, while the detachment of the 2/58th were stationed at Lainon. On 6th June the 2/58th assembled at Blackfort Camp near Bordeaux, and soon after left for England, joining their depot companies, which were employed guarding French prisoners at Hastings.

On 25th December, 1815, the 2/58th was disbanded at Hull, the effective non-commissioned officers and men being transferred to the 1/58th.

The 48th left France on 16th June, embarking at Poliac, about eight leagues below Bordeaux, for Ireland.⁹

Peace.
April, 1814.

CHAPTER XVII

(1/58TH, 1812-1843)

58TH ARRIVE IN SPAIN (1812)—BATTLE OF CASTALLA—CAPTURE OF TARRAGONA—58TH LEAVE SPAIN—AMERICAN WAR—BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG—PARIS (1815)—JAMAICA—LORD LYNE-DOCH—LORD FREDERICK BENTINCK—ENGLAND AND IRELAND (1822-1828)—SIR KENNETH DOUGLAS—CEYLON (1828-1839)—REGIMENTAL SAVINGS BANK—GENERAL MAITLAND—ENGLAND (1839-1843).

DURING the Peninsular War, the eastern corner of Spain, the ever-turbulent province of Catalonia, had put up a stern resistance to the French occupation. This formed a most valuable diversion, keeping large French armies employed which would otherwise have been able to reinforce the main armies operating against Wellington. Throughout the war we had given the Spaniards in this neighbourhood some assistance in supplies and war material, and in 1812 the situation in Sicily being easier, it became possible to augment the assistance by transferring a portion of the garrison to Eastern Spain. This force under General Maitland, who twenty-one years later, in 1833, was to become Colonel of the Regiment, consisted of about six thousand six hundred men, and included the 1/58th (871 strong, under Colonel David Walker), the 1/10th and the 1/81st, the remaining troops being largely foreigners in our service.

General Maitland's small army sailed from Sicily on 7th June, 1812, but after long battling with adverse winds was still at Palermo on 28th June. On reaching Minorca, on 15th July, the troops were landed and encamped near Port Mahon, to await the arrival of Spanish reinforcements from Majorca, where they were being trained. At last they arrived and the expedition sailed for the coast of Catalonia, and made a demonstration against Palamos near Gerona on 31st July. During the expedition Captain R. Chute of the 58th was wounded. The enemy were, however, too strong for a landing to be possible and the expedition proceeded to Alicante, in the south of Valencia, the only part of the east coast not in French hands, where it landed on 9th August.

Hearing that there was a French force in the neighbourhood of Castalla, Maitland moved forward a few marches beyond Alicante, reaching Elda, but the French had already been withdrawn, and difficulties of transport and supply made it impossible to follow. He therefore returned to Alicante and remained there during the winter 1812-1813.

In March, 1813, General Sir John Murray assumed command of the
181

Allied force and advanced in the direction of Valencia. The French were driven out of Alcoy on 12th March and a reconnaissance made beyond the mountains to the north. However, on 12th April, Suchet, the French General, assumed the offensive and advanced with a strong force against the combined force of British, Sicilians and Spaniards, driving the covering troops from the Pass of Biar. General Murray then fell back on to a prepared position along a ridge to the west of Castalla, with his right resting on that place. The 58th formed part of Clinton's Division, which also included the 1/10th and 1/81st, and was detailed to hold the right of the line, the 58th being posted in the castle itself.

The day following three French divisions, under Suchet in person, attacked the left of the Allied position at Castalla, but were repulsed after a hard-contested action. The French also attacked the centre of the ridge, where they were greeted by the 27th with a volley which threw them into confusion. The 27th followed their volley with a charge down the hill and the day was won, the French being pursued to the pass of Biar. The 58th are reported to have joined in the pursuit and suffered seven casualties, one man being killed and six wounded. "All the success was due to the bravery of the troops; generalship there was none, and much blood was spilt to no profit."¹

The following day the French withdrew to the north, and the Allied army, having followed as far as Alcoy, returned to Alicante.

Six weeks later, in May, while Wellington was advancing towards Vittoria, all the available troops at Alicante, including the 1/58th (in
Capture of Tarragona. H.M.S. *Malta*), were embarked for an attack on the fortress of Tarragona in order to contain the maximum of French troops possible. To some extent they succeeded, as the French moved ten thousand men from Barcelona to meet the threat.

The Bay of Tarragona was reached on 1st June, and on the 3rd the troops were landed, and ground was at once broken against the city. The siege works proceeded until 10th June, when some British spies in Barcelona gave notice of the large French force marching to the relief of Tarragona. The following day Murray continued to disembark material, and throughout the 11th the city was bombarded in concert with the men-of-war, and orders were given to storm the outworks the same night.

At the last moment, Murray, alarmed by exaggerated reports of the advance of the French on both sides, decided to abandon the siege and seek safety in a prompt re-embarkation. It was quite unnecessary; both Suchet from Valencia and Mathieu from Barcelona had halted and were falling back, but Murray, taking counsel of his fears, abandoned not only the siege but also his precious siege train, which had been painfully and slowly collected by Wellington, and returned by sea to Alicante. Soon after this Murray was replaced in command by Lord William Bentinck, a more vigorous commander.

Meanwhile Wellington had won his great victory at Vittoria, and in

July, 1813, the French evacuated Valencia. The town was at once occupied by the Anglo-Sicilian army, including the 1/58th, who met with an enthusiastic reception as they filed through the streets on the way to Vinaros, fifteen miles south of the Ebro, where the headquarters were established by 30th July. Soon after, the Col de Balaguer was secured, with the mountains on the left bank of the Ebro, and on 30th August, 1813, Tarragona itself was again invested. Suchet moved up a large force to relieve the fortress, and Bentinck retired to the Col de Balaguer. Suchet then evacuated Tarragona after dismantling it and destroying its walls, retiring towards Barcelona, followed by Bentinck.

On 12th September Suchet turned on the British advanced guard at Ordal and, driving it in, advanced upon the Allies' main body, in position near Villa Franca. Some fighting occurred in which the 1/58th lost one man, and Bentinck then fell back on Arbos. The rest of the year the 1/58th spent in cantonments at Tarragona.

In September, 1813, Sir William Clinton succeeded Lord William Bentinck, and opened the year by investing Barcelona, in which operation the 1/58th were taking part when peace was declared.

In Wellington's dispatch dated 19th April, 1814, he states that he has to perform a most satisfactory duty in reporting on the conduct and merit of General Clinton and the troops under his command. The dispatch continues : "Circumstances have not enabled these troops to have so brilliant a share in the operations of the war as their brother officers and soldiers on this side of the Peninsula, but they have not been less usefully employed. Their conduct when engaged with the enemy has always been meritorious and I have every reason to be satisfied with the General Officers Commanding and with them."

A month before peace was declared Wellington sent orders for Clinton to join his main army with his six battalions, and a few weeks later the 58th marched to Bordeaux, their route being via Arila, St. Georgia, Labuhara and Belville.

During the war with France there had been considerable friction between England and the United States of America. The Americans were looking upon Canada with covetous eyes ; they objected to the restrictions on their shipping necessarily enforced by the British Navy in prosecuting the war, and also they saw Napoleon at the height of his power. They thought, no doubt, that England would soon succumb to his power as other nations had done, and in 1812 joined our enemies and declared war on England.

In view of the commitments of the British Army in the Peninsula, Mediterranean and other parts of the world, it was at first impossible to send any adequate assistance to the Canadians and the small garrison in Canada. After the American War of Independence, however, the cream of the colonists had

The American War.

transferred to Canada, and these Canadians, with the small regular garrison, put up a stern resistance to the American attacks.

On the successful termination of the war in the Peninsula, it was decided to transfer troops from Spain. Included among the regiments was the 1/58th, to whom were transferred all available men from the 2/58th, which was being broken up. The 1/58th embarked at Bordeaux on 31st May, 1814, and arrived in Canada on 9th August.

Passing the scene of their victories in Lower Canada, the 58th proceeded straight to Montreal, where they joined the force collecting under the command of Lieutenant-General Sir George Prevost, to operate against the American settlements on Lake Champlain. Here they were brigaded with the Buffs, 5th and 27th, under Major-General Sir Marley Power. This brigade was joined by two others on the frontier of Lower Canada, and Major-General de Rottenbourg took command of the whole force.

As the British approached, the American army abandoned its entrenched camp on the River Chazy at Champlain. The advance was continued, the enemy obstructing the roads by felling trees and removing bridges. On 6th September the division moved into Plattsburg in two columns, the right being led by Power's brigade. The American militia, supported by their regulars, opposed the right column, but they were driven back before it from all their positions, and the column entered Plattsburg.

**Battle of
Plattsburg.**

The Americans next occupied a high ridge of land on the south bank of the Saranac, strengthened with field works and blockhouses and armed with heavy guns, with a flotilla of gunboats in the river. The British naval flotilla, though in no state for action, was at once ordered up from Lake Champlain, and when, on 11th September, it was seen approaching Plattsburg Bay, orders were given for the troops to force the fords of the Saranac and carry scaling ladders to assault the enemy's works. The leading regiments, including the 58th, crossed the river and were climbing the heights when it was discovered that the American flotilla had driven off the British gunboats. Deprived of the co-operation of the fleet, the British General gave orders for the attack to be abandoned, and the division retired to Lake Champlain, and later to Montreal and Fort Henry in Upper Canada.

The casualties in the 58th during the advance upon Plattsburg and at the passage of the River Saranac amounted to 4 men killed, 3 officers, 1 sergeant, and 29 men wounded.^a It must have borne the brunt of these actions, as its losses were, with the exception of the Buffs, heavier than those of the other regiments engaged.

**The Entry into
Paris, 1815.**

On 24th December, 1814, peace between America and England was signed at Ghent, and for a few brief months we were at peace with the world. It was not, however, to last long, for early in 1815 Napoleon escaped from Elba and Europe was once more in chaos. The news reached Canada in early summer, and the 58th were at



GENERAL LORD LYNEDOCH.

Colonel, 58th Regiment, 10th February, 1823, to 5th September, 1826.

(Reproduced from the original painting by Sir Thomas Lawrence, P.R.A.)

By the courtesy of the United Service Club.

once ordered back to Europe. They sailed in July and, reaching Portsmouth Harbour on 4th August, were at once transferred to Ostend. From here they proceeded in canal boats to Ghent, arriving on 11th August, but Napoleon's fate had already been decided at Waterloo. The 58th then marched to Paris, where they arrived on 3rd September, 1815, and with the 6th, 16th and 82nd Regiments were formed into the 15th Brigade under Major-General Sir Thomas Bradford, forming part of the Seventh Division encamped at St. Denis.

Whilst in Paris the 58th took part in the duties of the occupation and in various military displays, amongst others the grand review of sixty thousand British troops on the plains of St. Denis in the presence of the Allied Sovereigns on 5th September, 1815. When the treaties of peace between France and the Allies had been definitely signed, and the troops designated to remain as the Army of Occupation, the 58th was amongst the regiments ordered home.

They moved in November to Romanville, where they remained until 9th December, 1815. After crossing to England, they were in Canterbury for a few days in January *en route* for Ireland, where they were stationed at Birr. Here, in March, they were joined by the remains of the 2/58th from London, and in the following May the cadre of the 2/58th was formed into a depot unit for the Regiment at Chatham.

On 17th October, 1816, the 58th sailed from Cork for Jamaica, where, like two other regiments in the command, the 50th and 61st, **Jamaica.** it suffered terribly from sickness. The losses from climatic disease, mainly yellow fever, in a stay of only a little over five years amounted to 5 officers and 375 men, while in addition 58 men were invalidated home.

On 26th April, 1822, the 58th arrived at Portsmouth, and moved next year to Brighton, where on 6th December, 1823, Lieutenant-Colonel **England and Ireland.** Henry John, commanding the 58th, commanded a guard of honour of the Regiment and the 7th Hussars which received His Majesty King George IV.

In 1823, General Lord Lynedoch^s was appointed Colonel of the 58th in succession to Lord Cavan who had been appointed to the 45th Foot in that year. He had seen much service, and was the founder of the United Service Club. Three years later Lord Lynedoch, being transferred to the 14th Foot, was succeeded as Colonel of the 58th by Lord Frederick Bentinck.^s On 1st March, 1828, Lord Frederick died and General Sir Kenneth Douglas became Colonel of the 58th.

In March, 1824, the 58th went to Ireland, the voyage by sea taking nearly a month. On 4th May, 1826, they embarked at a day's notice and were ordered to Liverpool on account of the disturbed state of the county of Lancashire. This was the first time the Regiment was transported on steamers. It returned to Dublin in July, and then went to Portsmouth in October.

On 26th November, 1827, new Colours were presented at Portsmouth by H.R.H. The Duke of Clarence (afterwards King William IV). His Royal

Highness made a long and complimentary speech, recounting the various services in which the Regiment had been engaged, and especially praising its gallant deeds at Quebec, Gibraltar and in the Peninsula. He also referred to the fact of the Duke of Wellington having served in the Regiment.

A few days later, on 29th November, 1827, Lieutenant-Colonel Clifford succeeded Lieutenant-Colonel Henry John in command.

The service companies embarked for Ceylon in June, 1828, and after eleven uneventful years returned to England in June, 1839.

Ceylon. On 22nd November, 1833, General Sir Kenneth Douglas died, and General Sir F. Maitland³ became Colonel of the Regiment, which appointment he held until his death in 1848. He was buried at Hartfield in Sussex, where there is a tablet to his memory, over which hang two old Colours of the Regiment.

Lieutenant-Colonel J. W. Frith took over command on 16th December, 1836, and remained in command until replaced by Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Wynyard on 30th December, 1842.

During the stay in Ceylon, Lieutenant-Colonel Fugion, Paymaster of the 58th, organized the Regimental Savings Bank, which was afterwards adopted on 30th July, 1842, by the whole Army. He received the thanks of the Government for his services in this matter.

During the threatened disturbances in 1835, the Regiment was employed with the troops in the Kandyan provinces, under the command of General Sir John Wilson. The Regiment returned to England in 1838, and after a sojourn at Portsmouth, proceeded to Glasgow in 1840 and Edinburgh in 1841.

On 9th July, 1841, new Colours were presented on Bruntisfield Links, Edinburgh, by Lady Greenock, wife of the Major-General Commanding. These Colours were afterwards carried through the New Zealand War, and later on were handed over to that colony, where they are still preserved as an honourable memento of the services of the 58th.

**The 58th in
England,
1839-1843.**

From Edinburgh the Regiment proceeded to Manchester and immediately after to Dublin, arriving on 8th July, 1841. Here, on 13th September, it was inspected by Prince George of Cambridge (afterwards Commander-in-Chief).

In August, 1842, the celebrated riots for increased wages broke out in the manufacturing districts of England, and with only four hours' notice, headquarters and six hundred men proceeded from Dublin to Liverpool, *en route* for Manchester. The embarkation was made without a single case of drunkenness or absence, and the men conducted themselves in an equally creditable manner during the whole of the riots. The notice of the move was so sudden that officers on leave were ordered to join at Manchester, and one of them had to go on guard there without uniform.

In November, 1842, the Regiment moved to Chatham, preparatory to a tour of service in Australia and New Zealand.

CHAPTER XVIII

(48TH, 1814-1853)

IRELAND (1814-1816)—AUSTRALIA (1817-1824)—THE VOYAGE DESCRIBED—BUSHRANGERS—INDIA (1824-1835)—THE COORG CAMPAIGN—ENGLAND AND IRELAND (1835-1837)—FIRST MOVE BY "RAIL ROAD"—GIBRALTAR (1838-1844)—JAMAICA (1844-1847)—PRESENTATION OF COLOURS (1838)—IRELAND (1847-1852)—WALES (1852-1853).

WHEN we last referred to the 48th they were at Bordeaux, recovering from their five years' campaign in the Peninsula. They sailed on 19th June, 1814, for Ireland and arrived at Cork on 8th July, 1814, marching on the 19th for Clonmel. Here they remained only a few months undisturbed before they were detailed as a reinforcement for the American War. They had actually marched as far as Fermoy preparatory to embarkation when the orders were countermanded, and they returned to Clonmel, moving in November to Templemore. Moves were made on 28th February, 1815, to Limerick, and on 1st August to Dublin, where the Royal Barracks were occupied. In March, 1816, they moved to Richmond Barracks, and the following month to Naas, sending detachments to the different towns and villages nearby; in these quarters the Regiment remained until December, 1816, when orders were received to embark for New South Wales. On 1st January they marched from Naas for Fermoy to await the arrival of transports at Cork; during this march not a single desertion took place, which was quite exceptional at the time in the case of a unit ordered on foreign service.

There is some doubt as to the date on which Australia was first discovered, but it is certain that a Dutchman, Dirk Hartog, actually landed there in 1616 on his way to India. It was not, however, until the end of the eighteenth century that white settlers began to arrive in the country, when in 1788 a settlement for convicts was opened at Botany Bay on the coast of New South Wales. For a time independent companies were formed to keep order, and as the convicts grew in numbers, the companies were increased until they became a regiment known as the New South Wales Corps. This corps later became the 102nd Regiment and was withdrawn to England, being relieved in succession by the 73rd and 46th.

The work required of the troops was that of police rather than soldiers; their duties included the maintenance of order among the convicts and the protection of the free settlers, not only against the convicts, but also against the aborigines.

On 22nd March, 1817, the 48th embarked at Cork under Lieutenant-Colonel J. Erskine, C.B., three companies on board the *Matilda* arriving at Port Jackson, Sydney, on 3rd August, and the remainder a month later. The 46th were overjoyed at the sight of the relieving troops.

The following description of the voyage from the story of Mary Ann Wellington is of interest when it is remembered that the ship was a small sailing vessel and the voyage to Australia took six months.

"Colonel James Erskine was a man well adapted to keep all his junior officers and soldiers in good heart, through a long and tedious voyage. Remarkable for an intelligent mind and for literary pursuits, he encouraged in all beneath him the cultivation of letters, which tended greatly to lighten the burden of confinement on board. At the same time he was a disciplinarian, and his orders for muster and deck duty, were as strictly observed on board the *Matilda* as were the orders of the captain of the vessel to weigh anchor, unfurl sails and keep a good look out ahead.

"Two hundred privates on board, besides the band and officers, women and children, and the crew of the ship, formed a great society assembled in a small compass. It requires good generalship, as well as good management to keep so great a number of men in good order, good health and good humour during six months' voyage; and those officers deserve the highest respect, who take the opportunity of such times to improve the minds of those placed under their care.

"Colonel Erskine was peculiarly happy in varying the different duties which he required, and in such a judicious manner as to make the crew take an interest in the proceeding. The hour of muster was early, the exercise regular and not annoying. He had a certain hour for the practice of the band and took great interest in its advancement, and when the weather permitted it, a general promenade on deck.

"He encouraged every species of mental as well as industrial employment, so that the *Matilda* was a floating scholastic institution, in which soldiers learned the use of their heads and hands, in acquiring knowledge, which proved of most essential service to them in after life."

It seems that the ship put in to Rio de Janiero for supplies.

On their arrival, the 48th found themselves heirs to a dispute which had raged with the greatest acrimony between their predecessors, the 46th Regiment, and Colonel Macquarie, the Governor of New South Wales. Before the appointment of Macquarie a rigid line had been drawn by the free inhabitants to the exclusion of convicts or freed men from society; this tradition he tried to break down by the appointment of emancipated convicts to official posts and by their entertainment in his own house and in the regimental mess of the 73rd Regiment, of which he was Colonel.

Colonel Molle and the officers of the 46th had refused to entertain the freed men, but when "the 48th arrived Macquarie found Colonel Erskine

more pliant than Colonel Molle." Erskine agreed to accept one of Macquarie's emancipated protégés into the society of the mess, but when he called "all officers except the Colonel and two Majors denied admittance to the would-be visitor." Colonel Erskine then invited him to the regimental mess when all the junior officers "abruptly quitted the table." Erskine then "promulgated an order that no officer should quit the table until after the first thirds were drunk. To obey a regimental order was a duty which involved no private complicity. Macquarie, dissatisfied with the officers, warned them on parade not to follow the example of the 46th and on the same day the protégé, uninvited by the officers, appeared at the mess as Erskine's guest. The officers did not abruptly depart, nor display rudeness; but they so comported themselves that the cause of the dispute appeared among them no more."¹

The total white population of Australia at this time amounted to some thirty thousand souls, including both the garrison and the convicts. The country was almost entirely undeveloped and unexplored within a few miles of the coast.

Macquarie, in spite of his other faults, was a great organizer; he was responsible for the construction of many ports, high roads and other public buildings, including the first hospital in the colony. Under him, the first bank in the country, The Bank of New South Wales, was formed in 1816, and three years later a Savings Bank for the deposits of the poor was opened. Half-crown deposits were received, on which interest at seven and a half per cent. was given. "To inspire confidence in the management" four trustees were appointed, one of whom was Colonel Erskine of the 48th.¹

In March, 1818, detachments were sent to Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania), where Lieutenant-Colonel Cimitière, Major in the Regiment, became Commandant and Magistrate, posts which he held for some years; Captain W. N. Watkins' company was stationed at Port Dalrymple, until relieved by another company under Captain W. P. I. Parry, which remained there till 1824. Another company under Major T. Bell moved to Hobart Town in June, 1818, and remained there until April, 1824, Major Bell holding the appointments of Engineer and Magistrate.

To Tasmania were sent the worst of the convicts from Australia, and it became the penal settlement of a penal settlement. A detachment from Major Bell's company, under Lieutenant J. Cuthbertson, was sent to form a settlement at Magazine or Macquarie Harbour, which was thrice penal, containing as it did the worst characters in Tasmania. Lieutenant Cuthbertson acted as Commandant and Magistrate. It is reported of him that he held these appointments with great credit to himself, and advantage to the colony. He was a soldier who had been in eighteen general engagements, and had received severe wounds; his discipline was severe. In February, 1824, "a small vessel, built at the harbour, was in danger, and Cuthbertson ordered out

his own boat to its relief, this he effected ; on returning, his boat was upset and all, except two, were drowned. Cuthbertson was thrice raised by one of the crew ; but finding his strength unequal to retain his hold, he said, ' Man, save yourself ; never mind me—it is no use.' "

On the death of the Commandant the chief authority devolved on a non-commissioned officer of the 48th. " The prisoners were disposed to question his right to obedience ; his government was vigorous and he flogged with redoubled frequency." ^a Of 182 prisoners, 169 were sentenced to receive seven thousand lashes in one year ; that is, all were punished except thirteen and received each, on average, four hundred lashes.

Detachments were sent to other stations in Australia ; Major Morisett's company to Coal River, Captain Allman's to Fort Magazine, Major Taylor's company to Paramatta, and detachments under non-commissioned officers to Bathurst, Liverpool and other places.

Among their other activities in Tasmania, the Regiment was responsible for forming the first Sunday School. Several soldiers while at Sydney had " adopted the sentiments of Methodism, and obtained a room for worship at Hobart Town, where they filled the hour with singing, exhortation and alternate prayer. Corporal Waddy appears to have been their leader. They were assailed with great though transient fury ; their devotion was stifled with hostile noises. The Governor, however, interfered and the disturbers were intimidated, but the landlord of the place growing weary of their company, they sought a place of refuge." A carpenter's workshop was next obtained, but " his wife, a woman of vigorous temper and a Romanist, interdicted the project ; that night there was a dreadful storm, the house rocked ; she awoke in terror, exclaiming ' The Methodists shall have the room ! ' The building became too small and was enlarged to accommodate three hundred persons, and on 13th May, 1821, a Sunday School was formed. All this was done in the absence of a minister. Waddy, who was made a sergeant, went to India, where he soon died." ^a

Some of the more exciting episodes of the Regiment, both in Australia and Tasmania, were connected with the pursuit of bushrangers ;

Bushrangers. these were convicts who had escaped from the penal settlements and taken to the bush. Lack of food and clothing compelled them to raid the settlers, and many murders and other atrocities were committed at their hands.

One of the most notorious of these men was Michael Howe, known as the " First of the Australian Bushrangers." Mike Howe, as he was usually called, was transported from England for highway robbery, and soon after arrival at Sydney was again transported to Tasmania, where his violence caused him to be repeatedly flogged and otherwise punished. Escaping, he took to the bush and placed himself at the head of other bushrangers, terrorizing the country. He was assisted in some of his escapes by an aboriginal girl who accompanied

him. A scouting party, led by an owner of a schooner, attacked Howe and his numerous comrades. Five of the assailants were killed. Soldiers were sent to garrison the homestead of the unsuccessful owner of the schooner. When the bushrangers in their turn attacked, they were beaten off with loss. Their leader, Whitehead, was shot ; and Howe, in pursuance of a compact, cut off his comrade's head to prevent it falling into the hands of the Government. Howe became the captain of the band, and called himself the "Governor of the Ranges." He took the life of any member of the gang who offended him. A convict, Worrall, who yearned for the free pardon which would accrue to the captor of Howe, was zealous in aiding the soldiers. In a race for life, the black girl, following Howe closely and guiding his flight to intricate fastnesses, could not keep up with him. The rascal urged her to speed, but her strength was exhausted. He shot her, and escaped in a ravine. She was not killed, but her affection for him was quenched. She aided his pursuers. At last Howe was alone. He was once captured, but slipped from the cords which bound him, killed one of his captors, and, wounding the other mortally, escaped.

Several skirmishes took place between Howe and his gang and soldiers of the 48th, and more than one of his accomplices were shot, but the chief always contrived to get away. At length a kangaroo hunter called Warburton, led Private William Pugh, of the 48th, a soldier commonly known as "Big Bill," whom he knew as "a most cool and resolute fellow," and John Worrall to Howe's hiding-place. Pugh and Worrall concealed themselves in his hut, and when he arrived pursued him after an exchange of shots. A terrific fight took place, Howe's brains being beaten out before it was over.⁴

Many pages could be devoted to incidents in the pursuit of bushrangers if space were available. We will therefore select but one more case—that of Alexander Pierce, "the Cannibal." This man was probably the most frightful of all the bushrangers. When short of food he killed and ate one of his band of followers, but later took to eating human flesh in preference to other food which was available. After months of freedom he was at last captured by Lieutenant Cuthbertson of the 48th. Even after capture Pierce was impenitent, and boasted that "man's flesh was delicious, far better than fish or pork, and that he had deliberately induced another man to abscond so that he might kill and eat him."⁵

On October 14th, 1823, the companies remaining at headquarters were reviewed by His Excellency Major-General Sir Thomas Brisbane, K.C.B., who issued the following order :—

"The Major-General has the highest possible gratification on the inspection of the 48th Regiment this day. He is now quite at a loss to applaud the judicious selection of the movements by Lieutenant-Colonel Cimitière or the admirable execution of them by the officers and non-commissioned officers in charge of divisions. To analyse [*sic*] any particular one would lead him to

applaud the whole, of which none were more conspicuous than one of greatest importance, the levelling and firing, which could not be excelled. What is not the least gratifying part of the whole is that the corps is not less distinguished in the field than in its interior economy or orderly conduct in quarters since they have been under his orders. All these qualifications induced the Major-General, as it may be the last time he may inspect them, to hold the 48th Regiment as a model to any that may visit New South Wales in every particular that can relate to the respectability of a corps, and begs to assure the Regiment that it will be accompanied with his best wishes. By command of His Excellency."

After seven years in Australia the Regiment received orders for its first tour of duty in India.

**India,
1824-1835.**

On 5th March, 1824, the first detachment sailed in three ships, the *Grenock*, the *Asia* and the *Sir Godfrey Webster*, and was followed by a second detachment from Tasmania, sailing on 9th April in the *Triton*. The Regiment was now commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel G. Cimitière, who, it will be remembered, had been the senior surviving officer of his brigade after Albuera, and the embarkation strength is given as 14 officers, 624 other ranks, 106 women and 263 children. After encountering heavy gales the ships arrived at Madras between 16th May and 11th June.

This being the hottest season of the year, the Regiment suffered considerably, and on account of an outbreak of cholera moved from Fort St. George to St. Thomas Mount, nine miles from Madras, where it remained until 11th August, 1824. On this date it marched south to Trichinopoly, arriving on 1st September, and here remained for three years, when it moved to Bellary, arriving on 12th October, 1827. On 21st November, 1831, it again marched south across the Mysore Plain through Seringapatam to Cannanore on the west coast, where it remained until March, 1834. There are few details regarding the life during the first tour in India, but the regimental records report that the men were marched down regularly to bathe and that theatricals were encouraged to enliven the monotony.

Lieutenant-Colonel J. Taylor had taken over command on 8th January, 1825, but died in 1827, and on 20th September Lieutenant-Colonel T. Bell took over command. Colonel Bell had served with the 48th Regiment throughout the Peninsular War and had been severely wounded at Badajoz and had commanded the 1/48th at Nivelles.

In March the Regiment was called upon to undertake a campaign against the Rajah of Coorg. The district of Coorg lies in Southern India between Mysore and the Malabar coast. In 1790, when the British declared war on Tippoo, the Rajah of Coorg proved himself a faithful ally, and was rewarded by being given full control of his own territories in consideration of the payment of a nominal tribute of one elephant to the East India Company. On his death, however,

**The Coorg
Campaign,
March and April,
1834.**

there was a dispute as to his successor between his children, and the throne was usurped by a younger son who ruled as a barbarous tyrant, killing all possible claimants to the throne. On his death, his son succeeded him, and not only continued in his ways but called on the inhabitants of India to assist him in "driving the infidels from the land." A messenger was sent from the Governor-General, but he detained the messenger as a prisoner.

On 17th March, 1834, Colonel Lindsay, C.B. (39th Regiment), was ordered to march against the Rajah and seize his capital, Mercara. The force consisted of Artillery, the 39th, 48th and 55th Regiments, a detachment of Sappers and Miners, and certain Indian troops. The plan was a concentric advance of five columns on the capital from the east, north and west. The 48th were divided, forming with Indian troops parts of two columns, the so-called "Western Column" and the "Western Auxiliary Column." The Western Column, including Headquarters and three hundred men of the 48th Regiment and two battalions of Native Infantry, marched from Cannanore on 30th March, and on 2nd April encountered a force of the enemy in position behind a stockade. A reconnoitring party was sent out by the 48th, which drove the enemy's advanced troops within their stockade, from which a sharp fire was opened, and Lieutenant J. A. Erskine of the 48th was killed.

The following day the stockade was carried, the enemy retreating into the dense jungle, and the advance continued. All roads had been rendered impassable for artillery by felling trees, and numerous stockades had been built to delay the advance. These stockades were stormed, while other parties cleared the road and assisted in dragging forward the guns. The Coorgs were armed with fusils and matchlocks and long bent knives, which placed them on an even footing as regards arms with our men, who were still carrying the Brown Bess, but at close quarters were no match for our men with the bayonet. After a severe and harassing march of twelve hours under the burning sun, the force bivouacked half-way up the pass. The casualties during the day had been 2 killed and 19 wounded, the wounded including Lieutenant E. G. H. Gibbs.

On the morning of 4th April the enemy brought a message under flag of truce, requesting that the column would halt and stating that all affairs could be satisfactorily arranged. The answer was given that the advance would continue, but that our men would not fire unless attacked. The advance then continued uninterrupted by the enemy, but with great difficulty on account of the steepness of the road and the numerous obstacles. Finally on 7th April they reached Mootramoody, seven miles from the capital, where news was received that the capital itself, Mercara, had been surrendered to the Eastern Column, which had advanced under Colonel Lindsay from Bangalore.

On 13th April the Light Company was ordered to occupy the palace of the ex-Rajah at Naranaad, the remainder of the Western Column under

Colonel Bell, C.B., of the 48th, being quartered after 19th April in the palace at Veer Rajahput. Having remained here a few weeks, the country being entirely subdued and the Rajah a prisoner, the 48th detachment under Colonel Bell returned to Cannanore, where it arrived on 14th May, 1834.

Colonel Fowles, the Commander of the Western Column, in a dispatch dated 7th April, states : " I should be wanting in the feelings of a commander and a soldier did I fail to bring to the notice of the Brigadier-General (in the hope that he will bring the same to His Excellency the Commander-in-Chief) Volunteer Bell, the son of Lieutenant-Colonel Bell of H.M. 48th Regiment. This young man was conspicuous in every attack and skirmish with the enemy." In view of the above dispatch, Volunteer Bell was promoted by the Governor-General to the rank of Ensign, the commission bearing the date 3rd April, 1834.

In a further dispatch dated 14th April, Colonel Fowles also mentions particularly Lieutenant A. Donelan, commanding the Grenadiers of the 48th, and Lieutenant H. D. Gibbs and D. O'Brien of the Light Company. He states : " These officers led their men most gallantly, and but for them the loss would have been much greater."

In his final dispatch, dated 27th April, he states : " The superior discipline of H.M. 48th Regiment, Colonel Fowles has had frequent opportunities of noticing and to that he feels his late success was mainly to be attributed, for upon them the brunt of the duty was borne. He begs to tender Colonel Bell, C.B., his heartfelt thanks."

Meanwhile the Western Auxiliary Column did not meet with such great success. This force, which included two companies of the 48th, under Captain P. J. Willats, and some native troops, was intended to act more as a corps of observation than offensively. It was moving through country believed to be friendly and was not provided with any artillery. Its task was to reach and occupy the village of Combla on the Coorg frontier.

On 29th March the commander of the column, Colonel Jackson, marched, to take by surprise, a stockade which was known to be on the frontier. As it was hoped that the lower Coorg would remain neutral, positive orders had been given to Colonel Jackson that he was not to open fire until he was fired upon. The stockade being reached, the Coorgs were called upon to surrender, but refused and manned the gateway of the stockade through which lay the only practicable road for advance. The gateway was filled with Coorgs armed with firearms, some double barrelled, and an officer of the 48th volunteered to force a passage at the head of a party of his own men. He was ordered not to fire until fired upon, and advanced to the gate. When within bayonet reach of the enemy, the commander of the Coorgs gave orders to fire, he himself preparing to fire at the officer, who, however, was in time to turn the double-barrelled gun with his hand. On this the remaining Coorgs fled

panic-stricken and the stockade was seized without loss, many arms and some prisoners being taken.

On 1st April a further enemy stockade was reported, and a reconnaissance party, which was accompanied by Captain R. A. McCleverty of the 48th, acting Brigade-Major of the force, was sent out to discover its exact location and how it might best be attacked. The reconnaissance was almost complete when the enemy opened fire on the party. The fire was immediately returned, but the native doolie-bearers, throwing down their doolies, rushed into the jungle, where, it is supposed, they were murdered to a man. The guides also deserted, and the force was left in a labyrinth of paths under heavy fire and encumbered with wounded.

The coolness and judgment of Captain McCleverty were here very conspicuous in discovering the way back to camp. Encumbered with wounded, the force retired very slowly; the heat was intense, water there was none, and the men were so exhausted they could hardly fire. The sepoys who were in front hurried on, and it was with the utmost difficulty that some of them could be induced to march steadily. Captain McCleverty and Lieutenant J. W. Smith, also of the 48th, threatened to pistol more than one, and at last it was deemed necessary to take a few Europeans from the rear and place them in front to check the pace. In this way they reached camp exhausted and with many casualties, of which the 48th had one sergeant and eight privates killed and Lieutenant Webber Smith and four privates wounded.

This reverse produced a demoralizing effect on the natives of our force, particularly on the carriers, a large proportion of whom deserted, disorganizing the commissariat and rendering the conveyance of sick and wounded a matter of difficulty. All efforts to obtain further coolies failed, and the officers, to ease the situation, discarded their tents and baggage, for which, as it is reported in the regimental records, they "were subsequently refused any allowance by the Hon. East India Company Service Government at Madras."

The column withdrew on 5th and 6th April with great difficulty through thick jungle, being frequently attacked, the 48th losing two men killed and two wounded. The 48th were at this time acting as rearguard and therefore bore the brunt of the fighting, the only rations available for them for three days being bad biscuit. On the 8th the column once more reached Combla, and the Coorgs brought in a flag of truce as the campaign had been brought to a conclusion.

In an order to the force dated 27th April, Colonel Jackson thanks Captain Willats, commanding the 48th detachment, for his zealous and steady support and assistance. Captain McCleverty and Lieutenant Webber Smith were also particularly mentioned for good work. The total casualties of the 48th had amounted to 16 killed and 25 wounded.*

On 27th April the force left Combla, reaching their old quarters at Cannanore on 4th May, 1834.

In July, 1834, orders were received to commence volunteering, a procedure whereby bounties were given to men of a regiment returning home, if they were willing to transfer to another regiment in India. As a result 338 men volunteered, the largest parties proceeding to the 55th Regiment and 39th and 54th Regiments. On 22nd December, 1834, Colonel Bell, C.B., commanding the 48th, the Light Company, the Band and part of No. 3 Company, embarked for England on the *Lady Faversham*, arriving on 8th March, 1835. A second detachment under Colonel S. Brock embarked in the *Charles Kew* on 3rd November and also arrived on 8th March, 1835, while the remainder of the Battalion, under Captain Willats, embarked on the *Heroine* on 24th November and arrived in England on 11th April, 1835.

During their first tour of ten years in India the Regiment had lost 19 officers and 515 men.

From March to September, 1835, the 48th were quartered at Canterbury, after which they moved to Weedon⁷ until the spring of 1836, when they moved to the north of England with headquarters first at Bolton⁸ and later at Manchester.⁹

From here, in August, 1837, a move was made to Ireland, and the Regiment undertook its first move by "Rail Road" on the famous Manchester—Liverpool line which had been built by the Stephensons seven years earlier and was the home of the "Rocket." Little over a year was spent in Ireland, a number of different stations being occupied.¹⁰ While here the Regiment was divided into six service companies, including the grenadier and light companies, and four depot companies;¹¹ the service companies were commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel T. Bell, C.B., and the depot companies by Major P. MacDougall.

On 17th September the service companies marched to Cork and embarked for Gibraltar on board H.M.S. *Hercules*, arriving at Gibraltar Bay on 1st October; disembarkation took place the following day, the battalion being quartered in Windmill Hill Barracks.

On 19th November, 1838, new Colours were presented to the Regiment to replace those presented in 1799, by His Excellency Lieutenant-General Sir Alexander Woodford, K.C.B., G.C.M.G., Governor of Gibraltar, and were received by Lieutenants Bromley and Thompson, on which occasion he made the following address:—

"Forty Eighth Regiment. It is highly gratifying to me to have the honour of presenting new Colours to a Regiment which has so often been mentioned with distinction in our Military History.

"Raised in 1740, it fought at the Battles of Falkirk and Culloden, and at the Battle and Capture of Quebec, on which occasion the Grenadiers of this Regiment assisted in his dying moments, the young and victorious General, whose memory is dear to his country.

"During a long course of active service in the West Indies and in the

Gibraltar
and Jamaica,
1838-1847.

England and
Ireland,
1835-1837.

Mediterranean in various and brilliant and important occasions, the 48th established for itself a high reputation in the Army even previous to the Peninsular War.

"On these Colours I see recorded the Passage of the Douro ; the Battle of Talavera, where its steadiness and bearing were so conspicuous and where its gallant commander fell at its head ; the Battle of Albuera ; the Siege of Badajoz ; the Battles of Salamanca and Vittoria ; the hard-fought action of the Pyrenees, in which, to use the words of the great chief who led his army to victory, the gallant Fourth Division (of which the 48th formed a part) surpassed its former good conduct ; the Passage of the Nivelle ; the Battle of Orthez and the Battle of Toulouse.

"In these great actions as well as in the subsequent arduous and active services of the Regiment in India, the gallant experienced officer now at your head bore a distinguished share. It will be for you, young officers and soldiers, to remember and emulate the conduct of these brave men, who have served and fought and bled under the old Colours of your Regiment, and it is a duty I owe to you on this occasion, seeing so many young soldiers in your ranks, to impress most strongly upon you the necessity of sobriety, obedience, and subordination in every situation, whether in the regular routine of Garrison Duty or on active service in the field. Recollect that although it may be said that bravery is inherent in British soldiers, yet that to be truly good soldiers, to merit and obtain the confidence of your General and commanders, recollect that I say it is not enough to be only distinguished for bravery in the field, but you must be equally distinguished on every service and on every occasion for order, for obedience, and for discipline.

"Colonel Bell, Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and soldiers of the 48th Regiment, I now commit these Colours to your charge ; I am persuaded you will guard them with the same zeal, fidelity, loyalty, and courage which have distinguished your predecessors. May they be to you a rallying point in danger and a guide to victory and honour whenever you encounter the enemies of our Sovereign and our country."

These Colours were carried until July, 1889, when new Colours were presented, after which they were kept in the Officers' Mess until 1923, when they were placed in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Northampton.

On 1st September, 1839, the establishment was increased to 800 rank and file, and in December the Regiment moved from Windmill Hill Barracks to the Casemates.

Colonel Bell retired in 1841 after fourteen years in command, and was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel A. A. Dalzell, who not only commanded for twelve and a half years as Lieutenant-Colonel, but was later (in 1864) to become Colonel of the Regiment.

On 24th January, 1844, the battalion embarked on H.M. Troopship *Apollo* for Jamaica, arriving at Port Royal on 22nd February, 1844 ; having

disembarked at Kingston on 1st March, they marched to Newcastle, where they remained. Records report nothing with regard to the time spent in Jamaica except that good health was enjoyed at this station. Here they remained until 3rd February, 1847, when they embarked on board H.M. Transport *Blenheim* for Ireland.

**Ireland
and Wales,
1847-1853.**

Arriving at Cork on 21st March, 1847, the 48th were ordered to Belfast, and sailing on 30th March arrived on 4th April, disembarking two days later. Here the Depot Companies rejoined, bringing the strength of the battalion to 1,066 other ranks. Moves were made on 14th June, 1847, to Enniskillen and on 18th April, 1848, to Dublin. During this period many detachments were found by the battalion in the smaller towns. Whilst in Dublin detachments were found at Trinity College, The Bank, Aldborough House, and Leinster House. During August, 1849, Queen Victoria visited Dublin, the Regiment finding a guard of honour, and on 9th August they took part in a review with the following Regiments: 1st, 2nd, 40th, 55th, 60th and 71st. The next move was on 26th March, 1850, to Athlone.

After two years at Athlone a move was made to Newport (Mon.) where three companies were stationed, the remainder being at Brecon (two companies), Carmarthen (two companies), Cardiff (two companies), Cardigan (one company). In January, 1853, they were put under orders for Corfu and moved to Winchester. On their departure the Monmouth Town Council passed a resolution, which appears in the minutes of the Council dated 3rd January, 1853, giving the Regiment their best wishes and particularly thanking them for their "liberality in permitting the use of their excellent band on many public and charitable occasions." In February, 1853, the Service Companies proceeded to Portsmouth, and embarked on the 22nd for Corfu. During the voyage three cases of smallpox occurred.



Shoulder Belt Plate
Serjeants
circa 1835.

This is not a
plate of the 48th
obviously Indian.

CHAPTER XIX

(58TH, 1843-1879)

AUSTRALIA — NEW ZEALAND — OHAIWAI — RUAPEKAPEKA — BOULCOTT'S FARM — DRUMMER ALLEN — WANGANUI — AUCKLAND — WRECK OF THE "ALCMENE" — DEPARTURE FROM NEW ZEALAND — MEMORIALS — ENGLAND AND IRELAND (1859-1864) — PRESENTATION OF COLOURS — THE OLD COLOURS — INDIA (1864-1874) — ENGLAND (1874-1879).

(See Map, page 203.)

THE task for which the 58th were next selected was to furnish a portion of the Australian garrison, which, as we have already shown (Chapter XVIII), involved the policing of the penal settlements.

The 58th in Australia.

In November, 1841, they moved to Chatham preparatory to embarking for New South Wales in relief of the 80th, who were ordered to India. They remained at Chatham for nearly two years before sailing.

Being required for duty as convict guards on board ship, the Regiment sailed in small detachments as shiploads of convicts were accumulated for deportation. This resulted in an interval of about eighteen months between the departure of the first and last contingents, and altogether the move to Australia was performed in fifteen different ships. The first detachment sailed from Deptford on 13th July, 1843, in the *Orator*; they were followed by Headquarters on 14th May, 1844, who embarked at Gravesend on the *Pestonjee Bomangee*; the move of the remainder continued at intervals until January, 1845, when the last detachment left England.

On first arrival in Australia the 58th had its headquarters at Sydney, New South Wales. While there a mounted detachment was formed, in accordance with custom, to deal with bushrangers.

Their stay in Australia was very brief, as in March, 1845, a rising of the Maoris in New Zealand reached alarming proportions, and the 58th were sent to Auckland as reinforcements.

Though New Zealand had been known since 1642, it was not until the latter part of the eighteenth century that England had any connection with the country. Captain Cook was the first Englishman to visit the country, in 1769, which was then inhabited entirely by the native Maoris.

"The Maoris were a strange mixture of civilization and savagery. . . . They were cannibals, yet they were essentially an agricultural people, and more scrupulous in sanitary matters than many Europeans. Dark skinned, though often not more so than the Portuguese, straight haired, tall and athletic, with

singular dignity of bearing, they were proud and bloodthirsty, as befits a race which lives only for warfare ; but they had also remarkable power of oratory, and they passed from mouth to mouth a great body of heroic poems celebrating the great deeds of their ancestors. Withal they observed a certain sense of chivalry. They would supply an enemy with food to enable him to continue in the field, and would fix time and place, which were faithfully observed, for a hostile meeting. They possessed a singular gift for the choice of strong positions, and very remarkable skill in fortifying them with ditches, embankments and palisades."¹

Late in the eighteenth century roving Englishmen, mainly whalers and traders, found their way to New Zealand and began to traffic with the Maoris, selling them firearms. Frantic competition arose among the chiefs for the new weapons, for on them depended strength for their tribes—or extinction.

Missionaries and more reputable traders settled in the country and undoubtedly did much good. For personal protection each man relied on some neighbouring chief, occupying a grant of land from the natives, and in return allowing himself to be plundered to almost any extent by his protector.

Unfortunately, a less reputable type of settler came and squatted on the land without due agreement with the chiefs. Out of this, considerable trouble arose ; the land belonged not only to the chief, but to the whole tribe, so if one member of the tribe refused agreement a wily chief could always plead that the contract was invalid, even if the squatter had paid for his land in arms and ammunition. Naturally, before long the Maoris and English came to blows.

Conditions became so bad that, in 1840, a detachment of one hundred soldiers from New South Wales were transferred to New Zealand as a permanent garrison, and a governor was sent out from England.

He endeavoured to get a concession of the sovereignty of the islands to the Queen by fair means, and the Treaty of Waitangi was signed, though it must be admitted that most of the chiefs only appended their signature after considerable bribery.

Besides the continual argument about the possession of land, the native chiefs were upset by the cessation of the demand for timber from Australia, the establishment of Customs duties, and also by the removal of the seat of government from Korarareka (now Russell) to Auckland. Consequently a strong feeling against the British sprang up in the minds of the natives, which was constantly fostered by French and American settlers.

Chief Heki seemed to attach some mysterious importance to the flagstaff at Russell, and in July, 1844, he cut it down. He was persuaded to apologize to the Government and a new one was erected ; but Heki's superstitions were too strong for him, and he cut it down a second time. After that an iron-shod flagstaff was put up and a detachment of troops and a party of seamen were stationed near it.

A climax was reached on 11th March, 1845, when Heki once more revolted and Russell, which is situated on the north coast in the Bay of Islands, was captured and burnt.

After the sacking of the town "the redoubtable Hone Heki placed a white blind, which he had wrenched from a window, on a girl's shoulders to represent a flag of truce. The warrior then ordered her to accompany the remainder of her party down to the beach, her mantle of white affording a protection from the rifles of the Maoris who had surrounded the place."^a The girl was the daughter of one of the signalmen at Russell, and later married a soldier in the 58th.

Two companies of the 58th were at once rushed across from Australia in H.M.S. *North Star*, and reached Auckland on 25th March, 1845. On 22nd April they were joined by the headquarters of the Regiment under Major Cyprien Bridge, half a company going to Wellington; other companies followed on 27th April.

On 27th April an expedition consisting of two hundred and fifty men of the 58th and detachments of the 96th Regiment, seamen and marines, under Colonel Hulme of the 96th, sailed from Auckland to the Bay of Islands. They were landed on 30th April at Onewero, on the Kiri-kiri River, and on the 3rd May, 1845, the campaign opened and continued with short interruptions for the next two years. We were not opposed by one composite army which could be brought to battle and defeated, but rather by a number of independent chiefs who maintained a form of guerrilla warfare. One tribe would cause trouble and then retire to their *pah*. Here they would remain while a punitive column was prepared and moved against them, a slow and difficult business; then when all preparations were complete for an assault, they would slip away with their superior mobility to another *pah*, and the whole procedure had to be repeated. All this time operations were complicated by the necessity of finding detachments for the protection of isolated settlers and friendly natives.

The first objective was a *pah*, or fortified post, at Okaihu, about ten miles from the sea, which was occupied by Heki. The force, four hundred strong, could obtain no transport of any kind, so Hulme loaded his men with five days' ration of biscuit, two days' cooked meat and extra ammunition. They were entirely dependent on natives for information and guidance, and had to force their way through dense forest; twice they were compelled to retire by heavy rain which ruined their supplies and ammunition. Finally, on 7th May, they neared their objective and encamped in the *pah* of a friendly Maori.

Heki's *pah* was reported to be of great strength, consisting of three rows of stockades, each of trees a foot in diameter, with traverses and deep holes dug for shelter. Artillery was obviously necessary, but Hulme had none. He had, however, a few rockets, and hoped with these to set the stronghold on fire. The attempt failed as the huts had been thatched with green flax, so he prepared to retire. As he did so, the Maoris attacked and were only repulsed at

the point of the bayonet. Hulme's casualties amounted to 53, of which the 58th lost 8 men killed and 14 wounded.

After the action the wounded were carried by their comrades for eighteen miles over saturated country, but the column suffered no further molestation and reached their base at Onewero. The troops had been living on half rations, the difficulties had been great, and the possibility of future success seemed remote.

In the meantime, farther south, a minor success attended the troops near Auckland, as on 15th May, Major Bridge, with two hundred men of the 58th, had captured and burnt the *pah* at Waikadi, afterwards returning to Auckland.

Early in June the troops in New Zealand were reinforced by a detachment of the 99th Regiment from Australia, and Colonel Despard, of that regiment, assumed command of the troops in New Zealand. A fresh expedition against Heki, who had moved to a stronger *pah* at Ohaiawai, was at once organized.

**Battle of
Ohaiawai,
1st July, 1845.**

The force assembled under Colonel Despard consisted of detachments of the 58th, 96th and 99th Regiments, some sappers and artillerymen, with six guns, a party of seamen and marines and some Colonial volunteers. They landed at Waimate on the Bay of Islands on 17th June, having been badly delayed by the grounding of one of the transports on a dangerous reef, all stores and troops on board having to be transferred to another ship.

The wet season was far advanced, rendering the tracks almost impassable; the country was difficult, covered in some parts with brushwood seven or eight feet high. Gigantic creepers hanging in festoons from tree to tree made a network through which the pioneers had to hack a way for the troops. Transport was insufficient, and consequently rations were short, and only a small supply of gun ammunition could be carried.

Starting early on 23rd June, the force marched six miles to within a mile of Heki's *pah* at Ohaiawai, ten hours being taken to cover the distance. It was then too late to attack, and the British encamped three hundred and fifty yards from the enemy's stockade. The *pah* was very strong, the defences consisting of ditches and a double stockade, each stockade being loopholed near the ground.

On the night of the 23rd a battery was erected to breach the face opposite the British camp. Fire was opened on the 24th, but produced little effect, and though the battery was moved up to within two hundred and fifty yards the following night, the results were still disappointing.

On 30th June a 32-pounder gun from H.M.S. *Hazard* arrived, and at 10 a.m. on 1st July opened fire from Waka's Hill. While this gun was firing the Maoris, led by the Chief Kawiti, made a counter-attack from a thick wood in the rear of the battery, driving off the escort of friendly natives. They would have overpowered the detachments with the guns but for a timely and spirited charge of a party of the 58th under Major Bridge, which restored the position and drove back the enemy with loss.

NEW ZEALAND

0 50 100 150
MILES

OHAIRAU
WAIKAREMOA
OHAKUNEI
RUAPAKAPAKA
BAY OF ISLANDS
RUSSELL
CHANELLAN
HAWKESBURY
TAPEROA
WAIKAREMOA
HOKITIKA
NELSON
CANTERBURY RIVER

NORTH ISLAND.

SOUTH ISLAND.

Digitized by Google

could not be effected without additional loss in the endeavours to bring off the wounded men, which, in spite of difficulties, were generally successful.

The casualties of the force were 40 killed and 71 wounded, of which the 58th lost Captain Grant and 16 men killed and 33 wounded.

Nothing further could be done until more ammunition was available, and Colonel Despard was therefore compelled to delay any further action until 10th July, when he once more commenced a bombardment of the *pah*. No assault was made, however, as it was discovered the following morning that Heki had withdrawn. The *pah*, together with another about six miles inland, was razed to the ground, but, at the same time, no real damage had been inflicted on the Maoris.

The situation in New Zealand was now so unsatisfactory that the force was increased by reinforcements from Australia, which included the remainder of the 58th, under Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Wynyard, who arrived in the *British Sovereign* on 4th October, 1845.

In September, 1845, Heki wrote to the Governor suing for peace. The Governor replied stating his terms, which were very lenient, but no answer was received from Heki. There is little doubt that this cunning chief was playing for time in which to strengthen his *pah* at Ruapekapeka.

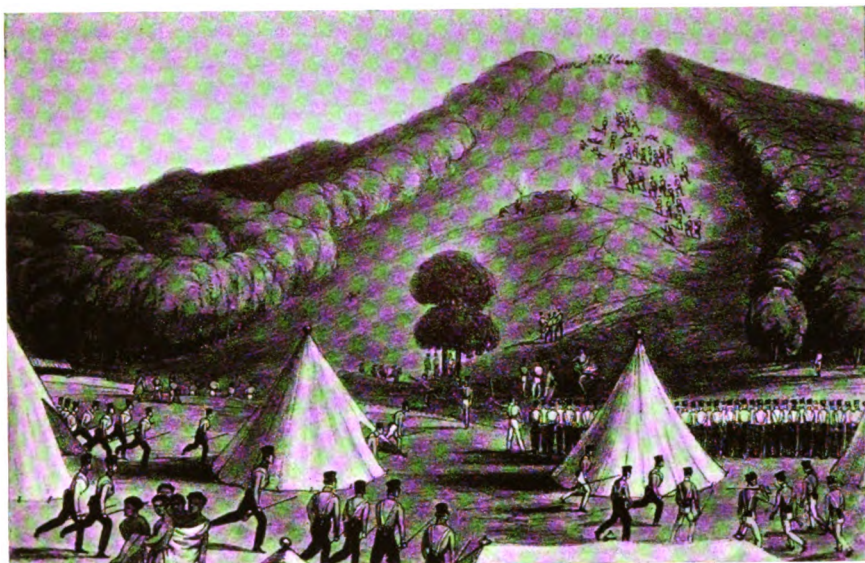
At the end of 1845 it was decided that a stronger force must be sent to subdue Heki, who had established himself in a large *pah* at Ruapekapeka (the Bat's Nest). For this expedition Colonel Despard collected a force of 33 officers and 1,036 men, also 450 friendly natives, by far the largest detachment being 510 men from the 58th.³ Lieutenant-Colonel Wynyard led the way with the 58th, and after the usual tiresome march through the forest, which occupied nineteen days, a camp was pitched within a mile of the stronghold. On 1st January it was possible to throw occasional shells and rockets into the *pah*; by 10th January the outer stockade had been well breached.

**Battle of
Ruapekapeka,
11th January,
1846.**

The following day it was observed that all was quiet in the *pah*. A seaman crept up to the nearest breach and, finding very few natives inside, reported to Captain Denny and Ensign G. J. R. Wynyard of the 58th, who immediately led one hundred men of the 58th and some seamen through the breach. But now the natives were thoroughly aroused and began to swarm round the small detachment like bees. They had been taking shelter from the fire in their excavations, and thought that, as it was Sunday, no attack would be made. Captain George Wynyard of the 58th arrived in support with three companies and routed the enemy completely.

Success was complete, and the casualties were slight, those of the 58th being two killed and ten wounded.

Heki at once sued for peace, and all the Maoris concerned were granted a free pardon. A model of the *pah* was made by Captain Balneavis of the 58th and later presented to the Royal United Service Institution.



THE 58th AT OHAIWAI, 1845.



COLONEL R. H. WYNYARD.

Lieutenant-Colonel, 58th Regiment, 30th December, 1842, to 25th October, 1858.

It is recorded that, for many years after, it was the custom for a ball to be held in the Sergeants' Mess on the anniversary of Ruapekapeka.

Leaving a detachment at the Bay of Islands, the 58th returned to Auckland where they were warmly welcomed by the inhabitants.

In the meantime disturbances with the natives had occurred in the southern part of the North Island, near Wellington, which
Action at Boulcott's Farm,
16th May, 1846. was garrisoned by one hundred and eighty men of the 58th and 96th Regiments.

At the close of the Ruapekapeka campaign the Governor proceeded to Wellington with a force of five hundred men of the 58th, 96th and 99th Regiments, together with a detachment of Royal Artillery and two guns. This large force overawed the natives to such an extent that the more influential chiefs, Ruapacaha and Rangihaeata, wrote to the Governor in cordial tones, throwing the blame on others and undertaking to evacuate the Hutt valley, where they were concentrated. This apparent submission completely deceived the Governor, so that he imagined he could frighten the natives into complete submission by a demonstration in the Hutt valley. Accordingly the troops marched from Wellington with no camp equipage, greatcoats or provisions.

One detachment occupied Boulcott's Farm on 24th February, 1846. Several palavers were held without any useful result, as the Maoris continued to annoy the settlers and destroy their crops, in spite of promises of good behaviour.

Martial law was proclaimed, and when next the natives approached Boulcott's Farm they were fired upon by order of the Governor.

In April detachments of the 58th and 99th, under Major Last (99th), were sent round by sea to Porirua, where they landed and encamped in order to cut off supplies from the Hutt valley. For some weeks they were employed stockading their position, and the Maori Chief Rangihaeata took advantage of their inactivity to construct a formidable *pah*. It was only four miles from the military post at Paramete, and one morning a daring reconnaissance of it was made by Captain Laye of the 58th and two other officers, who went up in a small boat to the head of the harbour and managed to get up to the palisades before they were discovered and forced to retreat under close fire.

During this time the troops under Captain Russell of the 58th were employed on the construction of a military road from Wellington to Porirua. They were divided into subalterns' parties of fifty men each, placed two or three miles apart, and always worked with their arms beside them, living in a stockaded camp at night. Great difficulties were encountered in clearing the gigantic trees from the line of the road.

All remained quiet until May, when the natives had collected their crops and, returning to the Hutt valley, worked up sufficient courage to attack the post at Boulcott's Farm. This post consisted of two wooden houses about one hundred yards apart with a tent between, on a clearing on the river bank,

and was held by fifty men of the 58th under Lieutenant E. H. Page. Half an hour before daybreak on 16th May a war party of about seventy natives, under Chief Mamuka, stole across the river, fired upon the tent and rushed in. On the first surprise the soldiers fell back upon the principal wooden building, which had some sort of a stockade round it; from this they subsequently made a sortie, driving the enemy back and holding them in check until the timely arrival of reinforcements compelled them to draw off altogether. The loss of the detachment amounted to four killed and five wounded.

It was on this occasion that an act of singular bravery and devotion was performed by Boy Allen of the 58th. The natives had managed **Drummer Allen.** to creep up to the tent in which he and seven other soldiers were asleep. At a given signal the ropes of the tent were cut, and as the soldiers struggled from beneath the folds they were set upon by the Maoris. Drummer Allen seized his bugle and managed to sound half the alarm when his right arm was almost severed by the blow of a tomahawk. He seized the bugle with his left hand and bravely completed the call and continued sounding until hacked to pieces. Corporal Dockerill and three privates—Beale, McFadden and Seon—were also killed, but the other three privates, though wounded, managed to escape.

There was subsequently considerable discussion as to what had happened to Drummer Allen's bugle. There seems little doubt that it was taken away by the Maoris, but later recaptured by the 65th Regiment in the Horokiwi valley on 9th August and for a time used by Drummer Henn of that regiment, who stated that he believed it had been returned to the 58th detachment at Porirua in 1848. Anyhow, all traces of it have now been lost, though details of the deed have been engraved on a silver bugle which is now in possession of the Drums of the 58th.

After the action of Boulcott's Farm, Chief Rangihæata retreated up the valley of the Horokiwi to his *pah* at Porirua. It was immensely strong, and as the Governor was convinced that Rangihæata would evacuate it the moment it was seriously damaged by artillery fire, it was decided to leave it for the time.

On the morning of 21st July a detachment of troops seized Ruaparaha by surprise, and took him on board the *Caliope*, whereupon Rangihæata evacuated his *pah* and retired to the forest.

Major Last of the 99th, with a detachment of the 65th (who had just arrived from Sydney) and small parties of the 58th and 99th, followed him up the valley. On 6th August, 1846, he came in sight of a new and very strong *pah*, built on an inaccessible hill; but before he could approach it he was attacked by Rangihæata. The Maoris were driven back with loss. Last, deciding that an assault on the *pah* would not be worth its cost, brought up three small mortars and threw shells into it. Within a week Rangihæata took to the forest again, and the question of the disputed land was settled amicably.

After the affair in the Horokiwi valley in August had been brought to a successful conclusion, attention was paid to Wanganui near **Wanganui.** Wellington. At this place there had been a good deal of trouble with the natives, and Captain Laye (58th) with four officers and one hundred and eighty men were despatched to deal with it. Here they constructed the " Rutland " stockade.

Some months later the natives attacked the farm of a settler and killed and mutilated his family. When the culprits were seized, the local chiefs, who were related to them, assembled a war party of seven hundred men for their rescue. The British force only numbered about one hundred and seventy all ranks ; but seeing that delay or indecision would be fatal, Captain Laye at once ordered a detachment court-martial of subalterns for their trial, and had the four principal offenders hanged without delay. The execution was immediately followed by an attack on the settlement on 19th May, 1847, which was repulsed with heavy loss.

In his dispatch to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, Governor Grey represented that the " firmness and decision with which Captain Laye acted on this occasion, had saved the country from serious protracted rebellion." The Secretary of State, in reply, conveyed Her Majesty's gracious approval of his conduct in the following terms : " I have it especially in command to assure you of the sense which Her Majesty entertains of the firmness with which Captain Laye, 58th Regiment, acted on the occasion of the attack of the natives on the town of Wanganui, and of the gallant conduct of himself and the detachment under his orders on that occasion."

The attack on Wanganui was followed by some weeks of hostilities until July, 1847, when the Maoris sued for peace, and the first New Zealand War came to an end. In 1870 approval was given for the Regiment to bear on its Colours the honour " New Zealand " in recognition of its services.

The next ten years were spent peacefully in New Zealand. For the greater part of these years the headquarters of the 58th were **Auckland,** at Auckland, with which city the Regiment became closely **1846-1858.** connected. The Regiment assisted in the development of the country by making good roads, and in 1851 and again in 1858 saved the city of Auckland from being destroyed by fire.

The reports of the annual inspections show that throughout this period the Regiment always maintained an exceptionally high state of efficiency, was noted for its smart appearance, drill and discipline ; military crimes were few and trivial, civil crime was unknown.

In December, 1846, the headquarters and a large party of the 58th returned to Sydney for a few months, but were back again in New Zealand the following June. The object of this move cannot be ascertained.

An extract from the diary of Major Bridge has been kept which shows that life in New Zealand was not without its lighter side. The extract is as follows :

" On 2nd December, 1846, a ball was given by the ladies of Auckland to the officers of the 58th Regiment on their departure from the colony. Dancing was kept up till the hour for embarking. When the 58th bugler sounded the ' Assembly ' and ' Officers' Call ' in the ballroom, the ladies pelted him out of the room with tartlets. Troops embarked and got under weigh on the 6th and arrived in Sydney, 18th December, 1846."

The Regiment won the good will of the civil population in a remarkable manner, and the records contain several letters from the civil authorities bearing testimony to the high esteem in which the 58th was held and expressing the gratitude of the inhabitants for its protection against fire and sword.

In 1855 peace was threatened by a dispute between some of the Maori tribes. Three companies of the 58th were despatched to New Plymouth under Major Nugent, whose firmness and good judgment saved the Colony from a serious war.

In 1857 news was received of the outbreak of the Indian Mutiny, and though the Regiment was then under orders to return to England, every officer and man volunteered for active service. The offer was, however, declined by the home authorities.

Many officers of the Regiment were given important administrative posts in the Colony. Colonel R. H. Wynyard became Commander of the Forces in New Zealand in 1851, and succeeded Sir George Grey as Officer Administering the Government and exercised all the powers of a Governor from 1853 to 1855.

" Colonel Wynyard was very handsome and soldierlike. Six feet three in height, he was so perfectly proportioned, that standing alone he did not seem a man of abnormal stature and size, yet a big powerful man of five feet ten or five feet eleven beside him looked like a boy. He had a genial kindly manner to all, military or civilian, rich or poor, which was not a mere ornament but a real engine of power. He had been in the Guards before the 58th, and was at one time A.D.C. to the Duke of Wellington. From 1854 to 1855 he introduced representative institutions into New Zealand. He was undoubtedly the most popular man who ever came to New Zealand, and yet he never laid himself out to seek anything of the kind. He left New Zealand with the 58th in November, 1858."⁴ In 1851 he had the honour of presenting the municipal charter to the city of Auckland.

On 5th February, 1848, on the death of General Maitland, General G. C. D'Aguilar, C.B.,⁵ was appointed Colonel of the 58th, and he, on 31st January, 1851, was replaced by Lieutenant-General E. B. Wynyard.⁶

By an extraordinary coincidence there were, in 1857, five officers of the name of Wynyard serving in the 58th, each in a different rank. The Colonel was Lieutenant-General E. B. Wynyard; R. H. Wynyard was the Lieutenant-Colonel; George Henry Wynyard held rank as Captain; while G. J. R. Wynyard was Lieutenant and John Henry Wynyard an Ensign.

On the 3rd June, 1851, the French corvette *Alcmene*, of thirty-six guns,

was wrecked on the coast of New Zealand between Kaipara and Hokianga Heads. The vessel was completely lost, but the crew, with the exception of twelve men, were saved. A party of the 58th was at once sent to aid the crew with stores and clothing, and conducted them overland to Auckland. Here the officers and sailors were housed in the barracks for about six weeks, and most cordial friendship was established between the 58th and the Frenchmen. As a memento of the incident the officers of the 58th were presented with an oil painting representing the scene of the wreck, which now hangs in the Officers' Mess.

On 17th November, 1858, the 58th embarked for England. Colonel Wynyard remained in New Zealand as Governor, and was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel Cyprien Bridge, who had served with the Regiment throughout the New Zealand War.

**Departure from
New Zealand.**

Only 16 officers and 194 other ranks came home, over one thousand having settled as colonists in the country which, after fourteen years of service, they had come to regard as their own. This was then the longest period which had been spent by any regiment in the Australian Command. Before they left, over three hundred officers and non-commissioned officers and privates elected to settle in the Colony and were duly discharged, and there must be a large number of their descendants now living in the country. When the Regiment left New Zealand not less than one-eighth of the population of Auckland was composed of men who had served in the Regiment.

It was therefore altogether suitable when on 30th January, 1913, the 15th North Auckland Regiment was officially allied to the Northamptonshire Regiment. A short account of the services of this regiment is contained in Appendix VIII.

The departure of the Regiment is described by an eye-witness as follows :—

" . . . As the corps formed up to the call of bugle and beat of drum, only 120 men gathered round the tattered and shot-riven Colours. The survivors of the wars had fallen into the ranks of civilian life, and were engaged in the heroic work of colonization, for peace has its victories as well as war, and the glory of saving life is greater than that of destroying it. The women and children had embarked in the transport, and all that remained was the last parade and roll-call, and final march to the wharf. Then I saw one of those unique incidents which no man could witness unmoved. On that parade ground were gathered grey-bearded and bronze-visaged men, whose well-knit and martial figures bespoke the old veteran, who had tramped, some of them, thirty and forty miles through wretched bullock tracks from the bush, to bid ' Good-bye ' and ' God bless you ' to old comrades who had been with them in the baptism of fire at Okaihau, at Ohaiawai, at Ruapekapeka, the Hutt and Wanganui. Some of those veterans, in their travel-stained clothing, went up and, reverently baring their heads, with tears coursing down their manly cheeks, kissed the old tattered Colours under which they had fought and bled and were prepared to die if need be."

P

On 11th January, 1902, a Hatchment was unveiled at Waimate North to the memory of those members of the 58th who fell in the war

Memorials. from 1845 to 1846. The Hatchment consists of a panel two feet square placed diamond-wise and framed with a polished black moulding. The principal features of the design, which is painted in oils, are the King's and Regimental Colours crossed, with the Royal Crown and "58" above, and the name "Rutlandshire Regiment" on a gilt scroll below, while at the intersection of the staves is a representation of the badge and motto of the Regiment. The Primate of New Zealand performed the dedication ceremony, the actual unveiling being done by Mr. Michael Smith, an old veteran of the 58th.

A further memorial to all the regiments which took part in the Maori War was unveiled at Marsland Hill, New Plymouth, in 1909.

After a voyage of one hundred and five days the 58th landed at Portsmouth on 7th March, 1859, and after disembarkation

England and Ireland, 1859-1864. moved for a time to Shorncliffe Camp, and later to Aldershot. Here Lieutenant-Colonel Cyprien Bridge handed over to Lieutenant-Colonel C. Hood, who remained in command for fourteen years.

In his valedictory address Colonel Bridge remitted all regimental punishments, whether under sentence of court-martial or otherwise, "with the hope that the defaulters would conduct themselves better in the future."

To augment the numbers depleted by the large proportion of men who had remained in New Zealand, recruiting parties were detailed for duty in the West of England and in Ireland, and it is recorded that in Ireland the recruiting was particularly brisk and that many drafts were received from Birr, King's County, where the depot was then stationed.

From Aldershot the Regiment moved in August, 1860, to the North of England, being stationed at Manchester, Burnley, Newcastle-on-Tyne and other places in the North of England for the next eighteen months.⁶

On 23rd January, 1862, the Regiment moved from Newcastle-on-Tyne to Liverpool on their way to The Curragh. Two steamers, the *Windsor* and *Trafalgar*, were awaiting them. Hardly had they sailed before a violent gale sprang up which smashed the bulwarks of both ships, injured several men and caused the *Trafalgar* to put back into Holyhead. The *Windsor*, however, succeeded in reaching Dublin on the 24th, the *Trafalgar* following on the next day. Two years were spent in Ireland at the Curragh, Dublin, Newry and Enniskillen.⁷

Before leaving Aldershot new Colours were presented to the Regiment on 10th May, 1860, and these same Colours are still carried

Presentation of Colours. (1935). As these Colours were the last to be carried in action by any regiment of the British Army, and have seen service for almost three-quarters of a century, it is only fitting that we should

describe the presentation, which was made by Lieutenant-General Knollys, in detail.

The Regiment was drawn up so as to form two sides of a square, the two side faces of two companies each being at an obtuse angle to the remainder. The new Colours, cased, and guarded by a Major at each side, rested against a gun in the centre of the square, while the old Colours occupied their usual place in the hands of the two senior Ensigns.

After the General had received the honour due to his rank, the two Majors, uncasing the Colours, leant them against the gun.

The Regiment then shouldered arms and, after the Band and Drums had played their part, the centre section of the line advanced with the old Colours to within six paces of the gun trail. Arms were then ordered and the service of consecration was read over the new Colours. This being finished, two Ensigns, next in seniority to those carrying the old Colours, advanced and, taking the old Colours, bore them to the rear under the proper escort.

The Majors then took the new Colours and handed them to General Knollys, who had dismounted from his horse to receive them. By him they were handed to the two Ensigns, who received them kneeling. One of these Ensigns, C. E. Foster, became Colonel of the Regiment and was present at the celebration of the jubilee of the Colours in 1910.

General Knollys then mounted his horse and addressed a stirring speech to the Regiment.

After expressing his sense of the honour done him by being selected to present the Colours, and after paying a tribute to the Colonel of the Regiment and his old friend Colonel Wynyard, he proceeded to sum up the history of the Regiment.

He briefly touched on the various engagements in which the Regiment had taken part, and called on all ranks to show, by their behaviour both on the battlefield and in barracks, that they were not insensible of the honours gained by their predecessors, and were determined worthily to sustain the reputation of their corps.

Colonel Cyprien Bridge then returned thanks in a short speech for the favourable terms in which General Knollys had spoken of the Regiment.

After this, the Ensigns carrying the new Colours faced about and the Regiment presented arms, the Band playing "God Save the Queen."

Then the Colours were trooped from one end of the line to the other, the Colours, preceded and followed by a colour-sergeant, being carried down in front of the line of officers, the front rank of the escort passing between the ranks, and the rear rank passing between the rear rank of the line and the supernumerary rank.

As soon as this was completed and the escort had reached the right of the line, the old Colours were marched off to the tune of "Auld Lang Syne."

The ceremony then concluded with a march past General Knollys in slow

and quick time at open order and quarter distance, in both of which movements the Regiment acquitted itself admirably, General Knollys frequently expressing his approbation of their steadiness and smartness.

When the new Colours were presented to the 58th at Aldershot it was decided by Colonel Bridge that the old Colours, which had **The Old Colours.** been presented in 1841 and had been carried throughout the New Zealand War, should be presented to the city of Auckland for safe custody. They were accordingly sent to Captain Balneavis of the 58th, who had remained in New Zealand, with the request that he would get them put in the Church of St. Paul at Auckland. The Regiment had worshipped at this church, and on departure had presented the church with a set of brass candelabra. For some months the Colours remained in the church, but Bishop Selwyn felt that the feelings of the Maoris would be hurt if the Colours of a regiment which fought against them were permanently in a place of peace, and ordered their removal, against the wishes of the parish authorities.

The Colonel of the Regiment, on hearing this, asked for the return of the Colours that they might be placed in the church at Rutland. On receipt of this letter a meeting of the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the 58th who had settled in New Zealand was held at Auckland on 4th September, 1861. At this meeting a resolution was passed that Captain Balneavis (who was then Lieutenant-Colonel of the Auckland Militia and Sheriff of the Supreme Court) "do respectfully solicit the sanction of Lieutenant-Colonel Hood and the officers of the Regiment to allow the Colours to remain in charge of His Excellency the Governor until a suitable building can be erected wherein they may be safely deposited."

Colonel Hood's sanction being obtained, the Colours remained in Government House until 1865, when the seat of Government removed to Wellington. Lieutenant-Colonel Balneavis then took charge of them in his own house until 1868, when he arranged for their transfer to the New Supreme Court at Auckland, which had been opened in February, 1868. Colonel Balneavis informed the Regiment of the action he had taken, saying that he had placed the following inscription under them: "FIRST REGIMENTAL COLOURS UNFURLED IN NEW ZEALAND IN 1845. PRESENTED TO AUCKLAND BY COLONEL BRIDGE AND OFFICERS OF 58TH REGIMENT." He also said they had been carried to the Court by himself and Captain Tighe, of the 58th, and were escorted by a large number of discharged non-commissioned officers and privates of the Regiment.

To this letter a long reply was sent on 13th May in which Colonel Hood wrote that he had communicated the contents of the letter above quoted to the officers, non-commissioned officers and men at a special parade. He went on to say that all ranks desired to express their appreciation of the honourable way in which the old Colours had been treated, and of the fine feeling which



OLD COLOURS OF THE 58th.

Presented 9th July, 1841. Carried until 9th May, 1860.

must have inspired all those who rallied to the ceremony. He regretted the action of the Bishop of New Zealand in refusing a last resting-place to the Colours in that church, with which the Regiment was intimately connected and which by voluntary subscription it had helped to equip, seeing that not the least noble decoration in many an old abbey and cathedral in England were the past standards of regiments. He and all those serving therefore felt all the more grateful that at last the Colours had been carried to so fitting a home with so suitable an induction.

In 1901 the position of the Colours was again considered, and two applications were received by the Regiment, one from the vicar and churchwardens of St. Paul's that they should be returned to the church, and the other from Captain J. Mitchell, late of the 58th, that they should be transferred to the Public Library at Auckland. The Regiment left the decision to a local committee, but expressed the opinion that the building selected should be one open to all denominations. Captain Mitchell reported at the time (1901): "The Queen's Colour is a thing of shreds and patches, but the Regimental Colour is in a good state of preservation."

The Public Library was finally selected, and on 10th January, 1909, the Colours were transferred to their new resting-place. Ten old veterans of the 58th who had fought in the New Zealand War sixty years before, grey and venerable and bent with the weight of years, were present to receive the Colours when they were brought out of the Supreme Court, and to guard them until they were handed over to the Mayor. The old soldiers were Sergeants S. H. Mitchell and Jesse Sage, Privates H. Gillam, Murphy, R. Skinner, J. Halloran, T. Howell, J. Cutter, H. Scott and N. Scott. All the available local militia also paraded, together with the Garrison Artillery and civil organizations, and a procession formed which was led to the Public Library by the garrison bands. At the Library the Colours were received by Mr. A. Myers, the Mayor, who accepted them on behalf of the City of Auckland in the presence of a large gathering, including many descendants of the old Regiment.

On 13th November, 1933, the Colours were once more moved, this time to the Auckland War Memorial Museum.

Over a thousand people, including four hundred descendants of members of the 58th and sixty descendants of Maori chiefs of the period, attended the ceremony, which commenced with the singing of two verses of the National Anthem. The Mayor, Mr. G. W. Hutchinson, then handed over the Colours to the custody of the Museum authorities, making a short speech in which he gave an account of their history. After the Colours had been received by Sir James Parr on behalf of the Museum Council, Mr. P. Smith (Te Mete), a descendant of a Hokianga chieftainess, spoke in English and Maori, and Mr. M. H. Wynyard, a descendant of Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Wynyard, outlined the history of the Regiment. The Rev. Angus McDonald then spoke interestingly of the alliance of the Auckland Regiment and the old 58th, after which

the official party entered the Museum, where the Colours were unveiled by Lieutenant-Colonel Shera, grandson of Colonel Balneavis of the 58th. The ceremony concluded with three verses of the Recessional Hymn.

While at the Curragh, orders were received for the Regiment to proceed on its first tour of service in India. Embarking at Cork **India, 1864-1874.** (where it had embarked on nearly every previous occasion of proceeding on foreign service), between 19th and 21st July, 1864, Calcutta was reached by half the battalion at the end of October after a voyage of just one hundred days ; the remainder of the battalion, under Major R. C. Whitehead, did not arrive for another seventy days owing to light winds. Indeed, so delayed was the passage on this account that the *Alfred*, in which they were sailing, put in to Vizagapatam to obtain a tug to tow her to Calcutta.

After a few days at Fort William, the Regiment moved to Benares in relief of the 54th Foot. In December, 1865, headquarters and five companies left for Darjeeling, moving by train to Colgong and marching the rest of the way, a distance of one hundred and forty miles. The other half of the battalion remained at Benares. The years 1866 to 1868 were passed in the usual routine of quarterly and half-yearly inspections, and in January, 1869, the whole Regiment was once more concentrated at Allahabad. While here they were attacked by a cholera epidemic which it was found most difficult to shake off, although the Regiment was split up into detachments. One officer, 120 non-commissioned officers and men, 10 women and 33 children died of the disease in a few months, and in addition 86 non-commissioned officers and men were invalided. By October the epidemic had subsided and the Regiment once more concentrated, this time at Jubblepore.

In January, 1870, a move was made by train to Ludiana, and thence by march to Sialkot on the borders of the Punjab and Kashmir, a distance of nearly three hundred miles. Here three peaceful years were spent.

From December, 1872, to February, 1873, the Regiment was encamped with the First Division for training at Hussim Abdal, after which it moved to Nowshera in the North-West Frontier Provinces. While here detachments were formed at Fort Attock and Cherat.

During April the Regiment received its orders for home. Two sergeants, 6 corporals and 215 privates volunteered for transfer to other corps remaining in India, the 83rd, 59th and 43rd receiving the greatest numbers.

On 23rd February, 1874, the Regiment embarked on the Indian troopship *Serapis*, and after a smooth passage reached Portsmouth on 29th March, there to be quartered.

The difference in time between the outward and homeward journeys, though only ten years apart, is to be noted ; the first being via the Cape of Good Hope and the second via the Suez Canal. It must be borne in mind, when considering that only nine years' service abroad were completed, that in those days enlistment was for twelve years and there were no linked bat-

talions. A man might therefore spend all his service abroad ; also the slowness of sailing vessels precluded any idea of furlough.

On arrival in England one year was spent at Portsmouth. While there, Lieutenant-Colonel Hood was succeeded in command of the **England, 1874-1879.** Regiment by Lieutenant-Colonel R. C. Whitehead on 22nd May, 1874.

The year at Portsmouth was followed by a year at Aldershot and another at Shorncliffe, after which the Regiment moved to Dover in February, 1878. In April, on account of the threatening attitude of Russia, the Reserve forces were called out and responded to the call with a promptitude which called for the special approval of Her Majesty Queen Victoria. Russia was not, however, destined to be our next enemy.



Militia Officer's Cross Belt Plate
circa 1854

CHAPTER XX

(48TH, 1853-1892)

THE CRIMEAN WAR—CAPTURE OF SEVASTOPOL—MALTA AND GIBRALTAR (1856-1858)—OVERLAND TO SUEZ—INDIA (1858-1865)—ENGLAND AND IRELAND (1865-1868)—MALTA AND INDIA (1868-1880)—IRELAND AND ENGLAND (1880-1892)—PRESENTATION OF COLOURS (1889).

(*See Map, page 219.*)

THE forty years following the Napoleonic Wars had been a period of peace and of expanding, if chequered, prosperity for Great Britain, in **The Crimean War.** which commercial and industrial considerations had steadily gained in importance and the great manufacturers and industrialists had obtained a share in political power and influence. In this atmosphere the Army had been almost forgotten and neglected by Parliaments which grudged money for national defence, kept our establishments below the minimum safety level, and would have turned a deaf ear to proposals for Army reform if any had been put forward. In consequence, when by a crowning act of folly Aberdeen's Ministry committed the nation to a war with Russia, which need never have been fought, the country was absolutely unprepared and the Army quite without the organization and administrative services it needed.

The nominal cause of the war arose out of a dispute regarding the custody of the Holy Sepulchre between the Greek Church, under the protection of Russia, and the Latin Church, under the protection of France. Demands were made on Turkey, to which she was unable to agree. In July, 1853, Russian troops advanced into Turkish territory, which they occupied as security for Turkey's compliance to the Czar's demands. England, France, Prussia and Austria now tried to be conciliatory, but too late, and on 23rd October, 1853, Turkey declared war on Russia.

This was the nominal cause of the war. The real causes lay behind it. The dread of Russia had of recent years been growing both in India and in Europe, and England and France felt that an alteration in the balance of power was necessary at the expense of Russia. Early in November the Turkish fleet was sunk by the Russians at Sinope, which perfectly legitimate stroke was bitterly resented by public opinion both in France and England, and the Allied fleets sailed into the Bosphorus. The British Ministers had allowed England to drift practically into a defensive alliance with Turkey, and war became inevitable. It was greeted with enthusiasm at home, the result of a queer mixture of Liberalism and Jingoism.

Gradually the situation got worse, and finally on 28th March, 1854, war against Russia was declared. Once more the neglected Army was remembered and regiments were embarked for Malta, which was to serve as the base for operations. The achievements of our Army in the Peninsula were remembered, and the public were expecting immediate and startling results, but nothing was left of Wellington's army except the spirit of the regiments.

The course of the war exhibited the soundness of the British regimental drill and tradition, and the utter inadequacy of the higher command, lack of organization, and deficiencies of equipment, commissariat and medical provision. England was utterly unprepared for war ; the Army was weak in numbers and had been woefully neglected during the past forty years.

The first duty of the Allied Army was to prevent a Russian advance on Constantinople, and as a counter-stroke nothing seemed more suitable than the capture of Sevastopol, the Russian port in the Crimea. The first considerable concentration of troops took place at Varna, a port on the Black Sea, midway between Constantinople and the mouth of the Danube. Here the three Allied commanders, Lord Raglan, Marshal St. Arnaud and Omar Pasha, met to discuss plans of operation.

The troops forming Raglan's command were " probably as fine a lot of men as ever were put in the field." They included three battalions of Guards and twenty-five of the Line, but their numbers had only been obtained by the ruthless drafting of volunteers from other battalions.

In the spring of 1853 the 48th had been transferred to Corfu, arriving there on 21st March in relief of the 92nd Regiment ; but even though stationed abroad, and in spite of its establishment being raised from eight hundred and fifty to one thousand, the depot companies of the Regiment were not excused from this drafting ; forty men were transferred to the 7th Fusiliers, four to the 88th Foot, and nineteen to the 95th Regiment.

In September, 1854, the Allied forces were disembarked on the Crimea, and in the two following months the battles of Alma and Inkerman were fought and Sevastopol invested. The troops suffered frightful hardships during the winter. Adequate clothing, food, hospital necessaries and other comforts were lacking. Cholera, dysentery, scurvy and other diseases took a terrible toll as a result of inefficient administration. By February the sick list reached the appalling figure of almost fourteen thousand men, nine thousand had died of disease, and the effective strength of the force had dwindled to some seventeen thousand men.

Such were the conditions when the 48th received orders to join the force. While at Corfu they had been finding a detachment at Sante Maura Island to the south. This detachment had been relieved by the 31st Foot in December, 1854. In February one hundred stand of the new Enfield rifles had been received, and on 13th April the Regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel Benjamin Riky, sailed from Corfu in H.M.S. *Leopard*, disembarking at Balaclava Harbour on 21st April, 1855.

The 48th found the British and French armies engaged in the siege of Sevastopol, which was being resolutely defended by the Russians. The town and fortress of Sevastopol lies on the south side of the harbour, into which flows the River Tchernaya.

**Siege of
Sevastopol.**

Its protection consisted of bastions and batteries which formed a semicircle round the town, resting on the west on the Black Sea and on the east on the harbour itself. The town is bisected by the Dockyard Creek which, opening into the harbour to the north, reaches the line of defences on the south.

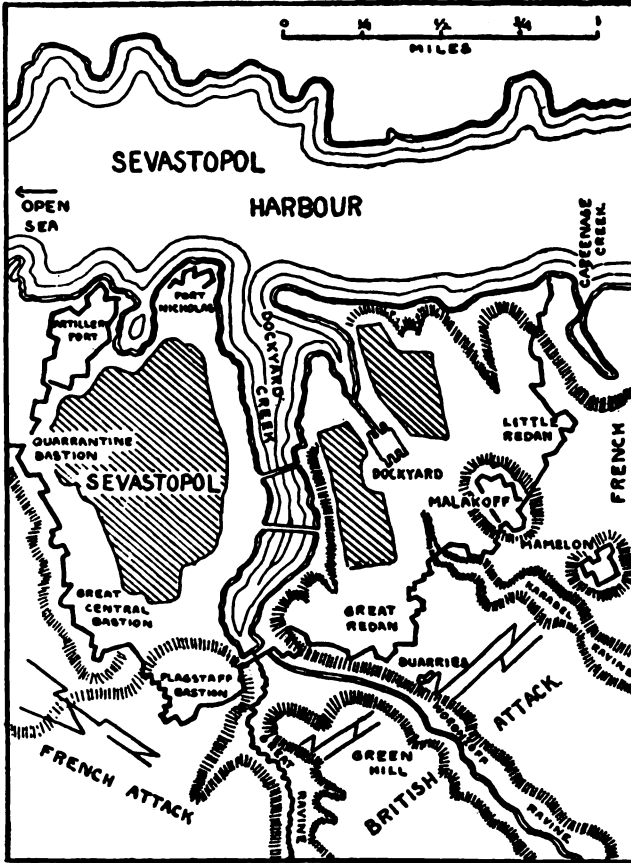
To the west of the Dockyard Creek and forming the left of the Allied line was the main French army, facing from left to right Quarantine Bastion, the Great Central Bastion and the Flagstaff Bastion ; then came the British army facing the Great Redan ; and finally, with their right on the harbour, came another French detachment, faced by the Malakoff Redoubt and an outwork known as the Mamelon.

To the rear of the right attack lay the Sapouné Heights, whence spurs run out towards Sevastopol like the fingers of a man's hand, and separated by deep ravines. The three most westerly spurs contained the British trenches ; on the right the Karabel ravine separated the British army from the French right attack and the Mamelon ; then came the spur leading directly to the Great Redan ; up the next ravine ran the Woronzoff road, the main line of communication with the base at Balaclava, and to the west of this ravine were further British trenches on the Green Hill spur. Beyond this and over the Great Ravine lay the main French army.

On arrival the 48th were posted to the 2nd Brigade¹ of the Fourth Division, under General Sir John Campbell, and moved into camp in rear of Cathcart's Hill. Here they were attacked by cholera, losing one sergeant, one corporal, one drummer and forty-two privates, and as a result on 16th May the camping-ground was changed. The Regiment then took up its regular turn of duties in the trenches which were being pushed day by day nearer the fortress. By bombardment and sortie the Russians did their best to arrest this progress, and in one of these attacks on 4th June, Acting Sergeant-Major S. Francis distinguished himself. The alarm had been given that the Russians were approaching and that a sortie was about to be made, and when the sentries in advance had retired in some confusion, Francis "supplied their place by a new line of sentries which he formed out of a number of volunteers and thereby prevented the further advance of the Russians." For this action and for carrying an important message under fire on another occasion, he was awarded the French war medal.

On 18th June, after a fierce bombardment, an attack was launched on the Redan by troops of the Second Division ; the 48th, being in reserve on the Woronzoff road, suffered no casualties. This attack failed with heavy losses to the British, and also to the French who were attacking the Malakoff at the same time. The following night the 48th were moved up to the trenches,

and early in the morning the Adjutant, Lieutenant E. G. Home, with Corporal T. Goorly and Private J. Downey, made a brave attempt, which unfortunately failed, to bring into our trenches a wounded British soldier who was lying between the lines. For this deed Goorly and Downey also received the French war medal. Lieutenant Home was wounded in this affair.



The fact that there was no British war medal for service in the trenches was severely criticized by Doctor Russell, the *Times* correspondent in the Crimea, who reported that "a man who has served thirty nights in the trenches will have undergone more fire than if he had been in the hottest fight of the campaign. No man goes into the trenches who is not exposed to a heavy fire and continual danger." In consequence, deeds of gallantry in the trenches were rewarded by a foreign decoration, which accounts for the grant to Captain W. H. Cairns and Sergeant R. Batlin of the Sardinian war medal "for steadiness and soldierlike conduct." They were sent in charge of a party of the

48th to relieve and reinforce a party of the 4th Regiment on the night of 22nd June in the trenches before Sevastopol, occupying the advanced parallel of the left attack, and repulsed a sortie by the Russians.

On the 8th September, 1855, the closing scenes of the long siege opened, and after a terrific bombardment the sixth and final assault on the fortress was made. During this attack the 48th were on guard in the trenches on the left of the line. In the early stages of the bombardment Corporal T. Kelly won the French war medal on the recommendation of a Captain of Artillery for voluntarily working a gun in a battery where he happened to be on duty, on which occasion he was severely wounded. Five others were also wounded.

The attack was successful, and that night the Russians evacuated the town and crossed to the north side of the harbour, while the Allies occupied the town. The campaign was virtually over.

During the winter 1855-56 the condition of the troops was vastly improved compared with the previous winter. The country had at last been stirred, and poured out its money like water. The men were well fed, well clothed, and housed in comfortable huts. Health improved and the frightful epidemics of the previous year were avoided. Four months of winter were ahead of the army before operations could be resumed, and every artifice was used to improve conditions. The Regiment was also employed during the winter in making the great road from Balaclava to the camp, and on 17th January a detachment under Major Dishon was quartered in the Karabelnaia at Sevastopol to assist the Engineers in the destruction of the docks.

On 29th February an armistice brought the last semblance of hostilities to an end, and on 30th March a definite treaty of peace was signed. Another battle honour, "Sevastopol," had been won for the Regiment, though more by hardships and doggedness than by fighting. The authority is contained in Horse Guards Order of 16th October, 1855, which authorizes regiments to bear the inscription "Sevastopol" on the Regimental Colour "as a memorial of the arduous and successful operations which have led to the reduction of that great fortress." The battle casualties had not been severe, amounting in total to 12 rank and file killed, and 2 officers (Lieutenant F. C. Trent and Lieutenant E. G. Home), 6 sergeants and 54 rank and file wounded.

In Fortescue's summary of the campaign he states that it is interesting "as the last appearance of the old long service soldier in the face of an European enemy. Never did he show himself greater than . . . on the bleak plateau of Sevastopol when he withstood cold and famine until death struck him off the roll of duty, patient and uncomplaining to the last."

At the end of May the Regiment received the glad news that they were at last to leave the Crimea, and on the 30th sailed from Balaclava on the steamship *Robert Lowe*, arriving at Malta eleven days later. All supplementary officers, with non-commissioned officers and men who had been specially enlisted for short

Malta and
Gibraltar,
1856-1858.

service during the war, were soon transferred to England. On arrival the Regiment had been accommodated in camp on St. George's Rifle Range, but later was transferred to barracks and huts at St. Manoel.

Here they suffered severely from Malta fever, and on 1st January, 1857, further trouble was caused by a severe gale which destroyed the huts on the glacis of the fort, and necessitated the provision of new quarters in Lazaretto and New Hospital Barracks.

While at Malta the Regiment was drilled in the "new musket exercise" under Major Lane Fox. "The left wing distinguished itself so much by good practice at the targets at different ranges as to entitle it to have placed on a board attached to a pillar the name of the company and of one soldier, being the best shots, thereby removing the name of a soldier in the Rifle Brigade who had previously obtained the distinction."³

In April new quarters were occupied at Fort Verdala, one company being detached at Fort St. Angelo, but only for three months, for on 6th August the Regiment embarked for Gibraltar on board the steam transport *Abeona*. Trouble with the machinery caused the transport to put into Algiers Bay, where she was taken in tow by the French frigate *Cacique* and brought to Gibraltar.

Just over a year was spent at the Rock. After a few weeks in camp on the western beach, the Town Range Barracks and King's Bastion were occupied until May, 1858, when the Regiment was concentrated in the Grand Casemate Barracks. Orders for India were now received, and on embarkation the Regiment not only received the official congratulations from the military authorities on their good behaviour, efficiency and discipline, but were also given a most hearty send-off by the inhabitants, who crowded the streets and cheered as they marched to the docks, led by the bands of the 6th, 7th and 25th Regiments.

Embarking on 15th September on the steam transport *Jura*, course was laid to the east, and the Regiment landed at Alexandria a week later; thence they proceeded by rail to the terminus and crossed the desert on donkeys to Suez, where they embarked on 24th September on the P. & O. steamer *Hindustan*. During their journey they must have seen the work which was then in progress on the Suez Canal, which was not to be completed for shipping for another eleven years.

After a crowded and uncomfortable voyage, bunk accommodation being available for only half the men, the 48th arrived at Calcutta on 20th October and moved into barracks at Barrackpore. Several years were passed in India, the Regiment being stationed at Allahabad, Calpee, Cawnpore, Lucknow and Calcutta, during which time there is little to record.

While at Cawnpore on 23rd November, 1860, Lieutenant-Colonel B. Riky died. He had commanded the 48th for nearly seven years, including the whole period in the Crimea, where he had been awarded the Legion of Honour and

gained the Sevastopol medal (with clasp). He was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel A. N. Campbell, who died of fever in India on 13th October, 1864, and was himself succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel J. G. R. Aplin.

On 10th August, 1864, the Hon. A. A. Dalzell, who later became Earl of Carnwath⁴ succeeded General Reynett as Colonel of the Regiment. The new Colonel was an old member of the Regiment, which he had commanded as a Lieutenant-Colonel for eleven and a half years between 1841 and 1852.

On 1st January, 1865, the 48th sailed for home by the Cape on the *Patrician* and after a fine passage of ninety-five days, during which the ship touched at St. Helena for water and provisions, reached Dover on 6th April. The Regiment marched to Shorncliffe on arrival.

**England
and Ireland,
1865-1868.**

It is interesting to note that at this period the majority of the recruits came from the counties of Northamptonshire, Bedfordshire and Leicestershire, and that recruiting was so good that the Regiment was over strength and closed for enlistment. This was a most exceptional circumstance at a time when service in the Army was far from popular.

Threats of disturbances in Ireland soon occasioned another move, and on 12th December, 1866, the Regiment embarked at Portsmouth and, arriving at Kingstown, proceeded to the Curragh. In February five companies were detached under Captain Cumming, scouring the mountains in County Kerry for Fenian conspirators. Further moves were made in April, 1867, to Dublin⁵ and in December to Fermoy.

While at Fermoy a detachment under Captain Trent was stationed at Tipperary, being quartered at the workhouse, as no other accommodation was available. On 18th February, 1868, a fire broke out in that portion of the workhouse occupied by aged people and children, and threatened serious consequences. Owing, however, to the energetic efforts of officers and men, who displayed the greatest resolution in saving life and property, the fire was subdued with little damage to property and without loss of life. Private William Goddard particularly distinguished himself.

On 3rd October, 1868, the Regiment moved to Cork by rail, and thence by river steamer to Queenstown, where they embarked on board H.M.S. *Crocodile* for Malta, which was reached on 13th

**Malta and India,
1868-1880.**

October. An officer of the Regiment who knew the *Crocodile*, states that, with her two sister ships, the *Scrapis* and the *Euphrates*, she was always used for trooping. Only officers of some service had the luxury of a cabin, the junior officers' quarters being known as the "Pandemonium"; she was a screw ship with two sails which were used when the wind was favourable.

Three and a half years were spent in Malta, the barracks at Isola Gate and Polverista being occupied for the first two years and Floriana Barracks for the remainder of the time; during this period nothing of interest occurred beyond the ordinary routine of training.

In November, 1870, Lieutenant-Colonel Aplin retired on half pay, exchanging with Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Travers from the 24th Foot, who in May, 1878, was appointed Inspector-General of Musketry at Hythe, and after whom the Travers Library at Hythe is named. Lieutenant-Colonel Travers was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel E. D'H. Fairclough, who had transferred from the 14th Foot as a Major in 1871. In June, 1882, Lieutenant-Colonel Fairclough was transferred to half pay and Lieutenant-Colonel F. C. Trent, the father of the first commanding officer of the 5th Battalion in the Great War, took his place. Colonel Trent had joined the 48th as an Ensign thirty-three years earlier, and had fought with the Regiment in the Crimea, where he had won the Turkish war medal and the Order of the Medjidie (5th Class). He retired in November, 1884, and was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel St. J. Bally for three years, who was himself followed by Lieutenant-Colonel H. B. Wilson in August, 1887.

On 5th February, 1872, the Regiment embarked for India, once more on board H.M.S. *Crocodile*, arriving in Bombay Harbour on 26th and moving to Bellary. On 2nd July, 1874, the two depot companies "E" and "H," moved from Weedon to Portsmouth and were attached to the 58th, which was the first direct connection of the two regiments as linked battalions.

General The Earl of Carnwath, the Colonel of the Regiment, died in London on 28th April, 1875, and Lieutenant-General McCleverty, an old officer of the Regiment who had obtained his Ensign's commission in 1824, was appointed from being Colonel of the 108th Foot.⁴

At the end of 1875 a move was made to Cannanore, and in February, 1880, the Regiment embarked at Bombay for home on board H.M. Troopship *Euphrates*.

The original destination had been Portsmouth, but, when touching at Malta, other orders were received and the Regiment proceeded to Queenstown, whence they moved to Tipperary. There were still serving in the Regiment a number of officers and men with the Crimean medal. These included Colonel Trent, and also a Private Shenahan who had not only eight good conduct stripes, but at the same time twenty-seven "drunks" on his defaulter's sheet, one of which was for being drunk in the trenches before Sevastopol when orderly bugler. This man remained with the Regiment until it sailed for India in 1892, when it is said that he died of a broken heart on being left behind.

At this time Ireland was disturbed by the Fenian troubles, and anyone driving out to dinner at night was armed. It was not unusual at a dance to find a revolver room provided in addition to the cloak-room.

Parties were continually being called out suddenly, even in the middle of dinner, to go on eviction duty; on account of this duty the Regiment had detachments at Cahir, Tralee, Clonmel and other places. They were taken

**Ireland
and England,
1890-1892.**

out in country carts whenever an eviction was taking place. On one occasion a private soldier was murdered, and one morning "48th Bailiffs" was found painted in huge black letters on the barrack wall.

The usual party for eviction duty consisted of an officer and fifteen men, who accompanied the bailiff. When the bailiff had been refused the rent, it was the duty of the party to remove all the furniture into the street, whereupon the bailiff put a seal on the door of the house. In some cases cattle were seized for rent, and in these cases the military party were mostly for the protection of the bailiff and his drovers; the cattle were driven to the nearest station and transported to the market town, where as often as not the rent was produced, so putting the authorities to the maximum trouble and expense.

Another duty which fell to officers was the visiting of "protection posts." These consisted of detachments, generally of three men of the Royal Marines and two members of the Royal Irish Constabulary, placed in the houses of individuals who had been threatened. A tour of these detachments sometimes involved a drive of up to thirty miles a day in an Irish car. On the whole the military were not interfered with, and both hunting and fishing were possible, though not very safe.

In November, 1882, a move was made to the Curragh, and two years later, on 30th September, 1884, they were transferred to England, and were stationed at Preston, with detachments at Fleetwood and Castletown (Isle of Man).

In May, 1886, a captain's party with the Queen's Colour proceeded to Liverpool to act as guard of honour to Her Majesty the Queen during her visit to open the Liverpool Exhibition. After two years at Preston a move was made to Aldershot (27th October, 1886), and eighteen months later to Warley. From Warley a detachment of five companies was sent to the Tower of London during the summer of 1888, to furnish the guards for the Mint and the Bank and occasionally at the Royal Palaces, while the Guards were away from London for musketry and field training.

The two following years the visit to the Tower was repeated, in relief of a battalion of the Guards, and on 2nd June, 1889, a parade service was held in St Paul's Cathedral. Returning to Aldershot from Warley, the 48th were quartered in the Centre Infantry Barracks. While here they were twice inspected by Her Majesty the Queen on Laffan's Plain, on 16th July, 1891 and 27th June, 1892. Here they remained carrying out the normal routine of training until 4th October, 1892, when they embarked for India at Portsmouth on board H.M.S. *Malabar*.

On 19th November, 1888, at Warley, the Colours, having reached the fiftieth anniversary of their presentation, were trooped in the presence of a number of spectators, including many of the retired officers of the Regiment.

Presentation
of Colours,
1889.

During the stay of the Regiment at the Tower of London the battalion was presented with new Colours by H.R.H. the Prince of Wales

(King Edward VII) on 23rd July, 1889. Field-Marshal H.R.H. The Duke of Cambridge was present, also Lord Napier of Magdala, Constable of the Tower.

The presentation took place in front of the Officers' Mess between the White Tower and the men's quarters, and was witnessed by a large gathering of retired officers and friends of the battalion, together with a large number of old soldiers who had served with the battalion.

The old Colours were trooped for the last time, being handed to Second-Lieutenants Harold Norman and Haworth Booth by Sergeant-Major Devlin, after which they were marched in front of the line to the tune of "Auld Lang Syne."

H.R.H. the Prince of Wales, after receiving the new Colours, which were consecrated by the Rev. C. Greyson, Chaplain to the Forces at Warley, assisted by the Rev. W. Newman, Chaplain to the Forces at the Tower, from the hands of Major A. W. Morris and Major T. C. Orde Powlett, presented them to Lieutenants Parker and Norgate and made the following address :—

"Officers, non-commissioned officers and men of 1st Bn. The Northamptonshire Regiment, you have conferred on me a high honour in having asked me to present new Colours to your Regiment, because in doing so, I present Colours to one of the most distinguished regiments in our Army. The roll of your service is well known to all. It must remain an interesting fact to me that just one hundred years before I was born you came into existence, and the Duke of Cambridge, whom I am glad to see here to-day, informs me that the old 48th was at Gibraltar fifty-two years ago, when he first entered the Army. As I said before, you have a well-known roll of most distinguished services extending over every part of the world from Canada to the Crimea. You took part with Wolfe in the Battle of Quebec, and the word *Talavera*, which your Colours bear, tells its own tale; and not only have you been distinguished in the field, you have always been known for your high discipline and good conduct. It will be a source of regret to you to lose your old Colours, you have carried them for upwards of half a century, but under the new Colours I have no doubt your Regiment, so justly reputed for its bravery and *esprit de corps*, will sustain its renown. I have great pleasure in placing these Colours in your hands."

Lieutenant-Colonel H. B. Wilson made the following reply :—

"May it please your Royal Highness, the honour you have conferred upon this battalion this day will be remembered by those present as long as they live, and the proceedings will be preserved in the regimental records as long as the battalion itself exists. Your Royal Highness is well acquainted with the history of this battalion, and it will be sufficient for me here to say that if the spirit which animates these good young soldiers should be called upon to display itself, the gracious words which you have just now spoken will inspire them to emulate the gallant deeds of their predecessors. It is but in accordance with the nature of things in this world that the old Colours

should appear to require a rest, but the fact of your Royal Highness' name being associated with the presentation of the new ones will soften the feelings of melancholy satisfaction with which we part from old friends who have nobly performed that which constitutes the sublimest word in the English language. In the name of the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the battalion I beg to thank your Royal Highness for the great honour you have conferred upon us this day."

The old Colours, which were repaired in 1900 and again in 1908, were for many years kept in the depot mess at Northampton, and in July, 1923, were transferred to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Northampton, where they hang in the chancel.



Militia Officer's Shako Badge
—circa 1865—

1967-78

CHAPTER XXI

(58TH, 1879-1880)

THE ZULU WAR—THE BATTLE OF ULUNDI.

(*See Map, page 232.*)

SINCE the commencement of the nineteenth century, English and Dutch settlers in South Africa had been steadily increasing in numbers and penetrating farther into the interior. This encroachment was naturally resented by the native races, and a very widespread feeling of restlessness and hatred towards the white races resulted. **The Zulu War.** Between 1815, when the Cape of Good Hope was secured to us by the Treaty of Vienna, and 1881, no less than eight Kaffir wars took place. The Boers of the Transvaal also had been engaged in dangerous wars with the natives, and in 1877 it was resolved to place the Kaffirs under British rule. In annexing the country we had become heirs to a dispute regarding the boundary between the Transvaal and Zululand, and in 1878 this dispute was brought to a head by a Zulu attack on a native chief friendly to England.

Other acts of aggression occurred, and finally in November, 1878, an ultimatum was presented to Cetewayo, the Zulu King. No reply was given to this ultimatum, and it was therefore decided that Zululand should be invaded and the Zulu army dispersed.

The Zulus, an immigrant tribe from the north, had built up a military monarchy over their neighbours under a despot named Chaka, Cetewayo's grandfather, who had disciplined them and formed them into regiments in imitation of European organization. The strength of the army was estimated at from forty thousand to fifty thousand men, contained in thirty-three regiments. Of the regiments eighteen consisted of married men, distinguished by shaven heads and carrying white shields, the remainder being "black" or unmarried regiments, who wore their hair naturally and carried coloured shields. A large number of the army were armed with rifles, many of which were worthless, though a good proportion of breech-loaders were included. Their marksmanship was, however, pitiable, and they invariably put up their sights to the highest point, under the idea that the piece gained strength in shooting by the practice.

As is so often the case, the campaign started disastrously, and on 22nd January the 1/24th was practically annihilated by the Zulus at Ishandhlwana, necessitating the immediate retreat of our invading columns. South

Africa, however, was not in those days in telegraphic communication with England, and the message from Lord Chelmsford, commanding the British troops, giving news of the disaster, had to be conveyed by steamer to St. Vincent and telegraphed from there. In consequence it did not reach London before 11th February. It came to hand early in the morning, and before midnight the reinforcements to be sent had been detailed, including the 58th.

On 26th February the Regiment embarked at Portsmouth in the s.s. *Russia* of the Cunard Line—30 officers and 903 other ranks under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel R. C. Whitehead. The voyage was uneventful, except for one young officer who had joined just as the battalion embarked; his brother officers taking exception to his somewhat elaborate wardrobe, much of it was lost overboard. There was no band or drums, the instruments having been stored and the members of both sections having joined their companies. The drum-major is reported to have taken on the duties of "Chief Castigator" and carried the cat-o'-nine-tails, showing that flogging was still a recognized punishment. In the evenings the men gathered in groups on the forecastle for a sing-song, the most popular refrain being "My old grandfather's clock with its tick, tick, tick."

The transport put in at St. Vincent to coal, a ration of rum being issued to the coaling party found by the Regiment as a reward for their labours. After filling the ship's bunkers the voyage was continued to Simon's Bay and thence to Durban after a short wait. Here the Regiment was landed in surf boats on 4th April, and three days later started for the front, moving by train to Botha's Hills and marching thence to Pietermaritzburg. In the succeeding days the march was continued through Camperdoun, Maritzburg, and the Umgewi Falls to Colenso, where the Tugela was forded. On arrival at Ladysmith "H" Company was dropped as part of the garrison of the lines of communication, and as another company had previously been left behind at Durban the Regiment was now reduced to six companies. Dundee was reached on 1st May, and here the Regiment was inspected by Lord Chelmsford, the Commander-in-Chief. The following day they moved to Landman's Drift, where several days were spent on the banks of the Buffalo river awaiting the arrival of other troops.

The column of which the 58th formed part was now designated the Second Division and was placed under the command of Major-General Newdigate. The division consisted of two brigades, the first under Colonel Glyn containing the 1/21st and the 58th (under Lieutenant-Colonel R. C. Whitehead), while the second brigade consisted of the reorganized 1/24th and the 94th Regiments. A cavalry brigade, composed of the 1st Dragoon Guards, the 17th Lancers and some native irregulars, was attached to the division.

At the end of May the 2nd Division moved forward into Zululand and

concentrated on the Blood river. Lord Chelmsford was accompanied at this time by Prince Louis Napoleon, Prince Imperial of France, who had asked to be attached to the army as a spectator and had been appointed to the staff as an extra aide-de-camp. On 1st June the Prince rode forward with an English officer and a small escort to select the camping ground for the following night and to examine the road for the day's march. The party was surprised on the banks of the Ityotyosi river by a party of Zulus and the Prince Imperial was killed. As a result the British officer who accompanied the Prince was tried by court martial and sentenced to be cashiered. Later the proceedings were quashed on the grounds that the charge was not sustained by the evidence. Lieutenant-Colonel Whitehead was a member of the court. The sketch map used at the trial was produced by Captain A. W. Morris and Lieutenant H. M. Nuthall, both of the 58th.

On 3rd June the Second Division resumed its advance and encamped near the junction of the Tombokola and Ityotyosi rivers, crossing the latter river on the following day. On the night

**The Advance
into Zululand.**

of 6th June a sudden alarm was caused by nervousness among the native contingents, whose dread of the Zulus was notorious. For security at night the camp was surrounded by groups of infantry, some small parties of natives being stationed in intervals between them. According to the Narrative of the Field Operations connected with the Zulu War, this is what occurred: "At 9 p.m. on the 6th of June one of the parties of natives thought they saw a Zulu creeping towards them, and fired three shots which was the recognized signal that the camp was attacked. The groups of the 58th Regiment who were on either side of this party of natives, ran in on their supports, the officer in charge of which, after ordering two volleys to be fired, instantly retired with his men into one of the unfinished forts. The tents were immediately struck and the troops manned the wagon laager to receive the expected attack. Fearing the piquets might be shot, General Newdigate now ordered the 'Close' to be sounded, and very soon afterwards the troops opened fire from all sides of the laager. Orders were promptly issued for this firing to cease, but, as the outposts had not all been withdrawn, two sergeants and three men received gunshot wounds. Order having been restored, the bright moonlight showed there was no enemy near the camp, and shortly afterwards the tents were again pitched."

The division encamped at Nondweni from 8th to 18th June. On 13th June, in consequence of the lines of communication garrisons which had to be provided, the second brigade was broken up and the 1/24th, 58th and 94th Regiments with Bengough's natives were formed into a brigade under Colonel R. T. Glyn of the 1/24th. This brigading of the 58th with the 94th in this force gave it the nickname of the "Elephant and Castle Brigade," suggested by the badges of the two regiments.

On 19th June the division again moved forward to the Ibabanango

Mountain. As the advance continued a series of forts were constructed at intervals of approximately twenty miles as a protection for the lines of communication. These forts were named after the various commanding officers and were garrisoned by companies of the various regiments composing the Second Division. On 22nd June "A" and "D" Companies of the 58th were left as the garrison of Fort Evelyn on the Umhlatosi river, which reduced the Regiment to a strength of four companies, as "C" Company had been left at Durban, and "H" at Ladysmith.

Proceeding on 25th June the division halted at Entonjaneni, about twenty miles from Ulundi, where King Cetewayo's kraal was situated. The immediate threat of the advance resulted in the arrival of envoys from Cetewayo asking for peace terms. The terms were proposed and included a demand for the return of captured arms and that a Zulu force should publicly lay down their arms as an act of submission. There was considerable prevarication on behalf of the Zulus, and on the time limit elapsing on 29th June the advance once more continued.

On the night of 2nd July the force reached White Umvolosi river, where it halted and laagered in accordance with a promise given to Cetewayo. A large force of Zulus was seen, and some sniping occurred during the 3rd, but no attack was made.

**The Battle of
Ulundi,
4th July, 1879.**

The following account by an officer of the 58th describes what occurred during the next two days:—

"We got our orders on the morning of the 3rd to fall in an hour before daybreak, and after being shown our places, we all lay down to sleep. Officers were in front of their respective companies, which were posted all round the laager. Our rest was soon disturbed by the Zulu army singing their war song. The noise appeared to come from about two miles the other side of the Umvolosi river in the direction of the Unodwengo kraal. It had a wonderful effect, about twenty thousand men all joining in. They kept it up for about an hour and then all was silent. It looked like business for the morrow.

"No bugle sounded the rouse, but we were all awake and had breakfast in the early morning. Luckily it was brilliant moonlight, and in about an hour the division was all formed up and ready to start. It was broad daylight when the order to advance was given. The formation was a square, the English infantry forming the sides. The irregular cavalry went in front, the artillery, native troops and ammunition carts in the centre of the square and the 17th Lancers brought up the rear.

"In this order the Umvolosi was crossed, and then we had about a mile of very irregular and bushy ground to get over before getting onto the plain of Ulundi. Luckily we were not opposed here or our loss might have been very heavy. No sign was seen of the enemy. We went steadily on until we had passed on the left of the Unodwengo kraal, a large Kaffir town with hundreds of huts; not a Zulu was there. The square was now halted and the cavalry

sent forward to reconnoitre, some of them being sent to burn the Ukandampanivu kraal, which was in our left rear. This was soon in flames.

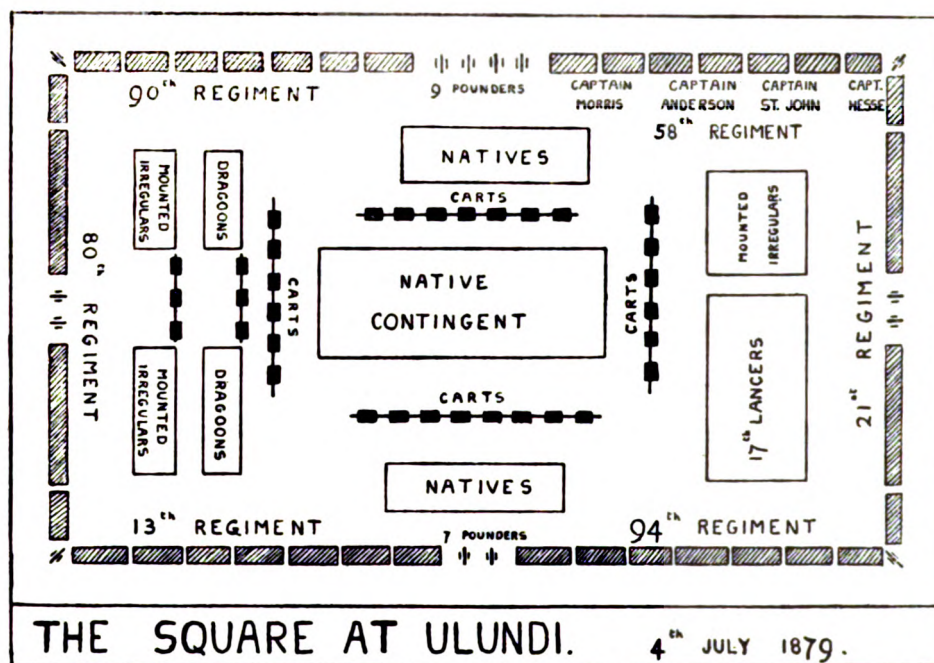
"The Zulus were now seen coming down the sides of the hills to our left about three miles off. Our square was advanced a little to about one thousand yards beyond the Unodwengo kraal and a position was taken up on the top of some gently rising ground. Now we had time to look about us and we began to think we should not be attacked at all. Our doubts were soon dispelled. Down the hillsides on our left and front they began to move in beautiful formation. It seemed like endless companies in line all marching at regular intervals.

"Our place was in the rear face of the square, so I can only describe what took place on our side, which was in the direction of our camp. Soon the very ground we had marched over coming from the river was swarming with Zulus. As yet they were not within rifle range, but the cavalry began to retire on the square. Suddenly a heavy fire began from where as yet we had seen no enemy, namely from the right of the Unodwengo kraal, and the irregular cavalry were seen coming over the brow of the hill and firing as they retired. In another minute the ground they had just left was covered with a swarm of Zulus who opened a hot fire on us. The bullets began to whistle about us, and one of our men fell back and was carried away on a stretcher.

"The men were ordered not to fire until the cavalry had retired, which they now did in good order, openings being made in the square for them to pass through. While this was being done the Zulus opened terrific fire on us from all sides. Our artillery now began on them, and sent their shells bursting where they were thickest, but still they came on in swarms, shouting and yelling. We now sent volleys into them by sections at six hundred yards range and mowed them down. This did not check their advance, however, and they made a rush for a hollow piece of ground about two hundred yards from our side of the square and were lost to sight.

"They must have been collecting for their final rush, for in another minute I could see (being mounted) a great mass of them, all bending nearly double to avoid our fire and making a rush for our corner of the square. As soon as they appeared our men opened on them such a murderous fire that nothing could live before it; guns at the corner also blazing canister into them as fast as they could. In a few minutes we ceased fire and when the smoke cleared away the Zulus were seen flying in every direction. We sent up such a cheer, and helmets went flying into the air, such was the delight of our men.

"Now was the time for the cavalry, and in a minute they were out of the square and pursuing the Zulus, cutting them down, spearing and shooting them. Numbers of them turned at bay and fired, killing and wounding a good many horses and several officers and men. The Zulus were now in full retreat and got onto the hillsides where the cavalry could not follow, so the guns kept on shelling them till they got out of sight.



"We now got the order to advance on Ulundi. Cetewayo's enormous kraal and two other military kraals about a mile beyond Ulundi were burnt and soon the sky was black with smoke. The men were now allowed to rest and have their dinner, so we lay on the grass and watched the burning kraals and began to count the casualties. Our Major (Major W. D. Bond) was shot through the arm, and Liebenrood, who was doing aide-de-camp to Colonel Glyn, was wounded slightly in two places. One of our men was killed and ten wounded. The loss of the whole force was about thirteen killed and seventy wounded, wonderfully small considering the converging fire we were exposed to for more than an hour.

"The bullets hummed and whistled all about us and there were many narrow escapes. Luckily the Zulus as a rule cannot shoot, and trust to close quarters and the assegai. If we had been in the Zulus' place and they in ours, not a man of them would have got away. Our men were very steady and confident of beating off the attack. They knew, as we all did, that defeat was death.

"The strength of the Zulus is estimated at about twenty thousand, our strength was five thousand. It looks rather heavy odds to contend with, but nothing could touch us in square with our deadly musketry fire.

"After halting for about an hour, we began to retire towards our camp, burning Unodwengo and another large kraal on the way. We got back to camp about sunset, tired but rejoicing at the result of the day's work."

That the 58th particularly distinguished themselves is shown by the statements of Colonel Glyn, the Brigadier, and Major-General Newdigate, commanding the Second Division.

Colonel Glyn in his report on the action states : " All the brigade behaved with great steadiness, and I specially wish to bring to your notice the companies of the 58th Regiment posted near the guns at the corner."

General Newdigate after the action addressed the battalion in the following words : " Colonel Whitehead, officers and men of the 58th Regiment, I have to thank you for your gallant behaviour on the 4th July. I have never seen troops steadier under fire. Your fire was excellently directed and the consumption of ammunition very small, proving the value of firing in volleys. It was a great victory. I shall make a most favourable report of the 58th Regiment."

The strength of the Regiment during the action was 19 officers and 407 other ranks. The casualties were one man killed and Major Bond and ten other ranks wounded. In addition, Lieutenant C. C. Williams of the 58th, who was in command of native levies known as " Uhamu's People," was killed in an action at Inhlobana on 28th March, 1879.

The night of 4th July was passed at the laager by the White Umvolosi, and the following day the force commenced to move back to " Fort Newdigate," halting on the way at Entonjaneni. There on the night of 6th July a storm of bitterly cold wind with drenching rain burst on the troops. The tempest raged throughout the 8th and 9th, rendering all movement impracticable and destroying a considerable proportion of the transport oxen.

The force was now divided up into a number of separate garrisons and mobile columns. No further opposition, however, was encountered and the Zulus surrendered in all directions. It proved impossible, however, to capture Cetewayo, and in August the attempt was given up in view of the difficult country to be crossed before reaching the place where he was supposed to be in hiding. His capture was finally effected by a squadron of the King's Dragoon Guards, and on his being brought into Pietermaritzburg as a prisoner the campaign ended.

From September, 1879, until the outbreak of the Boer War the Regiment was on the march or quartered for short periods in various places in Zululand, the Transvaal and Natal.

On 9th November, 1880, the Regiment was once more concentrated at Ladysmith, Natal, later moving to Escourt. On 9th September, 1879, Colonel Whitehead, having completed five years as Regimental Lieutenant-Colonel, was placed on half pay, and Major W. D. Bond, the senior major, was promoted to command the Regiment; a few days later he was promoted Brevet Colonel for his services in the Zulu War.

In January, 1880, the Regiment was distributed in detachments in Natal and the Transvaal, being always accommodated under canvas.¹

At this time desertion was rife among the troops stationed in the Transvaal ; life was monotonous and the prospects in a comparatively new country for settlers seemed alluring. In nearly every case they took rifles and ammunition. It became so bad that parties of the Regiment were detailed on "look out" duties and a reward of £5 was offered for each deserter, "£2 to go to the man who shows the party where the deserter is, and £3 to be divided between the men of the party."

At the end of September, 1880, orders were received for the Regiment to concentrate at Newcastle, and it was rumoured that it was destined for Cape Town. So pleased were the officers to get away that a dance to celebrate it was given in the Court House at Wakkerstroom. It appears to have been a queer but amusing affair. "Several women brought their babies, which were placed close to the band, where they lay perfectly contented and happy to the bitter end. The popular dances were the 'Schottische' and 'Mazurka,' and as the band had only brought one Schottische it had to be repeated all through the evening. The dancing went on till daylight."^a

On 27th October the Regiment marched from Wakkerstroom, "the band playing 'The Girl I Left Behind Me' and 'Good-bye, Sweetheart, Good-bye,' but most inappropriately as there was nothing of the feminine gender to bid adieu to."^a At last after much marching the Regiment concentrated at Ladysmith on 7th November, and were all together again for the first time since 7th April, 1879.

From Ladysmith the Regiment marched to Escourt, and at this time seems to have been a particularly happy family. An amusing incident is reported in Lovegrove's diary. It seems that Lieutenant Power was a squeamish breakfaster, and was particularly hit by an unfortunate purchase by the Mess President of four dozen bad eggs. The discovery at breakfast sent Power into temporary retirement ; returning, he met more bad eggs and retired again, only to meet two natives carrying on a stick, as was their custom, the entrails of an ox, newly killed by the Quartermaster. This was too much for him and he retired to the shelter of a friendly tree, and attempted no more breakfast, taking a pint of champagne instead.

The whole Regiment seem to have enjoyed the march and were "as fit as eighteen months in the open could make them, they were in high spirits," and, as they thought, "about to exchange desolation for civilization." They were fortunately ignorant that within four months the Regiment would be cut to pieces at Majuba.

CHAPTER XXII

GENERAL CONDITIONS, 1800-1914

THE CARDWELL REFORMS—LINKING OF BATTALIONS—NEW BADGES AND THEIR ORIGIN—THE OFFICER—ABOLITION OF PURCHASE—EDUCATION OF THE OFFICER—THE PAY OF THE SOLDIER—ENLISTMENT—DISCIPLINE—BARRACKS—SOLDIERS' WIVES—DRESS—ORGANIZATION—BANDS—THE COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT—TACTICS AND DRILL.

ON the conclusion of the Napoleonic Wars thirty-nine years of peace lay ahead of the British Army, and it might have been expected that this period would have been taken as an opportunity for improving conditions of service. The period coincided with the great industrial developments during which the country reached the peak of its prosperity. The great age of utility had begun—machinery, commerce, education and conditions generally were rapidly improved. In this wave of progress and prosperity the Army was forgotten and starved of money. The glamour of the Napoleonic era faded quickly; the great deeds of the Army and what it had done to save Europe and to make prosperity possible were forgotten. It was looked upon as a nuisance, though an indispensable one.

The outbreak of the Crimean War, in 1853, found the bulk of the Army still armed with the old Brown Bess musket. As a result of the long-service system no proper reserve existed, and the administrative services were totally inadequate. The Civil War in America and the Austro-Prussian War soon followed to show the changed conditions of war and to emphasize the need of reforms. The need provided the man—in 1868 Lord Cardwell was appointed as Secretary of War, and from his period of administration can be traced the formation of our modern Army.

Under him the Army was completely reorganized, and among other matters dealt with were the distribution of units between home and foreign stations, the appointment and promotion of officers, and the creation of a reserve.

One of the most far-reaching of Lord Cardwell's reforms, and which is generally known as the "Cardwell System," concerned the distribution of the Army between home and foreign stations.

Previously a large majority of battalions had been stationed abroad, each having its depot companies at home. These depots, scattered all over the country and frequently moving, were often swelled to inconvenient size, while other units were starved of recruits. Regimental districts and recruiting districts did not coincide, and the depots of regiments were placed where barracks happened to be available and seldom in their own county.

Cardwell's plan to cure this evil was first of all to equalize the number of battalions serving at home and abroad. Each home battalion was linked with a foreign battalion, and the two connected with a territorial district for recruiting purposes. With these Regular battalions the Militia and Volunteer units in the district were to be associated ; the whole to rest on a brigade depot or centre which could be converted into a third battalion.

This scheme came into force in 1872, and under its provisions the 48th and 58th were linked, though still maintaining their separate identities. As the scheme involved the training of drafts for the foreign battalion by the home battalion, it soon became obvious that the connection between the two regiments should be closer than mere linking, and in 1881 the brigade districts, including both Regular, Militia and Volunteer battalions, were converted into Territorial regiments, each based on a recruiting district of some 200,000 male inhabitants.

It is only natural that this change should give rise to much friction from the feeling that the old regimental individuality was slipping away. The old black and buff facings were suppressed for the uniform white worn by English regiments, and the 58th lost its title of " Rutlandshire " which it had carried for a hundred years. It can well be realized that regiments with such great records and traditions, in mourning what they had lost, were inclined to overlook what they had gained. The scheme was essentially sound, and the friction which existed between regiments was unfortunate for the Army, and more particularly for themselves.

Two bars of iron cannot be coldly and casually joined together, and it needed the fierce fires of the Great War and the hammer and anvil of combined achievement and suffering, before the two Regiments could be inseparably welded together. This history is proof that the process is complete, and that the great traditions of the 48th and 58th are now combined as the inspiration for future soldiers of the Northamptonshire Regiment.

All Battle Honours and distinctions which had hitherto been borne by either battalion were, in future, to be combined and borne by both battalions. Badges were similarly affected, all numbers disappearing. The design for the helmet plate was an eight-pointed star in gilt, surmounted by a crown ; in the centre was the castle and key on a ground of blue enamel, and on a scroll below, the word " Talavera," encircled by the title " Northamptonshire Regiment." The shoulder badge was adopted from the Militia badge, and contained in the centre in relief on a ground of blue enamel the Garter Cross in silver, and below the cross a silver horseshoe. The Garter Star had been adopted as a badge by the Northamptonshire Militia and by many other regiments after the Napoleonic Wars, and is the origin of the cross on the badge of the present day. The horseshoe, the points of which face downwards to signify that the horse is advancing, is an inheritance from the old Rutlandshire Militia, the horseshoe forming part of the arms of the ancient borough of Oakham. According to

tradition, the horseshoe commemorates the passing of Queen Elizabeth through the town when her horse cast a shoe, the town subsequently acquiring the privilege of claiming a horseshoe from any Royal personage entering its precincts. The origin of this horseshoe is also ascribed to one Wakeline de Ferrars, who lived in the reign of King Stephen and was lord of the Castle of Oakham. From some grant to him, or his ancestors, who were the royal farriers, the lordship of Oakham retained the right of demanding a horseshoe from the foot of one of the horses of any nobleman driving through the barony for the first time. Which, if either, of these two versions is correct it is now quite impossible to say.

We have already described (Chapter I) the system whereby officers obtained their commissions by purchase, together with its various advantages and disadvantages. With the compact lines and columns used tactically up to the Peninsular War, it was enough if the regimental officer could lead his troops gallantly in action, and little tactical knowledge was essential. The increased range of weapons in the nineteenth century caused greater dispersion in the battlefield and required more skilled leadership and training of the officers.

**Abolition of
Purchase.**

So long as advancement depended mainly on the payment of purchase money this improved standard could not be obtained. The abolition of purchase was often discussed, but the great obstacle to its abolition was the invested rights of officers and the expense to the State consequent on a change. Speaking in the House in 1846, Lord Grey advocated that no officer be appointed to a commission without an examination to ascertain he had received "the education of a gentleman, to include military drawing and one European language," and that he should undergo another examination before promotion to Captain. Supporting his motion, he said: "Their promotion depends exclusively upon seniority and interest and having money to purchase their successive steps. There is not even a pretence of making it depend on their showing themselves fit for it. A young man may get his company and subsequently rise to the highest rank upon the mere statement of his commanding officer that he is acquainted with what may be termed the mechanical parts of his professional duty." The first examination was introduced shortly after, and the second in 1858, but a proposal that special promotion should be given to officers who particularly distinguished themselves was not carried out—it would have broken into the purchase system.

Some idea of the requirements of an officer can be gained from the following instructions, issued in 1855.¹

"On first joining the subaltern is placed in the hands of the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major; and he had also to attend his drills until his person is properly set up, and he can march and perform the manual and platoon exercises." The syllabus outlined is less than we expect of the present-day recruit.

At last, in 1871, under Lord Cardwell's administration, purchase was

abolished. As he said in the House, it placed the Army "in pledge" to the officers. The selection of the best officers for higher regimental command, previously rendered impossible by vested rights, was now introduced. Other reforms quickly followed, such as compulsory ages for retirement and limitation of the period of command; the commission of a Major or Lieutenant-Colonel was limited to five years' appointment. There are in the Regiment some astonishing examples of officers continuing in command for years. In the 48th, Lieutenant-Colonel B. Gordon, appointed in 1769, remained in command for more than twenty-six years, which must be almost a record. For the 58th the record is held by Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Wynyard, who held command for sixteen years between 1842 and 1858.

Summing up the results, Lord Cardwell said: "The Regular Army will, for the first time, become in reality as well as in name the Queen's Army, instead of belonging to those who have paid for their commissions."

Before the abolition of purchase the majority of officers entered the infantry without any previous qualification, though a small percentage were commissioned through the Royal Military College. In 1875 a new system was introduced whereby commissions were obtainable only as the result of competitive examination, some fifty per cent. entering through the Royal Military College, twenty-five per cent. through the Militia, and a further twenty-five per cent. through the Colonies and the ranks. The bulk of the officers were "the sons of the smaller gentry, merchants, professional men, clergymen, manufacturers, naval and military officers, and of the wealthier class of tradesmen."

It will be remembered (Chapter XII) that at the end of the eighteenth century the nominal pay of the soldier was a shilling a day, almost the whole of which was deducted for rations, washing and necessities. During the nineteenth century the pay conditions were gradually improved. In 1806 additional pay was granted of 1d. a day after seven years' service, and a further 1d. a day after fourteen years. The pay for service was raised from time to time, and in 1836 it became "good conduct pay," issue being restricted to men of good character. Subsequently the rates were improved, the men received 1d. a day after two years' service, rising by increments of 1d. a day at the end of six, twelve, eighteen, twenty-three and twenty-eight years' service, when it reached the maximum figure of 6d. a day good conduct pay.

In 1876 deferred pay was introduced; this was paid to the man on his discharge, provided he had twelve years' service, and was calculated at the rate of 2d. a day on his past service.

In 1831 it was first enacted that the soldier was to receive a minimum of 1d. a day for his own use after all deductions for messing and necessities had been made. This seems to be the first time the soldier really had any money of his own.

A free ration was first given in 1873, consisting of meat and bread, though the soldier still had to provide money out of his pay for extra messing. When this was done beer money was discontinued, and the application of the soldier's pay was approximately as follows :—

| | Day. | Week. | Year. |
|--|----------|-----------|--------------|
| | d. | s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Extra messing and washing | 5½ | 3 2½ | 8 7 3½ |
| Articles for cleaning and other charges for which the soldier may be liable. The balance to go to the soldier | 5½ | 3 2½ | 8 7 3½ |
| To the soldier for his own use | 1 | 7 | 1 10 5 |
| | <hr/> 12 | <hr/> 7 0 | <hr/> 18 5 0 |

A summary of the rates of pay during the century, by ranks, is given in Note 2.

Although various forms of short-service engagement had been tried early in the century, they had been abolished in 1829, and there was **Enlistment.** then no escape from the service until a man could be invalided or discharged to pension. When it became necessary to increase the strength of the Army, recruits would not come forward in sufficient numbers under these terms, and under the "Army Service Act" of 1847 enlistment for ten years came into force; increased to twelve years in 1859. This system provided for recruits, but did nothing to produce a reserve available for the Regular Army in time of war. Various expedients to produce a reserve such as the enrolment of pensioners and of a proportion of Militia men were tried between 1843 and 1870, when, under Lord Cardwell's "Enlistment Act," the present short-service system was introduced. Under this system a recruit may engage for not more than twelve years, part of which may be with the colours and part with the reserve. The normal term in the infantry has remained since then at seven years with the colours and five with the reserve.

Early in the nineteenth century a great campaign against flogging had been started. Corporal punishment was greatly modified in **Discipline.** 1817, from which date records of infliction were kept. In 1836 a military committee was appointed to reconsider the question, and as a result of their recommendations the number of lashes was limited to fifty on award by General Court Martial. The powers of a commanding officer were also restricted with regard to other punishments. He could give not more than forty-eight hours' close confinement or seven days' cells with hard labour, and solitary confinement in the black hole was reserved for cases of drunkenness, riot, violence and insolence to superiors. Finally, in 1869, the punishment of flogging was altogether abolished.

When considering the severity of the punishments in the olden days, it must be remembered that the Army then contained a large proportion of the

worst characters in the nation, and also that the punishments in civil life were equally severe. At the end of the eighteenth century men were thrown into prison for small debts ; the prisons, being farmed out to a base type of gaoler, were, in Wesley's opinion, worse than anything " on this side hell." Hanging for innumerable minor crimes against property was still the law, while the public flogging even of women had not been abolished.

Side by side with the easing of the severity of punishments in the Army came a move to improve on the type of man enlisted, which in itself made these punishments less necessary.

In 1873 approval was given for the discharge from the Army of men with bad characters. The tradition had existed for nearly two centuries that any man would do for the Army, no matter how bad his character, because he would be kept in order by severe punishment and a never-ceasing system of supervision. When enlistment was for life, few but those who were reckless or whose character prevented their obtaining employment at trades were willing to enlist. Sometimes men were impressed, and sometimes criminals were pardoned on condition of enlistment. The presence of thieves and other criminals in the ranks naturally tended to deter respectable men from enlisting.

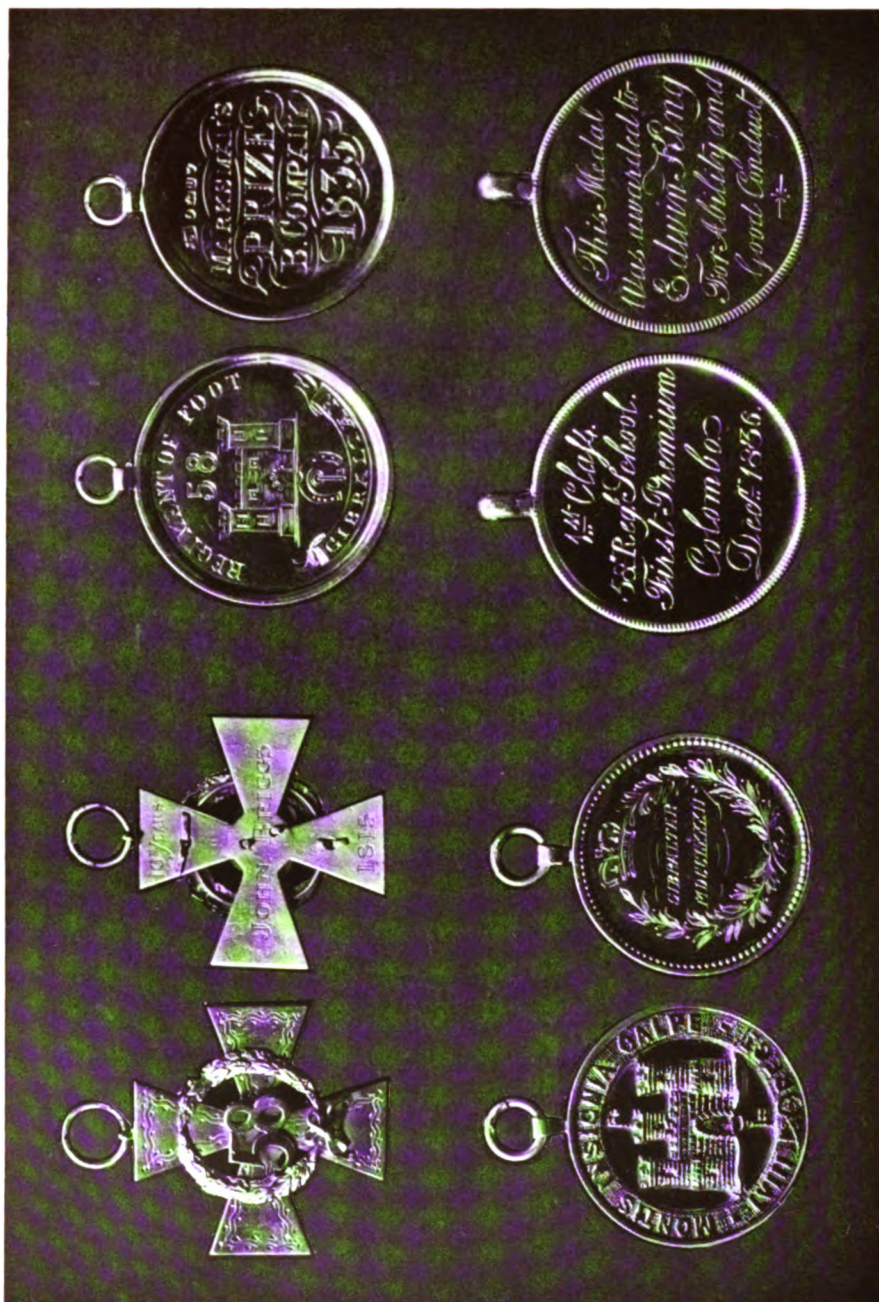
Recruits had previously been attracted to the Service by a sum of money, called bounty, paid on enlistment, the amount of which varied according to the exigencies of the Service. These bounties, particularly when administered by the old recruiting methods, had attracted the wrong type of men ; they were abolished by Lord Cardwell who, in compensation, introduced the system of good conduct pay already described.

The bounty had also been an inducement for men to desert that they might fraudulently re-enlist and so obtain a second bounty. To prevent this a soldier might be sentenced by court martial to be branded with the letter " D " if guilty of desertion, or with the letters " B.C." if guilty of certain offences of a disgraceful nature. These marks, being indelible, would preclude a man so marked from offering himself for re-enlistment. The very fact of a soldier being liable to be branded tended to prevent men of good character from enlisting, and was also abolished by Lord Cardwell.^a

After the Peninsular War improvements in conditions had gradually been creeping in, as we have shown with regard to pay, terms of enlistment and discipline. In addition, we may instance the establishment of military libraries, the introduction of schools, the issue of medals and the establishment of savings banks.

Barracks were gradually becoming the normal accommodation except on the march, and as movement by rail was increased later in the century, the system of billeting became abnormal in time of peace. For troops when billeted on the march, innkeepers were required to provide one hot meal each day, consisting of diet and small beer, not exceeding one pound and a quarter of meat (previous to being dressed), one pound of bread, one pound of potatoes

**General
Conditions.**



58th REGIMENTAL MEDALS.

and other vegetables and two pints of small beer. For this they were to be paid tenpence. At other times, when billeting was without rations, the soldier was provided with candles, vinegar and salt, and the use of fire and utensils for cooking and eating his food ; for this the innkeeper received one halfpenny a man.

Until late in the century many of the barracks were very primitive and ill-ventilated. The barrack-room served as a dormitory, dining-room and washing place for the women. Two women in every company were allowed to live in barracks, but no separate accommodation was provided. The wife had to live in her husband's crowded hut, shared with nineteen other men, her only privacy a blanket slung crosswise round the bed. A writer in 1846 states : " Into an apartment which serves so many purposes, and where the men can obtain no rest in the daytime, is ushered the young girl who is fool enough to marry a soldier—a most charming locality for a honeymoon ; there, too, in the midst of the men does she give birth to the future drum-boy."4

The health of the soldier also became a matter of concern. During the ten years of peace ending in 1828 the average annual mortality in a unit at home was 1.5 per cent. and in a unit abroad 5.7 per cent. To reduce this greater attention was paid to the soldier's food, to his cleanliness and clothing, and the medical services were improved. Rheumatism was partly traced to the white summer trousers, kept clean with pipeclay and worn before they were dry ; the general debility to the ill-ventilated barracks with never-opened windows, and never-empty rooms—for even if there were no sick there were always women and children.

Outdoor amusements for the soldiers were seldom thought of, although sedentary occupations and amusements were provided—the school and the library. As a result, their only resorts were the canteen and the public-house. Drunkenness was the besetting sin of the soldier. It was late in the century before organized games found a place in the life of the Army.

Many of the lessons of the Peninsular War were soon forgotten, and once again the foot soldier was made a beast of burden ; blanket

Dress. was piled on knapsack, and greatcoat on blanket. Collars and waistbelts were tightened and headdresses made heavier.

In fact, during the forty years of peace the uniform became more and more beautiful and less and less practical.

Prior to 1855 the clothing was supplied by the Colonel from his " off reckonings," a system which led to some very iniquitous misappropriations of public funds, whereby it was possible for the Colonel to make a considerable profit. The climax was reached shortly after the outbreak of the Crimean War, when it was discovered that " off reckonings " for clothing were being paid for every man voted on the establishment, without any reference to the numbers actually effective. For some years past the strength of the Army had been much under establishment, and it became apparent that the British

public were paying annually for clothing and equipment of thousands of men who did not exist. The "off reckonings" were accordingly abolished, but the Colonels continued to place the contracts with their regimental clothiers, the public now only paying the estimated and agreed charges. As this again meant a close monopoly in the hands of a few of the larger firms, various attempts were made to put matters on a more satisfactory basis, and in 1863 the Royal Army Clothing Factory was erected at Pimlico, to supply the requirements of the Army.

Although special medals had been issued for many years to officers commanding regiments and other senior officers after important engagements, the nineteenth century first saw the introduction of medals as we know them to-day, to be issued to all ranks as a recognition of special bravery or of military service in a campaign. The first medal so issued was the Waterloo Medal, which was approved in 1816, to be worn by every soldier, from Commander-in-Chief to drummer boy, who had taken part in the engagement. Although this medal was readily awarded for Waterloo, no recognition was given to the veterans of the Egyptian and Maida campaigns and the Peninsular War; for these, only the senior officers were given medals. In consequence of this the officers of many regiments obtained permission from the War Office to grant regimental medals, and inasmuch as these medals were worn by the recipients when in uniform, they were recognized by the higher military authorities.

The shapes and designs of these medals differed. As a rule they were circular, but ovals and other irregular shapes were used at times; silver was the metal most favoured, but bronze, copper and brass were also utilized. Full details are not available of all medals issued. Some were struck from a die, but many others were engraved, from which it can be inferred that only a very few of that type were issued.

A few examples of these medals awarded to the 48th and 58th have come to light. Possibly there may be others in existence, but their details and whereabouts are at present unknown. In the case of the 48th, an oval medal of silver was presented in 1814 by General Lord Charles Fitzroy to Quartermaster G. Stubbs "for gallant conduct and soldierly merit,"⁵ while, in 1819, a medal seems to have been issued to a number of men bearing the names of the Peninsular battles in which they were engaged.⁶ The third medal of which we have a record is an officers' shooting badge, presented by Lieutenant-Colonel Erskine in 1817, which bears on the face the word "Peninsula" and on the reverse, "Won by Lieut. W. Reed. Distance, 120 yards."⁷

In the case of the 58th the existence of four medals is known. Two were evidently issued for the Battle of Maida, one of which was presented to William Condon "by his comrades in arms" in 1809.⁸ Another medal was issued in 1835 as a marksman's prize,⁹ and a third was awarded at Colombo in 1836, "to William King for Ability and Good Conduct."¹⁰

In 1830 the Long Service and Good Conduct Medal was approved for issue to men who had completed twenty-one years with the colours, and soon after its introduction the issue of regimental medals was discontinued. At last, in 1847, twenty-three years after the end of the war, the public demand for some recognition for the veterans of the Napoleonic Wars was met by the issue of the Military General Service Medal to those still surviving who had fought in the Peninsula, Egypt, Italy, North America and the West Indies.

Medals for distinguished service were initiated in 1845 with the Meritorious Service Medal for sergeants. This was followed by the Distinguished Conduct Medal in 1854 and the Victoria Cross in 1856.

Throughout the nineteenth century few changes were made in the organization of the battalion, which consisted of a number of companies **Organization.** varying between six and twelve, each commanded by a Captain or Major and containing about one hundred men. Some of these companies were service and some depot companies. In 1881 the Cardwell system made the depot a separate unit and the battalion establishment was stabilized at eight companies, each commanded by a Major or Captain; each half company was commanded by a subaltern and consisted of two sections, each under a sergeant.

At the end of the century machine guns first made their appearance, a section of two guns being attached to each brigade and manned by a detachment of infantry. The guns were the old Maxim guns mounted on wheels, four feet eight inches in diameter. Later the Vickers gun replaced the Maxim, the brigade section was done away with and a section of two guns incorporated in each battalion.

Though the value of military bands and music had long been realized, it was not until the end of the eighteenth century that any **Bands.** establishment of bandsmen was allowed for Line regiments or that any expense to the public could be incurred on their behalf. Bands had certainly existed in regiments, and a "Band of Music of the 58th Regiment" is referred to at the time of the siege of Gibraltar. These bands were, however, provided at the expense of the Colonel and officers. In 1798 Hewitt reports that approval was given for six boys to be enlisted in the 48th for the band, and at the same time a German bandmaster was engaged, a normal procedure at the time.

The origin of the Regimental Marches is obscure; the "Northamptonshire" or "Hard Up," the march of the 48th, was probably composed by one of the German bandmasters, while the "Lincolnshire Poacher" was used by many English regiments.¹¹

The band of the 48th accompanied the Regiment throughout the Peninsular campaign and played the Regiment into action at Talavera, being "entrenched in a ravine." At the beginning of the nineteenth century stringent regulations were issued to General officers to report whether the bands under their

command could "play in correct time." For the guidance of drum-majors and bandmasters, it was ordered that "they should be attentive not to deviate in the most trifling degree from the time, which will allow, within the minute, the exact number of steps prescribed by H.M. Regulations." To acquire the precise steps the musicians were exercised to the plummet. Whilst on the march the drum-major ensured a regular pace by a systematic motion of his staff, which, by regulation, he was required to turn "with an easy air one round so as to keep time, and place it at every fourth pace."¹⁸

Until the accession of Queen Victoria a large number of bandsmen were negroes. In 1803 the establishment of the band was fixed at one sergeant, and a private soldier for each company, and in 1822 the number of musicians was fixed at ten, "not including black men or boys." In spite of regulations, a means was found of increasing bands by enlisting the services of men from the ranks who were known as acting bandsmen. Many civilians also served in the bands, and the incongruous spectacle of a regimental band led by a bandmaster in civilian attire could often be seen.

Bit by bit the executive power of the Colonels of regiments had been reduced. As we have shown, the control of recruiting was taken over by the War Office in 1783, in 1854 the clothing of the Army was centralized under the Army Clothing Department, and finally they lost the power of first appointment of commissions in 1871. To be the Colonel of a regiment, instead of being a profitable appointment, now carried with it no pecuniary advantages. As a result the appointment was given not to an officer of the Army on whom it was desired to confer a favour, but rather to an old officer of the corps who became the father of the regiment.

The appointment of Colonel of the Regiment was always important, and the lack of pecuniary reward has, if possible, enhanced the honour. The Colonel is the servant of the Regiment, and for an officer of long service to be appointed to the highest position in his regiment by his Sovereign, to a position which enables him to do much for all ranks, is a reward which cannot be valued at any monetary price.

Until the end of the eighteenth century all infantry attacks had been based on the culminating charge of massed formations, in deep heavy columns, the men fighting shoulder to shoulder. Improvement in weapons during the nineteenth century quickly rendered these tactics out of date. Percussion caps replaced the flint and steel in 1839; in 1852 the rifled barrel of the Minié musket increased the effective range of the bullet to one thousand yards compared with the two hundred yards of the Brown Bess; in 1869 the breech-loading rifle arrived; to these were later to be added the machine gun and the magazine rifle.

As missile weapons improved, the depths of the ranks had been steadily reduced. In the sixteenth century there were solid squares, then a formation

**Colonel of
the Regiment.**

**Tactics and
Drill.**

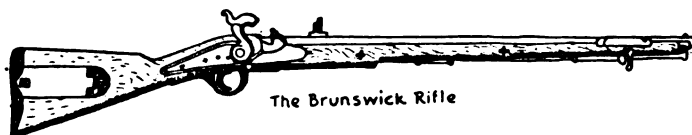
of eight ranks, reduced in succession to six, four, three and two ; and then "ranks" became replaced by skirmishers. The task of the skirmishers in the Peninsular War had been to prepare the way for the charge of the main body. Now the idea has arisen that the skirmishing line is capable of carrying through the fight to the end. As weapons improved the massed ranks became too vulnerable to exist on the battlefield ; the importance of fire increased, and victory was no longer considered to depend necessarily on the charge.

The tactics introduced, which lasted right up to the Great War, were based on lines of skirmishers. The attack was carried out in three lines, skirmishers, supports and reserves. As the skirmishers were held up they were joined by the supports, and later by the reserves, every commander imparting a forward impulse to whatever troops he found under his hand. More and more the preponderating effect of fire on the battlefield was felt. The decisive fight was the "fire fight," rather than the bayonet assault ; extensions of the skirmishing line became wider and wider ; frontal attacks were avoided against unbroken infantry, particularly if protected by obstacles ; more and more the pendulum swung in favour of defence.

The natural developments of these tactics included such changes as the replacement of volleys by individual firing ; the use of darkness to assist the attack ; greater appreciation of the individual use of ground and marksmanship ; the employment of wire in the defence and the introduction of covering fire by local reserves.

The close-order drill which had been seen on the battlefields of the eighteenth century developed into the ceremonial drill of to-day. Paradoxically the impossibility of drill on the battlefield enhanced its value, for drill is the basis of discipline, which is most difficult to maintain with loose and scattered formations ; with massed columns it is easy.

In 1853 there was tried for the first time the experiment of forming a camp of exercise. Three brigades of infantry, one of cavalry, with artillery and engineers were then concentrated at Chobham, where they trained for a month. This novelty excited great public interest, for hitherto concentrations of this size had only been possible at the Curragh. Manœuvres as we know them to-day were first held in England in 1872, the centre of the manœuvre area being Salisbury.



CHAPTER XXIII

THE MILITIA

THE OLD CONSTITUTIONAL FORCE OF ENGLAND—EARLY EMBODIMENTS—METHOD OF RAISING—ANNUAL TRAINING—THE NAPOLEONIC WARS—QUELLING A MUTINY—PROOFS OF LOYALTY—DRAFT-FINDING FOR THE REGULAR ARMY—RUTLAND MILITIA VOLUNTEER FOR SERVICE IN THE PENINSULA—THE CRIMEAN WAR—SERVICE AT GIBRALTAR (1855)—AMALGAMATION OF NORTHAMPTONSHIRE AND RUTLAND MILITIA—FORMATION OF A SECOND BATTALION—AMALGAMATION WITH 48TH AND 58TH—SERVICE IN SOUTH AFRICA (1902)—THE SPECIAL RESERVE.

IN the previous chapter we have described how, in 1881, under the Cardwell system, the 48th and 58th were amalgamated with the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia and the Volunteers to form a Territorial Regiment. The Militia may well claim to be the basis on which the present Regiment is founded. Their history is older by far than that of the Regular battalions, and they have been continuously territorial. It is, however, beyond the scope of this book to give more than a short sketch of the long history of the Militia, details of which are contained in "The Records of the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," by Major C. A. Markham, to whom we are indebted for much of the detail appearing in this chapter.

The Militia of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries represents one stage in the development of the national military system, which can be traced right back to the days of the Anglo-Saxons, when it was the duty of every able-bodied free man to take his part in the defence of the country. The "fyrd" of the Anglo-Saxons, reorganized by Alfred for the struggle against the Danes, was among the institutions taken over and maintained by the Normans to supplement and to some extent to balance the feudal levies. As the "shire levies," the fyrd helped Rufus and Henry I to suppress rebellious barons, defeated Scottish invaders at Northallerton, was reorganized by Henry II's Assize of Arms and by Edward I's Statute of Winchester.¹ Though only liable for service within their counties, the shire levies were ready to provide contingents of bowmen to fight in Edward I's pay in Wales and Scotland. One meets men from Rutland serving against Llewellyn and men from Northamptonshire turning out in 1322 for a campaign in which Edward II hoped vainly to have avenged Bannockburn.

For overseas wars, like those of Edward III and Henry V, recruiting was by contract, great barons and famous soldiers like Sir John Chandos raising men mainly by voluntary enlistment, but with the Tudors and the suppression

by Henry VII of the armed retinues of over-mighty subjects, like Warwick the King-maker, the shire levies were once again the chief force of the country. Reorganized by the Mustering Statute of Mary, and commanded by the Lord-Lieutenants, whom the Tudors had established to command the military forces of the shires, the shire levies, now usually known as "train-bands," assembled for the defence of England against Parma in 1588.

Of the Northamptonshire train-bands of Elizabeth, their organization, armament, equipment and leaders, an admirable account has been given by Dr. J. E. Morris, the acknowledged authority on medieval warfare, in his introduction to Volume III of the Publications of the Northamptonshire Record Society. Too long to give in detail here, too interesting to summarize profitably, it shows that the ancestors of the 3rd Battalion were ready to deal faithfully with the Spaniards one hundred and fifty years or more before the raising of the 48th.

By the end of the sixteenth century the word "Militia" begins to take the place of "train-bands," and in the seventeenth century it was the normal designation of the county levies. It was over the control of the Militia that the quarrel between King and Parliament virtually came to a head in 1641. The issue of the Ordinance of the Militia, by which the Parliament sought to take control of the Militia out of the King's hands, was the first absolutely illegal step taken by either party in the struggle, and at the Restoration the control of the Militia was declared to be vested absolutely in the Crown.

The inefficiency, largely due to lukewarmness in his cause, which the Militia of the western counties displayed in 1685 when called upon to defend James II against Monmouth served King James with an excuse for devoting to the expansion of the Regular Army the sums intended for the Militia, and with our wars being fought abroad under William III and Anne, the Militia fell more and more into the background. It was called out on the alarm of naval invasion in 1690; in 1715 there is a record of the embodying of the Northamptonshire Militia under the Duke of Montagu to deal with the Jacobites, and thirty years later the advance of Prince Charles Edward to Derby again caused it to be summoned. The outbreak of war with France in 1756 led to another "scare," and the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia were embodied under Lord Halifax and the Earl of Exeter, the quotas of the two counties being 1,280 and 240 respectively. The following appears in the *Northampton Mercury* of 24th May:—

"This Day His Majesty's Declaration of War against the French King was proclaimed at three different places in this Town, by the Sheriff of the County, attended by his proper Officers, and Parties of Hussars, they were accompanied by the Worshipful the Mayor of this Corporation, with his proper Officers, preceded by the Town Musick and Flags, amidst the acclamations of a vast Concourse of People, the chimes at All Saints Church playing 'Britons Strike Home' during the Procession."

It was evident that the organization and terms of service in the Militia must be radically reformed, and in 1757 Pitt succeeded in securing the passage of a Militia Act which established the force on a really satisfactory footing, capable of being made a valuable asset in the country's defence and of setting free the bulk of the Regular Army for offensive purposes.

It is with the reorganization of 1757 that the history of the Militia reaches solid ground. In that year one finds meetings of the Deputy Lieutenants of the county held at the George Inn, Northampton, "for the better ordering of the Militia," and the obligation, hitherto incumbent on the owners of property of supplying so many men or horses, altered, so that it became the duty of each parish to provide its fixed quota.

The method of raising the force was by ballot under the supervision of the Lord-Lieutenants of counties. Men selected by ballot could, however, provide paid substitutes to take their place. The quotas were reduced in 1757 to 620 for Northamptonshire and 120 for Rutland, and while there seems to have been little difficulty in getting the men, officers for commissions as Lieutenants and Ensigns were slow in coming forward. In March, 1763, a meeting was called at the George Inn where officers might "receive their commissions and enter their respective qualifications"; at the same time the final swearing-in and enrolling of the men took place, most of them being paid substitutes, the usual price for a substitute being half a guinea. The first Colonels were the Earl of Sussex (Northamptonshire) and the Earl of Exeter (Rutland).

From 1763 to 1777 the Northamptonshire Militia assembled regularly for twenty-eight days' training each year at Northampton, the dates usually coinciding with that of the King's birthday, on which occasion it seems to have been the custom for a parade to be held on Market Hill and for "Three good volleys and a *feu de joie* to be fired in honour of the King." The Rutland Militia, on the other hand, were often out of the county, being, among other places, at Bristol in 1760 and at Hull in 1762; they were also employed as escorts and guards for French prisoners of war.

In 1778 we were once more at war with France and the Northamptonshire Militia was embodied for the first time for active service, moving into camp at Warley, where they met the Rutland Militia for the first time. Here, also, they were reviewed by the King, and in November they moved into winter quarters at Cheshunt. The following year there was a call for more volunteers, and the establishment was increased to twelve companies. Various stations in the south of England were occupied by both regiments during the next five years, and in 1783, on the conclusion of peace, the Militia was once more disembodied. On the occasion the *Northampton Mercury* remarks that the men "seemed to quit the service with regret."

The outbreak of the French Revolution and the rise of Napoleon to power led to the declaration of war by France in 1793, and to meet the threat of invasion the Militia was once more embodied—
1789-1815. the Northamptonshire under the command of Lord Compton (later Ninth Earl of Northampton), and the Rutland under Major William Burton. The Northamptonshire Militia spent the next few years in detachments on the South Coast in Dorset, Devon and Cornwall, having been given a hearty send-off by the townsfolk of Northampton. In July, 1795, they moved to Bristol, where a mutiny broke out amongst the Loyal Irish Fencibles, who were on voyage from Waterford to Jersey, and were anchored off Pill. The mutineers seized their arms, threatened their officers and then landed. The Northamptonshire Militia and Carden's Dragoons were quickly on the scene and, after a sharp fight, the mutineers were disarmed. The greatest possible credit was given to the Northamptonshire Militia for its steadiness on that trying occasion.

While stationed at Winchester in 1797 the following advertisement appeared in the *Northampton Mercury* :—

"Whereas attempts have been made to corrupt and alienate the Minds of the soldiers from their duty to their King and Constitution ; the Sergeants, Corporals, Drummers and Privates of His Majesty's Northamptonshire Regiment of Militia, do unanimously and voluntarily offer the following subscription :—

| | | | | | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|----|----|----|
| Sergeant-Major | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Quartermaster-Sergeant | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Sergeants | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | (each) | 10 | 6 | |
| Corporals and Drummers | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | " | 2 | 6 | |
| Privates | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | " | 1 | 0 | |

for the purpose of bringing to Justice the Printer or Printers, Publisher or Publishers, Distributor or Distributors of all seditious, and inflammatory Hand Bills."

This is a fine display of patriotism when the meagreness of the pay is remembered.

The following year every man agreed to subscribe two days' pay annually and every officer seven days' pay during the period of the war " for the defence of the Country."

Leaving Winchester in 1797, the Northamptonshires garrisoned the coast towns of Kent and Sussex, an area in which the Rutland Militia had been employed since embodiment. Here both regiments remained until the Peace of Amiens in 1802, when they returned to their counties and were disembodied. A parade was held in the market square and " three volleys were fired on the joyful occasion, after which the officers with a number of the principal inhabitants dined together at the Peacock Inn."¹

In 1799 a General Order was issued which made it lawful for twenty-five

per cent. of the embodied Militia to transfer to the Regular Army. This had a profound effect on the Militia, by treating it as a form of draft-finding unit, and ultimately led to its undoing in 1907. Hitherto, transfer to the Regular Army had been prohibited. The terms of the engagement were for five years or the duration of the war and for service within Europe only, a bounty of ten guineas being given to each man transferring. In accordance with this order four officers and three hundred men from the Northamptonshires were transferred to the 4th Foot, in whose ranks they served under Abercrombie and the Duke of York in North Holland in 1799.

The period of peace was a short one, and in April, 1803, embodiment once more took place, both battalions being employed at various home stations to release Regular troops for service abroad.

By War Office Order of September, 1759, "Militia regiments were not to have any fixed rank or precedence, but the first to arrive in any camp or garrison to have seniority, and others as they arrive." Between 1788 and 1803 counties and ridings drew lots yearly for seniority, the precedence fixed on the latter date being twenty-ninth for Northamptonshire and sixty-third for Rutland. In 1833 an order was issued that Militia regiments were to be numbered on one list to settle the question "finally and permanently," and after a banquet at St. James's Palace, at which all Lord-Lieutenants of counties were ordered to attend, numbers were drawn and by a queer coincidence the Northamptonshire Militia drew number forty-eight.

Drafts for Regular units continued to be found by the Militia, in 1805 221 men being transferred to the Line, while two years later a further 155 men were posted to the 48th, 69th and 72nd Regiments.

In 1808 the Rutland Militia offered themselves for service in Spain by the following letter addressed to the Adjutant-General :—

" Dungeness,
8th August, 1808.

" Sir,

" I have the honour to request you will be pleased to make it known to his Royal Highness the Commander-in-Chief that officers, non-commissioned officers and privates of the corps under my command, without exception, have in the handsomest manner, made an offer of their services to serve with me in Spain, should it be thought expedient to send a Militia force to that country. I indulge the hope this instance of their zeal will be acceptable to the Commander-in-Chief, and have the honour to be, with much respect,

Sir,

Your most obedient humble servant,

M. PIERREPOINT, Major."

Three years later both Regiments volunteered to extend their services to Ireland, where they were stationed for two years ; the Northamptonshires

returning in 1812 to Edinburgh, and the Rutlands to Kent. By June, 1814, we had been victorious in France and the Militia was once more disembodied. They had given invaluable service during the war, including the provision from the Northamptonshires alone of upwards of one thousand four hundred men for the Regular Army.

During the period from 1815 to 1852 the Militia was allowed practically to fall into abeyance, although the permanent staff was maintained. In 1829 an Act was passed suspending the ballot, and in 1852 the force was reorganized on a voluntary basis. The enrolment of recruits proceeded satisfactorily, and the men were assembled for three weeks' training. With the outbreak of the Crimean War it was soon necessary to fall back on the "old constitutional force," and in August, 1854, embodiment took place once more. The Northamptonshires moved to Dublin, leaving behind a recruiting party. In 1855 they volunteered to serve abroad and proceeded to Devonport for embarkation, where new Colours were presented.

In order to be eligible to hold a commission in the Militia at this time an officer had to possess a certain private income. The scales laid down were as follows :—

| | | | | <i>Northamptonshire.</i> | <i>Rutland.</i> |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------|-----------------|
| Colonel | ... | ... | ... | £1,000 | £600 |
| Lieutenant-Colonel | | | ... | £600 | £400 |
| Major | ... | ... | ... | £400 | £200 |
| Captain | ... | ... | ... | £200 | £150 |

There are two points of interest to note at this time : firstly, a detachment of the Rutland Militia volunteered to serve with the Northamptonshires, showing a beginning of the liaison which later led to amalgamation ; secondly, that the Regiment were known at this time as the "48th Northamptonshire Militia," and "48th" appears on the Colours presented in 1854, although direct connection with the 48th did not occur until nearly thirty years later.

The 48th Northamptonshire Militia landed at Gibraltar on 30th June, 1855, thus for the first time since its formation taking its share in the duty of a Line regiment at the ancient fortress. A year was spent at Gibraltar, and on peace being declared the Regiment returned home, arriving at Liverpool on 14th June, 1856, and proceeded at once by train to Northampton, where they were given a great reception. They also received the thanks of Parliament, and by General Order dated 9th June were permitted to bear the word "Mediterranean" on their Colours.

In 1860 the two Militia regiments were amalgamated under the title of the "Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," thus forestalling by twenty years the amalgamation of the 48th Northamptonshire and 58th Rutlandshire Regiments. For the next few years the usual routine of annual training took place, the only innovation being the formation of a Militia reserve in 1868.

The features of the scheme were that a man volunteering to join it was liable to serve in the Line at home or abroad during war time, for which he received an annual bounty of one pound.

In 1872 the localization scheme for the Army was adopted. Regulars and Militia were combined in one organization, and the control of the Militia passed from the Lord-Lieutenants to the War Office. A brigade depot was established at Northampton, known as "The 48th Regimental District," of which Colonel I. G. R. Aplin was placed in command, and the Militia staff was for all military purposes placed under him.

In 1874 a second battalion was formed, consisting of six companies under Lieutenant-Colonel Lord Brownlow Cecil, the first battalion consisting of eight companies under the command of Colonel The Marquis of Exeter. The second battalion remained in existence until 1899, when the two battalions were amalgamated.

The 1st July, 1881, saw the formation of the Northamptonshire Regiment as a Territorial unit comprising Regulars, Militia and Volunteers, and in accordance with the scheme the Militia battalions became the 3rd and 4th Battalions of the Northamptonshire Regiment. As in the case of the 48th and 58th the Militia lost many of its old distinguishing appointments—silver lace and buttons gave place to gold, and buff facings were changed to white; the Militia badge of the Garter Cross and horseshoe was, however, adopted by all battalions. The Militia, however, gained by the change, for its more intimate association with the Regular Army resulted in an improved permanent staff, and greater facilities for schools of instruction and training generally, and its efficiency as the second line of defence was increased.

From now onwards annual training was regularly carried out, and in 1883 the Militia battalions were first inspected by a Regular officer of the Regiment, as Colonel R. C. Whitehead had been appointed to the command of the 48th Regimental District. New Colours were presented by the Marchioness of Exeter in 1887, and were housed in the Officers' Mess at the Depot when the battalion was not embodied. The old Colours, presented in 1855, were presented to the Marquis of Exeter, and now hang in the Great Hall at Burghley House.

The Boer War caused the last embodiment of the Militia. Volunteering for active service, their offer was accepted, and they left for South Africa in 1902. Their services during the war are described in Chapter XXVI, and for them the Battle Honour "South Africa, 1902" was awarded and ordered to be worn on all appointments. It was well deserved, for the Militia had performed the double function of providing reinforcements for Regular units and, having been "bled white," of serving overseas itself.

At the end of 1907 a very drastic change was effected, the whole of the Militia being converted into the Special Reserve under the **The Special Reserve, 1907.** "Territorial and Reserve Forces Act." This Act provided

that His Majesty might, by Order in Council, transfer to the Army Reserve such battalions of Militia as might be specified, and in 1908 the 3rd Battalion became the 3rd (Special Reserve) Battalion of the Northamptonshire Regiment. The provision of a reserve battalion for each pair of Regular battalions was an essential part of the Cardwell system. In every war the want of such a Reserve for training and draft-finding purposes had been felt in proportion to the magnitude of the operations, and provisional battalions had been improvised.

The Reserve battalions were organized in eight companies and were to be trained annually under their own officers. They were given an establishment of Regular officers and non-commissioned officers sufficient to allow of their being used as training centres for officers and non-commissioned officers of the Territorial Force. The terms of service for a special Reservist were an initial six months' training as a recruit, followed by fifteen days' training and six days' instruction annually.

The Territorial Force, under Lord Haldane's scheme, had now become the nation's second line of defence, and it became apparent that there was no room or money for a separate Militia. The alternatives to be faced were whether the "old constitutional force" should undertake draft-finding as its normal rôle or should become the foundation of the Territorial Army. The former plan was accepted, and thus the Special Reserve came into being, and as such, it nobly played its part in the Great War.



Sword Belt Clasp (Militia). circa 1865

CHAPTER XXIV

(58TH, 1880-1885)

THE FIRST BOER WAR—PRIVATE J. OSBORNE, V.C.—THE BATTLE OF LAING'S NEK—LIEUTENANT A. R. HILL, V.C.—THE BATTLE OF MAJUBA HILL—COMPANY AT ST. HELENA—58TH IN SOUTH AFRICA.

(See Maps, pages 260 and 297.)

THE annexation of the Transvaal had taken place prior to the Zulu War, but the Boers were dissatisfied with our rule, thinking they should already have been granted representative government. In addition, the assessment of taxes was considered inequitable. Gradually the hostile attitude of the Boers became more marked, refusals to pay taxes occurred, mass meetings of protest were held, and minor disturbances took place.

**The First Boer War,
1880-1881.**

During the summer of 1880 the garrison in the Transvaal had been reduced to two battalions. These two battalions were not concentrated, but were split up in detachments at Pretoria, Rustenberg, Marabastadt, Lydenburg, Wakkerstroom and Standerton. In November, 1880, the situation appeared so ominous that the Administrator in the Transvaal asked for the return of the 58th from Natal. Sir George Colley replied that he could ill spare the 58th in view of an expected outbreak of Pondos on the Natal—Cape frontier, and instead, he released for the Transvaal two companies of another regiment stationed at Newcastle, replacing them by two companies of the 58th, with the intention of relieving the garrisons at Wakkerstroom and Standerton, then found by the 94th.

In December, 1880, at a mass meeting, the Boers declared that the Transvaal was once more a Republic, and elected Paul Kruger, M. W. Pretorius and P. J. Joubert as a Triumvirate to carry on the government of the country. Their first decision was to prevent any further concentration of British troops and to intercept the companies of the 94th moving to Pretoria from outlying stations. On 18th December the Administrator issued a proclamation declaring the province to be in a state of rebellion and calling on Her Majesty's troops to put down the insurrection. Two days later the first important action occurred, the detachment of the 94th moving to Pretoria from Lydenburg being ambushed by the Boers at Bronkhurst Spruit and almost wiped out.

Martial law was now declared and the garrison of Pretoria prepared for a siege. As soon as hostilities were seen to be inevitable the white helmets and belts of the troops were coloured with reddish-brown clay found in the neighbourhood, so as to render them less conspicuous to the enemy.

Defence of Standerton. The garrison of the town of Standerton consisted of three companies of the 94th and a few sappers and men of the Commissariat and hospital corps, all under the command of Major Montague of the 94th. On the outbreak of the revolt, "B" Company of the 58th, consisting of seventy-five men under Lieutenant T. E. Compton, was hurried up as a reinforcement, marching fifty miles in forty hours. The first task was to put the town in a state of defence ; forts were built on kopjes round the town, and outworks were constructed. On the south of the town the Vaal river formed a natural protection. On 29th December, 1880, the first shots were exchanged with the Boers, after which a constant and desultory fire was maintained, the Boer marksmanship being exceptionally effective. When our men went out to their positions they had to run from one place to another, but it is recorded that no "bobbing" or "ducking" was allowed.

On 4th January the garrison made its first sortie. The enemy fire from Stander's Kop proving annoying, Major Montague decided to surprise the Boer piquet which usually occupied the height by day and was supposed to sleep at night in a farmhouse beneath the hill. The raiding party consisted of thirty men of the 94th who, on approaching the hill, were themselves surprised by a party of Boers. As it was rapidly getting light and the party was unable to withdraw under the enemy fire, the situation was becoming unpleasant, when the company of the 58th arrived opportunely and, by keeping down the Boer fire, enabled the 94th to withdraw to Standerton. The retreat was made in a very cool manner, the enemy being kept at bay and inflicting no loss on our side.

On 4th March the enemy occupied another position eight hundred yards from our camp, out of which they were driven by the 58th from advanced rifle pits. Again on 7th March they occupied the same position in greater strength, but once more the 58th forced them to abandon the hill.

A gallant deed is reported on the part of Sergeant Conway of the 58th, who, after long abstinence from liquor, spent an evening indulging in several glasses at the canteen. Here a Commissariat man stated he could take Stander's Kop with ten men, whereat Conway, not to be outdone, said he could do it with five. He returned to his hut, called for five volunteers, and at ten o'clock at night started with them for Stander's Kop. About two hours later one man returned, saying Conway was close to the top and required reinforcements. Parties were immediately sent out from Standerton to bring him back, but in the meantime he and his little party had occupied the Boer post, which was left vacant at night. In the morning, when the Boers came to take up their usual positions, he, with his four men, shot three of them. Soon they were almost surrounded, and waving to Standerton for assistance, commenced to withdraw.

All available troops were set in motion, skirmishing towards the Kop. Fifty Boers were seen riding along the top, and a similar party spread out at

the base. Both sides opened fire, and in the meantime the sergeant's party scrambled down the rocks and managed to reach the cover of a garden wall below, where our skirmishers rescued them.

On 26th March notification of the peace was received, the troops were withdrawn into camp and the Boers admitted to the town. The resistance had been well maintained with small loss—only five men killed, including Private Wm. Crann and Private John Hearn of the 58th. The townspeople marked their appreciation of the conduct of the defence, and the treatment they themselves had received, by forwarding a complimentary address to the officer commanding.

The defence of Wakkerstroom by "A" and "C" Companies of the 58th, under the command of Captain H. M. Saunders, is conspicuous for plucky and daring gallantry. Captain Saunders had relieved a company of the 94th on 17th December. He left Newcastle on 14th December, and reached Mount Prospect the following morning. Here he heard that the Boers were massing to prevent his advance, but pushing ahead he crossed Laing's Nek without interference, and Coldstream was reached the same evening. Continuing his march at daybreak, he arrived with his two companies at his destination on the afternoon of the 16th.

The strength of Captain Saunders' command was approximately one hundred and twenty men. The main portion of his force he located in a fort which partly covered the town, while a detachment of about thirty men, under Lieutenant J. B. Head Read, occupied the Dutch church, which had also been fortified. In addition, the loyalist civilians formed a small town guard. Captain Saunders showed great skill in his organization of the defence; an old naval howitzer which was discovered was mounted on the body of a water-cart to intimidate the Boers. In addition, he arranged for telephone communication between the fort and the Dutch church and a crow's nest observation post overlooking the town.

The enemy in the meantime formed a cordon round the town, locating themselves in farmhouses in the vicinity. In view of the proximity of the town to Laing's Nek, where the main Boer resistance against our advance from Natal was expected, the enemy concentration in the neighbourhood was considerable, and throughout the siege an attack on the fort by greatly superior numbers was constantly threatened.

On 1st January a Kaffir was sent off with a dispatch for Colonel Deane, at Newcastle. "On approaching the river he perceived some Boers, and turned round as if he were coming from Newcastle. They took him prisoner, searched and questioned him. He said he wanted to go to Wakkerstroom about some cattle, and as nothing was found on him he was allowed to go. He started for Wakkerstroom, but the Boers threatened to shoot him if he persisted in doing so, and told him if he wanted his life he had better go back to Newcastle, which he did and delivered the dispatch."¹



58th REGIMENTAL MEDALS.

On 7th January a party of men were fired on as they were bathing in the river, but as Captain Saunders had issued an order "that all men leaving camp beyond a distance of two hundred yards were to take their rifles and ten rounds per man, the bathers were not taken at a great disadvantage; and screening themselves behind some rocks they returned the fire. The Boers seeing that they were armed retired under cover."¹

Frequent raids were made by the Boers in their endeavours to capture horses, mules and cattle belonging to the garrison, and numerous skirmishes occurred. In addition, the Boers caused considerable trouble by long-range fire from neighbouring kopjes, to which our men were unable to reply efficiently on account of lack of ammunition.

A successful raid on Boer cattle and horses was carried out on 30th January. The animals having been observed collected round Neudee's Farm, one of the enemy posts in the vicinity, Captain Saunders assembled forty mounted volunteers and twenty (six of them mounted) of the 58th under Captain W. le P. Power. The volunteers were despatched to search a kopje where Boer vedettes were usually stationed, while Captain Power, with the infantry, took up a position on high ground overlooking the farm. The Boer vedettes, noticing these movements, rode down to the farm and gave the alarm to their comrades, who were quickly in the saddle, driving their horses and cattle away. They were immediately pursued by our mounted men and a sharp skirmish ensued. The infantry then advanced and entered the house, where they found the enemy's dinners all ready cooked and waiting to be eaten. Having disposed of them with considerable enjoyment, they returned to camp. This little operation had resulted in the capture of some hundred and fifty horses and cattle, in addition to blankets and provisions.

On 22nd February a skirmish commenced through an attempt made by a party of Boers to cut off some natives returning to their kraals near the town. Captain Saunders, seeing their danger, sent a party of Volunteers to cover their retreat, but the Boers were reinforced, and Captain Saunders therefore sent a sergeant and fifteen men of the 58th with five mounted men to assist the Volunteers. In the course of the skirmish one party of the enemy retired along a valley and were followed by the mounted infantry. The latter soon discovered that another party of about forty Boers were working round their rear. The soldiers mounted their horses and attempted to rejoin their comrades, but two of their horses were wounded and another killed. Private Mayes, one of those dismounted, was also shot in the leg and fell on his face in the long grass. Private Wm. Bennett was pursued by seven or eight Boers, who fired at but missed him. Having his own rifle loaded and one of them coming up and galloping alongside him he fired over-arm and shot him. Another Boer now came up and, striking him between the shoulders with his rifle, knocked him off his horse. The Boer then dismounted and deliberately fired at him at fifteen paces, the

s

bullet shattering his leg. He lay hidden in the grass for nearly two hours, and would probably have remained longer had not one of the Boers waved a white cloth and planted it by him to mark the spot where he was and show he required help. As soon as the enemy had withdrawn, a stretcher party was sent out to bring him in, but amputation of the leg was necessary, and he died that evening.

On seeing Private Mayes fall, Private James Osborne watched the spot, and seeing Mayes rise, attempt to run but fall again, he determined to go to his help and bring him in. He appealed to a Volunteer to let him have his horse to lead to the assistance of his comrade, but without effect, the Volunteer urging that no one could reach the wounded man under such fire. Osborne therefore rode straight from the cover he was under to the spot where he had seen Mayes fall, between two and three hundred yards in front of a line of some two score Boers. Having come up to Mayes, he managed to drag him up behind him on his horse and, slinging Mayes' rifle over his shoulder, remarked that "The Boers should not get even that." Meanwhile, the other men had kept up an accurate and rapid fire on the Boers. Both the men and the horse escaped, though bullets were striking all round them, one hitting Osborne's rifle close to where he held it.

For this gallant deed Private Osborne was awarded the Victoria Cross, which was notified in the *London Gazette* of 14th March, 1882, as follows:—

"James Osborne. For his gallant conduct at Wakkerstroom on 22nd February, 1881, in riding under heavy fire towards a party of forty-two Boers, picking up Private Mayes who was lying wounded and carrying him safely into camp."

The defence of Wakkerstroom continued until the armistice was declared at the end of the war. Two men were killed during the siege, both of the 58th, their names being Private William Bennett and Private Owen Byrne.

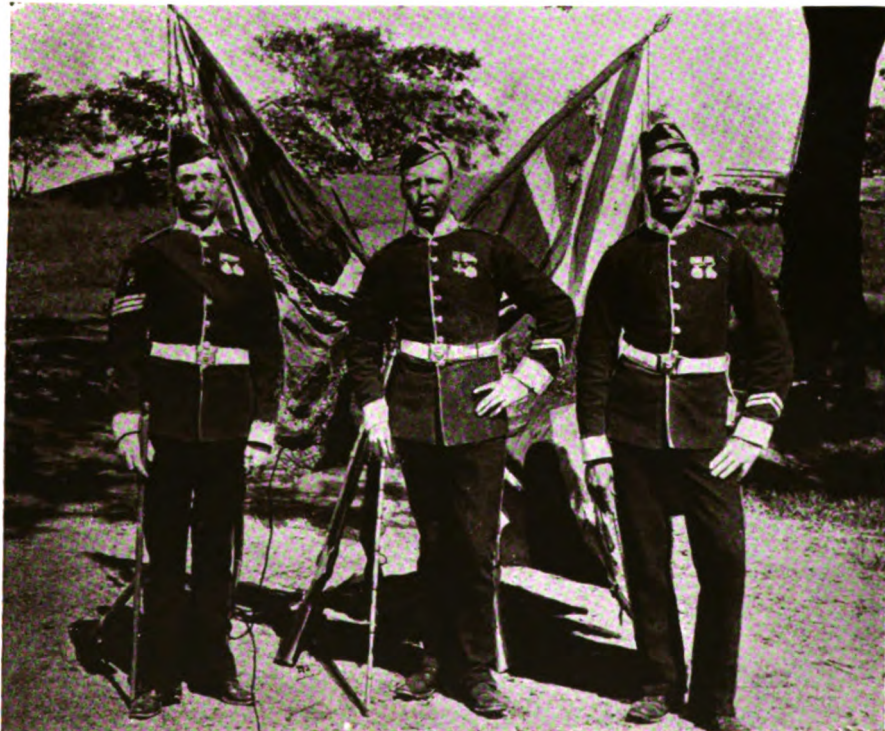
As soon as the various English detachments in the Transvaal had been invested by the Boers, and communication with them had been cut off, the main body of the enemy assembled on the Natal border in the neighbourhood of Laing's Nek. It was obvious that the relief force which was being formed under the command of Sir George Colley, must advance by this route into the Transvaal. The force consisted of the 3/60th Rifles (400 men), Headquarters and "D," "E," "F," "G," "H" Companies and the mounted infantry of the 58th (16 officers and 487 other ranks) under Major W. H. Hingeston, 100 men of the 2/21st, a contingent of the Naval Brigade (120), some Artillery (100), and a detachment of the Natal Mounted Police. This force, totalling some one thousand two hundred men, assembled at the end of December, 1880, and on 24th January, 1881, was ready to start for the Transvaal border.

On 25th and 26th January the valleys of the Imbazane and Ingogo rivers were crossed and the force reached Mount Prospect, where a laager was made.

**Battle of
Laing's Nek
(28th January,
1881).**



LIEUTENANT A. R. HILL, V.C.



**COLOUR-SERGEANT
BRIDGESTOCK, D.C.M.**

**PRIVATE
J. OSBORNE, V.C.**

**PRIVATE
GODFREY, D.C.M.**

Reproduced by courtesy of the Editor, "The Northampton Independent."

No opposition up to now had been offered to the march, though Boer patrols were often seen. When Laing's Nek was reached, however, it was seen to be occupied in force.

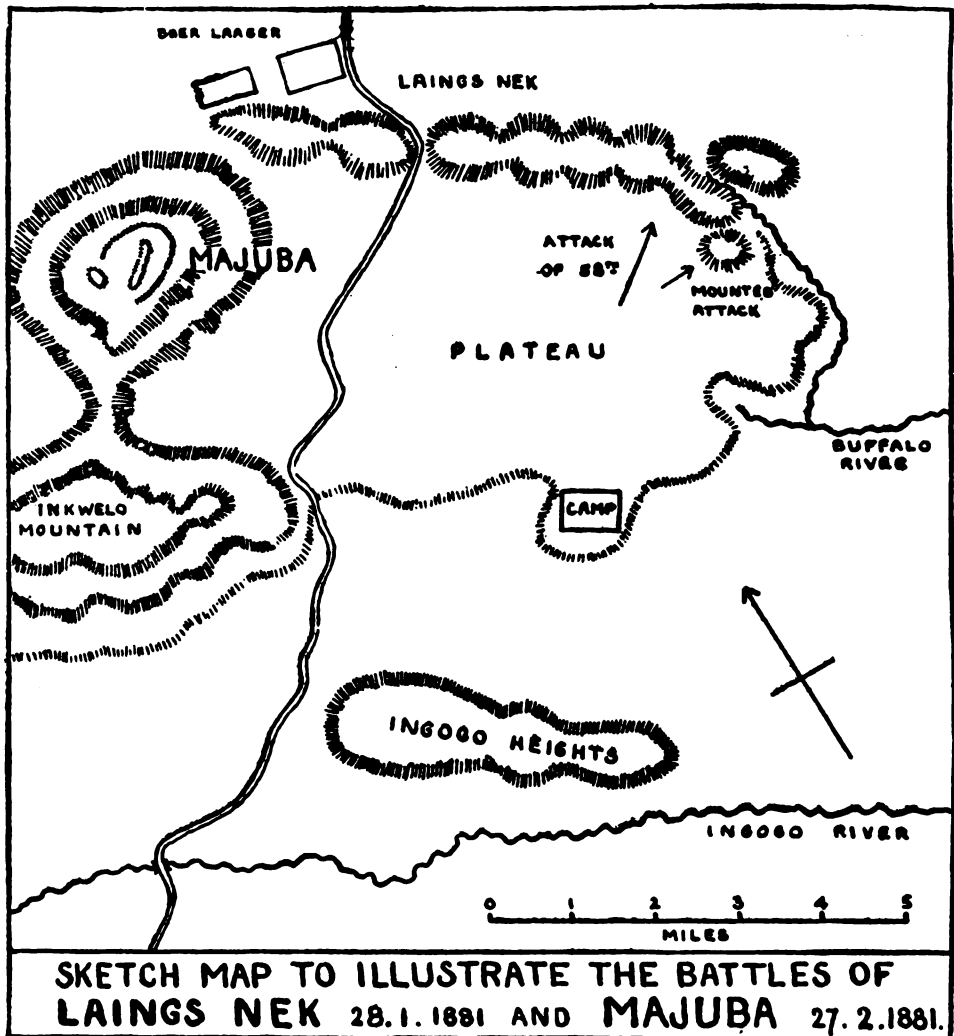
The position chosen by the Boers at Laing's Nek on the Drakensberg was ideal for their purpose. It had the great advantage of being approachable only from the front ; the ravine, in which is the source of the Buffalo river, protected it on one flank, and the Majuba river and mountains on the other. " Nek " is the South African term for a col, and Laing's Nek is the lowest point in an unbroken ridge which connects the Majuba mountain with the hills which run up to the banks of the Buffalo river.

Heavy rain and mist prevented any movement on the 27th, but at six on the following morning the order to advance was given, and the greater portion of the force moved forward to a flat plateau between the camp and the nek. This they reached without opposition, and artillery was placed in position to support the attack. At ten o'clock the guns opened fire, but up to this time no shot had been fired by the Boers. After twenty minutes' shelling the mounted squadron and the 58th were ordered forward to capture a hill forming the left of the Boer position, the mounted squadron being directed against an isolated hill to the right of the 58th. To reach these hills a valley broken by watercourses had first to be crossed, and then the climb up the face of the hill began—heavy and tiring work. Colonel Deane of the Staff and four other Staff officers led in front of the 58th, while the squadron of mounted infantry was commanded by Major Brownlow, with Captain C. L. Hornby of the 58th as his second-in-command. In the midst of the 58th were the Colours, carried unfurled by Lieutenant W. E. Peel (Queen's Colour) and Lieutenant L. Baillie (Regimental Colour). The incident is memorable as the last occasion on which Colours were carried into action by a British regiment.

During the mounted attack the Boers, some two thousand strong, held their fire, remaining in concealment behind the excellent cover provided by the rocks on the summit of the hill. At last the mounted squadron topped the rise and prepared to charge, but were greeted by a volley which emptied half their saddles. The remainder, staggered by this reception, re-formed and charged again, but the hail of lead once more drove them back with heavy casualties.

The repulse of this charge took place just when the 58th gained sight of the enemy, but the Boers on the hill which had been attacked by the squadron were now free to turn their rifles against the flank of the 58th's advance. The Regiment pushed on eagerly, forming a few men to the right flank, and panting, struggling and scrambling up the difficult and precipitous slope. Colonel Deane, being mounted, had hurried them forward too fast, and in his eagerness had delayed to give the order to deploy. As in the mounted attack, the Boers waited until the 58th had breasted the ridge, tired, hot and out of breath, and then, before they could deploy, a heavy fire was opened on the crowded ranks.

The losses of the Regiment were heavy, volley after volley crashing into their ranks. The men had little chance of giving any effective answer to the enemy's fire, as the Boers remained in concealment behind the excellent cover provided by the boulders on the crest of the hill. After about five minutes of this unequal fight, Colonel Deane realized that the position gave the Boers an overwhelming advantage in fire, and decided to assault with the bayonet. He called for a charge, but as he did so fell from his horse mortally wounded. The command then devolved on Major Hingston who, himself freely and fearlessly encouraged the men, an example which the other officers followed.



As the 58th sprang forward to the charge a terrible fire was poured into them. In a few minutes Major Hingeston was laid low by a bullet, a wound which proved fatal. Lieutenant H. Dolphin was the next to be hit, and soon after Captain E. Lovegrove and Lieutenants L. Baillie and C. M. O'Donel received severe wounds. The casualties among non-commissioned officers and men were equally heavy.*

Lieutenant L. Baillie fell mortally wounded while carrying the Regimental Colour. Lieutenant Peel, who was bearing the Queen's Colour, went to help him, and he said: "Never mind me, save the Colours." Peel was forced to comply and was bearing them away when he fell into an ant-bear hole. Sergeant Bridgestock, who was close by, thinking he had been shot, seized both Colours and carried them some distance and in turn gave them to Lieutenant Wallace, the Quartermaster, who brought them out of action.

The officers emptied their revolvers at the enemy and did their best to maintain their ground, even when it was apparent that a charge could not be sustained. Cut up as the Regiment was, the men could only fall back, but this was done in good order, though the Boers continued to pour volleys into the retiring companies. At last the guns at the base of the hill opened fire and saved the 58th from utter annihilation. The retreat had been orderly. One company, re-forming on the way down, faced about and kept the enemy in check.

Lieutenant A. R. Hill (later Hill Walker) was awarded the Victoria Cross for his gallantry during the retreat. The notice in the *London Gazette* of 14th March, 1882, was as follows:—

"For gallant conduct at the action at Laing's Nek on 28th January, 1881, in having, after the retreat was ordered, remained behind and endeavoured to carry out of action Lieutenant Baillie of the same corps, who was lying on the ground severely wounded. Being unable to lift the officer into the saddle, he carried him in his arms until Lieutenant Baillie was shot dead. Lieutenant Hill then brought a wounded man out of action on his horse, after which he returned and rescued another, all these acts being performed under heavy fire."

Two hoofs of Lieutenant Hill's horse, mounted in silver for use as ash trays, are kept as treasured possessions in the 58th Mess.

Sergeant-Major Murray, though seriously wounded, refused to go to the rear, but remained with a few men to the last to cover the retirement of the Regiment, and was again hit.

Private Godfrey and Band-Boy Martin (58th) remained with Major Hingeston and Captain Lovegrove respectively when these officers were wounded, and notwithstanding the heavy fire, refused to leave them till they had been carried down the hill and taken to the ambulance. For these acts of gallantry Sergeant-Major Murray and Private Godfrey received the Distinguished Conduct Medal, as also did Sergeant Bridgestock.

General Colley, in his official dispatch dealing with the withdrawal, states :
 " Of the conduct of the 58th during this trying day I cannot speak in too high terms. In spite of casualties to the officers, to the last the men were perfectly in hand, cheerful and ready to fight on. They only fell back when further fighting was hopeless and the order given to retire, and then moved down the hill leisurely, not a man moving to save himself from the heavy fire which followed them down. The perfect order and soldierly bearing of the remains of the Regiment as they marched back into position under the command of Lieutenant Jopp deservedly called forth the admiration of all who witnessed it."

The advance of the 58th is commemorated by Lady Butler's picture, " Floreat Etona ! " which was shown at the Royal Academy in 1881. It depicts an incident at Laing's Nek which was thus described by an eye-witness :
 " Poor Elwes (Staff) fell among the 58th. He shouted to another Eton boy (Lieutenant Hon. R. C. S. M. Monck) whose horse had been shot, ' Come along, Monck ! Floreat Etona ! We must be in the front rank ! ' and he was shot immediately." (*vide The Times* 16th April, 1881.)

Arrived at the foot of the hill, the survivors re-formed and refilled their pouches with ammunition, but the General decided that a further attempt that day was quite impossible. The 58th had suffered heavily, 3 officers and 75 men being killed and 2 officers and 91 men wounded. After the fight a truce was made to collect the wounded and bury the dead. The bodies of Colonel Deane (Staff), Lieutenant Dolphin and other officers were found by our burying party well in front of the men they led.

On the evening of the fight the following speech was made by General Colley to the men assembled in the camp.

" Officers, non-commissioned officers and men. I have called you together this evening being desirous of saying a few words to you. I wish everyone present to understand that the entire blame for to-day's repulse rests with me and not on any of you. I congratulate the 58th Regiment for the brave and noble manner in which they fought to-day. We have lost many gallant men. . . . I might say, however, that, notwithstanding the loss of many troops to-day, we have not lost one atom of the prestige of England. . . ."

The following are extracts from the General Order published by General Colley after the fight :—

GENERAL ORDER.

*Army Headquarters,
 28th January, 1881.*

" The Major-General Commanding desires me to thank the officers and men of the Natal Field Force, and especially of the 58th Regiment and of the Mounted Squadron, for their gallant conduct in the engagement of yesterday. The Major-General thought it was his duty to make an effort for the relief of the Transvaal garrisons, notwithstanding the smallness of the force at his disposal and the strength



“ FLOREAT ETONA.”

The Battle of Laing's Nek, 28th January, 1881.

(From the picture by Lady Butler.)

By permission of Henry Graves & Co., Ltd., 182, Sloane Street, London, S.W.1, the owners of the copyright.

of the enemy's position. That effort has been unsuccessful, but its failure reflects no discredit on the brave men who fought so nobly; and the fight made by the 58th on the hillside will always be remembered with pride by those who took part in or witnessed it. The Major-General has to deplore the loss of so many valuable lives, especially that of Colonel Deane . . . ; of Major Poole, Lieutenant Elwes and Lieutenant Ingman . . . ; of Major Hingeston, commanding the 58th Regiment, and Lieutenant Dolphin, who fell while leading and encouraging their men in their devoted efforts to carry the hill. . . ."

Eleven days after the battle at Laing's Nek an engagement took place near the River Ingogo. The lines of communication between the main force and Newcastle, which crossed the river, had been from time to time interrupted by the Boers, and Sir George Colley decided to make a demonstration in force to discourage further enemy enterprises. He marched out of camp with five companies of the 60th, a detachment of mounted men and two mountain guns. The movement was effected by daylight within sight of the enemy. The Ingogo was reached and crossed about noon by four companies of the 60th, who gained the plateau beyond, some three miles from the river. The remaining company and two guns were left on commanding ground on the near side of the river, five miles from the camp to cover the crossing.

**Action at the
Ingogo
(8th February,
1881).**

On the plateau a large force of Boers was met, and a sharp engagement took place, the 60th suffering heavily from the enemy's marksmanship. In the meantime, the Boers were working round the flank, bent on occupying the banks of the Ingogo close to the drift and so cutting off the retreat of the 60th. Just then, Captain C. L. Hornby arrived from the camp with three companies of the 58th, in response to a message which had reached the camp at 5.30 p.m. asking for reinforcements. Their arrival caused the Boers to withdraw from the ford. Soon after darkness fell and firing ceased, but rain fell in torrents and the lightning flashed long into the night. Under cover of the storm and darkness the British troops managed to withdraw to the camp at Mount Prospect. The casualties of the 58th during this engagement were two other ranks of the Mounted Infantry company killed.³

On Sunday, 27th February, Sir George Colley made his last effort. During the previous day he had made a secret plan to occupy Majuba, a high hill to the left of the British camp and commanding the right of the Boer position at Laing's Nek, and overlooking their camp to the north-east. This hill was occupied by a Boer piquet by day, but, according to native reports, was always evacuated at night. It was General Colley's hope that, if the Boers found him in occupation of the hill, they might evacuate their positions covering Laing's Nek.

**Battle of
Majuba Hill
(27th February,
1881).**

"Lights Out" had been sounded on the 26th, when orders were given for detachments of the 58th, 3/60th, 92nd Highlanders and the Naval Brigade to

parade with three days' rations. As greatcoats, waterproof sheets and seventy rounds of ammunition were also carried, the men were heavily laden for the climb in view. The strength of the party was approximately 550 men,⁴ of which the 58th supplied two companies, amounting to 170 rifles, under Captain A. W. Morris. At ten o'clock, in the darkness, a start was made, the 58th leading the way. The route taken was to the west of the camp, up the slopes of the Umquela mountain and thence to the north along a col to Majuba. The force moved forward as silently as possible, realizing that a single rifle shot would imperil the whole expedition. Arrived on a plateau about half-way up, they proceeded by a narrow path which winds across the steepest part of the mountain. Great boulders edged the hillside and obstructed the advance, while at times the path was flanked by precipitous slopes ; one false step and the climber would have been hurled down, to be dashed to pieces against the stones below.

As they crossed the col, the detachment of the 60th and one of the three companies of the 92nd were dropped to protect the lines of communication with the camp, so that of the 554 rifles composing the force, only 354 actually reached the summit of Majuba, nearly half being men of the 58th.

The last climb to the hill was steep and even more difficult ; the heavily laden men were often compelled to crawl on hands and knees, helping themselves forward by clinging to tufts of grass. In spite of all obstacles and difficulties, the advance continued. At last they came within sight of the summit, and a patrol of the 58th went forward to reconnoitre ; this patrol reported all clear and once more the force continued its slow advance and reached the summit.

The top of Majuba is a saucer-shaped plateau some three hundred yards in diameter ; round the edge of the plateau is a line of boulders, and from it the ground falls steeply on all sides and is in some places precipitous, while the sides of the hill are covered with rocks and scrub. Down the centre of the plateau from north to south runs a rocky ridge, dividing it in two and forming a valley on the eastern side of the summit. In this valley, the hospital and reserves were located.

The rest of the force were extended round the brow. One company of the 58th held the north-east corner of the plateau and the east side, which was precipitous ; a company of the 92nd held the north and west faces ; the Naval Brigade was responsible for the south of the hill. The remainder of the force, consisting of one company each of the 58th and 92nd, were held as reserves.

It was nearly four in the morning when the troops reached their destination, too tired and exhausted for any sustained entrenchment. The cover prepared was almost worthless—a few stones piled together to form a rough wall, often so thin that it merely increased the danger, as bullets splashed through the holes, while splinters of stone flew in all directions. Had proper defences been prepared the story of Majuba might well have been different.

The reason General Colley did not insist upon defences being prepared was no doubt that he never imagined the Boers would face an attack upon so strong a position.

As soon as daylight disclosed our troops in position, the Boers began to advance at the base of the mountain, and about six in the morning they opened a steady fire, to which our troops replied. The advantage rested with the enemy, as our men in order to fire must necessarily show themselves against the skyline. For three hours the fire fight continued, and no one suspected that the enemy would venture to rush the stronghold. It was not realized that slowly and steadily he was getting nearer, making full use of the natural cover and advancing from rock to rock. Still full of confidence, our men returned the fire slowly and steadily to save ammunition.

Soon after eleven the firing suddenly became intense and the Boers launched an attack from the west and gained a footing on the plateau. The reserves of the 58th and 92nd attempted to regain the lost ground, but were mown down by rapid fire and withdrew to the centre ridge. A further attack was then launched by the Boers against the north face of the hill, which they seized in the confusion, and were then able to enfilade the last ridge held by the defenders. The position now seemed hopeless; men of the 58th, sailors and Highlanders were hopelessly intermixed; bayonets were fixed, but such was the confusion that a concerted charge was impossible. The uproar grew appalling; amid the cries of the wounded, conflicting orders were being shouted on all sides. General Colley had been killed, and through it all the Boer bullets crashed relentlessly into the confusion. For a time they held their ground, but the situation was hopeless and soon the last defenders were thrown from the hill.

Of the 350 men who reached the top of the hill more than two hundred had been killed or wounded.⁵ The losses of the 58th were heavy. Captain Hon. C. Maude and 33 men were killed; Captain A. W. Morris, Lieutenant A. R. Hill, Lieutenant F. H. Lucy and 42 men were wounded; while Captain C. L. Hornby and 13 men were captured. In addition, Captain Anton and Lieutenant Miller, two officers of the 94th who had volunteered to accompany the force and were attached to the 58th, were wounded.

Of the 58th, Captain A. W. Morris and Lieutenant F. H. Lucy were mentioned in dispatches for conspicuous coolness during the last few eventful minutes on the hill before the retreat began.

Lieutenant-Colonel W. D. Bond of the 58th became senior officer of the Natal Field Force on the death of General Colley, and, seeing the retreat from Majuba, he at once placed the camp at Mount Prospect in a state of defence.

Before the action at Majuba had been fought, Sir Frederick Roberts (Lord Roberts) was on his way from England with reinforcements, but when he arrived at Cape Town it was to find that Gladstone's Government had concluded peace with the Boers.

Peace.

In accordance with the terms of peace, the Boers promised to desist from armed opposition in return for complete internal self-government of the Transvaal under British suzerainty. Such was the weakness of the Government at home that British residents in the Transvaal, who formed a good proportion of the population, were denied all civil rights, and there is no doubt that, in this peace, were laid the seeds of the next war.

On the conclusion of peace the 58th were withdrawn to Natal. On 5th May, 1881, "E," "F" and "G" Companies embarked for Mauritius and were stationed at Fort Louis, and in November "A" Company was formed into a Mounted Infantry company and was employed in Natal and Zululand for the next four years. During this period the remainder of the battalion was stationed at Pietermaritzburg and Fort Napier in Natal. In September, 1883, "H" Company proceeded to St. Helena, adding one more to the many stations occupied, and two months later "B," "C" and "D" Companies from Natal, and "E," "F" and "G" Companies from Mauritius, moved to Cape Town. Six months only were spent here, for in June, 1884, conditions in Zululand became threatening and the Regiment returned to Natal, where it was joined in July by "H" Company from St. Helena. Towards the end of the year it once more returned to Cape Town.

On 15th September, 1885, the Regiment left Cape Town for the Far East, and after a voyage of little over a month arrived at Hong Kong, where the next three years were spent. Before leaving they were presented by the civil community with a silver cup and an illuminated address to "mark the appreciation of the soldierly qualities of the Regiment." The address continues: "No finer or better-behaved corps has ever been stationed in our midst. In all forms of sport your Regiment has always been to the front. In boating, shooting, cricket and football you have kept alive a healthy competition with excellent results."

**Hong Kong
and Singapore
(1885-1892).**

Leaving Hong Kong on 7th January, 1889, Singapore was reached five days later, and here four uneventful years were spent. There is a record of a General's inspection held in May, 1892, after which Major-General Sir Charles Warren, the inspecting General, wrote as follows: "The 2nd Northamptonshire Regiment showed to great advantage with the new ceremonial drill. I never saw the trooping of the Queen's Colour done better, and the marching was excellent."

During their service in the East the command of the Regiment had changed three times, in each case on 1st April. In 1884, Lieutenant-Colonel C. E. Foster took over from Lieutenant-Colonel W. D. Bond, and after four years in command handed over to Lieutenant-Colonel D. G. Anderson. Colonel Anderson, after commanding for two years, gave way to Lieutenant-Colonel W. T. Ellis.

On 14th November, 1892, after fourteen years abroad, the 58th left Singapore for England, disembarking at Portsmouth on 27th December and moving to Colchester, where the next two years were spent. During September, 1893, detachments were sent to Chesterfield, Wakefield and Pontefract in aid of the civil power during the coal riots. Early in May, 1895, under Lieutenant-Colonel T. C. Orde Powlett, they were moved to Jersey for two years, and while there seem to have impressed the populace with their soldierly bearing, discipline and general efficiency. At the end of August, 1897, another move was made, this time to Aldershot. While here they earned a reputation for marching as well as shooting. During the Salisbury Plain manœuvres in 1898 the weather was very hot, and a great strain and test for the troops, clad in red coats with forage caps, and in marching order with valise and great-coats. In one march, while men of other regiments were falling out by fifties, men of the "Steelbacks" showed the *esprit de corps* of their unit by carrying the equipment of exhausted men and holding them up in the ranks until camp was reached. Their determination is shown by the fact that on reaching camp nine men went down unconscious, but not a man had fallen out.

After their experiences in South Africa the importance of individual marksmanship was fully realized in the Regiment, though the training of the Army generally still favoured close formations and volley-firing without particular thought to individual ability. The achievements were remarkable; for the three successive years from 1884 to 1886 the Regiment won the Inter-Regimental Rifle Shooting Cup, competed for by all infantry regiments in the Service; the following year they were placed fourth in the Army, with forty per cent. of marksmen; by 1895 they achieved the distinction of being the best shooting battalion of the seventy-two regiments stationed at home, not only in individual classification but also in field practices and in the figure of merit for recruits. This distinction of being the best shooting regiment in the Army was maintained for the whole period from 1895 to 1899. When in 1899, eighteen years after Laing's Nek, the Regiment was once again called upon to fight the Boers, it took the field with a musketry standard averaging marksmen, and there were no third-class shots.

The musketry competition results in 1898 and 1899 are so remarkable that they must be recorded. In the former year the following successes were gained :—

| | |
|--|---------------------|
| Sartorius Cup (Regimental Revolver Team) ... | 1st |
| Bowyer's Match (Volleys and Independent) ... | 1st (" E " Company) |
| Barnard Cup (Moving Target, 700 Yards) ... | 1st (" D " Company) |
| Revolver Team | 1st |

| | |
|---|---------------------|
| Evelyn Wood Cup (Marching and Collective) | 1st (" G " Company) |
| Evelyn Wood Cup | 2nd (" H " Company) |
| Inter-Company Volleys (A.R.A.) | 2nd (" E " Company) |

All eight companies of the 58th were placed among the prize-winners in this match, open to five hundred companies.

In 1899 the musketry results were even better than the preceding year. In the Evelyn Wood preliminary competition seven companies of the 58th were in the first twelve and in the final the first four places were taken by the Regiment.



Men's Glengarry Badge
1874-1881



Men's Glengarry Badge
1874-1881

CHAPTER XXV

(48TH, 1892-1914)

INDIA (1892-1897)—THE TIRAH CAMPAIGN—ACTION AT SARAN SAR—INDIA (1898-1910)—
ADEN (1910-1911)—ENGLAND (1911-1914).

(See Maps, pages 274 and 276.)

ON 1st November, 1892, the 48th returned to India after an absence of twelve years, disembarking at Bombay. After a fortnight at Poona
India. the battalion moved to its station at Bangalore, where it was joined by a draft of 4 officers and 415 men, dropped by the 58th on their return journey from Singapore to England. This was the fourth tour of duty of the battalion in India, previous tours having started in 1824, 1858 and 1872.

During the time at Bangalore the chief amusement of the officers was polo. Major Denny with Lieutenants Trent, Dobbin and Layard formed the regimental team and won the Southern India Infantry Cup three years in succession. Racing was much to the fore, shooting trips in Mysore and the Deccan were indulged in, and a bobbery pack gave good sport, if of rather a mixed nature.

Bangalore, though in many ways a delightful station, especially for those who were of a sociable nature, was very unhealthy, and in one month the 48th lost three officers out of mess from enteric; but this was not surprising, as there was at that time no proper water supply. There was also much sickness among the men, and venereal disease was all too common, little or nothing being done in the Army to protect men from this scourge.

Company training was carried out from barracks, but the battalion went into camp at Hibbal, some four miles out, for their musketry.

After three years at Bangalore the battalion was relieved in October, 1895, by 1st Battalion The Dorset Regiment. After remaining for a few weeks in camp at Hibbal they commenced the move by march route to Secunderabad. During the march all the kit was carried on bullock-carts, officers having to provide their own carts.

As the 48th were the first British battalion to march on this road for more than twenty years, they were a source of great interest to the natives. The march generally commenced at 6 a.m. or earlier, an advanced party having moved forward the previous evening to the next camp. Camp was reached between 9 and 10 a.m., and the remainder of the day was spent in shooting and other sport; excellent opportunities for duck and snipe were available.

The crossing of the Kistna River in coracles was no mean achievement. There were quicksands in midstream, and it was an anxious moment when some of the polo ponies swimming the river tried to land on one of these banks.

After a march of six weeks, Secunderabad was reached on 31st December, 1895, and the 2nd Infantry Barracks, Trimulgherry, which had previously been occupied by the Regiment in 1880, were taken over. Life at Secunderabad was much the same as at Bangalore. Sir Charles Tucker was in command, and his language was only equalled by his energy and popularity. At his inspections he expected every company officer to know the name of every man in his company, and on more than one occasion men answered to names not their own and so saved the "face" of their officer.

The polo was better here than at Bangalore, and a good deal of cricket was played, though the climate was rather against it. In spite of the heat, attempts were even made to play Rugby football. Sport was good, and one officer reports having shot ten couple of snipe within three miles of barracks before breakfast. Other amusements were the Hyderabad races and the Lungar festival.

The health of the troops was rather better than at Bangalore. The country was excellent for training, and full advantage was taken of it. One big day centred upon the bombardment by the elephant battery of a derelict native village; these guns were of the most antiquated nature, and fired a huge round ball which could be watched during its flight. The garrison went into camp for manœuvres, the camps of the opposing forces being established some miles apart; between operations entertainments even more strenuous than the manœuvres used to fill up the time, officers riding over to each other's camps for their social functions.

During July and August, 1897, there had been considerable trouble on the North-West Frontier, and fierce attacks on our posts in the Khyber, at Landi Kotal, and also on the forts on the Samana, had been made by the Afridis and Orakzais, two of the most powerful tribes on the border. They had even succeeded in closing the Khyber Pass. The whole frontier was "up" and punitive expeditions in various directions became essential. It was the good fortune of the battalion to take part in the most important of these operations.

The Tirah Campaign.

The command of a large force of British and Indian troops was entrusted to Lieutenant-General Sir William Lockhart, and in September a memorandum was issued by Army Headquarters at Simla in which the purpose of the operations to be undertaken was described as follows :—

"The general object of this expedition is to extract reparations for the unprovoked aggression of the Afridi and Orakzai tribes on the Peshawar and Kohat borders, for the attacks on our frontier posts, and for the damage to life and property, which has been inflicted on British subjects and on those in the British service. It is believed this object can best be attained by an

invasion of the Tirah, the summer home of the Afridis and Orakzais, which has never before been entered by a British force."

The tribesmen had persuaded themselves that an expeditionary force would find it impossible to penetrate into their inmost fastnesses, and they asserted openly that their summer home was unconquerable. This was no idle boast, for the beautiful valleys of the Tirah had been visited by no European, and no hostile force had ever crossed its border. To re-establish British prestige on the Frontier the tribesmen had to be shown that the difficulties presented no impassable barrier to a British fighting force. Our terms were to be announced from the heart of Tirah itself.

The main column of General Lockhart's force consisted of two divisions,¹ each of two brigades, the 48th forming part of Brigadier-General Westmacott's 4th Brigade, in company with the 2nd Battalion King's Own Scottish Borderers, 1st Battalion 3rd Gurkhas and the 36th Sikhs. The 4th Brigade, with the 3rd under Colonel Kempster, formed the Second Division, which was commanded by Major-General Yeatman-Biggs.

On 16th August the 48th had left Secunderabad for the Punjab. The night before they left there was a case of suspected cholera in the battalion; the man's kit was burnt on the barrack square and the battalion was allowed to proceed. The journey was by train, with halts during the heat of the day in various rest camps. On arrival at Jhansi, camp was shared with the Dorset Regiment; here the camp was under water and cholera broke out in the Dorsets, who were not allowed to proceed. During the train journey from Jhansi a case of cholera appeared in the 48th, who were put into camp at Sihala, ten miles from Rawal Pindi, where they remained in cholera camp for ten days, marching into Rawal Pindi on 3rd September. A few days only were spent there, and on the 15th the battalion was moved to Kohat, where the field force was being concentrated. The 48th, now commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel R. J. Chaytor, had a difficult task before them, as they had no previous experience of mountain warfare.

The plan of campaign was for the force to advance from about Shinawari by the shortest route into Tirah, based on Kohat. The advance would necessarily be a slow one on account of the difficulty of supply and the necessity to consolidate the line of approach, step by step. In addition, it was late in the year to commence operations as, owing to its great altitude, the climate of Tirah is very severe in winter, when the whole region is covered with snow; our enemy also was no mean adversary.

The Afridis are one of the largest, most turbulent and most warlike tribes on the Frontier; they are also one of the most wealthy, and wealth means arms and ammunition. They could muster up to thirty thousand fighting men, of whom half were armed with weapons of range and precision. The Orakzais, who occupy the southern portion of the Tirah, are second only to the Afridis as fighting men, and numbered some twenty-five thousand fighting men.

Though all tribesmen on the Frontier are first-class mountaineers, these two tribes are outstanding. They know their country thoroughly, and are able to move with great speed and agility over the most steep and rocky country. They have an almost uncanny ability to see at night, and are excellent marksmen, the difficulty of obtaining ammunition having taught them to get full value from every shot. Many of them had also seen service in the Indian Army, and so knew our methods. They are adepts at the use of ground and concealment, and are capable of supporting themselves on the most meagre rations, which frees them of the encumbrance of a line of communications. All these characteristics helped to make the enemy a most formidable opponent, particularly when attacked in his own country, which he was confident of his ability to defend.

The first task was the concentration of our troops and their supplies for two months at Shinawari, a tremendous task when it is remembered that everything was carried by animal transport over an indifferent road, and that the force to be supplied numbered some thirty thousand men. The preliminary concentration took place at Kohat, where a considerable action had taken place a few days before the arrival of the 48th. The battalion was camped outside the cantonments, and on its first night rifle thieves tried to rush the armourer-sergeant's tent, fortunately with no success.

**The Advance
to Tirah.**

On 20th September the 48th moved forward to Fort Lockhart on the crest of the Samana Range. Here, with the 36th Sikhs and the 2/2nd Gurkhas, they did garrison duty for a month, covering the concentration at Kohat, twenty-five miles away, finding piquets and improving roads. At Fort Lockhart the regimental transport for the expedition arrived, a wonderful collection of ponies, mules and camels, without saddles or baggage-nets, and nothing worthy of the name of loading-ropes. It was surprising that the baggage could be loaded at all, and little wonder that the loads frequently fell off. On 10th October the forward movement of the main force from Kohat began, and ten days later the whole column was assembled at Shinawari.

The first stage of the line of the advance was over the Samana Range to the valley of the Khanki River, and General Lockhart lost no time in starting operations. On 18th October the Second Division were ordered to make a reconnaissance in force to discover the best route for the advance of the main column across the mountains. To fulfil their task it was necessary to seize the Dargai Heights which flanked the advance with a practically sheer cliff. The division moved in two columns, the 3rd Brigade advancing north from Shinawari, while the 4th Brigade moved westward along the Samana Heights.

On reaching the Dargai bluff, which was held by the enemy, General Westmacott brought his guns into action and launched the 3rd Gurkhas to the attack, with the King's Own Scottish Borderers in support. The 48th were in reserve, moving up close on the heels of the attacking battalions, but, as the attack was a complete success, were not called upon.

Following up the attack, the battalion reached the summit and assisted in the destruction of the defences. Later they were ordered to withdraw and, with No. 9 Battery, to take up a position covering the retirement of the remainder of the division by long-range fire. They had water-bottles filled, also a day's rations, and were prepared to spend the night on Dargai; the order to fall back came as a surprise, and was, in fact, most unfortunate. The bluff was only recaptured after heavy fighting, the Afridis having profited by our gratuitous rehearsal on the 18th. The 48th had left Fort Lockhart at 5 a.m., and during the day had covered over twenty miles and climbed several thousand feet, returning to the fort at 9 p.m.

On 20th October General Lockhart decided once more to seize the Dargai Heights, and this time to hold them as they commanded the line he had selected. This time the task was given to the 3rd Brigade, supported by long-range fire by the 48th and the 36th Sikhs, who were already on the Samana Heights to the east. After a stern and costly fight, the heights were captured by the 1st Dorsets, 1st Gordons, 1/2nd Gurkhas and 3rd Sikhs with the greatest gallantry. Lieutenant H. H. S. Knox was running a signal station on Samana Suk, and was handed a message by Lord Methuen, who was acting as press censor, to say that the Gordons had taken the hill. Lord Methuen was full of admiration. "Who says that a short-service army is not right? Look what these young soldiers can do!" He was comparing them in his mind with the old long-service army.

We were now in possession of the first obstacle, and the following day the main body crossed the Samana Range to the Khanki Valley, concentrating near Karappa, where they remained until 27th October.

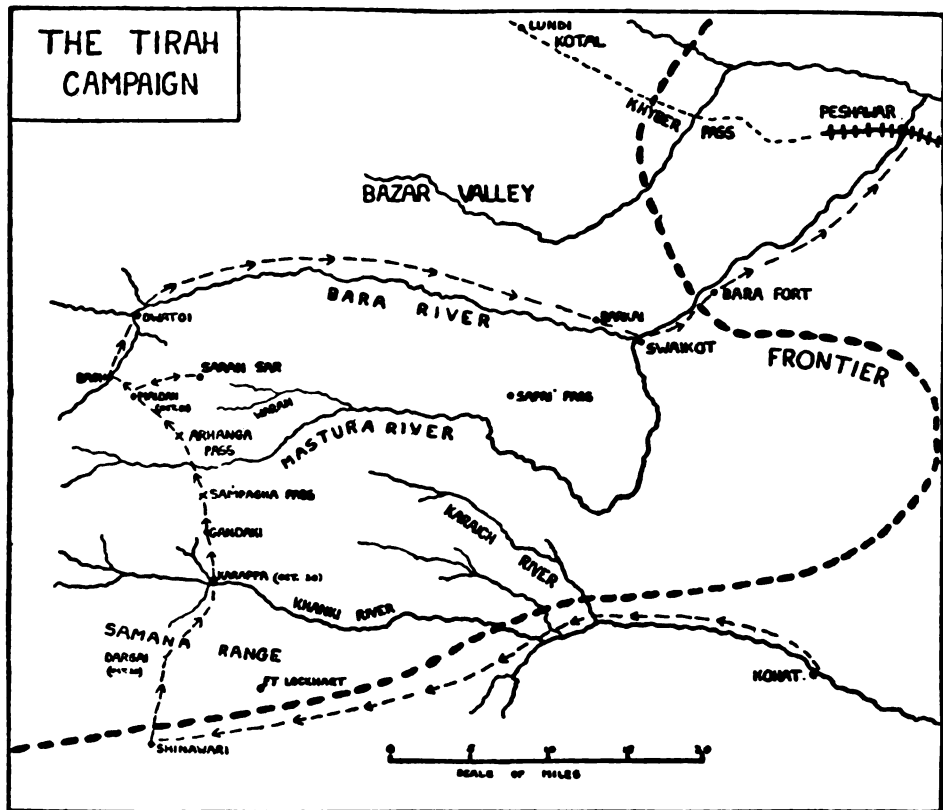
While at Karappa the force was severely harassed by sniping at night, which grew worse and worse until, on the 25th, the fierce fusillade almost amounted to an attack; our foraging parties also suffered considerably. "In consequence of this the plan was introduced of picketing the hills surrounding the camp with bodies of infantry, half a company to a whole company strong."

On 27th October stores had been brought forward and the force was ready for the next stage of the advance, over the Sampagha Pass to the Mastura River. Reconnaissances had been made towards this pass, and the enemy had been observed busily preparing fortifications. Large numbers of the enemy had also been seen during the past few days crowning an eminence which overlooked the road from the right; the 48th and 36th Sikhs, under Colonel Chaytor, were directed to seize this position, and starting at 4.30 a.m. they took possession of the hill before the enemy could occupy it, though they could be seen in large numbers on the ridge to the north, and constant firing took place all day at ranges of about one thousand yards, one man being seriously wounded. In this way the right flank of the main advance was made secure for the day.

T

The following day the Sampagha Pass was captured, the enemy putting up only a slight resistance to our advance. The pass was occupied by a brigade of the First Division, while the remainder of the force bivouacked until 31st October in the Mastura Valley.

Only one more obstacle now remained between the field force and the Maidan, their immediate goal. This was the Arhanga Pass, which was expected



to be stoutly defended. On 31st October the 48th, with the remainder of the 4th Brigade, received orders to deliver the frontal attack on the left and right, while the whole attack was covered by the massed artillery. The brigade moved at dawn and commenced its thousand-feet climb to the pass, but the enemy, realizing the threat of the 2nd Brigade's advance against his flank, put up only a weak opposition. The supporting fire of the mountain batteries also was so effective that the assault was delivered in one run with very little loss. From the top of the pass they looked down on the Tirah Maidan, on which the Afridis boasted no infidel had ever gazed. Moving down to the

Maidan, camp was formed for the whole force, and once more the business of moving forward stores began, the enemy taking every opportunity of ambushing and attacking the convoys as they crossed the Arhanga Pass.

In crossing both the Sampagha and Arhanga Passes the enemy would not stand, and we in our ignorance took great risks in pushing after him with small precautions. An officer of the Regiment states that, owing to shortness of food, the pursuit of chickens became a popular sport, and that on one occasion two officers and three men had collected over twenty before enemy fire forced them to remember that it was war and not peaceful sport.

The first night in the Maidan had been spent without transport, and the following day the 48th was ordered to piquet the pass to cover the move of the transport from the Mastura Valley. Among the piquets was "B" Company piquet, only about thirty strong, under Lieutenant E. A. E. Bulwer, with Lieutenants L. G. W. Dobbin and H. H. S. Knox. A convoy escorted by the 2nd Queen's had become delayed, and Colonel Chaytor had asked leave to park this portion for the night on the Kotal, but had been refused. Orders were then issued that, on the regimental call sounding, companies on piquet were to make their way straight down to the Maidan camp.

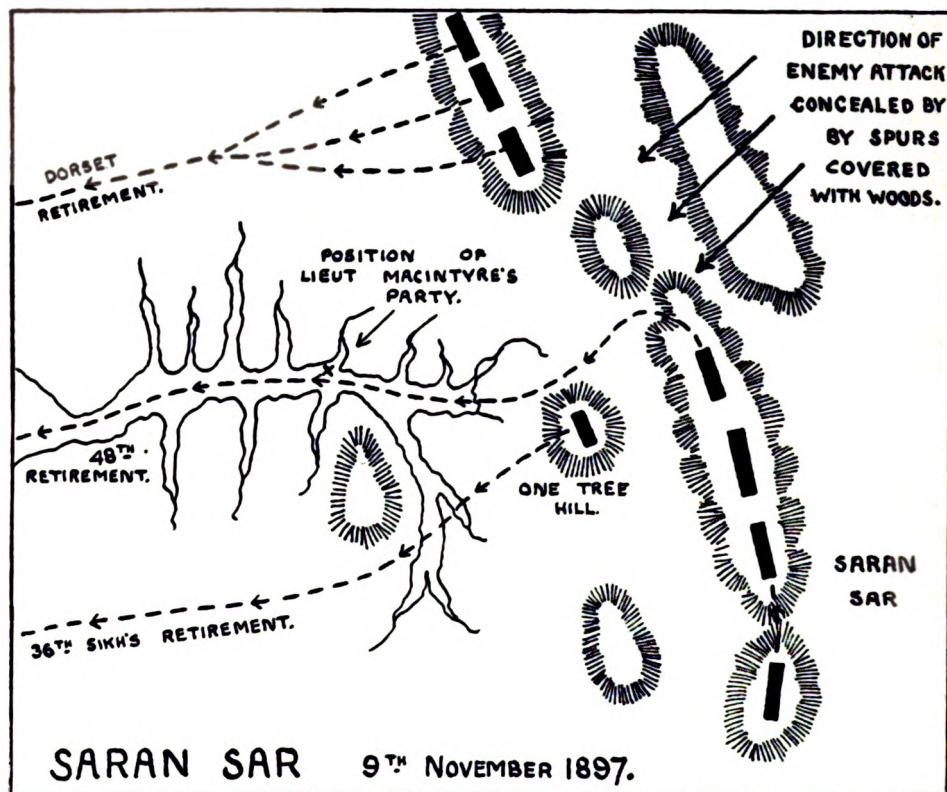
Before dusk a few shots were fired by the enemy, and some hours later the call sounded and the piquets scrambled down the steep hillside. As this party reached the foot of the hill heavy firing broke out ahead. A little beyond this a village was found to be on fire, and here were loose and dead mules, screaming drivers, with Afridis and Queen's fighting by the light of the flames. A lance-corporal of the Queen's, who had been in charge of the treasure chest, was doing gallant work, but his men were all killed or wounded. "B" Company at once attacked, the fighting being almost hand-to-hand, and the officers using their revolvers. The enemy was driven off and, the dead and wounded being collected, "B" Company started to carry them back to camp; when these parties had been provided, only two officers were left to cover the retirement.

Afterwards the Regiment received a letter of thanks from the Commanding Officer of the 2nd Queen's. During this affray Sergeant W. Anderson, who later was awarded the D.C.M., was twice wounded. Sergeant Guy also won his D.C.M. partly for his work on this night. He was sent by Lieutenant Dobbin to report in camp and ask for help to be sent out.

The same evening the rearguard of the battalion, when returning from the pass under Major T. E. Compton, with Lieutenants C. L. Gifford and A. H. MacIntyre, was attacked and surrounded, but the enemy was driven off and they reached camp in safety. Lance-Corporal Chambers received a medal for distinguished conduct for coolness under fire in this action.

Night after night while at the Maidan the enemy fired into the camp, and on 6th November a sad misfortune occurred when Lieutenant C. L. Gifford was shot dead by a chanceshot while sitting at mess.

On 9th November a reconnaissance was ordered to be carried out by the 4th Brigade to Saran Sar ("The Peak of Peaks"), which commands the east of the Maidan Valley. The regiments concerned were the 48th, the 1st Dorsets, 36th Sikhs and a mountain battery. The objective was a high pass which leads by a circuitous route to the Waran Valley. The advance was carried out



with the 48th in the centre, supported by the Sikhs and Dorsets on their right and left respectively.

During the early part of the advance there was a certain amount of desultory firing both on the 48th and the Dorsets. The Dorsets did not appear to be making much progress towards the position which covered the 48th line of advance. The 48th therefore advanced unsupported and commenced the ascent. There was a stiff climb of a thousand feet, and then the brow of the first knoll was reached. A man showed above it, and immediately a dozen bullets whizzed around him. General Westmacott ordered a halt for the men to recover their breath and fix bayonets. Then they topped the crest and

rushed to the next cover, which was a knoll on which stood a solitary tree. The enemy knew the range of this tree, and the advanced section lying there found themselves under magazine fire. There was no alternative but to push on at the double to the next crest, where cover was obtained.

There was still no news of the Dorsets, and the General detached five companies to work round the northern ascent of the cliff, and took the remaining three companies along the pass at the foot of the cliff. The guns fired about twenty rounds at the crest of the cliff as the 48th advanced, and by 11 a.m. they were in possession of the crest, with a loss of only two men wounded.

By 12.15 the necessary sketches were completed, and General Westmacott ordered the withdrawal to begin, but after the retirement had already commenced Sir William Lockhart decided to make a personal reconnaissance, which delayed the withdrawal until 2.30, allowing a minimum of time to withdraw before dusk.

On the top of Saran Sar was Major Compton, with several days' growth of beard and a long walking-stick. An officer reports that he walked up and down under heavy fire, exclaiming : " It is contrary to the principles of war ! " The remark was understood by his amused but less highly educated brother officers (Major Compton was a *p.s.c.* officer) to refer to the attempt to withdraw without adequate covering fire.

The companies commenced the retirement in succession under long-range fire from the enemy's sharpshooters. When " G " Company, bringing up the rear under Captain Parkin, had withdrawn two hundred yards from the ridge they had been holding, the enemy appeared on it and opened fire at point-blank range, causing several casualties. " The men, however, rallied bravely round their officers, and with great courage and coolness kept the foe at bay, while all the wounded were picked up and brought along. Sergeant Lennon particularly distinguished himself by his deliberate shooting, and set an excellent example of steadiness in a trying situation which had the best effect." He actually continued to keep up a steady fire after he was wounded.

After a short delay for stretchers to be brought forward, the withdrawal was continued in good order with the loss of ten wounded, who were carried down in safety, and the supports reached. The retirement had been covered by the 36th Sikhs from a position on the right known as One Tree Hill. Thinking the 48th were now in safety, the Sikhs now withdrew, as also did the Dorsets on the left.

Dusk was falling, and " C," " F " and " G " Companies, delayed by their casualties, now entered the nullah up which they had advanced, and where the going was easier. Here they became strung out. A body of Afridis, seeing their chance, now swooped down on the companies of the 48th in the ravine, and firing down on them at point-blank range caused many casualties.

" It was here that Lieutenant Waddell and Sergeant Goffey were killed.

Sergeant Litchfield was shot through the knee and will lose his leg ; Sergeant Underdown slightly wounded ; Colour-Sergeant Hull shot through the ankle. Lieutenant G. A. Trent was wounded in the thigh."³ Sergeant Guy distinguished himself by going back with dhoolies and removing Colour-Sergeant Hull to safety under fire ; Corporal Gray gallantly carried Sergeant Litchfield from under a heavy and accurate fire by the enemy. Both Guy and Gray were later awarded the D.C.M. for these deeds. When Lieutenant Trent was hit all the three stretchers with the company were full, " but one man who was only slightly wounded said he could walk, and Lieutenant Trent, who was shot in the thigh by a Dum-dum bullet, was put in." On the return, the stretcher broke and " the men carrying it put it down and coolly repaired it under a hail of bullets, one man having a button of his coat on his chest shot off, and the other two bullets through his clothes."³

These delays had made the situation serious, and Major R. H. Fraser did his utmost to clear the men from the nullah, but in the dusk at the time it was not discovered that Second-Lieutenant A. H. MacIntyre, Colour-Sergeant Luck and fifteen men were missing. It appears that, being on the exposed flank, they held on too long, and being hampered with wounded, whom they could not leave behind, they were surrounded by Afridis and shot down to a man. This small detachment had gallantly sacrificed their lives in covering the retirement of the wounded convoy and in the courageous performance of their duty. " A search party found their bodies next day. They had been stripped of clothing and arms, and some of them slashed with swords, but their bodies were not otherwise mutilated."³

" The way in which the Northamptons stuck to their wounded, and brought them through the terrible nullah, was a display of heroism and devotion worthy of a Regiment that fought at Albuera. Surrounded by the enemy, exposed to a galling fire from the high banks to which they could not effectively reply, with dead and dying men on every side, and the horror of their desperate situation accentuated by the gathering darkness, they fought on resolutely and bravely, and sacrificed themselves without hesitation to save their wounded comrades who could not help themselves."³

" The losses which the 48th incurred were solely due to their wounded, and a wounded man at once becomes a group and a target for enemy marksmen. If, as might have been the case in an European war, the 48th could have left their wounded with the knowledge that nothing worse would have happened to them than their becoming prisoners-of-war, their losses would not have reached a dozen, and the deplorable incident of the party annihilated in the nullah would not have occurred. It was solicitude for the wounded which cost the party their losses, and the incidents of devotion on the part of the 48th are too numerous to give in detail ; but on one occasion three of the four men who went out to bring in a wounded comrade were shot as they were on the point of succeeding."⁴

Between 12th and 23rd November the battalion was employed on piquet duty in the Arhanga Pass. On 21st three men were killed and one wounded. On 23rd November the battalion moved to Bagh, returning to the Arhanga Pass for piquet duty from 27th November to 7th December. During this time there were twenty-one degrees of frost.

**The End of
the Campaign.**

On most days foraging parties were sent out by the battalion ; the procedure was first to piquet the hills, then collect the forage and then withdraw. These parties were always followed up by the enemy, which resulted in excellent practice in rearguard work.

On 7th December the evacuation of the Maidan began, for the weather was getting more and more severe, and snow was expected. General Lockhart had proved to the Afridis that an advance into their country was possible. The main camp of the force had now been moved to Bagh, and on 8th December the 4th Brigade left for Dwatoi on their way to Bara along the course of the Bara River. Coming down the Bara Valley, it was the pleasant fiction that the force was not retiring but advancing on India. Bugles always sounded the "Advance" as the force moved backwards ! The passage through the dangerous defile of the Dwatoi gorge was carried out safely, though there was some shooting ; the defile was so narrow in one place that the rock had to be blown away before a loaded mule could get through. The enemy was easily dislodged and the advance continued.

The battalion had paraded at 4.30 a.m., and remained waiting for orders until 7 a.m., in the river-bed in driving sleet. During the early stages the river had to be crossed and recrossed constantly, the water being over the men's knees and very cold. The march was so delayed by the baggage train of the 3rd Brigade, which had started the previous day, that the brigade was compelled to bivouac where it was, and officers and men lay down to get what rest they could in the freezing cold.

The march of the division continued on the 10th, 11th and 13th, and on the 14th Barkai was reached, the 4th Brigade, to which the battalion belonged, being advanced guard on the 11th and rearguard on the other two days. On the 13th the enemy made constant attacks on the rearguard.

General Westmacott was suffering from that "almost universal complaint," and would not dismount. He was on a white horse, and spent most of his time with the rear part of his brigade. An officer reports that on one occasion when two companies were in the rear, one company commander came to Major A. R. Hill, V.C., and said, "It is time we were off." Major Hill was sitting on a rock, as usual completely unmoved. He replied, "There is our General ; as long as he is here, I stop."

The 4th Brigade were in action all day, and the "tribesmen showed a grit and enterprise they had not previously displayed on any occasion during the campaign,"^a coming to close quarters with an absolute disregard for danger,

the reason for this bravery being very largely the hope of loot. At Guli Khel the transport was checked, and when the rearguard halted the enemy made a determined effort to get round the flanks and cut the column. "They were kept at bay at every point. The troops, all of whom had now come to be experts in the art of hill fighting, only yielded ground when they chose, and the different detachments conducted their successive withdrawal with admirable precision."³

When at last they could move, light was beginning to fail, and General Westmacott found himself with a mixed force representing mere detachments left over from his five battalions after sending on men with the wounded and finding the baggage guards. The enemy becoming more and more aggressive, General Westmacott decided to take up a position with his "Fighting Brigade," as it was known to the forces,⁴ on a ridge about two miles short of Nar Kandai. The remnants of his force included four weak companies of the 48th. For a short time there was a lull in the firing, and it seemed the enemy had withdrawn. "But it was a vain hope, for suddenly there was a cry, and the officers had only just time to throw out their men and extend them along the ridge before the enemy were upon them. The Afridis had evidently collected for this coup, and they made a terrific rush, so that even among the brushwood more Afridis were seen than had ever been seen collected at close quarters before. For a moment it seemed that the men, who had been fighting all day, would be enveloped, overrun and swept away. But it was momentary; the officers threw themselves into the line, magazines worked freely, and the very bushes seemed to fade away before the hail of lead from the defending spur."⁴

When the attack had been repelled, a makeshift camp was prepared and defensive depositions made for the night. "There was neither water, food nor blankets for the troops, and the men were worn out."⁴ In addition, the night was bitterly cold.

The next day the action recommenced, but, disputing each successive ridge, the rearguard fell back and by midday on the 14th reached the piquets protecting the main body at Swaikot. The march was continued to Swaikot, up to which a fairly good road had been constructed by a British force which had moved out from Peshawar.

On arrival an order was issued by General Lockhart to convey to the officer commanding the 4th Brigade his appreciation of "the excellent work done by himself, his staff, and the troops under his command on 13th and 14th December, when a very difficult operation was most successfully carried out."

A week later the 48th were relieved by the Yorkshire Light Infantry, and finally marched into Peshawar on Christmas Day. Many valuable officers and men had lost their lives,⁵ and the battle honour "Tirah" awarded by Army Order No. 23 of 1900 was well earned.



Officer's Shoulder Belt Plate.
1820-1855.

Officer's Waist Belt Plate.
1855-1881

Other Ranks' Cross Belt Plate.
Worn prior to 1855.

Officer's Waist Belt Plate,
1855-1881.

Officer's Waist Belt Plate,
1881-1902.

The battalion, like many others in Tirah, suffered at first from the strangeness of the conditions of fighting in a mountainous country, a form of warfare which they had had no opportunity of practising. As the campaign proceeded the fine spirit and determination of the battalion showed itself in the way all ranks accommodated themselves to the new conditions, and their gallantry, as always, was above reproach.

On 6th April, 1898, Lieutenant-Colonel W. B. Capper assumed command of the 48th. While at Peshawar the chief sport was hunting,

India
(1898-1910).

and many great days were spent with the Peshawar Vale Hunt. Between 14th and 19th July, 1898, the 48th moved by train from Peshawar to Fyzabad, which was a great pig-sticking station, meets often taking place quite close to the mess. Major Hill was a most enthusiastic performer; when near a pig, having only one useful arm, he used to throw his reins over a hook on the saddle and transfer the spear to his left hand. On one occasion during the rains a boar, flooded out of his usual haunts, had the temerity to come into the 48th barracks. The men indulged in a boar hunt, to their great delight and the extreme discomfiture of the boar.

In consequence of the outbreak of war with the Boers, the 48th moved on 20th September to Allahabad in relief of 1st Battalion The Gloucestershire Regiment, who were ordered to South Africa. A detachment of two companies was left at Fyzabad.

Just as the 58th had been leading the Army in musketry at home, so were the 48th in India. In 1900, for the second year in succession, they topped the list in the annual musketry course in India and averaged marksman points. In consequence the battalion was selected for the trial of an experimental course in view of possible changes in the rifle practice of the Indian Army.

The old 48th Crimean Colours, presented in 1838 at Gibraltar, which had always been retained in custody of the Regiment, having become much dilapidated from climatic and other causes, were sent home and the old silk and pieces of embroidery that remained were sewn into a new ground of buff silk. The work was performed by an Irish lady at a cost of £15. The Colours were returned in 1900 and carried on church parade at Allahabad, being placed in the garrison church during service and afterwards restored to the safe keeping of the Officers' Mess. Eight years later repairs were again necessary, and this time the Colours were netted by the School of Art Needlework at South Kensington.

On 28th December, 1900, the battalion moved into training camp at Barkacha until February, 1901, when they moved back to Fyzabad, and on 23rd November, 1901, a further move was made to Umballa in relief of 2nd Battalion The Essex Regiment, who were ordered to South Africa. In the meantime on 15th June, 1901, Lieutenant-Colonel W. F. Fawcett had taken over command. Whilst at Umballa the battalion was employed guarding nine hundred Boer prisoners of war. On most days the prisoners were taken

route marching, and when the rains came Rugby football was popular between the prisoners and the battalion.

On 7th December, 1901, an overheated chimney set fire to the Officers' Mess, which had a thatched roof. The eight officers in the mess at the time managed to save a considerable amount of mess property, but all glass, linen and china were lost. Among other articles lost were photograph books containing photos of old officers of the Regiment, and a piece of the Peninsular Regimental Colour which had been carried by the 1/48th at Talavera. These fires were a common occurrence at Umballa, and the garrison used to assemble to enjoy the hospitality of the unfortunates who were being burnt out and to watch the blaze, this, of course, after they had done all that was possible in the way of salvage.

During November, 1902, the battalion took part in manoeuvres in the neighbourhood of Delhi, and marched into Delhi on 21st December, 1902, to take part in the Coronation Durbar, being selected as part of the Viceroy's escort. One of the duties was to find all the guards in the Viceroy's camp, one double sentry being posted outside the entrance to the Duke of Connaught's suite of tents. Nights were cold. On the officer going his rounds he found the Duke's double sentries posted on either side of a stove in the Duke's entrance shamiana. The Duke had come out himself and ordered the men inside, saying "Tell your officer that I posted you here." After this the men had nothing too good to say of "The Dook," and he deserved it all.

In January, 1903, the 48th returned to Umballa, where they remained until 7th April, when they moved to Dagshai. A further move was made to Jullundur on 4th November.

In 1904 the battalion took part in the Kitchener tests. The "Forced March," which was the chief test, took place on 17th December, the conditions being as follows: "Leave camp at 1 p.m. on 16th December, march sixteen miles over the Swaliks from Hoshiarpur to Gugret, arriving there at 6 p.m. and bivouacking; leave camp at 2 a.m. for Bahadarpur, a distance of sixteen miles, re-crossing the Swaliks." Unless the head of the column reached a point one mile from Bahadarpur at 5.30 a.m. marks would be deducted. One hour longer was given to collect stragglers, after which points were deducted for all men missing. The head of the battalion arrived at 5.30 a.m., and at 6.30 a.m. only five men were absent. The march was carried out on a dark night under field-service conditions, with one hundred rounds of ball ammunition in pouches. The marching strength was six hundred all ranks. The following day on church parade the G.O.C. congratulated the battalion on their magnificent marching, stating that their performance had not been equalled by any regiment yet tested.

The battalion was selected as the best-trained battalion in the Third Lahore Division and represented the division in the final test between other formations in the Northern Command.

Lieutenant-Colonel W. Weallens relieved Lieutenant-Colonel Fawcett in

command on 15th June, 1905. On 3rd March, 1908, a move was made to Poona, and during July and August the 48th were employed at Bombay keeping order during the trial of Mr. Tilak for sedition.

On 15th June Lieutenant-Colonel Weallens completed his period of command and was replaced by Lieutenant-Colonel F. J. Parker.

On 27th July, 1909, the centenary of the Battle of Talavera was celebrated, the whole battalion dining together in marquees on the parade ground at Poona, the band playing during dinner. The celebrations were continued on 15th September, when the old Regimental Colour was trooped, Major-General Swan, C.B., Sixth Poona Division, taking the salute.

On 25th and 26th January, 1910, the 48th moved to Bombay *en route* for Aden, leaving two companies under Major Norman at Ahmednagar. Sailing in R.I.M.S. *Dufferin*, they arrived at Aden on 1st February, 1910, and were stationed in the Crater, with two companies at Steamer Point. The amenities of life were scarce in Aden. For sport, polo was played on the Aden troop horses; bathing was difficult as there were no protected areas against sharks. The food was indifferent, fish being the staple diet.

In February, 1911, after a year at Aden, the foreign tour of the battalion ended and they embarked for England in H.T. *Dongola*, dropping 3 officers and 320 other ranks at Malta for the 58th, and disembarked at Devonport on 15th March.

At Devonport the South Raglan Barracks were occupied, and during the railway strike of August, 1911, the battalion was employed on strike duty at Nottingham, Derby and Lincoln.

The 58th had left England in 1910 with a great shooting and marching record, and the 48th carried on the tradition. Many musketry trophies were won, and their marching ability is shown by the following extract from the "Remarks on Training, 1912," by General H. L. Smith-Dorrien, after the Army Manœuvres in Cambridgeshire in 1912, in which he said: "At the manœuvres, I noticed the 1st Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment as nearly perfect as possible, swinging along like a great machine, and there is no reason why every battalion should not be just as good."

On 15th June, 1913, Lieutenant-Colonel E. Osborne Smith assumed command of the 48th on Lieutenant-Colonel Parker completing his tour of office.

From 27th September to 7th October, 1913, the 48th visited the county of Northamptonshire for the first time as a battalion, marching through Northampton, Wellingborough, Thrapston, Oundle, Kettering, Peterborough and numerous villages. The Colours were trooped on Northampton Racecourse on 30th September, and a torchlight tattoo was given on the county ground on 1st October. The march terminated on 8th October at Peterborough, and the battalion entrained for Blackdown, where they were stationed in Dettingen Barracks.

CHAPTER XXVI

(58th, 1899-1914)

THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR—THE BATTLE OF BELMONT—BATTLE OF GRASPAN—MODDER RIVER—
ACTION AT ENSLIN STATION—BATTLE OF MAGERSFONTEIN—MODDER RIVER CAMP—
ARRIVAL OF VOLUNTEERS—RELIEF OF KIMBERLEY—OPERATIONS IN THE ORANGE FREE
STATE—THE PURSUIT OF DE WET—CLEARING THE SOUTH-WESTERN TRANSVAAL—THE
END OF THE WAR—THE 3RD (MILITIA) BATTALION—ENGLAND—MALTA—EGYPT.

(See Maps, pages 286, 290 and 297.)

EVER since 1881, when Mr. Gladstone had granted independence to the Boers in the Transvaal after our defeat at Majuba, the condition of affairs in South Africa had been growing progressively worse. It was clear that the Boers were working towards their ideal of a Republican South Africa in which their nationality should be dominant. After their successes in 1881 they were confident that if a trial of strength should come they would be able to "drive the British into the sea." It is surprising how often attempts have been made to drive us into the sea, but always in the end we have risen from the sea to victory, like the tide, slowly but surely. The Boers were only awaiting their opportunity to seize complete independence, and experience had shown how fatal this would be to the interests of the large proportion of British residents in their midst.

The discovery of gold in the Transvaal had brought to that country a large mining population, mainly of British extraction; these and other British settlers were refused any of the privileges of citizenship. Other oppressive measures angered the British, and in 1895 had almost led to war. On that occasion an armed rebellion had been planned, now known as the Jameson Raid, as Doctor Jameson had co-operated by riding on Johannesburg with five hundred British South African police. He had, however, been surrounded and captured, and the rising crushed.

From this moment, President Kruger of the Transvaal evidently made up his mind that decision of the whole question must be by force of arms. During the next four years he accumulated large stores of arms and ammunition from Europe, and concluded an offensive and defensive alliance with the Orange Free State. He also established relations with the Dutch colonists in the Cape. As Kruger became more powerful, the rule of his Government over the British in the Transvaal became more oppressive than ever; they were regarded as enemy aliens and refused all concessions and rights.

In April, 1899, a great petition signed by more than twenty thousand British subjects in the Transvaal was sent to the Queen, begging for an inquiry.

This led to a conference at which Sir Alfred Milner tried to induce President Kruger to grant the British the power of obtaining civic rights after five years' residence in the country. Even this very moderate demand was refused. Armed strife seemed inevitable, but still the British Government made efforts for peace. Finally, in September, formal notice was given by the Transvaal Government that they disowned the British suzerainty which they had accepted in the peace of 1881.

Remembering our experiences in the last war, the small British garrison of ten thousand men had been increased to be ready for eventualities. This action was immediately followed by an insulting ultimatum from President Kruger on 8th October, 1899, that if the reinforcements were not withdrawn a declaration of war would follow within twenty-four hours. Next day hostilities began.

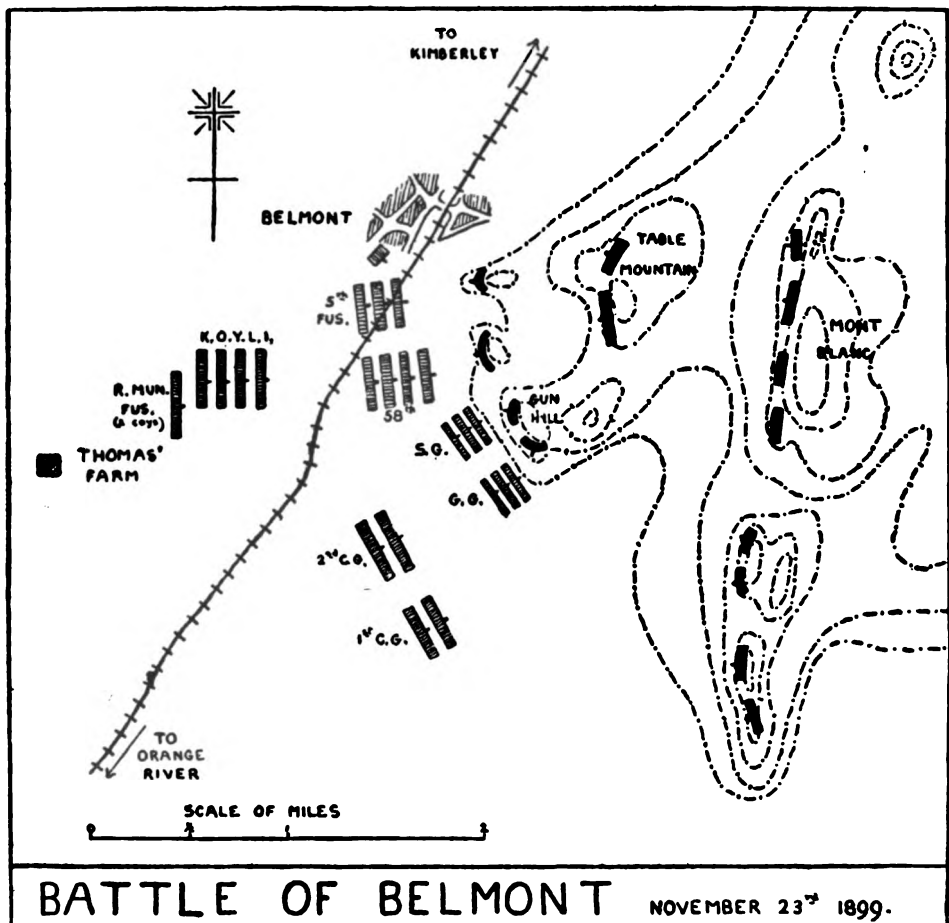
The few troops available at the beginning of the war were distributed in a series of posts along the frontier between Cape Colony and Natal and the Orange Free State. They were outnumbered by the Boers by more than two to one, and at the start the initiative was entirely with the enemy. Reinforcements, however, soon began to arrive from home and India. The Boer plan was to make their main effort in the east, where they hoped, having captured Dundee, Ladysmith and other garrison towns, to drive the British from Natal. Some attention was also paid to the west, as just beyond the western frontier of the Orange Free State and the Transvaal ran the railway from Cape Town, through Kimberley and Mafeking to Rhodesia. To prevent any advance to the north from Cape Colony, the Boers decided to cut the railway and to capture Mafeking, which was garrisoned by a few troops under Colonel Baden-Powell, and also Kimberley, held by Colonel R. G. Kekewich with half a battalion of the Loyal North Lancashire Regiment and some three thousand colonial Volunteers.

The available strength of the Boers amounted to some fifty thousand men, and we had reason to know they were worthy opponents. Mostly farmers by occupation, living in isolated farms, they were accustomed to fend for themselves; they had all the usual characteristics of irregulars. Full of individuality and self-reliance, excellent rifle shots and well mounted, they lacked the discipline for co-ordinated action. The Boers had an antipathy for fighting at close quarters, natural in men unaccustomed to rely on their neighbours. In defence they were stubborn, making full use of their marksmanship and the cover available; but in face of an attack pressed home they remembered their horses in rear and preferred to withdraw, to fight another day. In the attack the Boer was not really to be feared. Excessive individuality marked every stage, but discipline was lacking, and Commandants could not rely on being followed to the end by more than a fraction of their men. Though the importance of individuality in a soldier is great, it is of little use in the real crises of war, unless accompanied by discipline. It was at guerrilla tactics that the

Boers really excelled. In the raid on a post or convoy, the surprise of a detachment, or when harassing the flanks or rear of a column, he was in his element, and a master of the art of rearguard tactics in open country.

On 21st and 22nd October, less than a fortnight after the declaration of war, the 58th left Aldershot and, sailing by half battalions in the s.s. *Harlech Castle* and *Nubia*, arrived at Cape Town on 13th and 14th November, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Denny. The strength of the battalion on arrival was 28 officers, 982 other ranks, of whom 550 were Reservists, three horses and one machine gun on wheeled carriage mounting.

The value of mounted infantry in operations against the Boers had been appreciated by some after the last war, and in the intervening years training in mounted infantry tactics had been carried out. In consequence, most



regiments had a few officers and men who had received some training, and on 22nd January, 1900, Lieutenant C. R. J. Mowatt and Second-Lieutenant F. W. Darwell with forty-seven men were sent back from Modder River to Orange River to be trained for mounted infantry duties. Later they formed part of the 3rd Mounted Infantry Battalion, under Lieutenant-Colonel T. D. Pilcher of the 5th Fusiliers, which was engaged throughout the campaign in operations other than those in which the remainder of the battalion took part, rendering the most valuable service.

Immediately on arrival, the 58th were sent forward to join the First Division under command of Lieutenant-General Lord Methuen, who had been given the task of clearing the railway and relieving the garrison of Kimberley. The force was concentrated at Orange River Station, the 58th, with a strength of 28 officers and 989 other ranks, being posted to the 9th Infantry Brigade, under Colonel Featherstonhaugh, which contained, in addition, the 1st Bn. The Northumberland Fusiliers (5th), a half battalion of the 1st Bn. The Loyal North Lancashire Regiment (47th), and 2nd Bn. The King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry (105th). In the Division were also the 1st (Guards) Brigade and some mounted troops.

In a few days the Regiment was once more to meet the enemy from whom they had suffered so severely eighteen years before. The lessons they had learnt then had not been forgotten; on arrival at Orange River, Colonel Denny ordered that wide extensions, not less than eight paces between men, should be adopted, and that each man should move rapidly from cover to cover and that exact dressings of lines should be avoided. It was not long before these tactics were universally adopted. In addition, the shooting and marching of the 58th was the best in the Army, the individual marksmanship being at least equal to that of the Boers. Before this, the British Army still preserved the tradition in favour of solid line formations, mechanical precision, strict fire discipline and bayonet charges. These traditions had survived the Franco-Prussian War and had been strengthened by our experiences against the Zulus, the Sudanese, and other semi-civilized nations who relied on massed attacks. This mechanical system of attack by line upon line, the magnificent spectacle of a field day, offered too conspicuous a display to escape heavy toll from the Boer marksmen.

On the morning of Tuesday, 21st November, the advance from the Orange River began. Extreme mobility was aimed at in the column, and neither tents nor comforts of any sort were permitted to officers or men—no light matter when a day of scorching sun is followed by a bitterly cold night. By Lord Methuen's orders the officers discarded their swords and dressed like the men, their only distinguishing mark being a small black patch worn between the shoulders, because they "hoped to be in front of their men." The men covered their buttons, white belts and rifle slings with mud to render them less conspicuous, and their white haversacks in the same way were darkened with coffee to match their khaki jackets.

The Boers were not taken by surprise by Lord Methuen's preparations for an advance ; their spies and sympathizers had kept them fully informed of all steps taken. In anticipation of a dash on Kimberley, defensive positions along the railway had been prepared at Belmont and Graspan. Leaving camp at Orange River at 4 a.m., the First Division set off along the railway leading to Kimberley, eighty miles distant. The first halt was made at Fincham's Farm, some twelve miles off, where the troops breakfasted. Later in the day they moved forward once more, and on the afternoon of 22nd November bivouacked at Thomas's Farm, two miles from Belmont Station, with " C " and " D " Companies of the 58th finding the outposts.

Just across the railway lay the Boer position, a natural fortress of hills. Running parallel to the railway is a razor-backed ridge, in the centre of which is a hill known as Mont Blanc. This ridge formed the main position ; as natural outworks were the hills known as Gun Hill and Table Mountain. Here some two thousand five hundred Boers had taken up their position in ground presenting many obstacles to the attack and offering them excellent cover which they had strengthened with sangars.

Lord Methuen decided upon a night advance followed by a dawn attack. The Guards Brigade, on the right, were given the task of capturing Gun Hill, while on the left the 9th Brigade, with the 5th Fusiliers on the left and the 58th on the right, were directed against Table Mountain. The cavalry and mounted infantry were to protect the flanks and were to be prepared to exploit success when Mont Blanc had been captured.

At 2.30 a.m. the troops left camp, and two miles of bare plain were crossed under cover of darkness. In admirable order, with their intervals and distances well maintained, the regiments moved forward in grim silence, straining their eyes to catch a glimpse of the kopjes they were to attack. About four o'clock the dawn of the hot summer day began and they could see the grim, rock-strewn, crag-topped position. Soon after, as they came into view, the Boer fire commenced, and along the dark line of hills the flashes of their rifles could be seen, but as yet in the half light the fire was inaccurate. The advance had been in column of companies, but now extended formations were adopted. The men had not breakfasted and, as our records show, this wakens a dangerous spirit among them—they were hungry men who fought at Talavera. Captain Allen reports, however, that " they were in the best of spirits, cracking jokes while advancing under quite heavy fire. One very fat man, a greengrocer from Northampton and a Reservist, was carrying a rope round his waist which he said he had brought to hang Kruger."

The dawning light showed the Scots Guards on the right of the 58th, under cover of the rocks at the foot of the hill, apparently about to assault. At that moment the bugles of the 58th sounded the charge, and the men dashed forward with fixed bayonets. Up the stone-scattered hill they scrambled, while all the time their invisible enemy kept up a steady fire on them from the rocks above. At first " the direction of the Northamptonshire advance exposed the



THE BATTLE OF BELMONT, 23rd NOVEMBER, 1899.

(From the drawing by Frank Dodd, R.I.)

Reproduced by permission of the Caxton Publishing Co., Ltd., 17, Surrey Street, London.

right of their leading line to Boer musketry on Gun Hill, from which they suffered until the Guards captured that part of the position.¹ On their left, too, the Northumberland Fusiliers were delayed by enemy musketry, but "the forward movement of the Northamptons, some of whom charged with the bayonet, against the northern end of Gun Hill, drove away the parties of Boers opposing the Northumberland Fusiliers, who were then able to continue their attack on Table Mountain."¹

The British slowly worked up the hills from rock to rock, taking snap shots at an enemy who seldom showed more than a rifle-barrel and part of his head. Men of different units had now become intermingled, and 58th and Fusilier, Guardsman and Light Infantryman, in little parties following the nearest officer, pushed on from cover to cover.

The battle had resolved itself into a number of isolated actions in which the various kopjes were rushed by individual parties, always with success and always with loss. "Originally planned with some tactical skill, it became, through no special fault of anyone concerned, a soldiers' battle, the companies going straight ahead at whatever height confronted them, and marching up hill and down dale until the last Boer had been driven from the kopjes. A soldiers' battle in the best sense, it exemplified the lasting value of discipline and moral. As Sir H. E. Colville expressed it, 'The men did for themselves what no General would have dared to ask of them'."²

The top of the hill was gained at last ; the enemy did not, however, wait for the bayonet, but running for their ponies rode away pursued by our cavalry. By 10 a.m. the engagement was over.

During the action the British losses had been heavy, 53 being killed and 243 wounded. The 58th, due largely to their training, had escaped lightly, only one man being killed and Captain L. G. Freeland, Captain P. Allen and Second-Lieutenant Barton and thirteen other ranks being wounded. There were Boers at Belmont who had shot down the 58th at Laing's Nek, but the eighteen years that had passed had been spent in learning to shoot and to make use of cover ; the return match had been played, and this time the 58th were on the winning side. What a sporting winner, too, is the British soldier, how gentle were those boyish men in khaki as they tended the wounded and as down the rough hillside they helped old grey-bearded Dutch farmers as though they had been their own grandfathers.³

Private Kidd was later awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal, for saving the Maxim gun during this action ; the mules of which he was in charge being shot, he placed himself in the shafts and drew the gun out of an exposed position.

After the battle, Lord Methuen made the following address to the troops : "I congratulate you on the complete success achieved by you this morning. The ground over which we had to fight presented exceptional difficulties, and we had as an enemy a past-master in the tactics of mounted infantry. With troops such as you are, a commander can have no fear of the result."

U

The Battle of Graspan, 25th November, 1899.



afternoon of 23rd November, Lord Methuen remained at Belmont, but the next day he moved forward again, and that night the First Division bivouacked at Graspan. At dawn on 25th November, the troops were once more on the move, the 9th Brigade, which had now been joined by a Naval Brigade, leading the way. As resistance was expected from the line of kopjes between Graspan and Enslin, the move was made in skirmishing order.

The plan was to outflank the left of the line of kopjes which were believed to be held. The main attack was to be delivered by the Naval Brigade and the King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry. Four companies of the 58th had been detached as escort to the guns which were to advance along the line of the railway on the left flank, three companies accompanied the K.O.Y.L.I. on the extreme right flank, while the remaining company moved on the left of the Naval Brigade.

As they approached the hill the conditions of the battle of Belmont were repeated, the Boers keeping up a heavy fire from their concealed positions. As at Belmont, our infantry advanced unchecked; the Naval Brigade had originally been extended, but during the attack had become more closed up and suffered heavily in consequence; the companies of the 58th, advancing at eight paces extension on their flank, had comparatively few casualties. The sailors and Marines succeeded, however, in reaching dead ground at the foot of the kopje. Meanwhile, the King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry, with three companies of the 58th, had managed to overlap the enemy's flank and mount the hill. At 9 a.m., with fixed bayonets, they assaulted the position, but the battle was already won, and the Boers, not waiting for the charge, bolted down the back of the hill, pursued by our artillery fire, and made for their horses.

Sergeant Holmes and Privates Lonton and Williams, of the Band, showed particular devotion to duty in carrying out their duties of caring for the wounded, and "throughout the fierce hail of bullets from the Boer marksmen they did their work as coolly as though at Ambulance Class."⁴

The British losses were 18 killed and 143 wounded, of which the 58th casualties were only one killed and four wounded. Of the Boers, 23 were found dead and 40 more were captured.

On 26th November the Division rested at Enslin, refitting with supplies and ammunition, then once more the advance began. General Delarey, in command of the Boer forces, had induced them to make one more effort to arrest the British advance. He selected a position near the junction of the Modder and Riet Rivers, where the high banks formed natural covered ways to carefully concealed trenches, from which there was a field of fire over the open plain affording no cover for an attacking force. On 28th November the First Division moved forward, expecting little opposition, with the 58th as

**Modder River,
28th November,
1899.**

advanced guard with instructions to lay out the camp at Modder River for the main body. Scouts galloped in with the news that the enemy had been located, and the 58th were ordered to form a baggage guard, and consequently did not take part in the ensuing action which lasted for ten hours, at the end of which the crossing of the river was successfully forced.

The force was now within twenty-five miles of Kimberley and communication was established by a naval searchlight whose beams, projected skywards, were answered by similar beams of light from the town. Relief in the course of a few days seemed probable. A short halt on the Modder River was essential, to allow for the repair of the bridge which had been damaged by the Boers. While here the First Division was reinforced by the Highland Brigade, consisting of the 2nd Black Watch, 1st Highland Infantry, 1st Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders and 2nd Seaforth Highlanders, with the 1st Gordon Highlanders attached.

During the whole period of the campaign the railway line to the base was the constant objective of raids by the Boers, and detachments had to be found throughout its whole length. Early in December "A" and "F" Companies of the 58th, under Captain H. C. Godley, with Lieutenants W. T. Windowe and E. C. Brierley of the Lancashire Fusiliers attached, provided the guard at Enslin Station, where our advanced depot was situated. On 7th December a raiding force of some one thousand Boers with three guns, making a detour round the First Division, attacked this detachment. Lieutenant Brierley, with thirty-five men of "F" Company, held a kopje one thousand two hundred yards from the station buildings occupied by the remainder of the garrison. Heavy firing continued for seven hours, but the Boers found the shooting of the 58th so steady that they did not venture to rush either kopje or station and withdrew on the approach of the 12th Lancers and 62nd Battery from Modder River. For this affair Captain Godley received the Distinguished Service Order.

Assisted by the infantry, the engineers managed to complete the bridge by 10th December, but this necessary delay had enabled the Boers to reorganize, and a large force, under General Cronje, had taken up a strong position at Magersfontein to make one final bid to prevent the relief of Kimberley. Lord Methuen ordered the bombardment of this position on the afternoon of 10th November, and the Highland Brigade received orders to march across the veldt by night to the left flank of Cronje's position and to attack at dawn on the 11th. Bad weather and difficult ground delayed the advance of the Highlanders in massed formation, and just at the moment of deployment the Boers opened fire from trenches upon the closely packed ranks, which resulted in a costly repulse. The Guards covered the withdrawal and protected the right flank.

**Action at Enslin
Station, 7th
December, 1899.**

**Battle of
Magersfontein,
11th December,
1899.**

In the meantime the 58th and 5th Fusiliers were employed in protecting camp and making a frontal demonstration, but though they approached to within one thousand yards of the enemy's position, they did not come under fire. Until late in the day they were under the impression that the attack on the right flank had been a brilliant success.

The hopes of an early relief of Kimberley were dashed to the ground, and Lord Methuen withdrew his division to the Modder River, where he prepared a fortified position, secure against attack.

After Magersfontein there was a long and weary wait for reinforcements, it being evident that the forces in the field were not sufficient to make the wide turning movements necessary to dislodge the large commandos of Boers posted in such strong natural fortresses. The business of Lord Methuen's division was, therefore, to contain the Boer force before Kimberley and prevent a further invasion of the colony. The work was monotonous and required constant watchfulness; almost daily artillery fire was exchanged with the enemy, but the range was too long to be effective against the British camp, and the result merely relieved the monotony of camp life and worried the enemy, who on occasions expended much rifle ammunition repulsing imaginary night attacks. The Boers never attempted to molest camp by a counter-attack.

Though impatient at the delay, the troops were in good spirits; the river provided excellent bathing, most necessary owing to the frequent dust storms which smothered everything. There were plagues of flies, swarms of locusts and deluges of rain, and enteric fever was prevalent. Tents were now available, except for troops on outpost. The outpost line consisted of shallow trenches and sangars, for the ground was so hard that crowbars were more useful than shovels.

On Christmas Day a general parade was held, and the Queen's message of good wishes was read; and in the evening just before "Lights Out," there was a spontaneous expression of loyalty from the troops, the National Anthem being started and taken up throughout the camp.

Meanwhile, on other portions of the front severe reverses had been suffered at Stormberg and Colenso. These three reverses all together constituted what became known as "Black Week," and ended the campaign of 1899. The war was developing in a most unsatisfactory way and the outlook was most discouraging. At last, however, the Empire had been aroused and the Cabinet at home realized the magnitude of the task in hand. Magnificent contingents were sent from Australia, New Zealand, Canada and other parts of the Empire, the men coming forward in numbers as volunteers, just as they were to do later in the Great War. At home the despatch of reinforcements was hurried forward, and with them came Field-Marshal Lord Roberts, V.C., to take supreme command, with Lord Kitchener as his Chief of Staff.

In December, 1899, the following order was published :—" Her Majesty's Government have decided to accept offers of service in South Africa from the Volunteers. A carefully selected company of 110 rank and file, officered by one captain and three subalterns, will be raised for each Line battalion serving in South Africa from the Volunteer battalions of the Territorial Regiment. These Volunteers will take the place in the Line battalion of the company serving as Mounted Infantry. The Volunteer battalions will also maintain a waiting company in reserve at home."

The 1st Volunteer Battalion were soon ready with their company, which arrived in South Africa on 24th February, 1900, under command of Captain W. Hughes, and at once proceeded to join the 58th at Kimberley, which had been captured ten days earlier. As the 58th had formed their mounted infantry detachments from all companies, the Volunteer special service company took its place in the Regiment as an extra company, being known as " I " Company. Lieutenants W. B. S. Hickson and A. T. Page also arrived with the company, and other officers who joined later in the war were Lieutenant T. H. Walker (9th March, 1901), Lieutenant H. W. Jackson (19th June, 1900), Lieutenant H. E. W. Burke (26th July, 1902) and Lieutenant A. H. Rice (29th February, 1902).

From 30th January reinforcements arrived daily at Modder River, and when Lord Roberts himself took over command on 9th February, his force consisted of forty thousand men. This concentration led Cronje to believe that another frontal attack would be made on the Magersfontein position. The real intention, however, was to move into the Orange Free State and cut off the Boer retreat on Bloemfontein, while Lord Methuen with the First Division, still composed of the Guards and 9th Brigades, continued to threaten the front.

General French, with the Cavalry Division, making a wide detour, relieved Kimberley on 14th February. Included in this division was the 3rd Battalion of Mounted Infantry, in which the 58th mounted detachment was serving. They were thus among the first to enter the town, though during the wonderful charge at Klip Drift their brigade was in reserve.

On 17th February troops from Modder River found the Magersfontein position evacuated, but Cronje had delayed his retreat too long, and by 19th February was surrounded by Lord Roberts' divisions and surrendered at Paardeberg with four thousand burghers on 27th February, the anniversary of Majuba.

The transport of the First Division had been transferred to the force marching across country on Bloemfontein, and on 18th March Lord Methuen, with the 9th Brigade, moved by rail to Kimberley. The 58th camped at Dronfield, about six miles beyond, a refreshing change to open clean country

after the dust of Modder River. While at Dronfield the 58th were joined by the Volunteer company on 20th March.

During the thirty days from 11th February to 13th March the whole military aspect of the war had changed. Kimberley had been relieved, Cronje's army defeated, Bloemfontein occupied and Cape Colony almost cleared of the enemy. Meanwhile, in the eastern theatre, Ladysmith had been relieved and General Botha's army had fallen back.

Transport being once more available, Lord Methuen moved into the Orange Free State, the 58th arriving at Boshof after a three days' march on 31st March. It was a typical Boer town with wide grassy streets, shady trees and single-storied houses.

**Operations in the
Orange Free
State.**

Nearly all the men had been commandeered to fight, and their families were necessarily supplied with food by the British authorities. The camp was a short distance outside the town, which might only be entered by soldiers supplied with a pass. All purchases were paid for in cash, to the evident surprise of the civil population, who were much impressed by the behaviour of the British soldiers and showed little hostility.

Here the 58th remained until the 13th May, taking part in some detached column movements, including the repulse of an attack on a convoy returning from Zwakoppiesfontein. The period of big engagements had now ceased, and only small encounters remain to be reported, together with almost ceaseless marching.

During April the Eighth Division arrived to garrison Kimberley and protect the lines of communication, and on 14th May Lord Methuen marched north-east through the Orange Free State towards Kronstadt. His column consisted of the 9th Infantry Brigade under Major-General C. W. Douglas (1st Northumberland Fusiliers (5th), the 58th, 1st Loyal North Lancashire Regiment (47th) and four Militia companies of the South Wales Borderers), Lord Chesham's Brigade of Yeomanry and some artillery. Rations for sixteen days were carried besides driven cattle for fresh meat. In addition to the regimental mule wagons, there were some two hundred wagons, each drawn by a team of sixteen oxen driven by Kaffirs. The kit allowed on the transport included two blankets and a greatcoat for each man; a jersey and canvas shoes were carried rolled in a waterproof sheet on the back of the waistbelt, while washing kit, sleeping cap, etc., were carried in a haversack on the back. Officers' kits were limited strictly to thirty-five pounds, including valise and blankets.

One day's march differed little from that of the next, and after a fifteen-mile march over the monotonous rolling undulations of the veldt each camp seemed almost identical with that which had been occupied the previous night. Marches were commenced before dawn, the brigade assembly point being marked by signal lamps placed in a triangle. The ox-wagon convoy, consisting of some two hundred long wagons each with a span of sixteen oxen, moved

distinct from the fighting column, often starting earlier, protected by its own escort. When rivers were encountered delays of this convoy and congestion were often inevitable ; wheels often sank to their axles in the soft sand or mud of the rivers, or trek-chains or shaft-poles were broken, necessitating the unloading of wagons. In consequence the convoy rarely reached camp before dark and was passed by the fighting column during the day's march.

Infantry battalions marched in column of companies, whose sections were in fours, led by their section commanders. This method had been introduced by General Bengough, and the battalion moved off on the command " Advance in Bengough formation." All superfluous drill orders were discarded, signals being used instead, but march discipline was perfect and straggling unknown. An officer of the 58th, describing the march, writes as follows :—

" Each hour we halt for ten minutes, the hours pass by monotonously, the men talk little for there is nothing to talk about, they tramp mechanically along, and men have been known to go to sleep as they march. Even an occasional enemy shell is welcomed as a change ; their light guns sometimes have a long-range shot at the column, but their shells seldom burst. The Kaffir drivers accelerate their wagons as they hear the swish of the projectile, calling for humorous remarks from the soldiers ; the spell has been broken and the men talk and laugh again."

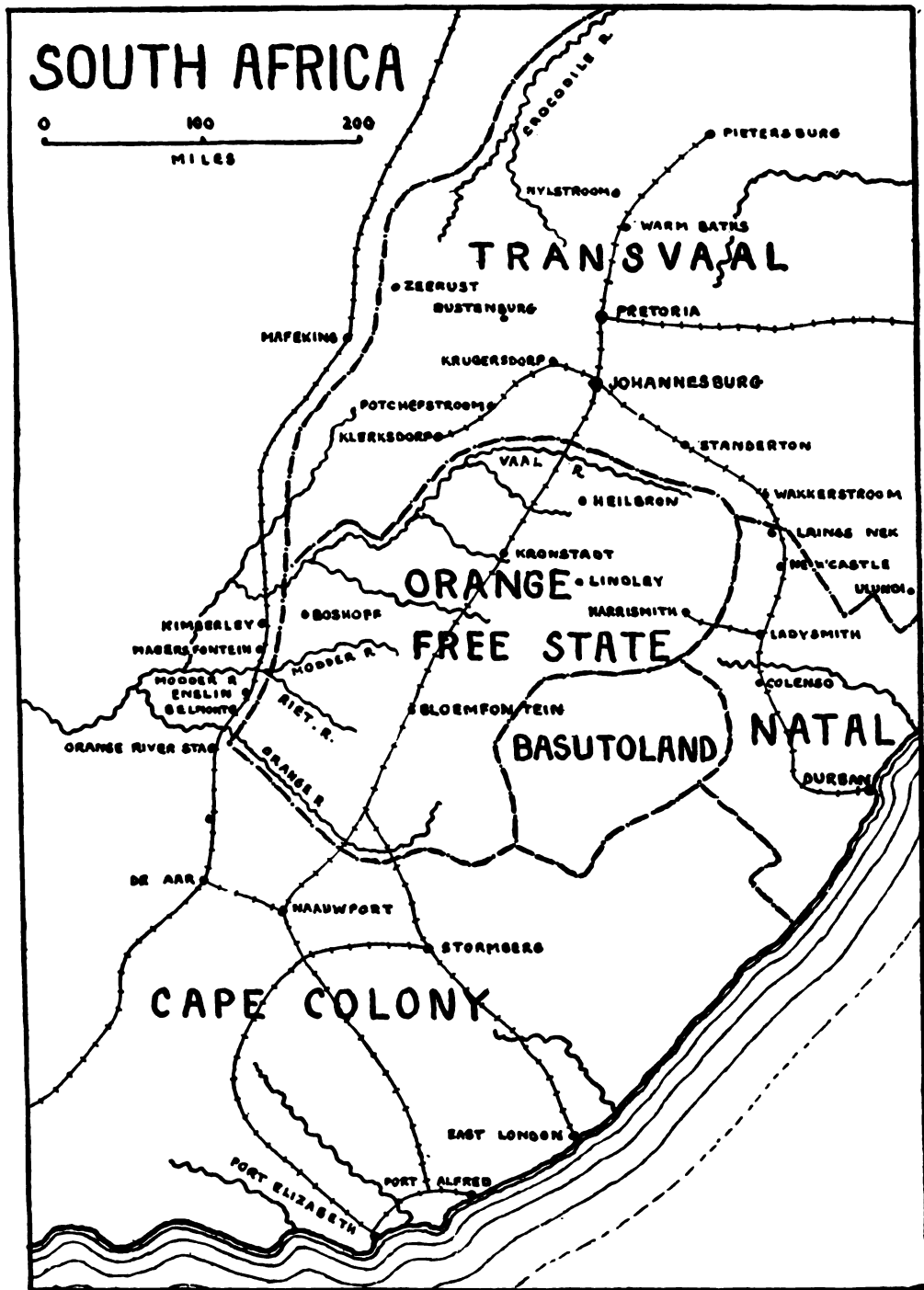
The account of the doings of the 58th during this period is little more than a record of dates and distances. Though constantly in pursuit of Boer commandos, they seldom came under fire, and on 28th May, Kronstadt, on the main Bloemfontein—Pretoria railway, was reached.

Two days later orders were received to proceed at once to the relief of the Highland Brigade, which was in difficulties at Heilbron, fifty miles to the north-east. After marching ten miles a further message was received that the Irish Yeomanry were besieged at Lindley and the route was changed, but although the infantry marched forty-four miles in fifty-one hours, they arrived too late to effect a rescue. In seventeen days the Division had marched 225 miles. From Lindley the march was continued to Heilbron where the Highland Brigade was relieved on 8th June.

During the advance of our army many Boers had slipped through the net, and these, under Generals Delarey and de Wet, had become a particular menace to our communications which linked Cape Town and Pretoria. The thousand-mile line could only be held lightly, and Lord Methuen's division was hurried hither and thither wherever danger was threatened. The 58th were on the move almost daily between Heilbron and Kronstadt, to which town they returned on 14th July.

Generals de Wet and Delarey now transferred their attentions farther north, and on 15th July the 58th moved with the First Division by rail to Krugersdorp, near Johannesburg, to take up once more the pursuit of the elusive Boer generals. " In one

**The Pursuit of
De Wet.**



important respect the numerous, though trivial, conflicts in the pursuit of de Wet differed from the battles in the earlier stages of the war. The British had learned their lesson so thoroughly that they often turned the tables on their instructors. Again and again the surprise was effected not by the nation of hunters, but by the British, whose want of cunning and veldt craft had so long been a matter of derision and merriment."⁸

On 18th July the battalion were on the move again from Krugersdorp northwards towards Rustenburg. The Boers were driven from Olifants Nek on 21st July, Rustenburg was relieved and the force moved back southwards, again reaching Potchefstroom on 30th July. They were not to stay here long, for news was received of de Wet moving north and that he had crossed the Vaal.

Lord Methuen, with the 58th and two companies of the Northumberland Fusiliers and some artillery, left Potchefstroom on 6th August for Scandinavian Drift to head off the Boer general. The following day two companies of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers and two companies of the Royal Scots Fusiliers also joined the force. An action ensued with de Wet's rearguard at Tigerfontein on the 7th, the enemy being driven from his position by the Scots and Welsh Fusiliers; the killed included a Northamptonshire Volunteer, who had been left in hospital at Potchefstroom, but had begged to come on with the Royal Scots Fusiliers to rejoin the column.

For the next few days Lord Methuen kept close on the heels of his elusive enemy. On the 9th, after a march of twenty-three miles, de Wet's rearguard was overtaken at Buffelshoek, some wagons and cattle were captured, but although the 58th, who were leading the 9th Brigade, marched eight miles in two hours, no decisive engagement could be forced. On the 10th twenty-four miles were covered and the Boers shelled as they crossed the Gatsrand, and the following day Frederickstad was reached after a further twenty-three miles.

Day after day the pursuit continued, Methuen's tired soldiers pounding along over the burning veldt, footsore and with bloodshot eyes, thirsty and choked with dust. On the 12th thirty miles were covered and on the 13th twenty-six. On the 14th twenty-seven miles were marched to cut off de Wet's retreat by the Megato Pass, but the Boer leader turned suddenly eastwards and escaped through Olifants Nek, from which the garrison had unfortunately been withdrawn.

From the 9th to the 14th, a period of six days, the force had marched 154 miles, an average of twenty-six miles a day, or 154 miles in 144 hours, and had engaged the enemy four times, in addition to which the men were on outpost every third night.

After a short rest, Lord Methuen marched westwards to Mafeking, arriving there on 28th August. Lord Kitchener, who had been placed in command of the troops pursuing de Wet, complimented the 9th Brigade on its marching, which had "surpassed that of any other infantry brigade."

Clearing the
South-Western
Transvaal.

On 1st September the Transvaal was annexed by proclamation, and ten days later President Kruger took train across the border into Portuguese territory and sailed for Holland. Organized resistance had now been overcome, and the regular warfare of the Republics had changed to guerrilla fighting, conducted with skill and energy by large Boer forces well led by such able commanders as Botha, Delarey, de Wet, Hertzog, Smuts, Beyers and other determined fighters who refused to yield. Commandos moved rapidly all over the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, and even Cape Colony was raided.

Strong mobile British columns pursued these commandos, breaking them up by degrees. The Boers seldom made a stand which permitted a decisive action to be fought, and being able to live on the country they were freed of the difficulties of transport. Consequently it became necessary for our troops to clear systematically vast areas by rounding up cattle and bringing in food supplies, while the old men, women and children of the civil population were removed to concentration camps, where they were clothed and fed.

To Lord Methuen was given the task of clearing the country between Rustenburg, Zeerust, Mafeking and Klerksdorp. After ten days at Mafeking, resting and refitting, the 58th were once more on the move, forming part of two flying columns which contained a large proportion of Imperial Yeomanry. The infantry of the first column, under Lord Methuen, comprised the 1st Battalion North Lancashire Regiment and "D," "E," "G" and "H" Companies of the 58th under Major Fawcett; that of the second column, under General Douglas, consisted of the 1st Battalion Northumberland Fusiliers, with "A," "B," "C," "F" and the Volunteer companies of the 58th, under Colonel Denny. On 18th October the 58th were reunited in General Douglas's column, the Northumberland Fusiliers transferred to Lord Methuen, and the North Lancashires divided between the two columns.

The columns were continually on the move, marching one or two hours before sunrise, halting four to six hours during the day to allow the trek oxen of the wagons to graze, then moving on to the night's camp, which was often not reached until after dark. The nights were bitterly cold; bivouacs were in the open without tents; baggage consisted of a greatcoat, blanket, spare shirt and socks, and men carried a waterproof and jersey. The soldiers became as hard as nails; falling out on the march was almost unheard of. Though tired and hungry, they were ever on the alert, and there were no instances of surprise attacks on their camps and bivouacs. So monotonous was the day's trek that the opportunity of firing a few rounds made men who had tramped in silence talk and laugh again. This opportunity was provided by the Boer snipers who occasionally attempted to interfere with the column. The sound of the shot was the only indication of their position, and a section of the flank guard company would get the order, "Volleys—Ready—1,000—at the sound of the last shot—Present—Fire!" The fire drill was perfect, and all triggers pressed simultaneously.

The most anxious duty was that of rearguard which, delayed by ox wagons broken down or stuck in river drifts, often arrived in camp several hours after the main body.

During the latter part of October there were minor operations round Zeerust. Leaving here on 1st November, General Douglas's column marched southwards to Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp. During the preceding seven months the 58th had marched 1,900 miles, an average of nearly ten miles a day.

On 9th December, 1900, the 9th Brigade was broken up, and its various units moved to different parts of the country, where they provided garrisons to protect communications and property. **Garrison Duty (December, 1900, to May, 1902).** The system of blockhouses had been instituted to control long isolated sections of railway and tracts of country. These blockhouses, which were generally garrisoned by a non-commissioned officer and a few men, were distributed at short intervals in view of each other, and consisted, as a rule, of a building made of a double thickness of corrugated iron with shingle in between to render it bullet-proof; the building was surrounded by a strong barbed-wire fence, and sometimes they were provided with searchlights.

Between December, 1900, and March, 1901, the 58th were distributed in defensive posts in the south-west Transvaal—Headquarters, with "A" and "G" Companies, under Colonel Denny, at Klerksdorp, "F" and "H" Companies at Koekemoer, under Major Fawcett, "D" and "E" Companies, under Captains Skinner and Ripley, at Cole Mine Drift, "B" Company, under Captain Lloyd at Wolmerans Drift, and "C" Company under Captain Prichard at Vermaas Drift.

A night attack on Klerksdorp was repulsed on 29th January, and "D" and "E" Companies, under Captain G. E. Ripley, at Cole Mine Drift had occasional patrol encounters.

Small detachments of Boers still had to be hunted down, and for this purpose a mobile column was formed under Colonel Benson. "B" and "C" Companies, under Captains C. S. Prichard and A. A. Lloyd, formed part of this column and were present at several engagements in which they distinguished themselves.

At the end of the year a number of decorations were awarded to the Regiment. Lieutenant-Colonel Denny became a Companion of the Order of the Bath; Captain A. A. Lloyd and Lieutenant C. W. Barton were awarded the Distinguished Service Order; Captain Little was promoted Brevet Major, and the Distinguished Conduct Medal was given to Colour-Sergeant A. Goodman, Lance-Corporal C. Rumble, and to Privates D. Thistle, C. Hall, J. Kidd and F. A. Clarke.

At the end of March the whole battalion was concentrated at Pretoria, whence it moved to the Northern Transvaal with headquarters at Nylstroom, finding detachments to guard the railway line between Warm Baths and

Pietersberg. From time to time companies were attached to mobile columns rounding up scattered Boer commandos in the Northern Transvaal. While here, Major Prichard took command of an armoured train (No. 17) with a crew of men from the battalion which patrolled between Pietersberg and Pretoria.

In February, 1902, battalion headquarters moved from Nylstroom to Pietersberg, the northern terminus of the railway. While here it was heard that Fort Edward, a post north of Pietersberg, was in difficulties, and on 21st March Colonel H. C. Denny left Pietersberg with a relieving column consisting of 100 men of the 58th, 100 of the Wiltshire Regiment, 325 Colonial mounted troops and two guns. After a two-days march, the enemy, numbering some four hundred men, were encountered in a strong position and the column was then forced to withdraw as the Boers held the only water supply available within twenty miles. On this occasion the infantry marched twenty miles during the night, were deployed during the day, and marched back to camp, covering some forty miles in twenty-five hours. Some empty mule wagons were sent to meet the detachment and to help them on their march back; the men of the 58th at first refused to use them, then some reluctantly accepted the lift, but twenty men preferred to march the whole distance. The 58th had a record that their men never fell out, which they were not going to break. Fort Edward still held out, and a week later was relieved by another column, in which the 58th also provided a detachment.

During April, detachments of the 58th took part in rounding-up operations in the neighbourhood of Pylkop and Molips Poort. One of the columns included "National Scouts" who were Boers who had come over to the British side commanded by General Celliers. Thus, at the end of the war some one hundred of the 58th were fighting under the orders of a Boer commander.

Negotiations for peace had been proceeding for some time, and at the end of May the peace delegates met once more. Botha was for settlement; de Wet still favoured resistance, but Delarey, that "Old Lion of the Western Transvaal," gave the casting vote for peace, and terms were finally agreed on 31st May. The resistance the Boers had put up can only be admired, and our soldiers had found in them a foe they could respect.

**The End of the
War, 31st May,
1902.**

The abuses which led to hostilities are forgotten. All that Englishmen remember is that a great and powerful nation fought a small and isolated people, and paid dearly for victory by three long years of war.

It should be remembered that the end in view was not military conquest of the Transvaal—as was well understood by Lord Roberts, who endeavoured by every means to manoeuvre the Boers into submission. By more ruthless methods the war might have been ended earlier, but a conquered people would never have rallied to defend the Empire in 1914.

Few wars have been fought with less bitterness. Isolated instances of treachery certainly occurred, but the Boers won frank admiration by the skill, courage, and chivalry they so often displayed. They had refused to recognize the international law of warfare, in the matter of uniform, etc., and their fighting troops could become civil non-combatants by merely hiding their rifles and bandoliers, but no Uitlander women need have fled from the Republics, and with very few exceptions prisoners were treated with consideration.

The Regiment have reason to be proud of the honour on their Colours, "South Africa, 1899-1902." They should be proud, not only of the price paid by hard campaigning, but for that record of good conduct they share with other regiments. The kindly chivalry of the British soldier then shown made it possible afterwards for their late adversary to become their comrade in arms.⁶

The casualties during the war amounted to 15 non-commissioned officers and men killed in action and 6 officers and 49 other ranks wounded. In addition, 71 men died of disease and 427 were invalided during the campaign. The honours⁷ gained were as follows:—C.B., 1; D.S.O., 2; D.C.M., 8; Mentioned in Despatches, 16 officers and 15 non-commissioned officers.

In December, 1903, a Memorial window and brass were unveiled in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Northampton to the men who lost their lives during the war.⁸

Soon after the declaration of war the 3rd (Militia) Battalion was embodied and proceeded to Barossa Barracks, Aldershot, under command of Colonel S. G. Stopford Sackville. When the disasters of December, 1899, became known, the Militia battalions were told that, while they had no liability for service abroad, they might volunteer for service outside the United Kingdom. In response to this message, out of a total strength of 29 officers and 686 other ranks, only one officer and 29 men found themselves unable to offer their services. On this occasion, however, the offer was not accepted, and in March the battalion moved to Portland, whence many drafts were sent to the 2nd Battalion and other units in South Africa. After nine months at Portland the battalion was disembodied on 5th December, 1900.

On 17th March, 1902, the battalion was once more embodied, and this time their offer for foreign service was accepted, the announcement appearing in the *London Gazette* of 4th April, 1902, in the following terms:—"His Majesty the King has been graciously pleased to accept the voluntary offer made by the undermentioned Militia Battalion to serve at a station out of the United Kingdom, viz.: 3rd Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment."

Embarkation took place on 8th and 9th April, the men proceeding to South Africa in the *Harlech Castle* and *Manilla*. It was the *Harlech Castle* which had previously taken the 2nd Battalion to Cape Town. On 1st May they arrived at Cape Town and were entrained the same day for Victoria Road,

where they were made responsible for the line of blockhouses between that place and Carnarvon, a distance of about eighty-two miles. Each company was given a section extending from ten to fifteen miles, with numerous blockhouses. On the declaration of peace the battalion was concentrated at Stellenbosch until 3rd September, 1902, then they embarked for England in the *Scot*.

The 58th remained at Pretoria for two years after declaration of peace, and while here showed that their standard of musketry had not deteriorated. In October, 1902, at the Transvaal Army Rifle Meeting, General Lyttelton, the Commander-in-Chief, made the following remarks in his final speech :—" I heartily congratulate the Northamptonshire Regiment on their successes. In the chief events, with the exception of two, the Regiment has carried all before it."

**The 58th
Returns to
England.**

Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Denny, C.B., completed his command on 17th March, 1903, and Major T. D'O. Snow, from the 48th, was promoted to succeed him, but was appointed A.Q.M.G. of the 4th Army Corps on 2nd June, and Lieutenant-Colonel A. C. Bolton then assumed command of the 58th.

On 6th May, 1904, the battalion once more returned to England, embarking at Cape Town, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel A. C. Bolton, and on arrival were stationed at Bordon, where their power of marching and march discipline received particular notice. In 1906 a move was made to Colchester; marching continued to receive particular attention and a new formation for route marching was introduced. All officers and supernumeraries, who previously had marched on the flanks, were covered off in the column of fours and ranks were kept strictly closed up, forming a narrow compact body moving on the left side of the road. This system was brought to the notice of the Army Council, and orders were issued for the whole Army to adopt the method of marching introduced by the 58th. It can thus truly be said that the Regiment introduced the modern method of marching, and that they demonstrated it themselves is shown in *The Times* of 14th October, 1909, where it is stated in the comments on Army manœuvres: " In march discipline the 2nd Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment was unsurpassed."

On 2nd June, 1907, Lieutenant-Colonel E. F. Brereton, D.S.O., succeeded Lieutenant-Colonel A. C. Bolton. In November, 1908, the battalion was inspected by Lord Methuen, its old South African Divisional Commander, who expressed his high appreciation of its efficiency, with special reference to march discipline, and added that he considered the battalion one of the best he had ever had in his command.

On 25th June, 1910, the jubilee of the Colours of the 58th was celebrated at Colchester. The ceremony of Trooping the Colours was performed in the Abbey fields followed by a march past in column and quarter columns and an advance in review order. The general salute was taken by Major-General D'Oyly Snow, the Brigade Commander, who had been appointed to command the 58th in 1903. He, however, handed over the honour of receiving the

salute to Colonel C. E. Foster, senior officer of the 58th present, who had carried the Colours when presented fifty years before. With him stood Captain Sir William Russell, who had joined the Regiment prior to any present.

On 16th January the battalion left Colchester for Malta, and was quartered on arrival in barracks at Floriana and Fort Manoel. In March they met the 1st Battalion for the first time for many years, as it touched at Malta homeward bound from Aden, leaving a draft of three officers and 310 men for the 2nd Battalion.

Malta and
Egypt (1911 to
1914).

Lieutenant-Colonel E. F. Brereton, D.S.O., on completing his period of command, was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel C. S. Prichard, D.S.O., in June, 1911. During the next two years the battalion carried everything before it both in training and sport. It took place as the best shooting battalion in Malta each year, while in sport it won all the cross-country running events—regimental, company and individual—besides the Governor's Football Challenge Cup. At the same time it had the best health record and was the most sober unit on the island.

In January, 1914, the battalion was transferred to Egypt and, disembarking at Alexandria, was stationed in huts at Mustapha on the exact site of the battle they had fought with distinction in 1801.

During the winter 1911-1912 each of the eight companies produced four complete teams to play every other company in the football tournament, and the following season six teams for each company competed, so that between five hundred and six hundred men were playing for their companies.

At the same time the institutes were developed; extra light and furniture were provided and books and papers supplied. A Dramatic Society gave frequent entertainments, whist drives and dances were held, and (in October, 1911) a regimental magazine, *The Steelback*, first published in 1890, was restarted.

In March, 1913, the battalion took part in combined naval and military manoeuvres; they went to sea in the battleship *Britannia*, and landed during the operations.

In October, 1913, the battalion had been reorganized into four companies¹⁰ and while in Egypt two fifteen-pounder field guns were taken over, gunners and drivers being trained to form an effective artillery section.

Here the battalion remained until the outbreak of the Great War on 4th August, 1914.





Officer's Hat Plate,
circa 1816-1828.

Officer's Helmet Plate,
1877-1881.

Officer's Helmet Plate,
1881-1901.

CHAPTER XXVII

THE VOLUNTEERS AND TERRITORIALS

EARLY VOLUNTEER MOVEMENTS—THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEERS AND LOCAL MILITIA (1797-1814)—THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE FENCIBLES (1794-1802)—THE VOLUNTEER MOVEMENT OF 1859—FORMATION OF LOCAL CORPS (1859)—REVIEW BY QUEEN VICTORIA (1860)—THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEER RIFLES (1860)—THE FIRST CAMP (1864)—THE CARDWELL SYSTEM (1881)—REVIEW AT WINDSOR—THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR—THE TERRITORIAL FORCE (1908).

THERE are records from the earliest times of the formation of bands of volunteers at critical moments in the history of the nation. The records of volunteers in Northamptonshire date back as far as 1660, when a company was formed under command of Mildmay Fane, Earl of Westmorland. It consisted of two troops, the first commanded by Charles, Lord Spencer, and the second by Sir Roger Norwich, Bart., who was Member of Parliament for Northamptonshire in the third Parliament of Charles II.

**Early
Volunteer
Movements.**

It was not, however, until 1744 that Volunteer units were organized on a really national basis. At this time England was at war with France and threatened by invasion, and authority was given to the Lord-Lieutenants of counties and the Mayors of towns to form Volunteer Associations for local defence.

It was the county of Northampton which formed the earliest of these Associations, the proposal being dated 4th April, 1744, and worded as follows :—

" We, whose names are underwritten do humbly desire that we may be permitted to form our selves into a Body to fight in defence of His Majesty's Crown, the Protestant Religion and the Liberties of Great Britain, against Popery and French Slavery, under the command of His Grace the Duke of Montagu as our Captain, and such other officers as he shall appoint. And we do engage each of us to Mount our selves upon our own Horses, and cloath our selves in uniform Cloaths at our own Expence. And to be ready when call'd upon by our Captain to Serve within the Realm, where ever His Majesty's Service shall require, upon our being paid Troopers Pay during the time we shall be employ'd and being paid for our Horses if lost in the Service."

The Association was signed by five hundred and thirty "substantial freeholders, yeomen and yeomen's sons, etc."

The Northampton Association is notable as one of the earliest origins of the Yeomanry force, and also for the fact that, unlike most associations, they

volunteered for service in any part of the realm and not only in their own town or area.

In 1745, on the Jacobite risings taking place in the north, local regiments, sometimes called "County Regiments," were raised to meet the threat of the advance of the Highlanders under Prince Charles Edward, who reached Derby. These regiments were disbanded after the Jacobite defeat at Culloden. One at least of these regiments was raised by Lord Montagu, then Lord-Lieutenant of the county, and seems likely to have been raised on the nucleus of the Association.

On the declaration of peace with France in 1748, the Association of 1744 appears to have lapsed, but in 1779, and whenever England was in danger, Volunteer units were formed for as long as the threat lasted. The French Revolutionary wars in particular were the cause of the creation of a great number of Volunteer units, and these for the first time were regularized by Act of Parliament in the various "Reserve Forces Acts" passed between 1794 and 1804.

The volunteering at this time took many forms; some enlisted as individuals in the Militia, some joined the Militia as formed companies, and in addition independent units of Volunteers and Fencibles were formed.

During the period 1797-1798 companies of infantry varying in strength from sixty to one hundred were formed in the towns and many villages of Northamptonshire.

**The
Northampton-
shire Volunteers
and Local Militia.**

The method of raising the companies was for the chief citizens of a town or village to call a meeting, raise subscriptions, and nominate their own officers to command. Application was then forwarded through the Lord-Lieutenant of the county to the King, who accepted their services. The citizens paid their own expenses from local subscriptions and made their own rules for the regulation of the corps.

Daventry appears to have been the first in the field, the rules for the "Daventry Volunteers" being approved at a meeting held at the Wheat Sheaf Hotel on 15th June, 1797. The rules were as follows:—

"First. That each member do immediately furnish himself with such uniform, Arms and Accoutrements as directed by the Officers of the Corps.

"Second. That Monday in each week being appointed by the officers to be the Field Day, each member do, on that day, appear on the Parade, in Full Uniform, and under Arms, exactly at Nine o'clock; fifteen minutes after which the roll shall be called, and each absentee, unless sufficient cause be by him shown and allowed by the commanding officer, shall be fined one shilling.

"Third. That Commissioned officers if absent on Field Days without good cause, do forfeit two shillings and sixpence.

"Fourth. That each member who does not on the field days appear on the Parade clean, his hair powdered, and neat in person, Dress, Arms and Accoutrements, as becoming a soldier shall forfeit one shilling.

"Fifth. That no Member do talk or behave in any manner unsteady whilst under Arms, under Penalty of one shilling.

"Sixth. That if any member shall withdraw himself from the corps without such reason as shall prove satisfactory to the officers and the Committee he shall forfeit Five Guineas.

"Seventh. That if any substitute shall withdraw himself from or be deemed by the Committee improper to be continued in the Corps, the Principal shall provide another substitute or be subject to the Fine imposed by the preceeding rule.

"Eighth. That the sum of Five Shillings be paid by each member on admission into the corps for the purpose of defraying such extraordinary expense as may occur, and that such subscription shall be expended as may by the Committee be hereafter judged necessary.

"Ninth. That the Fines be collected in each Month, and paid into the hands of the Commanding Officer, to be applied to the service of the Corps."

Northampton quickly followed Daventry, raising a troop of light horse and a company of infantry, to be followed later by other companies. Other towns and villages also provided their share, the Kettering Volunteers parading in full uniform for the first time on 27th August, 1797.

The Northampton Volunteers were commanded by Doctor William Kerr, who had been a Lieutenant in the 26th Regiment and afterwards surgeon to the Royal Horse Guards. At the age of twenty-six he severed his connection with the "Blues" and settled in Northampton, where he speedily gained a great reputation. He was a great leader and organizer and largely responsible for the erection of the "New Infirmary" in the town, and died in his eighty-seventh year in 1824 after sixty years of public service as physician and surgeon in the town of Northampton. He was buried in a vault at the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, and against the north wall of the west end of the nave there is a large mural slab giving details of his services.

His son, Major J. M. Kerr, who was to become a General in the Army, and was born in 1766, was responsible for raising the Northamptonshire Regiment of Fencible Infantry in 1794.

On 27th September, 1798, Colours were presented to the Northampton Volunteers by the Countess of Northampton. The whole corps, cavalry and infantry, were drawn up on the Market Hill, attended by the band belonging to the Royal Regiment of Horse Guards, and an escort of the same Regiment, "who obligingly offered their services to keep the ground." After the necessary arrangements, a party of horse and foot advanced to receive the Colours. The Countess of Northampton (attended by the Earl; Mr. Dickens, one of the county members; the Hon. Spencer Percival, one of the members for the town; and many ladies and gentlemen of the town and county) then presented the Colours to Major Kerr, after which they were consecrated by the Rev. Mr. Segrave. After presentation the Colours were delivered to Cornet Osborne and Ensign Collins, the band playing "God Save the King."

The escort with the Colours having rejoined the corps, the whole marched "to the Race Ground," where they were reviewed by the Lord-Lieutenant of the county and, notwithstanding very unfavourable weather, went through the whole manœuvres and evolutions in a manner which "reflected on them the highest degree of credit."

"The review being concluded, the association returned to the town, and the Colours were deposited at the Major's. After which the Lord-Lieutenant, Mr. Dickens, the Hon. Spencer Percival, the Mayor and Aldermen and many others sat down with the members of the Association to an elegant dinner provided for the occasion at the Angel Inn. A ball at the Peacock Inn, in the evening, which was attended by a numerous and genteel company, crowned the festivities of the day."

One of these Colours has had a strange history. As will be seen later, it was twice presented to the Regiment, and on the disbandment of the Northampton Volunteer Horse was placed in St. Sepulchre's Church, where it was hung in the Round near the memorial to Doctor Kerr. During the restoration of the church it was moved for safe keeping to Vicar Butlin's house and, on his death, was wrongfully sold by auction and purchased by a publican in the town, in whose possession it remained for many years. It was discovered and purchased from his widow by Captain T. Shepard for his regiment, and is now framed and hanging in the officers' room at the Clare Street Drill Hall.

The old Colours which had been laid up on the declaration of peace in 1802 were re-presented in 1804, and at the same time another guidon was presented. It is assumed that when first presented it was a corps Colour, as it is evident that each corps had its own Colour, for it is recorded that a Colour was presented to the Thrapston Corps on 11th August, 1800. In 1804 it is assumed that the guidon of 1798 became the Regimental Colour, and that the new guidon became the King's Colour.

The following is a contemporary description of the presentation which took place in 1804 :—

"*June 4th, 1804.*—Monday, June 4th, 1804, being the anniversary of His Majesty's birthday, was celebrated here with great loyalty, and observed with rather peculiar attention; the Northampton Volunteer Infantry, under the command of Major Locock, who had been embodied for fourteen days, and exercised constantly with the Castle Ashby Volunteers, under the command of Captain Scriven, and the Finedon Volunteers, under the command of Captain Sir William Dolben, having appropriated that day to receive their Colours. About ten o'clock the Northampton Volunteers paraded, with great order and regularity in the Market Square, and thence proceeded to All Saints Church; where they were received by the other Corps, who had taken their stations there early, to keep the avenues quiet to the altar, on which the Colours were deposited. The Lord-Lieutenant of the county, the three Commandants, and the Clergyman, having taken their places within the rails of the chancel,

and the military immediately before the altar, a very excellent prayer of Thanksgiving for the recovery of His Majesty's health was read by the Rev. Mr. Tufnell, the Chaplain. At the conclusion of which a beautiful hymn set to the music of 'God Save the King' was sung. Afterwards Mr. Tufnell consecrated the Colours in a most solemn manner, with a very masterly prayer. One of the Colours being only resumed, the form of presentation was dispensed with; the Commandant therefore delivered them himself into the hands of the Ensigns, accompanying them with an earnest and impressive address to the Corps, nearly to the following effect :—

“ ‘ I here most solemnly pledge myself, in the name of the Corps, whose direction I am honoured with, and in the presence of my Creator and this holy Church, to use every endeavour to deserve this trust reposed in us.’

“ Then, proceeding to deliver the Colours to the Ensigns, he continued :—

“ ‘ I deliver this, Sir, to your charge. Many of you will recollect it is an old acquaintance, formerly presented by a very excellent and virtuous Countess, the Lady of our most worthy Lord-Lieutenant; it is true, we cannot enumerate the dangers and difficulties it had encountered, but we may be allowed to boast, it has never been disgraced by division, or tarnished by disaffection.

“ ‘ To you, Sir, I commit the other, which has been happily ornamented by the ingenuity of a faithful and honest landlord of this place. I scarcely need bid you remember it as the Standard of Royalty, the Standard of our most beloved and gracious Sovereign. Each will claim your protection, particularly the latter; under whatever difficulties we are placed, these must never be forsaken—they must make part of ourselves, must be defended as ourselves, under every circumstance of danger.

“ ‘ The day you have chosen for this ceremony must, I hope, prove propitious, it being the birthday of one of the most virtuous Monarchs that ever blessed an English Throne. On this memorable occasion the whole naval and military force of the United Kingdom, are coming forward to celebrate the day; still more animating to us, nearly half a million of Volunteers are anxiously preparing to unite with us in one sentiment of general joy.

“ ‘ Can Bonaparte, with all his honour and all his conquests, boast such a rich display of fervid loyalty. How soon we may be called upon to meet our insulting foe, God only knows; I trust, however, when the moment arrives, this Corps will be found among the first to oppose the enemies of their country. Indeed, in every corner of the land in the most retired village in the Kingdom, Volunteers, of every age and pursuit, are linking together for the public good; even here, a most worthy Baronet, disdaining the ease and quiet his years required, has joined us, to assist his country's cause. Many of us have various and important duties to perform; our affections are seriously engaged by our families and relatives, but every duty common to man, save what is due to his God, must be subordinated to the one we owe to our Country; the man who in such a cause shall shrink back from his duty, does not deserve the name of Englishman—scarcely the name of man.’

"The whole ceremony concluded with the Coronation Anthem, which, considering the difficulty of procuring the able voices to accompany Mr. Barratt on the organ, was well performed."

In April, 1802, peace was declared and His Majesty dispensed with the services of the Volunteers and Yeomanry, but allowed those who were inclined to continue their services to do so.

The peace of 1802 turned out to be little more than a truce, and the following year Napoleon was making definite preparations for an invasion of England. An Act was passed for the Defence of the Realm which almost amounted to conscription. All persons between the ages of seventeen and fifty-five, whatever their rank and station, were to be trained in the use of arms and were liable to serve in any part of the country in case of invasion. In the Act was a proviso, however, that if a sufficient number were prepared to serve as Volunteers in any county the Act would be suspended.

Before the Act was passed, we are informed by the *Northampton Mercury* that upwards of six hundred Volunteers were already enrolled under the Earl of Westmorland as Colonel, the other officers being Thomas Tryon, Esq., of Bulwick, George Lynn, Esq., of Southwick, Lord Carbery, and Mr. O'Brien of Blatherwick, and that "by the zeal of the above-mentioned noblemen and gentlemen" a fine regiment one thousand strong would be enrolled in a few days.

Some forty companies of infantry and sixteen troops of cavalry were formed during the year, and a return presented to the House of Commons gives the following details:—

| <i>Volunteers.</i> | | <i>Commandant.</i> | | <i>Troops.</i> | <i>Coys.</i> | <i>Strength.</i> |
|--------------------|-----|----------------------|-----|----------------|--------------|------------------|
| Northampton | ... | William Kerr, M.D. | ... | I | — | 88 |
| Wellingborough | ... | J. Newton Goodhall | ... | I | — | 50 |
| Northamptonshire | ... | Earl Spencer | ... | II | — | 770 |
| Peterborough | ... | Earl Fitzwilliam | ... | 3 | — | 129 |
| Oundle and Cliffe | ... | Earl of Westmorland | ... | — | 7 | 630 |
| Spratton | ... | Rev. R. Crowther | ... | — | I | 65 |
| Northampton | ... | Henry Locock | ... | — | 3 | 240 |
| Castle Ashby | ... | Thos. Scriven | ... | — | I | 89 |
| Northampton | ... | Earl Spencer | ... | — | 3 | 275 |
| Finedon | ... | Sir Wm. Dolben, Bt. | ... | — | I | 68 |
| Cottesbrook | ... | Sir Wm. Langham, Bt. | ... | — | I | 120 |
| Kettering | ... | Geo. Robinson | ... | — | 3 | 202 |
| Towcester | ... | Wm. Grant | ... | — | 2 | 120 |
| Daventry | ... | John Clarke | ... | — | ? | 430 |
| Brackley | ... | R. W. Cartwright | ... | — | 6 | 522 |
| Peterborough | ... | Marquis of Exeter | ... | — | ? | 403 |
| Boughton | ... | Lord Stopford | ... | — | 4 | 266 |

At first the service of the Volunteers was to be in their own county, but afterwards it was extended to a district. The first district included the

counties of Derby, Bedford, Bucks, Berks, Leicester, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Rutland, Stafford and Warwick, but this was later changed to a district including Lincoln, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, Herts, Cambridge and Huntingdon, under the command of General Sir William Howe.

Captain Clarke accepted this arrangement, but asked that men should not be called outside the county except in the most urgent necessity.

In 1804 an Act was passed to consolidate and amend the provisions of the several Acts relating to the Volunteers, and in September the various companies were formed into two regiments, designated the 1st (East) Northamptonshire Regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel The Earl of Westmorland, and the 2nd (West) Northamptonshire Regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel John Clarke. Under this organization the companies still drilled independently, but were collected together for inspections and in case of embodiment to meet an invasion.

It is reported that His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales was pleased to signify that the Peterborough Volunteer Infantry should bear his name, and thereafter they were known as "The Soke and City of Peterborough, or Prince of Wales' Volunteers."

In addition to the drills performed in their own towns, the Volunteers were assembled for short periods of "permanent duty" for training. In September, 1806, War Office regulations were issued granting pay at 1s. a day for each day's exercise performed up to a maximum of twenty-six days in the year; 25s. per man for clothing was also allowed at the end of three years' service. This clothing grant seems to have encouraged Colonel Clarke to smarten up his regiment, for he at once issued the following order:—

"DAVENTRY VOLUNTEER INFANTRY.

"Lieut Colonel Clarke requests the superintendant of each Parish, immediately to order some Tailor, whom he may approve to make each Volunteer a new pair of Pantaloons, and Gaiters (The materials of which are to be procured from Messrs Watkins, Daventry). The old ones Lieut Col Clarke gives to each Volunteer. The Sergeants having expressed a wish to clean the Jackets, Lieut Col Clarke permits them to do so. The following prices will be allowed

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| <i>Cleaning Jacket</i> | ... | ... | 1s. |
| <i>Making Pantaloons</i> | ... | ... | 2s. |
| <i>Making Gaiters</i> | ... | ... | 1s. |

Should it happen that any Volunteer should have recently provided new Pantaloons and Gaiters, upon their being shown to the Adjutant, and a certificate of approval under his hand brought to Lieut Colonel Clarke, an allowance in money will be

made. Lieut Col Clarke requests that each Superintendant through the Sergeants, to make a return to him of the number of spare suits of Cloaths in each parish. The caps (each marked with the owners name) are to be conveyed as speedily as convenience will allow to—Crane, Hatter, Daventry, for repairs.

" Welton Place,

3rd February, 1807."

On 14th January, 1809, the Local Militia Act came into force, by which the Volunteer corps were asked to commute their service into the local Militia. Under this Act the two Volunteer regiments were divided into three of local Militia, known as the East, West and Central Regiments. The East and West Regiments continued under the command of the Earl of Westmorland and Lieutenant-Colonel Clarke, while command of the Central Regiment was given to Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas S. W. Samwell.

The minimum period of service in the new force was four years, for which each man received a bounty of two guineas. At the same time the clothing grant to the Volunteer Corps was discontinued, except for Volunteer Corps of not less than three companies of sixty men each, which were allowed, if they wished, to continue as Volunteers.

The change to Militia had a mixed reception in the county. The Castle Ashby Volunteer Infantry resigned; the Kettering Volunteer Infantry continued to serve as Volunteers; the Northampton Volunteer Infantry resigned and, on 1st August, 1809, after handing in their arms and equipment, marched to All Saints Church and there deposited their Colours and "expressed a hope (to the officiating clergyman) that no reflection upon their military conduct would prevent a future claim on them should circumstances ever again render it necessary"; the remainder of the Volunteer units appear to have been transferred to the local Militia.

At the end of the war, in 1814, the local Militia was disbanded throughout the country.

The exact terms of service of the Fencibles are rather obscure, and though some appear to have been a type of volunteer, the majority were Regular troops enlisted for service at home and for the duration of the war only. They were designed to liberate the Regular Army for service abroad. It is hardly correct, therefore, to suggest that the Fencibles were in any way the origin of the present 4th Battalion of the Regiment.

**The
Northampton-
shire Regiment
of Fencible
Infantry.**

Nevertheless, the formation of the Northampton Fencibles is not without interest. The first information we have concerning them appears in an advertisement in the *Northampton Mercury* dated 12th April, 1794, and is worded as follows :—

"FOR HIS MAJESTY'S SERVICE.

"Wanted 160 Recruits for the Northampton Fencibles. A new Corps, commanded by Major J. M. Kerr of Northampton. The ordinary bounty is 12 guineas but to stout active young men 14 or 15 guineas will be given and Handsome Clothing. Apply to Sergeant Cole at the White Horse, in Sheep Street, Northampton. Sergeants, Corporals and Drummers who have been in the King's Service, and who can provide honourable discharges, may hear of good Employment on the Recruiting Service by applying above."

Two days later a meeting was held at the George Inn, attended by the Mayor (J. Briggs) and Aldermen, who "resolved unanimously to give the utmost encouragement and support" to Major Kerr. Later in the year the strength was increased, and on 1st November, 1794, a committee of the gentlemen of Northampton was formed "to raise the Northampton Regiment of Fencible Infantry," with Major J. M. Kerr as Colonel, the strength of the Regiment to be one thousand men. The conditions of service were published in the *Northampton Mercury* of 1st November, 1794, and were as follows:—

"Same Pay, clothing, arms and accoutrements and the same allowances for bread and necessaries, as His Majesty's old established Regiments of Infantry will likewise be entitled to the following Great and Peculiar advantages.

"1. They are to serve only in Great Britain, Ireland and the islands of Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney and Sark and NO WHERE ELSE.

"2. They are on no account to be draughted into any other Regiment whatsoever.

"A Liberal Bounty will be given."

In April, 1795, the appointment of officers appeared in the *London Gazette*,¹ and during the same month the Regiment marched to Bristol. Little further is known of this corps, but they evidently served in Ireland for a period and in February, 1798, were in Armagh, and were no doubt disbanded with the other Fencibles under the warrant issued on 6th May, 1802.

After the Peninsular War the Volunteer forces were almost entirely disbanded, and for the next forty years the possibility of invasion was not considered by the general public. In 1847, however, **The Volunteer Movement, 1859.** the Duke of Wellington started a campaign to awaken the nation to the necessity of making more adequate preparations for home defence.² Gradually the public began to realize the possibility of an upheaval, and a military spirit began to permeate the nation. As the Government still refused to sanction any scheme for the enrolment of a Volunteer force for home defence, popular feeling sought an outlet through unofficial channels, and many rifle clubs were formed throughout the country.

The French menace, in abeyance during the Crimean War, was revived in

1857. The war with China, the Indian Mutiny and difficulties with the United States taxed the Regular Army to the utmost. Meanwhile the French Press became more and more menacing, and the openly expressed threats of French officers were all that was necessary to stir up the pent-up enthusiasm. In 1859 the situation became acute, and at last, on 12th May, the formation of a Volunteer Corps was authorized.

A War Office Circular, 25th May, 1859, announced: "It is evident that the object will best be attained by the enrolment of Volunteers in small bodies, or companies. . . . The nature of our country, with its numerous enclosures and other impediments to the operation of troops in line, gives peculiar importance to the Service of Volunteer riflemen, who would be intimately acquainted with the country in which they would be required to operate and could hang, with most telling effect upon the flanks and communications of a hostile army."

It will therefore be seen that, originally, the special rôle of the Volunteers was intended to be that of skirmishers, or riflemen. Instructions regarding the clothing and equipment were issued accordingly, and on no account was a red tunic, or any gold lace, to be utilised. Subject to this rule, members of the different companies and detachments were allowed to settle the details and colour of their uniforms themselves, covering approval being given by the Lord-Lieutenant of the county; green and grey were generally chosen, for the supply of which they were expected to defray the cost, in addition to that for the rifle and equipment. The uniform, which was as simple as possible, consisted of a shako or peaked cap; single-breasted tunic cut long in the skirts, trousers or knickerbockers and leather leggings; whilst the equipment needed was a waistbelt and bayonet-frog, ball-bag, containing cap pocket and a twenty-round pouch, all of either black or brown leather.

The uniform selected for the Northamptonshires thus became grey with scarlet facings.

The rule that the corps should bear the whole expense of their equipment and maintenance except in the event of their being assembled for active service necessarily restricted the entrants to the upper and middle class sections of the population.

The War Office circular of 12th May was greeted with great enthusiasm by the nation, and within three days Lord Spencer wrote to the Lord-Lieutenant offering to raise a company for Althorp. Lord Exeter wrote accepting the offer on 19th May, saying that the company "should be composed of independent persons, as each Rifleman will have to find his own appointments which are supposed, with his rifle, which must be of a uniform gauge and nipple, to cost about £20 to £21." He added: "The Government will publish regulations in a few days, and as soon as I receive them I will endeavour to send you a copy, but they recommend that the dress of each county shall be uniform so that, if it were necessary they should act together, they might form a regiment; and they are anxious that

**Formation of
Local Corps.**

the men should be of a class above those enlisted for the Militia in order that the two services may not interfere with each other."

On 30th May a meeting was held at Little Brington to establish the company. Lord Spencer was in the chair, and the Countess Spencer and other ladies were present.

The formation of the Althorp Company³ was completed on 28th August, 1859. It became the 1st Company, and other companies were quickly formed as follows :—

| | | |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 2nd Company, Towcester ⁴ ... | 19th Oct., 1859 | The Earl of Pomfret. |
| 3rd Company (Mounted), Overstone and Moulton ⁵ | 3rd Mar., 1860 | Col. Loyd Lindsay |
| 4th Company, Northampton ⁶ | Feb., 1860 | William A. Barr. |
| 5th Company, Northampton ⁷ | Mar., 1860 | Sam Isaac. |
| 6th Company, Peterborough ⁸ | Mar., 1860 | The Hon. G. W. Fitzwilliam. |
| 7th Company, Wellingborough ⁹ | Sept., 1860 | H. M. Stockdale. |
| 8th Company, Daventry ¹⁰ ... | Nov., 1860 | Sir Reginald Knightley. |
| 9th Company, Kettering ¹¹ ... | Apr., 1867 | Fred Eden. |

The inauguration of the Towcester Company dates from a meeting held at the Pomfret Hotel on 12th July, 1859, at which the Earl of Pomfret was in the chair and about eighty gentlemen, principally farmers, were present. A committee was formed consisting of the Earl of Pomfret, the Earl of Euston, Lord Southampton, Colonel Hutchinson, W. Pilgrim, John Grant, J. T. Pinckard, J. M. K. Elliott, Thos. Collier, Geo. Osborne, J. H. Richardson, R. M. Watkin, and V. Barford. Over thirty men offered their services at the meeting.

The Earl of Pomfret, who had commanded the Towcester Company since its formation, died in June, 1869, and the company was taken over by Sir Thomas Hesketh, who "in the most liberal manner consented to continue the corps in all the advantages which it had derived from its connection with the Late Noble Earl."

The 3rd Company, formed at Overstone and Moulton in 1860, was a mounted company raised by Colonel Loyd Lindsay, V.C., who later became Lord Wantage. In January, 1863, it was attached to the 4th Company and ceased to have a separate existence.

The 4th (Northampton) Company had its origin in a crowded meeting held at the Town Hall on 2nd June, 1859, presided over by the Mayor. The original committee appointed consisted of the Mayor (Alderman E. F. Law), Captain Rose, Dr. Barr, Alderman Terry, Alderman Stockburn, Alderman Strong, Major Smith, Messrs. H. P. Markham, W. T. Higgins, John Jeffery, and Richard Phipps. Two hundred men were at once enrolled.

The 5th (Northampton) Company was composed entirely of employees of Messrs. Isaac, Campbell and Company, and commanded by Captain Isaac. Their uniform was "similar to that of the 4th Corps, but with a little more

ornament, a gayer appearance being produced by a red tuft in the cap. In front of the cap is the number of the corps and the motto ' Ready ' and on the coat buttons the loyal sentiment ' God Save the Queen '."18

In February, 1883, the 4th and 5th Companies were formed into one corps and, as the old Overstone Company had ceased to exist, became the 3rd Northampton Corps.

Each company on formation made its own rules as regards subscriptions, drills, fines and other matters, from which the details following have been extracted.

The members consisted of two classes—enrolled members, and honorary members—who, though unable to serve, subscribed to the funds. In some cases the enrolled members were subdivided into those able and not able wholly to provide their own arms and appointments ; in other cases all arms, uniform and accoutrements were provided by the company out of the subscriptions, which varied from ten shillings annually, upwards, with or without an entrance fee.

After the first enrolment, new members were admitted by ballot on the recommendation of a specified number of existing members—in fact, each company became a kind of club.

Honorary members might wear the uniform of the corps provided they did not " interfere in any way with the military duties of the corps."

Discipline was maintained by fines agreed to by the members, with dismissal from the corps as a punishment in extreme cases. To be late for roll-call cost the delinquent 6d. ; the fine for absence from parade was 2s., for being improperly dressed, 1s. ; for misconduct when under arms a fine not exceeding 10s. could be levied ; for discharging his rifle accidentally, or " pointing the same, loaded or unloaded, at any person without orders," it was 5s. These fines varied in the different companies ; the decision of the commanding officer was accepted as final.

Members who attended a minimum of twenty-four drills a year were returned as effectives and were thereby exempt from the Militia ballot.

Officers on appointment were expected to pay " fees of honour"—£5 for a Captain, £4 for a Lieutenant, and £3 for an Ensign. In addition, an annual subscription was paid, the scale for the Northampton Company being :—Colonel, 50 guineas ; Major, 30 guineas ; Captain, 25 guineas ; Lieutenant, 20 guineas ; Ensign, 15 guineas ; with, in addition, 5 guineas to the Band Fund.

On formation of the various corps, everything had to be provided out of the subscriptions ; armouries, stores, ranges, clothing, ammunition, and even the pay of the drill-sergeant. The country was getting, as it always has from the Volunteers and Territorials, a very great service with a very little cost.

Not only have the officers and men given their services, but have also put themselves to considerable expense as a result of their loyalty.

By the end of 1860 a few slight improvements had been made, and a free issue of Enfield rifles (1853 pattern) was made, to the extent of fifty per cent. of the effective strength, increased the following year to one hundred per cent. In addition, a capitation grant was given to each corps for each officer and man who performed the requisite number of drills. It was many years before any pay for services was approved unless the corps was embodied for active service.

In March, 1860, the Levee held by Queen Victoria at Buckingham Palace was attended solely by officers of the Volunteers as the first direct recognition of the force by the Sovereign, and on 23rd June, 1860, a great review of Volunteers was organized in Hyde Park at the express desire of Her Majesty. At the review some eighteen thousand five hundred men were on parade as representatives of corps from all over the country. The Northamptonshire detachment consisted of the 1st (Althorp), the 4th (Northampton) and the 5th (Northampton) Companies, with a detachment from the Towcester corps.

**Review by
Queen Victoria.**

These three, with the 4th Buckinghamshire and the 2nd Wiltshires, formed a battalion under command of Lord Spencer. A few days' practice took place beforehand. "The 4th Corps met in the Market Square on the 19th and preceded by their band, marched to Thorplands and after going through drill returned to Northampton."¹⁸ The 5th Corps paraded at the same time, which was their first appearance in uniform. On the 22nd Lord Spencer reviewed the three corps in the Militia Field. "Almost every class of the community was represented. Lord Spencer and his tenants in the Althorp Corps, the large manufacturer and his operatives in Captain Isaac's Corps, and Professional Gentlemen and Tradesmen in Captain Barr's Corps."

Hurriedly as this army of civilians had been enrolled, it had in the time acquired a degree of discipline which said volumes for the good will of those who had enrolled themselves. London was in a state of tumultuous excitement. There was the greatest curiosity to know whether the Duke of Wellington's supposed declaration, that if twenty thousand men got into Hyde Park they could never get out again, would prove true. The Queen was escorted by the Life Guards and accompanied by the King of the Belgians, Prince Arthur and Princess Alice, with, as outriders, the Prince Consort, the Count of Flanders, the Prince of Wales and Prince Jules of Holstein. The men went through their evolutions with the greatest steadiness and precision, and at the final advance in line, when they halted within a short distance of the Queen, and the bands ceased playing the National Anthem, they raised a tremendous cheer, which was taken up by the dense crowds of spectators. The Iron Duke's prediction was speedily falsified; the men marched out of the park in perfect order.

In the General Order issued at the conclusion of the parade the following words occur :—

" Much as Her Majesty's admiration was excited by the soldierlike bearing of the various Corps passed in review, a still deeper impression has been made on her mind by the proof which the Volunteer movement throughout the land affords of their devotion and loyalty to the Throne, and their anxiety to second her endeavours to ensure the security, and thereby the prosperity of the Kingdom."

The men seem to have been much elated by the success of the day, for in a memorandum issued later by the Secretary of State for War, it is reported that he has " learned with regret that certain members of the Volunteer Corps discharged their rifles after their return to the Railway Station and when in the Carriages, thereby causing much confusion and danger to the public."

Through one of its leading members, the Regiment can claim some part in the formation of the National Rifle Association.

**The
Northampton-
shire Rifle
Association.**

On 29th October, 1859, Lord Spencer took the chair at a meeting called at Spencer House, London, which marks the origin of the N.R.A. The main objects of the Association were the encouragement of Volunteer Rifle Corps and the promotion of rifle shooting throughout Great Britain. A further and larger meeting was held at the Thatched House Tavern, St. James's, on 29th October, at which proposals of the first meeting were confirmed, and on 2nd July, 1860, the first meeting of the N.R.A. was held on Wimbledon Common, inaugurated by Queen Victoria, who fired the first shot.

The National Association was quickly followed by a County Association, which held its first meeting at Althorp on 27th September, 1860. This must be one of the earliest County Associations formed, as its rules were approved by the N.R.A. on 10th December, 1860. The County " Twenty Club " was formed later, in 1891, and had for its object the formation of a team for inter-county matches.

As we have shown, the first stage in the Volunteer movement was the formation of a number of small detached corps in towns and country districts ; the second occurred in August, 1860, when these companies, while maintaining their own identities, were grouped into administrative battalions. Under this scheme the companies were grouped into a battalion known as the 1st Administrative Battalion, The Northamptonshire Volunteer Rifles, the battalion staff being as follows :—

**1st
Administrative
Battalion
Northampton-
shire Volunteer
Rifles.**

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----|--|
| <i>In Command</i> ... | ... | Lieutenant-Colonel Henry William, Earl of Euston (afterwards Duke of Grafton). |
| <i>Majors</i> ... | ... | The Right Hon. John Poyntz, Earl Spencer. The Right Hon. George William, Earl of Pomfret. |
| <i>Adjutant</i> ... | ... | Captain H. Landon (55th Foot). |
| <i>Hon. Quartermaster</i> ... | ... | John Wykes. |
| <i>Hon. Surgeon</i> ... | ... | W. D. Clarke, M.D. |



Kalerns Photo

1st NORTHAMPTONSHIRE RIFLE VOLUNTEERS : THE OFFICERS.

Althorp Park, August, 1882.

Lt. Dalley. Omr. Hughes. Surg. Payne. Lt. C. Turner. Lt. Gaches. Lt. Paley. Capt. Jackson. Lt. Mulliner.
 Lt. Parker. Lt. Hope. Lt. W. Turner. Capt. Clarke. Lt. Willoughby. Capt. Muscott. Lt. Leeds. Maj. Beecroft. Dr. Wright.
Maj. Burton. Maj. Walker. Lt. Townshend. Capt. East. Lt.-Col. Earl of Euston. Capt. The Hon. C. R. Spencer, M.P. Capt. Sir H. Wake, Bart.
 Maj. Hollis. Maj. Landon, Adj. Capt. G. Turner.

The Duke of Grafton remained in command for twenty-two years, from 1860 until the time of his death in June, 1882. He was succeeded by his nephew, Henry James Fitzroy, Earl of Euston, who remained in command until the formation of the Territorial Force in 1908. Captain Landon did duty as Adjutant for twenty-six years until the 30th April, 1886.

The first camp of the battalion was held at Althorp Park in 1864. Lasting for a week, it seems to have been a great success; the business of the day commenced with a parade at 6 a.m. for company drill, after which a number of the men went to their businesses in Northampton for the day, returning in the evening. During the day rifle shooting and various sports were indulged in, and in the evening, after mess, the men were put through battalion drill. The evening concluded with a concert or entertainment, during which Lord Spencer regaled the corps with rum punch. In fact, throughout the camp Lord Spencer's hospitality was most generous; on wet nights the men were entertained in the Hall, and at the end of a field day he seems always to have arranged for beer to be at the objective for the victorious troops.

For the next seventeen years the battalion carried on its normal existence, but gradually increasing in strength until a total of thirteen companies was reached. Camps were held on an average twice in three years, and alternated between Althorp Park and Wakefield Lawn¹⁸ with the exception of 1865 and 1872, when they were held at Norton Park and Stowe Park. In the years when no camp was held the battalion was generally assembled for a thorough inspection by Regular officers.

During this period two officers of the Regiment held a double commission—Sir Hereward Wake, although holding a Militia commission, captained the Towcester Company from 1877 to 1887, having been granted special permission by the War Office; Doctor W. A. Barr, although a surgeon in the Militia, served as captain of the Northampton Company from 1860 to 1862.

In 1872 the Snider rifle superseded the Enfield, both long and short patterns. In the matter of clothing, Volunteer regulations of 1878 ordered regiments to wear an Austrian knot, the colour of the facings, on the sleeves of the tunic; the initials of the county and the number of the corps on the shoulder-straps; and it was also recommended that the shoulder-straps should have an edging of the same colour as the letters and number—namely, scarlet. An efficiency badge, consisting of a braided ring, half an inch wide, to be worn round the sleeve of the right arm above the cuff, passing under the lace or embroidery. Officers were to wear crossbelts and pouches, both in full dress and undress; a forage cap without peak and a braided patrol jacket for undress. Mess jackets and vests were permissible, but their use was optional.

The shako was discarded in 1879 and was replaced by the spiked helmet.

The coming of age of the Volunteer movement was celebrated by reviews on an unprecedented scale, the largest being held before the **Review at Windsor, 1881.** Queen in Windsor Great Park on 4th July, 1881. Over

fifty thousand Volunteers, including the battalion under command of Colonel the Duke of Grafton, attended. This review had a treble purpose—it was a test for the Volunteers and an inspiration to the members of the movement ; it was an answer to the much-vaunted mobilization capacities of the Continental armies ; it served as an excellent practice scheme for mobilization both for the War Office and the railway companies.

That fifty thousand citizen soldiers could be transported to Windsor Great Park in twenty-four hours might well astonish the public. The fact that in one hour and forty-five minutes fifty thousand men marched past the saluting point spoke volumes for the practical efficiency of the Volunteers. Before midnight, too, every corps had been entrained on its return journey. Here the first hitch occurred on account of some accident on the railway, in consequence of which the return journey was inordinately long. The cheerfulness and patience evinced, however, showed that the men were not wanting in these two qualities for which the British Army is renowned.

The next big change in the history of the battalion occurred on the introduction of the Cardwell system in 1881, when the battalion became an integral part of the Regiment and was renamed "The 1st Volunteer Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment." The permanent staff of the battalion was now provided by the Regular battalions of the Regiment, and on 22nd April, 1886, on the retirement of Major Landon, a Regular officer of the Regiment, Major E. D. Sandys, was given the appointment of Adjutant.

An alteration was now made in the shoulder-straps of the rank and file, the numeral " I " being placed over the letter " V," the whole over the county title. Applications for permission to change the colour of the various rifle uniforms to scarlet were at this time promised official favourable consideration, but seemingly such a suggestion did not meet with the approval of the 1st Volunteer Battalion Northamptonshire, who preferred to retain the grey. Medical officers were still to wear the uniform of their units, but with a black-feathered cocked hat.

The regulations now contained the following reminder, which nowadays sounds somewhat curious : " Volunteers will be careful on all occasions to appear either in the authorised uniform of their corps or in purely civilian dress ; the unsoldierly appearance of Volunteers dressed partly in uniform, partly in civilian costume, brings discredit not only on themselves, but on the force to which they belong."

Volunteer brigades were formed in 1890, the battalion being placed in the South Midland Brigade and attending its first brigade camp at Stoneleigh Park, Warwickshire. With them were brigaded the 1st and 2nd Warwickshires, the 1st Worcestershire and the 1st Leicestershire. This brigade organization was of short duration, as in a few years the battalion was transferred to the Harwich Brigade, which included the three Volunteer battalions of the Suffolk Regiment.

**1st Volunteer
Battalion The
Northampton-
shire Regiment.**

In 1896 the battalion was up to establishment with a total strength of 1,208. Numbers continued to grow so rapidly that it was necessary to divide the battalion into two in 1900, the sixteen companies being distributed as follows :—

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----|-----|--|
| Althorp | ... | ... | " A " Company. |
| Northampton | ... | ... | H.Q., " B," " C," " D," " E " and " F " Companies. |
| Peterborough | ... | ... | " G " and " H " Companies. |
| Wellingborough | ... | ... | " I " and " K " Companies. |
| Daventry | ... | ... | " L " Company. |
| Kettering | ... | ... | " M " and " N " Companies (one of them Cyclists). |
| Rushden | ... | ... | " O " Company. |
| Desborough and Roth- | | | |
| well | ... | ... | " Q " Company. |
| Raunds | ... | ... | " R " Company. |

Detachments of the battalion were sent to London to form part of the guard of honour lining the streets both on the occasion of the Diamond Jubilee Celebrations in 1897, when they were posted on London Bridge, and also for the funeral of Queen Victoria.

In 1897 the battalion was the " best shooting corps " in the Eastern District, which included sixteen battalions from Bedford, Essex, Suffolk and Norfolk. The success was repeated in 1898 and 1899, when, in addition, the Althorp Company was the best shooting company in the district. In 1900 the distinction of being the best shooting company was gained by the Wellingborough Company.

In 1900, on account of the South African War, it was decided that all Volunteers should go into camp for fourteen days and should be paid at the Regular Army rate. An order had been issued in December, 1899, that each Volunteer battalion might select a company for service in South Africa. The 4th Battalion were soon ready with their company, which arrived at Cape Town in February, 1900, and took its place as " I " Company of the 58th. The company was under the command of Captain W. Hughes, and was accompanied by Lieutenants W. B. S. Hickson and A. T. Page. Drafts were sent out later under Lieutenants H. W. Jackson, T. H. Walker and A. H. Rice. Details of the action of this company in South Africa are contained in Chapter XXVI. In recognition of its services the battalion was awarded the Battle Honour " South Africa, 1900-1902."

As we have shown (Chapter XXIII), the Militia had been becoming more and more a reserve for the Regular Army, instead of being treated as an independent force. In 1906 Lord Haldane was appointed Secretary of State for War and the whole status of the various auxiliary forces was examined, and in the end it was decided that the Volunteers should become the real national army for home defence. Under the Territorial and Reserve Forces Act of 1907, the Militia became the Special Reserve, and the Volunteers became the Territorial Force.

The function of the Territorial Force was to be twofold—to provide a second line to the Regular Army and to be the nucleus of a national army. No longer were the Volunteers to be in dispersed units, but they were to be integral parts of divisions and organized as the Regulars. There were to be fourteen such divisions, each of three brigades of four battalions; each battalion was to consist of eight companies, or 1,009 all ranks.

In accordance with the Act, which came into force on 1st April, 1908, the battalion changed its title to that of 4th Territorial Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel G. E. Ripley. During the reorganization many changes were necessary; the two Peterborough companies were temporarily disbanded, and then re-formed as a nucleus for the formation of the Northamptonshire Battery of the 4th East Anglian Brigade, R.F.A. Other companies were amalgamated, and finally the distribution of the eight companies was as follows: "A," "B," "C" and "D," Northampton; "E," Wellingborough; "F," Kettering; "G," Desborough; "H," Rushden and Irthlingborough. Headquarters were at Northampton.

County Associations were established under the Act of 1907 to raise and administer, but not to command, the force. In Section XIII of the Act it was laid down that "no part of the Territorial Force shall be carried or ordered to go out of the United Kingdom," so it is clear that the force was intended for home defence; it was, however, also provided that members might offer to serve in any place outside the United Kingdom, and the scheme of mobilization provided for six months' training, should war break out, prior to despatch on active service. It seems to have been generally accepted that, should a crisis arise, there would be no question of the force volunteering; the assumption was correct, for on the outbreak of the Great War the Territorial Force offered its services overseas, almost to a man.

Under the reorganization, the battalion became part of the East Midland Infantry Brigade (later to be the 162nd Brigade) of the East Anglian Division which, in the Great War, made history as the 54th Division.

On the 1st Volunteer Battalion becoming the 4th Territorial Battalion of the Regiment, the scarlet uniform with white facings of the Regular battalions was adopted and the grey uniform with scarlet facings disappeared. The letter "T" was now substituted for the letter "V" on the shoulder-straps of the tunics and jackets of the non-commissioned officers and men.

Since, on formation in 1859, the Volunteers had been treated as a Rifle Corps, no Colours had been issued or carried, but with the change they once more became entitled to carry them.

On 25th June, 1909, a parade was held at Windsor Castle for the presentation of Colours to the units of the Territorial Force. The detachment from the battalion consisted of seven officers (Colonel G. E. Ripley, in command, Lieutenant-Colonel A. F. Mulliner, Lieutenant-Colonel F. Willoughby, Major

G. S. Eunson, Captain and Quartermaster R. Goacher, Lieutenants S. H. S. Cook and L. P. Dorman) and eighteen non-commissioned officers and men. Altogether some three thousand Territorials, dressed for the first time in their new scarlet uniforms, were formed up for the presentation ceremony on the East Lawn. Opposite the steps were piled the drums for the consecration service, and facing the drums on either side of the steps were the various Colour parties.

The King was greeted on his arrival with the Royal Salute, and the Colours were then consecrated by Bishop Taylor-Smith, Chaplain to the Forces. His Majesty then presented the Colours, the officers receiving them being Lieutenant S. H. S. Cook (Wellingborough) and Lieutenant L. P. Dorman (Northampton), and the escorting sergeants being H. Burdett (Desborough "G" Company), T. Simpson (Northampton "D" Company) and H. Chown (Daventry "B" Company). The Colours were then borne in succession past the various regimental detachments. At the end of the ceremony the Colours were lowered to the accompaniment of the National Anthem, and His Majesty left the parade.

On returning to Northampton, the detachment was met at the station by an escort 280 strong, under Captain John Brown, where the Colours were formally saluted. They were also greeted by the Mayor, Councillor John Brown, the father of Captain Brown, representing the town of Northampton. The detachment then marched with the Colours to the Territorial Headquarters at the Corn Exchange, Marefair, Gold Street and the Drapery being thronged with cheering spectators.

The Colours, which were the gift of the ladies of the county, are similar in design to those of a Regular battalion. The King's Colour is the "Union," having in the centre the numeral "IV," encircled by the title "The Northamptonshire Regiment," the whole surmounted by the Crown. The Regimental Colour is white, thereon the Cross of St. George, bearing the number, title and crown in the centre as on the King's Colour, the whole surrounded by the Union wreath of Roses, Thistles and Shamrocks. The fringe of the King's Colour is gold, and of the Regimental Colour gold and white. In both Colours the cords and tassels are gold and white; at the head of each pike is a gold crown, surmounted by a lion.

On the outbreak of the Great War, Colonel S. L. Barry left the battalion to serve on the staff of Sir John French, and Lieutenant-Colonel E. G. Curtis, C.M.G., took over command. In November, 1914, the four-company organization of the Regular Army was adopted.

CHAPTER XXVIII

THE GREAT WAR

LOSSES AND HONOURS—THE TERRITORIAL CONNECTION—THE 1ST BATTALION—THE 2ND BATTALION—THE 4TH BATTALION—SERVICE BATTALIONS—THE 5TH—THE 6TH—THE 7TH—RESERVE BATTALIONS.

THE History of the Regiment during the Great War of 1914–1918 is contained in a separate volume, and all that will be attempted in this chapter is to give a short summary of the regimental effort and of the lasting effects of the war on the Regiment.

In previous wars in which the British Army has been engaged the troops could be numbered by thousands ; the regiment or battalion had been the tactical unit, and, as in the case of Talavera, the action of one battalion had been able to alter the whole course of operations. In the Great War, after 1914, the armies were counted in millions, and battles were swayed rather by the action of divisions than battalions, though isolated instances still occurred of local situations being saved by the particular gallantry of one regiment.

We get, therefore, from the war no “thumb-nail” battle sketches of individual regiments saving a desperate situation which serve as an inspiration for the future. The opportunities for individual exploits by battalions rarely existed, and battles became mechanical with troops advancing behind tanks or a barrage ; but whenever called upon the Regiment showed its traditional reliability and steadfastness. Proof of the sacrifice lies in the loss of more than six thousand lives, including officers¹ in the service of the Regiment ; while as proof of gallantry the Regiment can show the award of the following honours :—

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| Victoria Cross | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6 |
| Distinguished Service Order | ... | ... | ... | ... | 33 (3 with a bar) |
| Military Cross | ... | ... | ... | ... | 138 (9 with a bar, and 1 with 2 bars) |
| Distinguished Conduct Medal | ... | ... | ... | ... | 122 (2 with bars) |
| Meritorious Service Medal | ... | ... | ... | ... | 50 |
| Military Medal | ... | ... | ... | ... | 511 (37 with bars) |

The story of these deeds of gallantry is an inspiring one and will live for ever in the records of the Regiment.

It may be, however, that the most vital effect of the war will be the tightening of the link between the Regiment and the County. Though the

Territorial connection had existed for more than a century and a quarter, the families in the county with direct regimental connections were comparatively few in number. By the end of the war few houses in the county had not contributed a member to one of the many battalions of the Regiment, and it is the hope of the Regiment that this close association of individual families will continue.

Never before has the Regiment placed so many troops in the field ; two Regular battalions, one Territorial and three Service battalions served as units abroad on active service, and, in addition, there existed at one time no less than seven reserve battalions at home.

The 48th, forming part of the 1st Division, was the first battalion of the Regiment in action, and landing in France on 13th August, 1914, took part in the Retreat from Mons. The battalion was not, however, heavily engaged until 10th September, during the Battle of the Marne, when a sharp engagement was fought near Priez. Four days later heavy casualties were suffered at the Battle of the Aisne, in an attack on the Chemin des Dames. After five weeks in the waterlogged trenches on the Aisne the 48th were moved north and took part in the First Battle of Ypres, where they distinguished themselves in the repulse of the Prussian Guard. Severe casualties were suffered, and the battalion came out of the battle commanded by a subaltern.

**The
1st Battalion.**

The winter of 1914-1915 was spent in waterlogged trenches, and the next major engagement was at Aubers Ridge in May, where the 48th suffered no less than 558 casualties in one day. This disaster was followed by the loss of nearly four hundred at the Battle of Loos in September, and it was during this battle that Captain A. Moutray Reid won his Victoria Cross but lost his life.

After another miserable winter in the trenches the 48th were hurried to the Somme in July for the attack and capture of Contalmaison. Remaining on the Somme till September, the battalion took part in severe fighting at High Wood and Flers, and during these months the losses reached the figure of nearly one thousand two hundred. In June, 1917, the battalion was on the Belgian coast near Nieuport, and on 10th July, when in the line on the dunes, suffered a disaster, being cut off, with the 2nd Battalion of the 60th Rifles, on the far side of the River Yser, to face the attack of a German division. No support was possible and the casualties numbered almost six hundred.

After a further winter of trench warfare, the 48th were in action constantly during 1918. The total casualties suffered by the 48th had amounted to 5,091, of whom 1,682 had lost their lives.

After the Armistice the 48th took part in the advance to the Rhine, and on 17th December, crossed the German frontier between St. Vith and Niedingen with uncased Colours.

The declaration of war found the 58th in Egypt, and it was not until October, 1914, that the arrival of a Territorial division allowed of their release. The battalion stayed a few days only in England, and sailed for France on 4th November, as part of the 8th Division. By this time open warfare had ceased and trench warfare conditions existed from the sea to Switzerland. The winter was passed in waterlogged trenches and dreadful weather conditions.

**The
2nd Battalion.**

It was not until 10th March, 1915, that the 58th had their first major engagement, at the Battle of Neuve Chapelle, losing 432 out of a total strength of 616. No sooner had the battalion been built up again than once more they were almost annihilated at the Battle of Aubers Ridge in May, their casualties numbering 426. Compared with these figures, the losses of the battalion at Loos in September, 1915, were slight.

Then followed a winter of trench warfare and after that the Battle of the Somme in July, 1916, when, with a battalion of the Worcestershire Regiment, the village of Contalmaison was captured at a loss of three hundred men. After a period in a less exciting part of the front the 58th returned to the Somme in November, 1916, and shared the fighting and winter hardships at Guinchy and Guillemont.

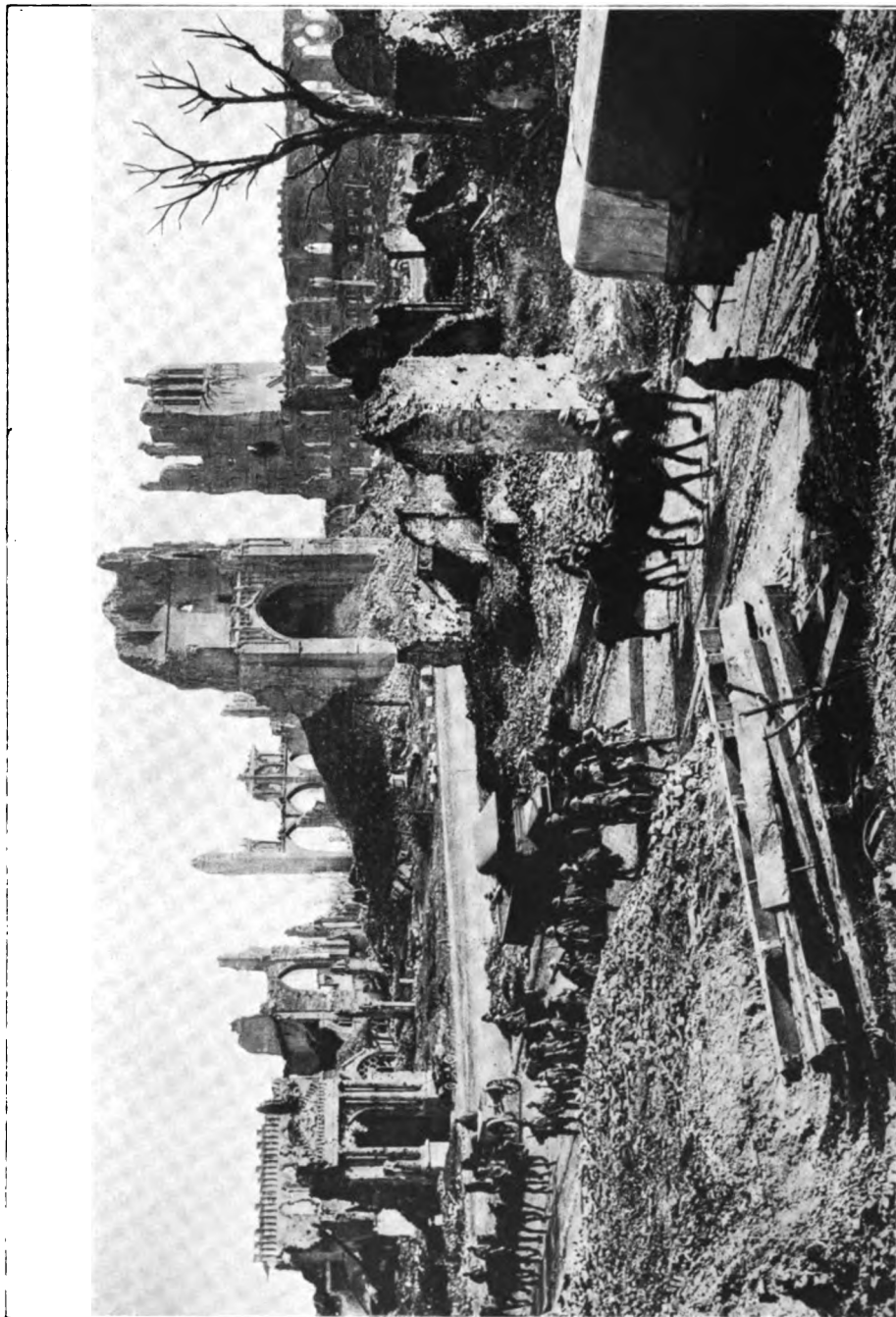
The summer of 1917 found the battalion in "the Salient" taking part in the third Battle of Ypres, where they greatly distinguished themselves on 31st July at the capture of Bellewarde Ridge. It was on this occasion that Captain T. R. Colyer-Ferguson won the Victoria Cross. A further successful attack was made at Westhoek on 16th August, and the remainder of the year was spent alternately in rest and trench warfare in the mud of Passchendaele.

In March, 1918, the 58th returned to the Somme and helped to stem the German offensive, fighting in a whole series of rearguard actions for a period of twelve days, in which they suffered three hundred casualties. On 24th April the battalion again distinguished itself in a counter-attack at Villers Bretonneux, where a loss of 263 was suffered. Early in May the 58th accompanied their division to the Aisne in relief of the French. At first all was quiet, then, on 27th May, the Germans launched a surprise attack after a hurricane bombardment, and penetrated the line on the flank of the 58th, who found themselves surrounded and were almost wiped out of existence, losing more than six hundred men.

In spite of this catastrophe, the 58th were back in the line in August, taking part in the capture of the Drocourt—Quéant Line, the Estcourt Canal, Douai and St. Amant, and at the time of the Armistice had reached a point six miles west of Mons.

**The
4th Battalion.**

On the declaration of war the 4th Battalion were in camp at Ashridge Park, carrying out annual training. Returning to Northampton at once, the battalion was mobilized, and within a week had left for Romford, where the 54th Division was concentrated.



YPRES, 1916.

Reproduced by courtesy of The Loyal Regiment (North Lancashire).

Later moves were made to Bury St. Edmund's, Thetford and Norwich, and finally, in May, to St. Albans to prepare for service overseas.

On 30th July, 1915, they sailed for the East under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel E. G. Curtis, and on 15th August were landed on the Gallipoli peninsula, moving up to the trenches two days later. After a period of trench warfare the army was withdrawn from Gallipoli, and on 8th December proceeded to Mudros and thence to Egypt.

In April, 1916, a move was made to the Suez Canal, and while here Lieutenant-Colonel John Brown assumed command, Colonel Curtis being evacuated to hospital. The following January the battalion took part in the advance across the Sinai peninsula, and on 17th April were heavily engaged at the second Battle of Gaza, with a loss of 386. Six months of trench warfare followed, and on 31st October the attack was resumed and the Turkish positions turned and taken in the third Battle of Gaza, in which the 4th Battalion had 215 casualties. Pursuing the Turks northwards up the coastal plain, the 4th reached the outskirts of Jaffa. Here the 54th Division took post to cover the left flank of the force advancing on Jerusalem, and, while doing this, the 4th Battalion distinguished itself greatly at Wilhelma, where, on 27th November, though only four hundred strong, it decisively repulsed an attack by three thousand Turks. A few days later saw the fall of Jerusalem.

Weather conditions put a stop to further action during the winter, but in March, 1918, the offensive was resumed but suspended, as large reinforcements had to be hurried to France to meet the crisis caused by the German attack of March 21st. By September, however, General Allenby was ready for the renewed offensive, which was to finish the campaign, and in this the 4th Battalion distinguished itself in the attack on Kefr Kassin, in which it had seventy-five casualties.

Our attack broke through the Turkish line on a wide front, and the cavalry took up the pursuit, the infantry following by forced marches, and by 31st October, 1918, when an armistice was concluded with the Turks, the battalion had reached Beirut. From here they embarked for Egypt on 4th December.

Demobilization soon commenced, and on 4th November, 1919, the cadre of the battalion reached Northampton. Their record during the war had been a fine one, and fourteen Battle Honours had been earned for the Regiment.

In the war of 1914 for the first time practically no new regiments were raised, and instead the new battalions were added to the old regiments. These new battalions inherited the old regimental spirit of the Regular battalions, their standards were set by the regimental history of the past, and their one desire during training was that, in the field, they would compare not unfavourably with those on whom their traditions were based.

The formation of these new battalions is in itself an epic. The Regular

**Service
Battalions.**

Army, with its Reserves, and the Territorial Force amounted on mobilization to some seven hundred thousand men, but of these the Territorials were not liable for foreign service, except as volunteers. It was soon evident that many new divisions would be required, and as early as 8th August, 1914, Lord Kitchener asked for one hundred thousand more men, to be enlisted on a new basis for three years or the duration of the war, and to form separate units called Service Battalions. These numbers were soon increased, as men flocked to the Colours, and well within the first year over two million men had been enlisted. In all eight Service battalions were added to the Northamptonshire Regiment, and of these the 5th, 6th and 7th saw service overseas.

No provision had been made in peace for the organization of these battalions; there existed for them no equipment, clothing or training staffs, and their creation from nothing into fine fighting battalions, all destined to add glorious pages to the history of the Regiment, constitutes the most remarkable episode in the history of the war, and was described by the Prime Minister in the House of Commons as "probably the greatest feat of military organization in the history of the world."

Staffed by a sprinkling of Regular and retired Regular and Militia officers, and with one or two Regular non-commissioned officers, the bulk of the training was carried out by newly appointed officers, whose military knowledge at the best consisted of what they remembered from their days with the O.T.C. at school or at the University. In the early months, a typical day's training was for the officers to be on parade an hour before reveille learning drill movements in which they would train their platoons later in the day, while in the intervals they would read "Infantry Training" to their men, trying at the same time, to explain it and understand it themselves.

The early period of the New Armies was one of genuine hard work and labour, making bricks without straw. There were many men, of the finest material, but little equipment and, at first, no uniform. Even at the end of 1914 a Service battalion was not a pretty sight, each man being equipped with an ugly, shoddy and ill-fitting suit of blue, a civilian overcoat and dummy wooden rifle, and with this he did strenuous drill and training.

The simplest military expressions were meaningless. If men were amused on parade they laughed, and saw in it nothing abnormal; if feeling uncomfortable, they left the parade without permission, to return later. The original appointment of non-commissioned officers was a matter of chance, and a man was promoted in the early days merely because he looked smarter or more intelligent than the remainder. In one battalion of the Regiment a man was promoted for the military appearance given him by being in possession of a pair of khaki breeches, the cast-off property of a brother in the Territorials. The prestige of these breeches later carried him into the battalion transport, in which he served as transport sergeant and acquitted himself well throughout the war. For distinguishing marks, white tape worn round the arm signified a corporal, and red tape a sergeant.

That fighting battalions could be formed from this material could only be possible if it was of the very highest grade. It included the best of all classes in the country, fired by ambition to become trained soldiers in spite of all difficulties, and to take their place beside the Regular troops in France before the war should be over.

The 5th Battalion of the Regiment was included in Kitchener's first hundred thousand as Pioneer battalion of the 12th Division, and was formed at Shorncliffe in September, 1914, under Colonel G. A. Trent, C.M.G., an officer of the Regiment. In these days an extra battalion of Pioneers was included in each division in addition to the brigaded battalions, its task being the construction of trenches, dug-outs and the less specialized forms of field engineering. After eight months of strenuous training the battalion reached France at the end of May, 1915, and night after night working parties were provided in the front line. Though the pioneer work was the battalion's primary task, it frequently became heavily engaged, and during the war 1,581 casualties were suffered, of whom 348 lost their lives.

In 1917 the 5th Battalion received high praise for its work and fighting at Arras, and it did well again at Cambrai in November. During the German offensive in March, the battalion was rushed to Albert and succeeded in holding up some heavy hostile attacks. Their last fight of any importance was at Epéhy in September, when more than 120 men were lost in a desperate counter-attack.

At the Armistice the 5th were at Lens, and intensive work was necessary repairing roads and bridges to enable the Army to advance. Gradually they worked forward until Mons was reached ; then they returned to Aniche, where their King's Colour was presented by H.R.H. The Prince of Wales. Here they remained during the demobilization, the cadre returning to Aintree in June, 1919.²

The first one hundred thousand asked for by Lord Kitchener were enlisted within a few days, and before the end of September the second hundred thousand were in training. Included in the second of the New Armies was the 6th Battalion, composed of men enlisted for the most part in the north and east of the county. In command was Colonel G. E. Ripley, an old officer of the Regiment. The battalion was formed at Colchester as part of the 18th Division, moving in May, 1915, to Salisbury to complete their training. At the end of July they embarked for France and spent their first winter in trenches at Suzanne and Fricourt, unpleasant portions of the front where mining was a constant danger.

The first large-scale operation for the battalion occurred during the Battle of the Somme, when they distinguished themselves in the capture of Montauban. This was followed by the capture of Trones Wood on 14th July by the battalion and the 12th Middlesex, an action which ranks as one of the finest achievements

of the war. After terrific hand-to-hand fighting the wood was captured and held by the battalion until relieved two days later. It was during this action that Sergeant W. E. Boulter gained the first of the four Victoria Crosses won by the battalion. The victory had been dearly bought, for the 6th suffered 296 casualties.

After a short rest the battalion returned to the Somme in September, and once more distinguished themselves in the capture of Thiepval. For their action on this occasion they received the congratulations of the Commander-in-Chief. They had, however, suffered severely, losing 363 men, including Colonel Ripley, who died of his wounds. The 6th were again in action on 15th February, 1917, in the fight towards Miraumont, and later took part in the pursuit of the Germans to the Hindenburg Line.

After a winter in the waterlogged Ypres Salient, the battalion was at Morlancourt at the commencement of the German offensive in March, 1918. It was here that Lieutenant A. C. Herring won his Victoria Cross. Not only did the battalion put up a stubborn resistance, but counter-attacked with great effect.

In spite of their losses, the 6th Battalion were ready again for the final advance, and fought severe actions in September, 1918, in which Lance-Corporal A. L. Lewis and Captain F. W. Hedges won the Victoria Cross. When the Armistice was declared the 6th were at Le Cateau, where they were demobilized.*

Last of the Service battalions to see service abroad was the 7th, which, as part of the 24th Division, was formed at Shoreham under Lieutenant-Colonel A. Parkin. Here the early training was carried out, which was completed at Woking, and on 1st September, 1915, the battalion was transferred to France. Included in this battalion was a company of 250 men raised in two days by Edgar Mobbs, the Rugby International and captain of the Northampton Rugby Club.

An experiment was to be tried with the 24th Division, for they were to be launched into the Battle of Loos without any previous experience in the trenches. It was hoped that by the time the Division advanced the main resistance of the Germans would have been broken. This was not, however, the case, and the 7th found themselves in the thick of the fight at dusk with no orders. Time after time German counter-attacks were driven back, and, in Lord French's words, "No men could have fought with greater gallantry under adverse circumstances." The results to the battalion were disastrous; in the first two days of their first battle 5 officers, including Colonel Parkin, had been killed, 7 officers wounded, and the total casualties amounted to over four hundred men.

After a winter and spring of comparative quiet in the trenches, the battalion, now under command of Lieutenant-Colonel E. R. Mobbs, moved south to the Somme in July. Their first action was on 18th August, 1916,



THE MENIN ROAD, 1918.

Reproduced by courtesy of The Loyal Regiment (North Lancashire).

when an attack was made on Guillemont ; the battalion reached its objective, though its right was in the air, but the casualties had been heavy, reaching the figure of 373. In spite of this they were in action again within a fortnight between High Wood and Delville Wood, a spell described as by far the worst in the history of the battalion.

Another winter in the trenches was followed by the Battle of Messines in May, 1917. This attack had been planned with the greatest care, and was preceded by the explosion of a large number of mines, and complete success was achieved with but slight casualties. On 31st July, 1917, the 7th played their part in the third Battle of Ypres, their task being the capture of " Shrewsbury Forest," and here the 250 casualties suffered included Lieutenant-Colonel Mobbs, who was killed while behaving, as he always did, in a most gallant manner. In honour of his memory a memorial has been erected on the Market Square at Northampton.

During the German attack in March, 1918, the 7th were in action almost constantly for three weeks, and the 24th Division faced in succession the attacks of eleven German divisions, and for their behaviour high praise was received and the battalion was specially mentioned in dispatches. In September the battalion was advancing with the remainder of the army, and fought particularly successful actions in the capture of Cagnocles on 6th October and Rieux on 10th October. On Armistice Day the 7th were in billets at Bavai, and subsequently they moved in stages to a village near Tournai and demobilization was commenced.

It was here that a King's Colour was presented to the battalion by Lord Horne, the General Officer Commanding the First Army. Finally on 7th June, 1919, the last cadre of the battalion arrived at Northampton.

Fifteen years before, the 3rd (Militia) Battalion had volunteered as a unit for active service in South Africa, but since the reorganization of the Army in 1907, a much more wearing and thankless task fell to their lot. The efforts of the Special Reserve are liable to miss recognition, yet without them the armies in the field could not have been maintained. Their task was to accept thousands of recruits, equip them, train them and then, just as they showed promise, draft them to one of the other battalions.

The first few days of mobilization were spent at the Depot, receiving Reservists, clothing them, and despatching them to the 1st Battalion. On August 8th, 1914, the 3rd Battalion moved to Weymouth ; the task of providing reinforcements began, and by 10th November, 1914, 1,350 men had been sent to the Expeditionary Force.

On 17th November, owing to the fear of German invasion, the battalion made a sudden move to Sunderland, where it fulfilled the dual rôle of home defence and draft-finding. The following January it returned to Weymouth, but moved again in May to Gillingham in Kent, and in November to Chatham,

**The Reserve
Battalions.**

forming part of the Thames and Medway Reserve Brigade. While here it helped to build a model of the Zeebrugge Mole on which the Navy carried out practices for their historic attack. During all this period the battalion had been commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel G. H. Champion de Crespigny, who retired from command on 27th April, 1918, and was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Metcalfe, D.S.O., on 2nd November, 1918. In the meantime, Major L. J. Bentinck had been in temporary command.

From 1914 until the Armistice drafts were constantly being despatched, and the battalion filled up again; 800 officers and 20,000 men passed through the ranks of the battalion, of whom all but some 3,000 were drafted abroad.

In 1919 the task fell to the battalion of accepting repatriated prisoners of war, and arranging for their demobilization, and in February a move was made to Kempton Park. The following April the battalion was transferred to Ireland and occupied barracks at Templemore, with detachments at Nenagh, Cashel, Thurles and Birr. Here was prepared the battalion which was in a few months to become the 48th.

The last duty of the battalion was thus almost to die so that the Regiment might live, for when all had been handed over to the 48th there remained but a party of eight to return to Northampton.

Under the scheme of 1907 the rôle of the 3rd Battalion had been to provide reinforcements for the two Regular battalions. The increased number of fighting battalions and the unprecedented casualties of the Great War soon necessitated the creation of other reserve units for draft-finding, and this became the task of the 2/4th, 3/4th, 8th and 9th Battalions, and of the 1st and 2nd Garrison Battalions. Each of these units carried out most adequately its allotted task.



The Great War

CHAPTER XXIX

THE REGIMENT, 1919-1934

CHANGES IN TACTICS AND EQUIPMENT—ORGANIZATION—PAY AND CONDITIONS—DRESS—
COLOURS—COLONELS—ALLIED REGIMENTS—THE DEPOT WEEK—REORGANIZATION OF THE
TERRITORIAL ARMY—THE 4TH BATTALION (1920-1934)—THE 5TH BATTALION (1920-1934).

It was only natural during the war that the efficiency of weapons should be increased, and that new weapons should be introduced. These

Tactics. changes were inevitably followed by repercussions on the tactics and organization of infantry. To mention only the more important changes, gas and tanks made their appearance as weapons of war, light machine guns were introduced in large numbers, grenades were revived, and there was a great increase in the proportion of artillery.

In defensive equipment, the steel helmet made its appearance as a protection against shrapnel and shell splinters, and a gas respirator also had to be carried.

At the commencement of the war infantry attacks had been carried out with the attackers in successive lines, but with the increased power of defensive weapons it was necessary to deploy men to such an extent that control of widely extended lines became impossible ; in addition, the introduction of the light automatic and other team weapons necessitated the presence of small parties of men on the battlefield. Infantry attacks then became based on the movement of section groups, prepared to give each other mutual support. This not only simplified control, but made the attack more flexible and able to exploit a gap found in the enemy defences. Changes in the defence also followed ; instead of the long firing line, the increase in automatic weapons allowed the defensive fire to be more highly organized, the various weapons interlocking their lines of fire along the front. The defence thus developed into a series of localities in depth much less vulnerable to penetration.

At the conclusion of the Great War each battalion was organized in four rifle companies, each of four platoons. In each platoon were

Organization. two rifle and two Lewis gun sections. This organization was simple, and suitable for siege warfare conditions ; support weapons such as the machine gun and mortar were included in the establishment of separate units. After the war it was realized that for more mobile conditions

of warfare the battalion commander should himself be able to dispose some of these weapons. The Machine Gun Corps was disbanded, and in 1921 the war establishment of a battalion was changed. In addition to the four companies, a headquarter wing was added to each battalion to contain the administrative and specialist personnel which had hitherto been carried on the company strengths, and in this wing were, in addition, two mortars, eight machine guns and an anti-aircraft detachment.

In 1928 a new organization was approved. The machine guns were increased to sixteen and included in a separate company, the rifle companies were reduced from four to three, and an anti-tank section was provided in the establishment of the headquarter wing. No mortars were included; the weapon itself had not been very satisfactory, and the problem of ammunition supply in mobile warfare most difficult.

Between 1933 and 1934 an improved mortar appeared and light cross-country tractors had also been introduced; in consequence, it was decided once more to include a platoon of four mortars in the battalion to take the place of one machine-gun platoon in what was in future to be known as the support company.

In addition to the above, several minor changes in organization have been made, such as the withdrawal of the entrenching tool in 1923 and the resumption of the old title of Drum-Major instead of Sergeant-Drummer in 1928. The question of the weight carried by the infantry soldier is still under discussion, as it has been for two hundred years; in one respect his load has been lightened by the provision of transport for greatcoats, but against this must be set the steel helmet and gas respirator.

In Chapter XXII we gave some details of the pay of the soldier up to the commencement of the war, and it will be remembered

**Pay and
Conditions.**

that there had been a steady improvement in conditions. The war caused complete disorganization of world finance and the value of money, and in consequence, rates of pay were in a constant state of fluctuation. In spite of the changes the standard of living of the soldier has been steadily improved. Good regimental institutes are provided in all barracks, the men are well paid¹ and the privilege of wearing civilian clothes when off duty has been extended to all ranks. The days of drunkenness, the old besetting sin of the Army, are now over, and cases seldom occur. The increased dispersion in the battlefield calls more and more for individual initiative on the part of the soldier, and much attention is paid to his education, not only to improve his value as a soldier, but to fit him for civilian life on his discharge. In addition, to increase his chances of employment, vocational training is now given at special schools during his last months of service. After discharge, should he fall on evil times the Regimental Comrades' Association is available to help him through a difficult period.

On the conclusion of the war full dress was not reintroduced, except for the Band and Drums, though it was still permitted as a levee

Dress. dress for officers. For the remainder, the only additions to the service dress equipment have been a buff belt for walking out, and a red worsted sash for sergeants.

The most momentous change, however, was in 1927 when the fusion of the 48th and 58th was finally cemented by uniformity of all uniform and badges. Since 1881 the facings of the Regiment had been white, and in mess dress the 48th had worn a white, and the 58th a black, waistcoat. Permission was now obtained for the former buff facings of the Regiment to be restored, while in order to preserve the old facings and colours of the 58th, a black velvet waistcoat was adopted by all battalions. Finally, on 1st July, 1931, the fiftieth anniversary of the amalgamation of the two Regiments, the battalions exchanged mutual greetings by cable.

On the conclusion of the war a committee was formed under instructions from the War Office to prepare a claim for the Battle Honours to which the Regiment was entitled. This committee² assembled under the presidency of General Browne, the Colonel of the Regiment, and included representatives of the Regular, Territorial and Service battalions. Altogether seventy-six honours were awarded to the Regiment, of which ten were selected to be borne on the King's Colour.

In 1933 approval was given for the centre badge of the future Colours to be a "sprig of three maple leaves each charged with a *fleur-de-lys*." This design was adapted from the Arms of Quebec in commemoration of the part taken by both the 48th and 58th in the battle of 1759.³

On 22nd June, 1925, Major-General G. F. Browne resigned his appointment as Colonel of the Regiment which he had held for fifteen years, and Lieutenant-General Sir Havelock Hudson, G.C.B., K.C.I.E., was appointed to succeed him. In the meantime a retiring age for Colonels had been fixed, which was reached by Sir Havelock on 23rd October, 1931, and he was succeeded by Lieutenant-General H. H. S. Knox, K.C.B., D.S.O. In appreciation of General Sir Havelock Hudson's work for the Regiment, he was presented, on retirement, with a silver salver to which all ranks of the Regiment had subscribed.

Since 30th January, 1913, the Regiment had been formally allied with the 15th (North) Auckland Regiment of New Zealand, and after the war there was a wish that the alliances should be extended to sister regiments in the other Dominions. In consequence, negotiations were opened and in October, 1930, an alliance was approved with the 48th Battalion Australian Infantry, to be followed in 1931 with an alliance with the 58th Battalion Australian Infantry. In 1933 the Lake Superior Regiment of Canada was added to the list, forming a link with the early days of the Regiment in Canada. Short details of the histories of these Regiments are contained in Appendices VIII, IX, X, and XI.

**Regimental
Alliances.**

The Depot Week. On 4th July, 1923, the Depot Week was inaugurated as an annual festival with the object of maintaining a close liaison between the Regiment and the County, and also to provide an opportunity for the reunion of officers and other ranks. On the first of these occasions the principal ceremony was the solemn one of depositing the old Colours of the 48th in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre. These Colours which had been presented in 1838, had been kept in the Officers' Mess of the 48th or of the Depot since 1889. A solemn service was held, and the Colours marched to the church carried by Lieutenants S. P. Briggs and J. R. Wetherall, with an escort commanded by Major E. L. Hughes, D.S.O. After the opening prayers of the commemoration service the colours were carried to the altar rails, where the Vicar received them and placed them on the altar. This was followed by the singing of the National Anthem.

The Vicar, in his address to the members of the Regiment, said that he accepted thankfully the trust with which he had been honoured, and promised that the Colours would be guarded and revered in days to come in no less a degree than they had always been honoured and revered by the Regiment.

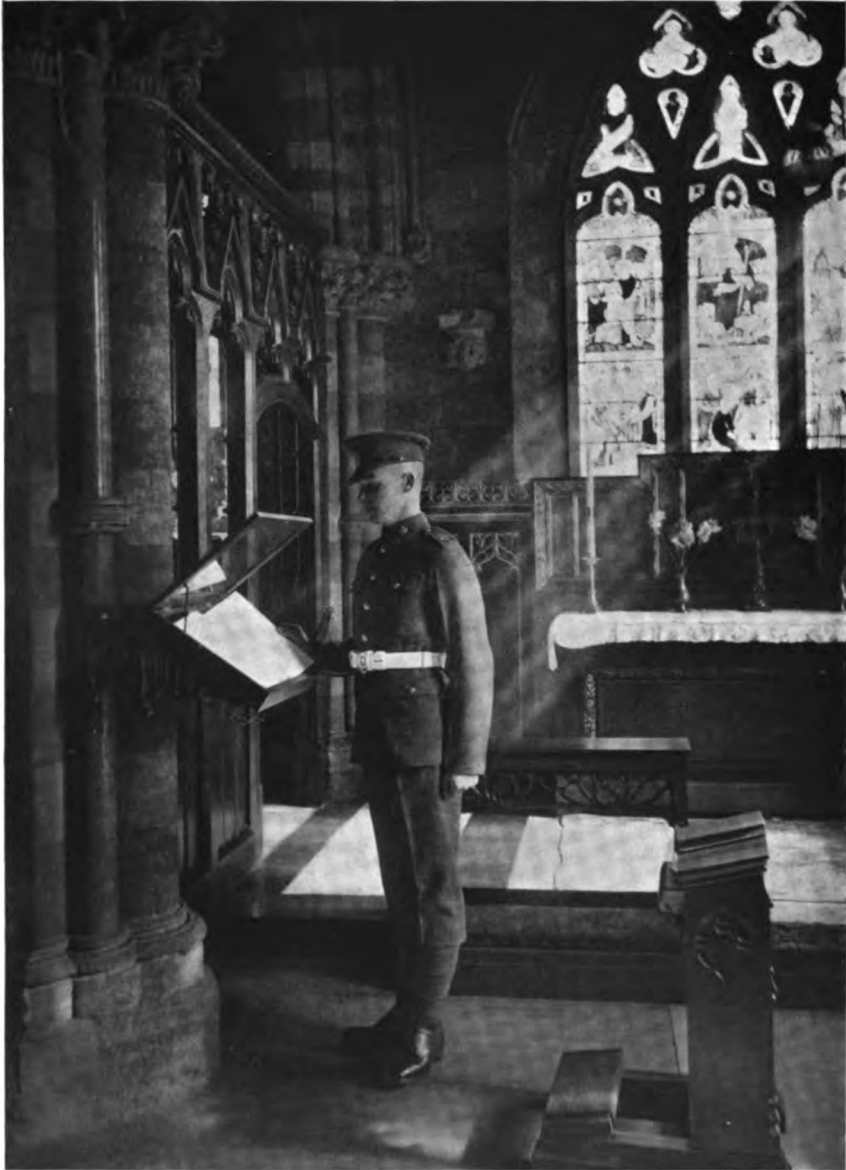
Two years later, with similar ceremony, the Colours of the 3rd Battalion were placed in the church by Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Metcalfe, late Commanding Officer of the battalion.

A memorial parade service invariably forms part of the Depot Week programme, which also includes an Old Comrades' Association Dinner and a Regimental "At Home." This week, like the Regimental Dinner,⁵ has now become regularly established as an annual reunion.

Reorganization of the Territorial Army. In 1920 the Territorials were reorganized and the name Territorial Force was changed to that of Territorial Army. In future only members willing to accept the liability of service overseas were to be accepted, but it was provided in the Imperial Service Agreement, that before the liability should become effective, an Act of Parliament authorizing the despatch of the Territorial Army overseas must be passed.

The 4th Battalion (1920-1934). In February, 1920, the 4th Battalion was re-formed under Colonel John Brown, its Adjutant in 1914 and Commanding Officer from 1916 to 1918. The establishment was fixed at 20 officers and 584 other ranks, and the four companies were distributed at Northampton, Rushden, Wellingborough and Kettering. In 1930 a machine-gun company was introduced into the establishment, which was changed to correspond to that of the Regular Army and the battalion was reorganized with Headquarters, "A" Company and "B" (Machine Gun) Company at Northampton (with a platoon at Towcester), "C" Company at Wellingborough, Rushden, Raunds and Irthlingborough and "D" Company at Kettering.

On 7th March, 1924, Colonel Brown was given command of the East



THE CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE, NORTHAMPTON.

Midland Brigade, a just recognition of his services, and Lieutenant-Colonel J. Lowther, the Master of the Pytchley, assumed command of the 4th Battalion. The following year the Brigade had the distinction of being selected to attend Regular Army manœuvres on Salisbury Plain.

On 7th March, 1928, Lieutenant-Colonel Lowther completed his tenure of command and handed over to Lieutenant-Colonel W. R. Styles, who was succeeded on 7th March, 1934, by Lieutenant-Colonel H. N. Scott Robson.

In February, 1920, the Regiment was increased by an additional battalion on the formation of the 5th (Huntingdonshire) Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment. Though not in itself an old regiment, this battalion can safely claim old associations as the natural successor of the Huntingdonshire Volunteers. It also had as its origin the Huntingdonshire Cyclist Battalion, which was raised early in 1914 and disbanded with other cyclist battalions after the Great War. The battalion joined the 4th Battalion in the 162nd East Midland Brigade of the East Anglian Division.

At first Headquarters were fixed at Huntingdon, and outstations were set up at St. Neots, Ramsey, Peterborough, St. Ives and Yaxley. Lieutenant-Colonel M. D. Barkley, M.C., was given command, and his officers included among others Captain F. R. Berridge, who had won during the war, with the 7th Battalion, the D.S.O. and the M.C. with two bars.

The country, in 1920, was tired of soldiering, but in spite of this eight officers and seventy-four other ranks attended the first camp at Yarmouth within six months of the formation of the battalion. Since that date steady increases have been made in strength and in the numbers attending the annual camps.⁶

By 1925 the battalion had reached a reasonable strength and had attained a high standard of efficiency, which is proved by the fact that they were selected as part of the one Territorial brigade to take part in the Regular Army manœuvres. The strength on manœuvres was 15 officers and 421 other ranks.

In February, 1926, Colonel Barkley retired on reaching the age limit and Lieutenant-Colonel C. W. D. Rowe was appointed to the command, which he held until resigning in November, 1927. Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Mellows, T.D., who had, as Captain, been one of the officers originally appointed on the formation of the battalion in 1920, now assumed command.

In May, 1927, the battalion was reorganized with Headquarters and "A" Company at Huntingdon, with an outstation at St. Neots, "B" Company at Oundle, "C" Company at Ramsey and St. Ives, and "D" Company at Peterborough and Yaxley. Two months later Headquarters were transferred to Peterborough, and in 1929 a new drill station for "B" Company was opened at King's Cliffe.

During camp in 1928 at Colchester, the battalion had its first opportunity

of meeting one of the Regular battalions, and were most appreciative of the assistance given by the 58th on this occasion, which they claim did much to improve the efficiency of the unit.

On the conclusion of the camp in 1929 Colours were presented to the battalion by the Earl of Cavan at a ceremonial parade attended by the whole brigade. The Colours were made by the London School of Art Needlework and were the gift of old members and friends of the battalion as the outcome of an appeal issued by Lord Sandwich (President of the Huntingdonshire Territorial Association), Colonel M. D. Barkley and Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Mellows. The consecration ceremony was performed by the Brigade Chaplain, the Reverend L. W. Wright, the King's and Regimental Colours being received by Lieutenant W. V. Garrard and Lieutenant J. C. J. Simpson respectively. These Colours are of particular regimental interest, being the first buff colours carried by any battalion of the Regiment since 1889.

Changes in the distribution of the battalion were made in 1930, 1932 and 1933. In 1930 the Headquarters and Headquarter Wing were at Peterborough, "A" Company at St. Neots, "B" Company at Oundle, King's Cliffe and Corby, "C" Company (now the Machine Gun Company) at Huntingdon and St. Ives, and "D" Company at Fletton, Yaxley and Ramsey. In 1932 "A" Company consisted of the detachments at Ramsey, Yaxley and St. Ives (St. Ives ceased to be a drill station in 1933), "B" Company remained as before with an additional station at Thrapston, "C" Company were at Huntingdon and St. Neots, while "D" Company was concentrated at Fletton. There are great difficulties to be contended with by a battalion distributed over such a large and scattered area, but these have been overcome by enthusiasm and determination.

The standard of efficiency reached by Territorial units faced with such problems of distribution and whose personnel have only their spare time available for soldiering remains a matter of wonder to the Regulars of their sister battalions in the Regiment. The 48th and 58th are proud of the connection with their Territorial battalions, and are glad to know that the assistance they are able to give is fully appreciated.

All battalions are equally inspired by the records and traditions of the Regiment in the past.

CHAPTER XXX

48TH AND 58TH, 1919-1934

48TH : IRELAND (1919-1922)—SINN FEIN—ENGLAND (1922-1927)—CHINA (1927-1929)—MALTA, PALESTINE AND EGYPT (1929-1932)—MOVE TO IRAQ BY AIR (1932)—INDIA (1932-1934).
58TH : ENGLAND (1919)—INDIA (1919-1926)—SUDAN (1926)—ENGLAND (1928-1934).

IN 1919 both Regular battalions returned from the Continent, and many must have hoped for and expected a period of peace-time soldiering with its regular training routine and opportunities for sport. These hopes were not to be fulfilled ; the aftermath of war had left many centres of unrest throughout the world, and on all sides local disputes arose now that the main enemy had been defeated. These conditions called for a fresh rôle from the British Army. No longer was its primary task to fight, but to keep the peace between others.

These tasks of Imperial police work were carried out in almost all quarters of the globe ; they included the Railway Strike of 1919 and the General Strike of 1926 in England ; the Sinn Fein troubles in Ireland from 1919 to 1922 ; the protection of life and property in China during the civil war from 1927 to 1929 ; the racial disputes between Arabs and Jews in Palestine from 1929 to 1930 ; and in 1932 the threat of trouble from the Assyrians in Iraq. During all these difficult undertakings the Regiment proved its value as an agent of peace, just as in the preceding five years it had shown its reliability and steadiness in war.

On 22nd May, 1919, a cadre, consisting of the Colours, four officers and a few other ranks of the 48th, arrived at Fovant from the Rhine, handed in stores and proceeded to Northampton. Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. H. Drew, D.S.O., assumed command on 28th July, and a few days later, after rather less than three months in their county town the cadre moved to Templemore in Ireland, where they took over the companies of the 3rd Battalion which were distributed at Nenagh (" A "), Thurles (" B "), Cashel (" C ") and Templemore (" D "), and on 5th September the Headquarters of the 3rd Battalion moved to Northampton.

The tasks of the 3rd Battalion had been particularly difficult and diverse. They had not only formed part of the garrison of Ireland, but had also been reinforcement depot for battalions overseas and a training centre. In consequence, the personnel taken over by the 48th included a very large number of officers, many of whom were awaiting demobilization and few of whom had

any experience of peace-time soldiering and training ; the bulk of the men were not fully trained and were serving on short engagements. Finally, the division of the battalion in detachments made the work of reorganization and training particularly difficult. Fortunately Ireland was, as yet, comparatively peaceful so far as the Army was concerned and officers were able to shoot and hunt without interference.

The withdrawal of the Cashel detachment to Templemore in September, by a strange coincidence, left the battalion occupying the same stations as immediately after the Peninsular War, in 1815. In addition to their other duties the battalion had to find a large draft for the 58th of 224 men, who sailed for India in December.

The following year saw an increase in Sinn Fein activity, which, instead of being directed only against the Royal Irish Constabulary, now also included the soldiers, who were constantly liable to ambush if outside barracks in small parties. The battalion was now distributed between Templemore, Nenagh, Thurles and Birr, frequent inter-company reliefs being carried out. Company and battalion training became quite impossible, and little could be done outside barracks beyond the musketry course which was fired by detachments at Tipperary.

Sinn Fein activity took the form of raids on Royal Irish Constabulary barracks and loyalist houses, with destruction of property, the ambushing of troops travelling by lorry and the trenching and blocking of roads to hold up military reinforcements. Counter-measures were soon devised and the battalion was constantly engaged in the north of Tipperary County on such tasks as organized " drives " across country, searches for arms and wanted rebels, patrols to maintain road communications, and assistance to the constabulary.

A favourite method of road blocking by the Sinn Feiners was by the felling of trees. This was discouraged by making the nearest inhabitants saw up the wood and deliver it to barracks. Though the innocent may have suffered for the guilty, it was noticeable that tree-felling became rapidly less popular.

During this period the battalion suffered a number of lamentable casualties. Captain S. H. Beattie and Lance-Corporal Fuggle lost their lives when the Town Hall at Templemore was burnt. On 28th October, 1920, a baggage lorry was ambushed near Thomastown. The party put up a good fight against superior numbers and drove off the rebels, but three other ranks were killed¹ and one officer (Lieutenant Parker, R.E.) and five other ranks were wounded. Corporal Goodes was particularly commended by the Commander-in-Chief for his gallant conduct on this occasion.

A few days later, on 4th November, Lieutenant H. G. Hambledon was murdered by a party of rebels near Nenagh. As Intelligence Officer with the Nenagh company he had shown himself to be absolutely fearless and had become a marked man. He was shot from behind a house in particularly brutal circumstances when returning from Templemore on a motor cycle.

On 25th January, 1921, Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. H. Drew, D.S.O., relinquished command of the battalion and Lieutenant-Colonel C. R. J. Mowatt, D.S.O., was appointed, though he did not actually assume command until 15th July, Major E. L. Hughes, D.S.O., O.B.E., acting in command in the meantime.

Our counter-measures against the rebels had now become much more effective. The number of troops had been largely increased and supplemented by special forces of auxiliaries and "Black and Tans." Frequent raids were carried out by day and night on the houses of suspected rebels, roads were patrolled by troops in lorries escorted by "Peerless" armoured cars. Suspected persons were rounded up and, if necessary interned.

Similar conditions continued, with the rebels continually losing ground, until 11th July, 1921, when a truce was arranged, and in November the battalion was concentrated at Templemore for the first time since the war. In February, 1922, the battalion was ordered to hand over the barracks to the Irish Provisional Government, represented by a motley force calling themselves the Irish Army, and to proceed to the Curragh, where Keane Barracks were shared for some six weeks with 2nd Battalion The Suffolk Regiment, until the latter left for Northern Ireland.

The Curragh was next evacuated, and on 16th May the 48th marched into camp at the Phoenix Park, Dublin. Here, at last, some training could be carried out, though things were made difficult by the number of guards and patrols which had to be found to prevent men from sniping the camp under cover of darkness. The disturbance was not, however, severe, as the two rival Irish parties were fully occupied in the fighting against each other which culminated in the blowing up of the Four Courts.

In September the battalion was moved into winter quarters in the Royal Hibernian Military School Buildings, which were shared with 2nd Battalion The Royal Welch Fusiliers. In December the evacuation of Southern Ireland was decided upon, and on the 16th the 48th marched through Phoenix Park, and along the Quays to North Wall with uncased Colours and fixed bayonets. During this march, the enthusiasm of the civil population after their previous attitude, was extraordinary.

Crossing to Holyhead, the 48th moved by train to Shorncliffe on 17th

**The 48th
in England
(1922-1927).**

December, 1922, where they occupied Napier Barracks, and formed part of the 10th Infantry Brigade. On 1st December, 1922, Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. W. H. Wortham, C.M.G., D.S.O., assumed command on exchange with Lieutenant-Colonel

C. R. J. Mowatt, D.S.O., who left to command the 58th, of which battalion he had previously been Adjutant. Colonel Wortham had already commanded a battalion of the Royal Irish Fusiliers. His tenure of command of the 48th was therefore shortened and on 14th March, 1925, Lieutenant-Colonel R. M. Raynsford, D.S.O., whose previous service had been with the Leinster Regiment, assumed command.

In January, 1925, the battalion moved to Dettingen Barracks, Blackdown, where it had been stationed on the outbreak of war in 1914, and in September took part in the first Army manœuvres held since the war at Salisbury Plain. They received the congratulations of both the Commander-in-Chief and Divisional Commander on their marching and endurance.

On 1st October, 1926, Lieutenant-Colonel S. H. J. Thunder, C.M.G., D.S.O., M.C., assumed command of the battalion on the retirement of Lieutenant-Colonel R. M. Raynsford, D.S.O.

Civil war having broken out in China, a large increase in the British garrisons became necessary for the protection of lives and property, and in April, 1927, the 48th were ordered to hold themselves in readiness for embarkation at short notice. All men were recalled from leave, but still the battalion was some four hundred men short of the foreign establishment. This deficiency was made good by calling up the Reserve, approximately half being the reservists of the Regiment, and the remainder being provided from the reserve of sixteen other regiments.^a

**The 48th
in China
(1927-1929).**

Embarkation took place on 11th and 12th April in the transports *City of Marseilles* and *Nevasa*. Hong Kong was reached on 17th May, and the battalion accommodated in camp at Sham-Shui-Po, about two miles from Kowloon. The first task was to get the men, particularly the reservists, fit for active service, and this was accomplished largely by bathing parades daily, with hill-climbing parades twice a week. On 1st November the reservists returned to England in H.M.T. *Bellerophon*, and a few days later the 48th were joined by the men "turned over" by the 58th from the Sudan, and embarked for Shanghai in H.M.T. *Somersetshire*. Arriving on 14th November, they were accommodated in a hutted camp on the Tongshan Road, until February, 1928, when a move was made to Kiachow Road camp. In April, "B" Company and a section of machine guns, under Captain C. Lister, D.S.O., M.C., proceeded in detachment to Nanking, where British interests were threatened, and was quartered in "go downs" belonging to the International Export Company. A detachment was also provided in May to staff the convalescent depot at Wei-Hai-Wei, where the Machine Gun Company also carried out its training.

At the request of the Officer Commanding, twenty men of the 4th Regiment, United States Marine Corps, were attached to the battalion for instruction as drummers. Their commanding officer afterwards presented Drum-Major Hunt with a silver cigarette case "in appreciation of his untiring efforts in training the fifes and drums of the 4th Regiment." Altogether the relations between the two regiments were most friendly. Mutual demonstrations were given and Lieutenant-Colonel Thunder was invited by the American commanding officer to review his regiment.

In August the Nanking detachment rejoined headquarters, and before

departure were presented with a silver shield by the Consul-General in recognition of their services.

In December, 1928, half the battalion sailed for Malta in H.M.T. *Neuralia*, being played to the quay by the pipe band of the 2nd Battalion Scots Guards, while the band of the 4th Regiment, United States Marine Corps, played at the quayside during embarkation. The following March the remainder of the battalion arrived at Malta, sailing as far as Hong Kong in H.M.T. *Dorsetshire* and thence in H.M.T. *Somersetshire*. While at Malta the 48th was quartered in Imtarfa Barracks; organized training became possible once more and considerable successes were gained in the Army Rifle Association competitions.

**The 48th
at Malta,
Palestine,
and Egypt
(1929-1932).**

Less than a year had been spent at Malta when serious trouble arose in Palestine between the Arabs and the Jews, and once more the 48th were called upon to preserve the peace. Embarking on 29th November, Port Said was reached on 2nd December, and the following day the battalion entrained for Jerusalem and Lydda. From these centres the battalion was distributed to its various stations, and by 5th December was located with Headquarters and the Machine Gun Company in Jerusalem, and companies at Jaffa, Sarafand and Nablus, with two platoons at Hebron. Later a machine-gun platoon was sent to Jericho.

The duties while in Palestine consisted of lorry patrols, searches for arms and similar work in connection with internal security. From time to time, on the occasion of religious ceremonies, a state of emergency was declared and vulnerable points were then occupied until the danger had passed.

On 1st October, 1930, Lieutenant-Colonel T. S. Muirhead assumed command on Lieutenant-Colonel S. H. J. Thunder completing his tenure of command.

In January, 1931, the 48th was transferred to Moascar on the Suez Canal, but before leaving Palestine they received thanks and special praise for their behaviour from the High Commissioner and the Air Officer Commanding-in-Chief. The new barracks in Jerusalem were named "Talavera Barracks" in honour of the battalion.

Relieved once more from internal-security duties the Regiment was able to concentrate on training.

The 48th were now to have the distinction of being the first battalion not only in the British Army, but also in the world, to be transported complete by air.

**Move to Iraq
by Air (1932).**

For some time the Assyrians, a tribe occupying a mountainous part of Iraq, had been growing restless. Their grounds of discontent were that the British Government had not fulfilled its promises made at the close of the Great War, and a fear of being left at the mercy of an unsympathetic Iraquian Government, when our mandatory influence was

removed, subsequent to the admission of Iraq to the League of Nations in September, 1932. The unrest culminated on 1st June in the political and religious leader of the Assyrians sending a manifesto to the High Commissioner that no Assyrian would continue soldiering with the Iraq levies. This force was composed of Assyrians under British officers, and was employed in guarding Royal Air Force aerodromes, and if the threat had been carried into effect, not only would the aerodromes have been left unguarded, but incidents would have been almost inevitable between disbanded levies and the populace of Baghdad. To prevent this, troops were urgently required, and the 48th was detailed for the duty.

A warning order was received on 12th June for the Regiment to move from Egypt to Iraq by air, and ten days later "B" Company left Moascar at 4.30 a.m. in nine Vickers "Victoria" aircraft of Nos. 70 and 216 Squadrons, Royal Air Force, and arrived at Hinaidi on the outskirts of Baghdad at 4.50 p.m. having landed at Ziza and Rutbah *en route*. One machine developed engine trouble between Rutbah and Hinaidi and was forced to land. It remained in the desert all night, the troops bivouacking, and continued its flight the next morning. Other companies moved on successive days, and other cases occurred of planes being forced down in the desert, but by June 27th the whole battalion had arrived.

Thus, in one day a company had been transported to a point of danger eight hundred miles away, over waterless deserts and barren mountains. Within six days the strength had been raised to 15 officers and 548 other ranks, who had been moved without a casualty.

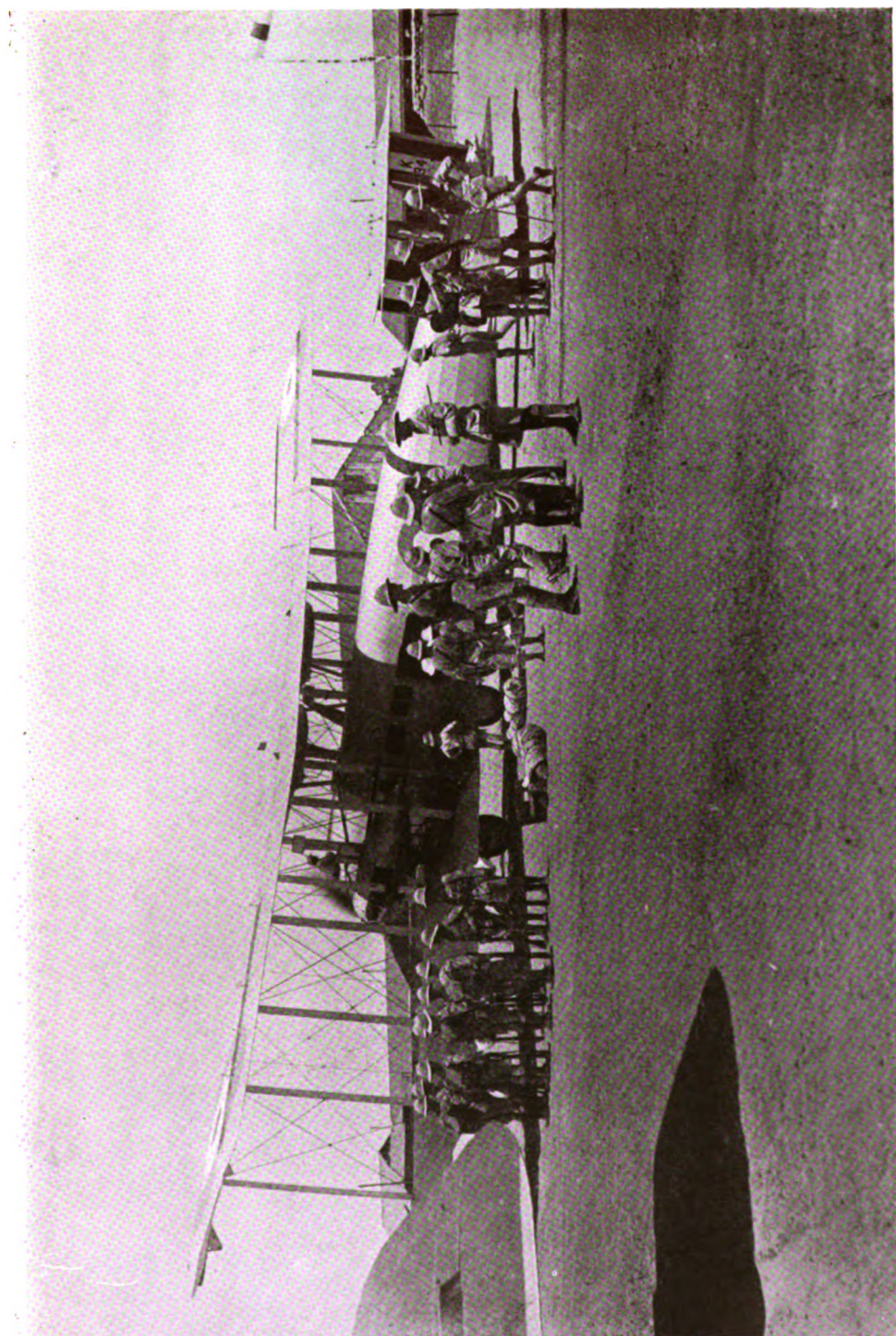
On arrival the battalion was distributed at once by aircraft, train and lorry to the various danger zones at Suliamania and Mosul. They had then the task of guarding the aerodromes and of disarming the levies.

The detachment at Hinaidi were inspected during July by the Air Officer Commanding in Iraq, who afterwards spoke as follows :—

"I know I have very good reason not to forget your visit to this country—no one in the Royal Air Force here is likely to forget it either. Probably the chief thing that sticks in your memory at the moment is the discomfort, internal and external, you experienced on your way across, when you had no inclination to think what it all meant—that you were making history, impressive history.

"The move of your battalion to this country is unique. Nothing of the kind has ever been done before. It was a completely new departure to move a whole battalion across a thousand miles of mountain and desert.

"Your move has had an extraordinary effect on this country. People here, not only the local inhabitants, but British and foreign residents as well, thought they were isolated. The conjuring of a whole battalion 'out of the blue' made them think. There is evidence also that it created a profound impression abroad. . . .



PORTION OF THE 1st BATTALION ARRIVING AT MOASCAR, ON RETURN FROM IRAQ, JULY, 1932.

" This may be some consolation to you and make you think that the discomforts you endured were not a wasted effort.

" We of the Royal Air Force appreciated the fact that we have been associated with the Northamptonshire Regiment in this affair. I must say that when I was waiting for the first party to arrive, I knew the situation was a ticklish one ; and when I watched the first party tumble out of the aeroplanes and march off as if they had been getting out of buses at Aldershot, I was impressed and relieved. I thought to myself what a good thing it was that a good battalion does not weigh more than any other battalion."

In the middle of July the situation became normal, and the 48th returned to Moascar by half companies. The return was much more comfortable, two days being taken on the journey, which was broken at Rutbah Wells, where the night was spent. To commemorate the move a silver cup was presented to both No. 70 and No. 216 Squadron, Royal Air Force, and the officers of both units were made permanent honorary members of the Officers' Mess.

In spite of the move training did not suffer unduly, and many successes were won in both musketry and sport.

Warning having been received that the Regiment was to move to India, Commander-in-Chief in Egypt, Lieutenant-General Sir John T. Burnett Stuart, inspected the battalion on parade. He addressed the battalion, congratulating them on their high reputation and on their good work done without fuss or advertisement. They had taken the move to Iraq as all in the day's work and had left behind them a high reputation in Egypt.

On 13th December, 1932, the 48th entrained for Suez and embarked for India the following day in H.M.T. *Dorsetshire*. Karachi was reached on Christmas Eve, and Christmas Day was spent in the train *en route* for Jullundur, where the Wellington Lines were occupied. Within three weeks of their arrival the battalion took part in a training march in which some one hundred and fifty miles were covered in fourteen days. No men fell out during the whole period of the march. During the hot weather of 1933 companies were sent in rotation to Dalhousie, which was last visited by the battalion in 1907, training in mountain warfare being carried out in a hill camp at Dayan Khund.

**The 48th
in India (1932).**

On 1st November, 1933, Lieutenant-Colonel T. S. Muirhead relinquished command of the battalion on being appointed to command a brigade of the King's African Rifles, and Lieutenant-Colonel F. W. L. Bissett, D.S.O., M.C., assumed command.

Here we must leave the 48th with the hope that they may enjoy a well-deserved rest, and that apart from local moves their next journey may be homeward bound on completing their foreign service in 1948.

**The 58th
Return Home
(1919).**

During the war the Regular troops forming the garrison of India had for the most part been replaced by Territorials. Now that the war was over, it was the wish not only of the Territorials themselves, but also of the authorities, that the men should be brought home as early as possible for demobilization. The 58th was therefore required to fit itself early, to complete its tour of foreign service which had been broken in 1914. On 18th April, 1919, a cadre of six officers and sixty-nine other ranks, under Lieutenant-Colonel S. S. Hayne, D.S.O., left Ath in Belgium, and crossing the following day by Dunkirk, proceeded to Colchester. Here the battalion was gradually brought up to strength, very largely by a special form of engagement whereby soldiers might extend their existing engagements by anything up to four years.

In July, 1919, detachments of the battalion took part in the peace celebrations at London, Northampton and Colchester. Orders for the move to India were received early in September, and on the 15th the advanced party under Major C. W. Barton, C.M.G., D.S.O., actually sailed from Liverpool. The move of the battalion was then cancelled at short notice owing to a strike of railway men, and it was detailed for duties in aid of the civil power in various parts of East Anglia. On conclusion of the strike the battalion was highly complimented for the manner in which its duties had been carried out and the tact displayed by all ranks. Once more orders for India were received, and on 24th October the battalion embarked in H.M.T. *Martaban*, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel L. G. W. Dobbin, D.S.O.^a

**The 58th
in India
(1919-1926).**

Disembarking at Karachi on 16th November the battalion moved to Rawal Pindi, and after three weeks in camp on the racecourse, were transferred to Victoria Barracks. Barely a year was spent here before orders were received for the North-West Frontier, and on 11th October they moved by rail to Jamrud and from there marched to Landi Kotal in the Khyber Pass, taking over from the 2nd Battalion The Royal Fusiliers. The year spent at Landi Kotal was a dull one for the Regiment and no incidents of importance took place. The local tribesmen were not unfriendly, and no cases of disturbance between soldiers and villagers took place. As, however, the tribesmen from a distance could not be trusted, the camp was enclosed by an entrenched perimeter and wire entanglements, beyond which piquets in stone sangars held commanding points eight hundred to two thousand yards from the camp. Married families had been left behind at Peshawar, and troops, not allowed to go beyond the piquet line, were practically confined to camp for twelve months. The accommodation consisted only of wooden huts, and the duties were heavy, the battalion finding three piquets and thirty sentry posts every night. In spite of the conditions, there was little sickness, and the men took cheerfully to their monotonous work. The remainder of the garrison consisted of a pack battery, a squadron of Indian cavalry, a Pioneer battalion and two Indian infantry battalions.

At last, in October, 1921, the battalion was relieved at Landi Kotal, and before going was complimented by the Brigade Commander on its steady behaviour which had done much for British prestige and future peaceful conditions in the Khyber Pass. On 19th October the battalion relieved the 2nd Battalion The Lancashire Fusiliers at Lahore, finding detachments at Lahore Fort and Amritsar. In February, 1922, H.R.H. The Prince of Wales visited Lahore and a guard of honour for his arrival at Government House was provided by the battalion, who also found the permanent guard on his quarters. During his visit the Prince attended a soldiers' concert at which several members of the Regiment performed.

On the expiration of the period of command of Lieutenant-Colonel L. G. W. Dobbin on 26th May, 1922, Major C. W. Barton, C.M.G., D.S.O., assumed temporary command until the arrival on 5th February, 1923, of Lieutenant-Colonel C. R. J. Mowatt, D.S.O., who had been commanding the 48th.

In October, 1923, His Excellency The Viceroy visited Lahore, the battalion furnishing the guard of honour on his arrival, and the guard over Government House during his stay. In April, 1924, detachments were sent to the hill stations at Dagshai and Kasauli. While at the former station surprise was occasioned by the arrival of a consignment of Mellin's Food marked "Condemned." It transpired that this was not intended for the troops but as part rations for the mules. It is not known whether these animals enjoyed this somewhat unusual diet, but no deaths were reported.

On 14th November Lieutenant-Colonel C. R. J. Mowatt, D.S.O., one of the few officers who has had the honour to command both battalions of the Regiment, sailed for England on completion of his tenure of command. He was succeeded by Lieutenant-Colonel G. L. Crossman, C.M.G., D.S.O., who had spent his previous service with the West Yorkshire Regiment.

The battalion moved to Karachi on 12th March, 1925, detaching a company at Hyderabad (Sind). While here more training was possible than when at Lahore; the battalion concentrated during the winter for two weeks' training in the Karachi area, and in September, 1926, went into camp at Baleli Mound, near Quetta, and took part in the Western Command Manœuvres. It is noted in the records, that in 1926, for the first time since 1912, the officers beat the sergeants at football in the competition for Colonel Denny's Cup. In the Sind Rajputana District Annual Assault-at-Arms the regimental teams entered for bayonet fighting, physical training, Lewis gun, machine gun and tug-of-war, all won their events and only the cross-country team was defeated.

Orders had previously been received for a move to Iraq, but at the last moment the destination was changed to Khartoum, where
Sudan, 1926. the battalion arrived in November. Khartoum North Barracks were taken over as headquarters with detachments of one company at Said Pasha Barracks, Khartoum, and at Atbara and El Obeid.

In Khartoum South Barracks were stationed the 2nd Battalion The Queen's Royal Regiment, with whom the relations of the 58th were most cordial, and the two regiments made the best of the rather trying conditions in the Sudan.

From April until August is a period of extreme dry heat in Khartoum with a maximum daily temperature varying between 110 and 116 degrees, accompanied at intervals of about a week by severe dust storms, known locally as "Haboobs." The haboob, which is a speciality of the Sudan, appears usually from the south-east in the form of a dense cloud of dust and sand about five hundred feet high. A little later the dust arrives, accompanied by a gale of wind, and is of such density as to resemble a London fog. It is impossible to keep anything free from this dust which is driven by the wind into every crevice. The summer of 1927 was particularly hot, and in July a large detachment from Khartoum was sent to camp at Gebeit in the Red Sea hills.

In October a draft of 230 non-commissioned officers and men embarked in H.M.T. *Somersetshire* at Port Sudan under Major W. G. A. Coldwell, D.S.O., for China on being posted to the 48th.

In acknowledgment of the splendid manner in which the clergy had helped to entertain the two regiments, the 58th and the 2nd Battalion The Queen's Royal Regiment combined to present to the Cathedral Church of All Saints, Khartoum, a Lectern Bible and some pieces of communion plate.

After just over a year in the Sudan the 58th sailed for England from Port Sudan on December 16th, 1927, on completion of their tour of service abroad, which had commenced in 1911.

Arriving at Southampton on 31st December, 1927, the battalion proceeded by troop train direct to Colchester and during the next four years the usual routine of home service training was carried out. On 12th July, 1928, the Colonel of the Regiment,

**The 58th in
England, 1928.**

General Sir Havelock Hudson, inspected the battalion on the anniversary of the Battle of Quebec. In March, 1929, a parade was held on the occasion of the annual visit of the London Branch of the Regimental Comrades' Association at which Colonel F. J. Parker, on behalf of the Association, presented an efficiency shield to be competed for annually and awarded to the company with the best results in the annual physical efficiency tests.

On 13th March, 1929, Lieutenant-Colonel W. D. Barber, M.C., assumed command in succession to Lieutenant-Colonel G. L. Crossman, C.M.G., D.S.O., who had completed his period of command.

The battalion had not been long at home before it started to regain its old place as one of the best in the Army at musketry and cross-country running. Members of the battalion began to appear again in the Army Hundred and teams in the Army Rifle Association prize lists, while in 1930 the final of the garrison Hockey Championship was reached, and in the following year the garrison Cross-Country Championship was won.

On 16th October, 1931, the 58th was transferred to the 2nd Brigade at Aldershot, where Badajoz Barracks were occupied. While here the weapon-training successes continued to improve, and the Brigade Cross-Country Championship was won in 1931, 1932 and 1933. In addition the battalion had many successes in boxing and in 1932, 1933 and 1934 the officers won the Connaught Cup, a competition in horsemanship open to all infantry battalions.

On 13th March, 1933, Lieutenant-Colonel G. St. G. Robinson, D.S.O., M.C., assumed command on Lieutenant-Colonel W. D. Barber, M.C., completing his tenure. Colonel Robinson's record is quite unique in the Regiment. He was Adjutant of the 48th and commanded that battalion for two years during the war, being, with Colonel Mowatt, one of the two officers who have commanded both battalions. In addition he commanded the Depot from 1925 to 1927. On vacating command Colonel Barber presented the 58th with a handsome gong stand for use at the guard-room.

Our last view of the 58th is of a battalion well worthy of its position in the First Division, the spearhead of the British Army. We will conclude by quoting from the last inspection report :—" Fit for war in all respects."



Epilogue

AND so our Regiment approaches a new milestone in its history, for 1941 will see the two hundredth anniversary of its formation. What of the future ? There are many who feel the Army is ill provided with the essentials of modern warfare, and money for armaments is grudgingly spent by the taxpayer. This is but a repetition of history. Early in the eighteenth century after Marlborough's campaigns, and again one hundred years later on conclusion of the Napoleonic wars, the Army was cursed for its pains and starved of money ; but it remained staunch throughout, and when war came was ready with its tradition, discipline and training to serve and save the nation. It will be ready again. The spirit still lives.

Should ever the millennium of perpetual peace be reached the Regiment will lay aside its weapons with joy, but also with the hope that some of its traditions of self-sacrifice, honour and loyalty may remain as an inspiration to the generations still to come.

The bitterness and rivalries of men still live ; the struggle for existence remains ; and the date when wars will cease still seems far off. Till that day comes, the Regiment will remain dutiful and loyal to its King, its Country, the Army and itself. In the meantime its members may well take as their inspiration the words of Arnold :—

“ One more charge and then be dumb,
When the forts of Folly fall
May the victors when they come
Find my body near the wall.”



NOTES ON CHAPTERS

CHAPTER I

¹ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

² *Original Officers.*—The officers posted to the Regiment on formation were as follows:—Colonel James Cholmondley; Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Hopson; Major John Morrice; Captains Peter Barbut, George Gough, David Douglas, David de la Jonquiére, William Sparkes, Thomas Lee, George William Hervey; Captain-Lieutenant Doyley Bromfield; Lieutenants William Oman, Hugh Grant, James Forbes, Charles Ramsay, Hugh Williams, Robert Halls, George Douglas, Benjamin Price, J. Goodenough, Thomas Gaze; Ensigns Hezekiah Fleming, William Maurice, William Parsons, John Gordon, Robert Dobson, Richard Lloyd, John Kelynge, George Bunard, Richard Boyer, Henry Tilson, Samuel Palmer; Adjutant Hezekiah Fleming; Quartermaster Gibson; Chaplain Henry Tilson; Surgeon Samuel Palmer.

Lieutenant-Colonel T. Hopson, sometimes called Peregrine Hopson, was a Major in the 14th and a real veteran, being first commissioned in December, 1703. In 1743 he transferred to the 20th and was Colonel first of that Regiment and then of the 40th, was Commander-in-Chief in Nova Scotia for a period, and died at Martinique in 1759 when commanding the expedition which took that island.

Major John Morrice (or Morris) appears to have been appointed from half-pay and is probably the officer of that name who had previously retired from the 38th.

Of the Captains, Douglas was a Lieutenant in the 25th, de la Jonquiére a Lieutenant in the 13th, Sparkes came from the 38th, and Lee from the 4th, being Lieutenant and Ensign respectively of six and seven years' service. Bromfield was a Lieutenant in an "Independant Company" at Guernsey, Oman a Second-Lieutenant in Douglas's Marines, Forbes an Ensign in the 23rd, Ramsay in the 18th, and Williams in the 40th.

³ "History of the British Army." Fortescue.

⁴ "A System for the Complete Interior Oeconomy of a Battalion of Infantry," by Bennet Cuthbertson. 1779.

⁵ "Memoirs of John Shipp."

⁶ Document in Public Record Office.

⁷ For full details see Appendix VI.

CHAPTER II

¹ Carteret to Wade, S.P. 87 (Mil. Expeditions, Vol. XIV.).

² Wade to Carteret, 2nd July, 1744, S.P. 87 (Vol. XIV.).

³ Some records state that the Regiment took part in the siege of Tournai and the Battle of Fontenoy in 1745; this is not, however, the case. The mistake is probably due to the fact that Sir John Ligonier, brother of the Colonel of the 48th, commanded the Infantry at these battles, and references to Ligonier's Corps may have led historians to believe that the 48th were present.

⁴ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

⁵ Some records state that the 48th formed part of the garrison of Oudenarde and Termonde when captured (*e.g.*, "Fontenoy," by F. H. Skrine). This is not, however, supported by the dispatches (S.P. 87). States of this period show the 48th with the field army. The references may be to Beauclerk's Regiment, then the 31st Foot.

⁶ W.O. Miscellaneous Orders, 25th Sept., 1745.

⁷ S.P. 87, xvii.

⁸ "Origins of the Forty-Five." Scottish Historical Society, Series II.

⁹ Checquers Court MSS. (Hist. MSS. Commn.), p. 346.

¹⁰ The order of battle at Falkirk was as follows :—First Line (Right to Left)—Royals, 48th, 14th, 13th, 34th, 8th. Second Line : 4th, Battereau's, 36th, 37th, 27th. Reserve : 3rd.

There is some doubt whether the Royals were actually on the right of the line in this battle, and some authorities show them between the 13th and 14th Foot.

¹¹ Hist. MSS. Commn. ; 10th Report, Part I, p. 441.

¹² Hist. MSS. Commn. : Weston MSS.

¹³ Hist. MSS. Commn. : Trevor MSS.

¹⁴ The order of battle at Culloden was as follows :—First Line (right to left) : Royals, 34th, 14th, 21st, 37th, 4th. Second Line : 3rd, 36th, 48th, 20th, 25th, 8th. Reserve : 27th (later moved to right of first line), Battereau's (moved during battle to right of second line), 13th.

¹⁵ The British regiments present at Laffelt were The Greys, 4th Hussars, Inniskillings, 7th Hussars, Cumberland's Dragoons, 1st and 3rd Guards (one battalion of each), 3rd, 4th, 13th, 19th, 21st, 23rd, 25th, 32nd, 33rd, 36th, 37th and 48th.

¹⁶ Checquers Court MSS., p. 372.

¹⁷ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

¹⁸ Extract from letter by Horace Walpole to George Montagu.

¹⁹ Officer casualties at Laffelt :—*Wounded*—Lieutenant-Colonel G. Stanhope, Captains R. Chumley and S. Douglas, Lieutenants R. Bodyer and S. McQueen, Ensign W. Crimble. *Missing*—Colonel H. Conway, Captain R. Dobson, Lieutenants C. Ramsay and H. Ellis, Ensigns S. Waterhouse and I. Runple ("Military History of Europe, 1739-1748," Biggs).

²⁰ "History of British Army," Fortescue. In the *Gentleman's Magazine* for October, 1748, there is a list showing all the regiments in the Army.

²¹ "General James Murray," by Makon.

²² Stations in Ireland :—1748, Kinsale and Clonmel ; 1749, Londonderry and Ballinagh ; 1751, Galway ; 1752, Dublin ; 1753, Wexford, Duncannon Fort and Waterford ; 1754, Cork.

CHAPTER III

¹ Corbett, "England in the Seven Years' War," I. 25.

² The casualties to officers of the 48th during the Battle of Monongahela were as follows :—

Killed.—Captain Robert Cholmondeley ; Lieutenants John Hansard, William Wideman, Walter Crimble, Peregrine Brenton and John Hart.

Wounded.—Lieutenant-Colonel R. Burton ; Major William Sparkes ; Captains Roger Morris, Richard Bower and Robert Ross ; Lieutenants Theodore Barbette, William Edmonstone and John Gladwin ; Ensigns Alex McMillan, R. Cros, Robert Stirling, John Montresor.

(P.R.O. 1758/W.O. 25/3209.)

³ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

⁴ Pargitter's " Lord Loudoun in N. America," p. 93.

⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 116.

⁶ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

⁷ The officers originally appointed to the 58th were as follows :—Colonel Robert Anstruther ; Lieutenant-Colonel Byam Crump ; Major William Howe ; Captains James Agnew, Charles Graydon, John Nuttall, George Bird, James Dalrymple, Robert Rutherford, John Leland ; Captain-Lieutenant Charles Ross ; Lieutenants Lawrence Reynolds, Edward Crymble, Harrington Baudin, John Lloyd, Rowland Mitchell, Abel Warren, Effex Devereux, Horace Hayes, Jaques Brightman, David Kemptie ; Ensigns Roger Woolcomb, John Grant, David Davis, Berkeley St. Jno. Miller, William King, John Warburton, Johnson Colley, Walter Sloan, James Anstruther, — Wilson ; Chaplain, Henry Walker ; Adjutant, David Kemptie ; Quartermaster, Thomas Brown ; Surgeon, Alex Vert ; Agent, Mr. Bullock, Pall Mall.

⁸ See Appendix VI.

⁹ Royal Scots, 17th, 27th, 28th, 43rd, 46th and 55th Regiments.

¹⁰ Knox's Journal.

¹¹ Embarkation strengths were as follows :—48th—37 officers, 40 sergeants, 20 drummers, 932 rank and file ; 58th—28 officers, 27 sergeants, 15 drummers, 615 rank and file.

¹² Swivels were small guns which turned on a pivot.

¹³ Landing at Louisburg. Composition of Force :—

Left Wing, under Brigadier Wolfe, included the grenadier and light infantry companies of all regiments and the 78th Highlanders.

Centre, under Brigadier Lawrence, included the 2nd Brigade (1st, 40th, and 35th) and the 4th Brigade (45th, 3/60th, and 22nd Regiments).

Right Wing, under Brigadier Whitmore, included the 3rd Brigade (17th, 58th and 48th Regiments) and the 1st Brigade (28th, 2/60th, 47th and 1st Regiments).

¹⁴ Colonel R. Burton was appointed Lieutenant-Colonel of the 48th Foot on 17th October, 1754. He proceeded to North America with the 48th and obtained the local rank of Colonel on 10th January, 1758. Two years later he was appointed Colonel of the 95th, and on the disbandment of that Regiment in 1763 was appointed to the command of the 3rd Foot (The Buffs). Later he was promoted to the rank of Major-General, and died at Scarborough in 1768.

¹⁵ " An Authentic Account of the Reduction of Louisburg."

¹⁶ There is some doubt whether the " Lieutenant Grant " referred to in the accounts was Grant of the 58th. He was the only lieutenant serving at the time of the surrender. There were, however, two ensigns of the same name—Allan and Alex Grant, both of the Royal Americans. The matter is examined in some detail by J. S. McLennan in " Louisburg from its Foundation to its Fall," p. 254. (See also " The Life of Murray," by Mahon, p. 65).

¹⁷ The 48th and 58th were detailed to provide detachments as follows:—
48th—4 officers, 4 sergeants, 2 drummers, 100 rank and file; 58th—3 officers,
4 sergeants, 2 drummers, 50 rank and file.

¹⁸ There is no record of the casualties of other ranks belonging to the Regiment during the campaign; however, the officer casualties recorded are as follows:—
Killed—Ensign Godfrey Rowe (48th) on 19th July; wounded—Captain — Smith (58th), Lieutenant Thomas Hopkins (48th).

¹⁹ Wright's "Life of Wolfe."

²⁰ William S., Viscount Howe, was born 10th August, 1729, and received his first commission as Cornet in the Duke of Cumberland's Light Dragoons on 18th September, 1746; was promoted Lieutenant, in the same regiment, on 21st September, 1747; Captain Lieutenant, in the 20th Foot, on 2nd January, 1750; Captain, in the same regiment, on 1st June, 1750, in which regiment he served with Wolfe; Major, 58th Foot, on 4th January, 1756; and Lieutenant-Colonel, 58th Foot, on 17th December, 1759. He commanded the Light Infantry at Quebec, also a Brigade of Detachments under Murray in the expedition of 1760 to Montreal, and a Brigade at the famous Siege of Belle Isle on Brittany Coast in March-June, 1761. He was Adjutant-General of the Army at the Capture of Havannah in 1762.

He was appointed Colonel of the 46th Foot in 1764, Lieutenant-Governor of the Isle of Wight in 1768, and was promoted Major-General in 1772.

He was entrusted with the training of companies selected from regiments at home in a new system of light drill—this resulted in the general introduction of Light Companies into Line regiments.

He was present at Bunkers Hill in 1775 and behaved most gallantly, was appointed Colonel of the 23rd (Royal Welsh Fusiliers) in 1771, became Lieutenant-General in 1775, full General in 1793, and died at Plymouth in 1814.

He was six feet in height, of coarse mould and exceedingly dark.
("Dictionary of National Biography.")

CHAPTER IV

¹ The ten regiments were organized in three Brigades as follows:—

First Brigade (General Monckton): 15th, 43rd, 48th, 78th Highlanders.

Second Brigade (Brigadier-General Townshend): 28th, 47th, 2/60th.

Third Brigade (Brigadier-General Murray): 35th, 58th, 3/60th.

Originally the 48th had been posted to the Third Brigade and the 58th to the First Brigade, but they were changed over before arrival at Quebec.

² Embarkation strengths:—

48th ... 36 officers, 39 N.C.Os., 777 rank and file.

58th ... 27 officers, 28 N.C.Os., 561 rank and file.

³ Knox's Journal.

⁴ The strength of the two battalions at the time of the landing was as follows: 48th 683, 58th 335.

⁵ According to Quartermaster-Sergeant Johnson the enemy were within twenty yards before we opened fire.

⁶ "History of the British Army," by Fortescue.

⁷ At this time the Surgeon was definitely a member of the Regiment. See letter of Ensign William Johnston of the 48th. See also note ¹².

* The letter referred to reads as follows :—

COPY OF LETTER FROM ENSIGN WM. JOHNSTON, 48TH REGIMENT.

QUEBECK,

October 9th, 1759.

MY DEAR FATHER,

I can now with pleasure inform you of the Reduction of Quebec, the 12th of Sept. In the evening our Regiment was ordered to march, which we did at about 11 o'clock down to the water side, and there lay under arms and concealed, while* between three and four the next morning, we then embarked in flat bottomed boats, and landed on the opposite shore, in great good order. Our Light Infantry had climbed up the Hill, and had taken possession of a four Gun battery which greatly annoyed our shipping and Boats and killed a great number of men—the landing place was difficult, being excessively steep, and only a very narrow Road with a Travers cut in the center besides being flanked by an extreme high hill had the enemy been apprized of our landing there They might with only three hundred men have sent our whole army to pieces—but what will not British troops attempt and also effect with so great a General at their head and fighting for British Liberty and property the attempt was enterprising, and glorious and worthy our late Commander. The Army as it was obtained the Heights before Day Break—Mr. Montcalm could not then help fighting us he made an excellent Disposition he attacked us in Three heavy Columns of Regulars and Troops De Cologhy† and upon each Flank a great number of Canadians, upon our left his Indians and in our Rear his Troupes of horses, and about 1500 other troupes under Mr. Beaucampville‡ those 1500 were to cut off our retreat as Mr. Montcalm and his whole army were certain of victory from their superiority of Numbers we had not 4000 in the field that day but what we had were all Regulars, we had neither Provincials Rangers nor Mareines—after the engagement became general, it lasted a very little time we pursued them with fixed bayonets and the Highlanders with their Broad Swords even to the City Gates and also to the River Charles, where they broke down their Bridge, to hinder our pursuit, they lost in the action their Commander in Chief Mr. Montcalm and Mr. De Lemserge—second in command, a Brigadier General—besides a number of other Officers of Distinction, about 500 killed and 1500 wounded. Many of which are since dead of their wounds. We lost the ever to be regretted and never to be forgotten—the Brave General Wolfe One of the greatest Officers that England could ever boast of—Brig Monckton was wounded through the shoulder but is in a good way of recovery, we had not the whole day more than 400 killed and wounded—Mr. Montcalm said before he died that he was beat by the most brave and generous enemy but that he commanded the most cowardly dastardly villains in the World—Mr. Watson Surgeon to our Regt dressed Mr Wolfes wounds he asked him and repeated twice had we beat them Watson told him we had and that we had obtained a complete victory and were then in pursuit he said he was satisfied, and could die contented—an expired immediately Poor Fanley was wounded thro the arm—and was obliged to have it cut off—the seventeenth the Town capitulated the 18th English Troupes took possession—The inhabitants have most of them took the Oaths of Allegiance and the country people bring their arms daily—The Town is the most miserable situation imaginable. The lower town is entirely destroyed and all the principal buildings in the Upper Town shared the same fate. I don't believe we fired a shot or shell but what did execution. We are very busy repairing the houses for Barracks—Mr Murray§ Brother to the Vicar of Gainsboro commanded. Brigr Burton commands in the suburbs our Regt is quartered in the Superintendents house in the suburbs opposite the River Charles. Everything here is extremely dear and scarce Mutton is 18d. p lb or two guineas for a small sheep—fouls are 6/6d Price Butter 18d p lb Cheese 18d Bread 18d Loaf smaller than our 2d one a Turkey 10s Madiera 12/6 gallon and Rum 10s per gallon We have not heard anything from Mr Amherst lately That can be depended upon, only this we imagin he is either at Montreal or very near it, as Mr Levys army marched from this place in a great hurry—I write this upon the Drum Head at my Gyard Room in the old citadel as this place affords neither chair nor table. I expect to send this by Mr Sill and am in hopes he will deliver it himself.

I am my dearest father's

Most Dutiful and affectionate Son

WM. JOHNSTON.

P.S. My Duty attends the best of mothers and love to Aunt brothers and sisters Compliments to Mr Maynards Family and all enquiring friends.

* "While" for "until" is used by Shakespeare, was common in Lincolnshire and perhaps also at Beverley in the eighteenth century.

† Colonial troops.

‡ Bougainville.

§ Lieutenant-Colonel Murray of the 48th (cousin of Brigadier James Murray).

AA 2

* The casualties of the 48th and 58th Regiments during the campaign had been severe, particularly those of the 58th, the details being as follows :—

| Officers : | | | | | | <i>Killed.</i> | <i>Wounded.</i> |
|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|-----------------|
| 48th | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | I | 4 |
| 58th | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | I | 7 |
| Other ranks : | | | | | | | |
| 48th | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16 | 53 |
| 58th | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17 | 127 |

The details of the officer casualties being :—

Killed.—Lieutenant J. Percival (48th) ; Ensign Nicholas Tottenham (58th).

Wounded.—Lieutenant-Colonel R. Burton (48th) ; Captain Wm. Edmeston (48th) ; Captains John Nutthall (twice), George Byrd, John Leyland (58th) ; Lieutenants John Hathorn and Thomas Webb (48th) ; Lieutenants John Grant, Horace Hayes, David McKemptie (Adjutant) and Ensign Thomas Dainty (58th).

¹⁰ Captain Montresor's Diary.

¹¹ Battle honour approved by Horse Guards letter, 20/Gen./1459 dated 29th April, 1882.

¹² John Watson was " Apothecary's Mate " in North America, 14th November, 1757, and was appointed Surgeon of the 48th Foot on 9th September, 1758. He died before April, 1762. The original of Johnston's letter was at one time the property of Major E. M. Lowe, R.A. (*vide Journal of the Society for Army Historical Research*, Vol. VI, p. 31).

CHAPTER V

¹ Diary of Q.M.S. Johnson of the 58th.

² Knox's Journal.

³ Casualties of the 48th : Captain James, Captain Sir J. Cockburn, Captain T. Barbutt, Lieutenant S. Waterhouse, Lieutenant Wm. Johnston, Lieutenant V. Royce, Lieutenant R. Crowe, Lieutenant H. More were wounded and Lieutenant C. Danvers taken prisoner.

⁴ Capture of Montreal : Composition of force :—

1st Battalion of Grenadiers (Major Agnew of the 58th Commanding). Contained grenadier companies of the 15th, 35th, 47th, 58th and 3/60th.

2nd Battalion of Grenadiers contained the Grenadier companies of the 28th, 48th, 78th, 2/60th, the Surgeon being Mr. Watson of the 48th, who attended Wolfe in his last moments.

1st Battalion was composed of detachments of the 15th and 48th under command of Major Irving, the Adjutant and Quartermaster being provided by the 15th and 48th respectively.

2nd Battalion was composed of detachments of the 28th and 58th under Major Curry, the 28th providing the Adjutant and the 58th the Quartermaster.

3rd Battalion was composed of the 35th and 3/60th under Major Norris.

4th Battalion was composed of the 43rd and 2/60th under Major Oswald.

5th Battalion was composed of the 47th and 78th under Major Spittall.

⁵ Murray to Amherst, 19th May, 1760. See " General James Murray," by Mahon, p. 246.

Bibliography.—48th and 58th Records. "Journal of Q.M.S. Johnson of the 58th." "History of the British Army," Fortescue. "Journal of General Murray." "Life of Murray," Mahon. Notes on "History of 58th," in Colborne's *U.S. Magazine*. "Knox's Journal." "History of The King's Royal Rifle Corps." Etc., etc., etc.

CHAPTER VI

¹ The regiments were 15th, 17th, 22nd, 27th, 28th, 35th, 40th, 2/42nd, 43rd, 48th, and 3/60th. Captain Leslie of the 48th was appointed Assistant Quarter-master-General to the force. (P.R.O. W.O.1/5, p. 417.)

² The transports used by the 48th were the *Christiana* (267 tons), *The Dolphin* (289 tons), the *Generous Friend* (358 tons), *The Friendship* (229 tons), and the *Garland* (271 tons).

³ The casualties of the force at the capture of Martinique were as follows :—

| | Officers. | Sergeants. | Drummers. | R. & F. | Total. |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Killed | 8 | 3 | — | 87 | 98 |
| Wounded | 33 | 19 | 5 | 340 | 397 |
| Missing | — | — | — | 11 | 11 |
| | <hr/> 41 | <hr/> 22 | <hr/> 5 | <hr/> 438 | <hr/> 506 |

Of these the casualties of the 48th were 9 rank and file killed, 2 Captains (Captain William Edmeston and Captain John Crofton), and 15 rank and file wounded, and one man missing. (*London Gazette*, 23rd March, 1762.)

⁴ Return showing details of 58th captured at sea :—

| | Officers. | Sergeants. | Drummers. | R. & F. | Total. |
|---|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Taken prisoner | 18 | 19 | 10 | 354 | 401 |
| Escaped capture | 9 | 8 | 5 | 163 | 185 |
| | <hr/> | <hr/> | <hr/> | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| Total embarked at Staten Island | 27 | 27 | 15 | 517 | 586 |
| Left at New York and Quebec (sick) | 2 | — | — | 16 | 18 |
| With Regimental baggage ... | — | 1 | 1 | 5 | 7 |
| On leave, etc. | 5 | — | — | — | 5 |
| | <hr/> 34 | <hr/> 28 | <hr/> 16 | <hr/> 538 | <hr/> 616 |

The officers taken prisoner were as follows :—Captains Charles Graydon, John Nuttall, Robert Rutherford, Harrington Baudin and John Grant ; Lieutenants Jacques Brightman, Daniel Davies, John Warburton (Adjutant), James Anstruther, Francis Wemys and James Webber ; Ensigns James Denby, Gregor Grant, Robert McKenzie, Allan McLean and Wm. McMyne (Surgeon) ; Quarter-master John Ireland ; Volunteer Allan Cameron.

The following escaped capture :—Major James Agnew ; Captain Horace Hayes ; Lieutenants Roger Wollocombe, Wm. Orme and James Wemys ; Ensigns Wm. Sinclair, Arthur Brown and John Watson.

The remaining officers of the Regiment who were absent were :—Colonel Anstruther (leave) ; Lieutenant-Colonel Wm. Howe (leave) ; Captain J. Byrd, (sick at Quebec) ; Lieutenant Wm. King (leave) ; Ensign Andrew Hamilton

(sick at Quebec); Chaplain Henry Walker (England); Captain Byng (England). (Details from Public Record Office, W.O.1/5, pp. 469, 473, 479, 515, 523, 619.)

⁵ *Prize Money at Havannah.*—The scale of distribution was as follows :—

| | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------------|---------|----|----|
| General and Commander-in-Chief | 122,697 | 10 | 6 |
| Lieutenant-General | 24,539 | 10 | 1 |
| Major-General | 6,816 | 10 | 6 |
| Brigadier-General | 1,947 | 11 | 7 |
| Field Officer | 564 | 14 | 6 |
| Captain | 184 | 4 | 7 |
| Subaltern | 116 | 3 | 0 |
| Sergeant | 8 | 18 | 8 |
| Corporal | 6 | 16 | 6 |
| Private | 4 | 1 | 8½ |

⁶ *Casualties at Havannah :—*

| | Officers. | Sergeants. | Drummers. | R. & F. | Total. |
|------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|---------|--------|
| Killed | 11 | 15 | 4 | 260 | 290 |
| Wounded | 19 | 49 | 6 | 576 | 650 |
| Died of wounds | 4 | — | 1 | 51 | 56 |
| Died of disease | 39 | 14 | 11 | 630 | 694 |
| Missing | — | 1 | 4 | 125 | 130 |

Of these casualties, the battle casualties of the 48th amounted to three officers died (Captain J. Crofton, who had been wounded at Martinique, Lieutenant Atkinson and Lieutenant R. Frazer), 8 rank and file killed, 3 died of wounds, 27 rank and file wounded and 10 missing. 10 rank and file died of disease.

There is no record of any casualties being suffered by the 58th.

⁷ P.R.O. W.O. 1/5, pp. 523, 633.

⁸ For Biographical Notes, see Appendix II.

⁹ Documents in Public Record Office.

¹⁰ Drinkwater. "Siege of Gibraltar."

¹¹ Colonel Cochrane's Diary.

¹² This Diary is in possession of his descendant, Wm. H. Pagett, Esq., Oakville, Ontario, Canada.

¹³ *Stations of 48th in Ireland.*—The stations occupied were as follows :—1763, Charlford near Kinsale; 1765 and 1766, Cork; 1767, Dublin; 1768, North of Ireland; 1769, Isle of Man; 1770, Waterford and Cork; 1771, Cork; 1772, Dublin; 1773, Cork.

According to a muster roll in the Public Record Office, the Company Commanders at this time were as follows :—Lieutenant-General William Browne; Captain-Lieutenant John Lees; Lieutenant-Colonel Benjamin Gordon; Major Sir James Cockburn; Captains Edward Candler, John Hedges, William Edmeston, Richard Baillie, Francis D'Arcy, John French and Charles Humble.

Bibliography.—48th and 58th Records. Colborne's *United Service Magazine*. Histories of the Royal Scots, 43rd Light Infantry, 60th. Records of the Severity of Colonial Wars, 1899. "History of the British Army," Fortescue. *London Gazette*. Beatson's "Naval and Military Memoirs of Great Britain." Vol. III, Bryan Edwards' "History of the West Indies." Vol. I, Public Record Office Documents in W.O.1/5.

CHAPTER VII

¹ "History of the West Indies," Bryan Edwards, Book III, Chap. III.

² *Ibid.*, Book III, Chap. II.

³ The strength of the 58th was as follows :—

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Officers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25 |
| Staff | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3 |
| Sergeants | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29 |
| Drummers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22 |
| Rank and file | ... | ... | ... | ... | 526 |

According to an Army List dated 4th June, 1779, the following officers (38) were on the establishment of the 58th. A number of these must have been absent on leave at the time the siege commenced.

Colonel Launcelot Baugh; Lieutenant-Colonel Gavin Cochrane; Major William King (appointed Ensign 58th, 1st January, 1756); Captains James Dawson, Arthur Browne, William McMyne, Alexander Duffe, Robert Uniacke, Gregor Grant, Robert Agnew, Edward Burke (Adjutant, killed); Captain-Lieutenant Hon. William De Courcy; Lieutenants Thomas Woods (Ensign 58th, 31st December, 1769), Charles Cary, William Cunningham (Ensign 58th, 26th December, 1770), Albert Gladstone (Ensign 58th, 22nd February, 1771), — Williamson (Ensign 58th, 15th January, 1772), Arthur Whetham, Thomas Humphrey Lowe (absent, prisoner), Arthur Forrest, Charles Southby, William Fenton, Caesar Morrison, Robert Douglas, Henry Addison; Ensigns Percival Meggs, — Rice, — Gregory, — Burgess, — Baugh, John Exham Hemmings, Robert Bourne, — McAdam, Thomas Kirwan, William Browne, — Gordon (killed); Chaplain Robert Wilmot; Quartermaster — Halfpenny; Surgeon Hill Mills.

⁴ "The Curiosities of War," T. Carter, 1859.

⁵ "Siege of Gibraltar," Drinkwater.

⁶ "Journal of Siege of Gibraltar," Samuel Ancell, Sergeant.

Casualties at Gibraltar.—The casualties suffered by the 58th during the siege had been as follows :—

| | <i>Officers.</i> | | | <i>Sergeants.</i> | <i>Drummers.</i> | <i>R. & F.</i> | <i>Total.</i> |
|--------------------|------------------|-----|-----|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Killed | ... | ... | ... | I | I | — | II |
| Died of wounds | ... | ... | ... | — | I | — | 5 |
| Died of sickness | ... | ... | ... | — | I | I | 53 |
| Disabled by wounds | ... | ... | ... | — | — | I | 8 |
| Wounded | ... | ... | ... | 2 | 2 | 2 | 61 |
| Desertion | ... | ... | ... | — | — | — | — |
| | 3 | | | 5 | 4 | 138 | 161 |

The following were the proportions of Prize Money distributed to the garrison of Gibraltar arising from destroying the Battery ships and the sale of the *St. Michael* man-of-war :—

| | £ | s. | d. |
|----------------------|-------|----|-----|
| The Governor, 1/16th | 1,875 | 0 | 0 |
| Lieutenant-Governor | 937 | 10 | 0 |
| Colonel | 156 | 1 | 0 |
| Lieutenant-Colonel | 80 | 16 | 0 |
| Major | 57 | 15 | 6 |
| Captain | 43 | 10 | 1 |
| Lieutenant | 25 | 5 | 6 |
| Ensign | 22 | 0 | 6½ |
| Sergeant | 3 | 6 | 9 |
| Corporal | 2 | 0 | 11½ |
| Private | 1 | 9 | 1 |

Bibliography.—Records of the 58th Foot. "Siege of Gibraltar," Drinkwater. "Journal of Siege of Gibraltar," Samuel Ancell, Sergeant and Clerk, 58th Regiment. "Journal of Siege of Gibraltar," Anon. Colborne's *U.S. Magazine*. "History of the Suffolk Regiment." "History of the British Army," Fortescue. Documents in the Public Records Office.

CHAPTER VIII

¹ Stations in Ireland :—

| | | |
|----------------|-----|--|
| October, 1783 | ... | Omagh. |
| February, 1784 | ... | Belfast. |
| June, 1784 | ... | Dublin. |
| 1785 | ... | Three companies detached at Granard, two at Carrick-on-Shannon, two at Mullingar, and one at Benagher. |
| May, 1786 | ... | Youghal. |
| June, 1787 | ... | Charles Fort. |
| January, 1788 | ... | Monkstown. |

² The Company Commanders at this time were as follows :—Lieutenant-General Robert Skene ; (Captain-Lieutenant Joseph Olway) ; Lieutenant-Colonel Benjamin Gordon ; Major John Hedges ; Captains William Horne, William Atkinson, Thomas Jones, Francis D'Arcy and James Campbell.

³ See Biographical Note, Appendix II.

⁴ "A Private Soldier in the Eighteenth Century," published in the *Cornhill Magazine*, June, 1923. The diary was then in the possession of J. H. Aytoun, M.D.

⁵ *Cornhill Magazine*, June, 1923.

⁶ While in Ireland the Regiment was quartered at Drogheda, Cork, Kinsale, Clonmel, Dublin, Limerick, Ross Castle, Youghal and Kilkenny.

⁷ The detailed composition of the force was as follows :—

| | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-------------------|-----|-------------------|
| 1st Brigade | ... | Sir C. Gordon | ... | 15th, 39th, 43rd. |
| 2nd Brigade | ... | Thomas Dundas | ... | 56th, 63rd, 64th. |
| 3rd Brigade | ... | John Whyte | ... | 6th, 58th, 70th. |
| Grenadier Brigade | ... | Colonel Campbell. | | |
| Light Brigade | ... | Colonel Myers. | | |

There is no record of the grenadier company of the 58th, but the light company of the Regiment formed part of the 3rd Light Infantry Battalion, with the light companies of the 21st, 39th, 43rd, 56th, 60th, 64th and 65th.

⁸ The following officers of the 58th died of yellow fever or other sickness :—
Lieutenant-Colonel R. Stewart ; Captains J. Ingram and J. Wood ; Lieutenants
A. Maudsley, J. Hamilton, G. Berford, J. S. Murray, E. H. Smith, H. Bouchier
and Hon. R. Tonson.

⁹ " History of the British Army," Fortescue.

¹⁰ The composition of the force was as follows :—

| | | |
|-------------|-----|---------------------------------|
| 1st Brigade | ... | 14th, 27th, 28th, 57th. |
| 2nd Brigade | ... | 3rd, 19th, 31st, 33rd. |
| 3rd Brigade | ... | 8th, 37th, 44th, 55th. |
| 4th Brigade | ... | 38th, 48th, 53rd, 63rd. |
| 5th Brigade | ... | 2nd, 10th, 25th, 29th, 88th. |
| 6th Brigade | ... | 42nd, two grenadier battalions. |

CHAPTER IX

¹ A strength return of the 58th dated 7th March, 1801, gives the strength
as follows :—

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Field Officers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3 |
| Captains | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9 |
| Subalterns | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18 |
| Staff | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4 |
| Total Officers | | | | | 34 |
| Sergeants | ... | ... | ... | ... | 33 |
| Drummers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13 |
| Other Ranks (fit for duty) | ... | ... | ... | ... | 469 |
| Present sick | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14 |
| Absent sick | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21 |
| Total Other Ranks | | | | | 550 |

² The 58th landed from the *Ulysses*.

³ Inscription on stone :—

HERE LAY BURIED SINCE
1801

MANY SOLDIERS OF THE 18TH AND 32ND DEMI BRIGADE OF
NAPOLEON'S ARMY

THEY WERE FOUND HERE BY THE 58TH REGIMENT (2ND NORTHAMPTONSHIRE)
WHEN MAKING THESE GARDENS, AND WERE BURIED IN CAIRO BY THE FRENCH
COMMUNITY, 1914.

⁴ The composition of the force was as follows :—

Major-General Craddock's Brigade : 8th, 18th, 79th and 90th Regiments.
Brigadier-General Doyle's Brigade : 2nd Royals, 30th, 50th and 92nd Regiments.
Colonel Spencer's Brigade : 2nd Queen's, 58th Regiment, 40th Flank Companies,
Corsican Rangers.
Five hundred British Cavalry and about four thousand Turkish and irregular
troops were also included.

⁵ A foreign corps in the British service consisting mainly of French *émigrés*.

* A detailed strength return is available for 13th September as follows :—

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| Field Officers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3 |
| Captains | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6 |
| Subalterns | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17 |
| Staff | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5 |
| | | | | | <hr/> |
| | | | | | 31 |
| Rank and File— | | | | | |
| Sergeants | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24 |
| Drummers | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11 |
| Other Ranks (fit for duty) | ... | ... | ... | ... | 304 |
| Present sick | ... | ... | ... | ... | 72 |
| Absent sick | ... | ... | ... | ... | 59 |
| On Command | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9 |
| | | | | | <hr/> |
| | | | | | 479 |

Showing a wastage since 7th March of 3 officers and 71 other ranks.

Bibliography.—Records of 48th and 58th. History of 58th in Colborne's *United Service Journal*. "Journal of Campaign in Egypt," Thomas Walsh. Bunbury's "Some Passages in the Great War with France." Dr. Clarke's "Travels in Egypt." "British Expedition in Egypt," Wilson. "History of the British Army," Fortescue. "History of the Gordon Highlanders," Gardyne. Historical Records of the 28th Regiment. Etc., etc., etc.

CHAPTER X

¹ "Mary Anne Wellington, the Soldier's Daughter, Wife and Widow." By the Rev. Richard Cobbold, Rector of Wortham and Rural Dean, author of "The History of Margaret Catchpole." Published in London by Henry Colburn, Great Marlborough Street, 1846.

CHAPTER XI

¹ The nineteen second battalions authorized were :—

To be raised in England ... 3rd, 23rd, 30th, 47th, 48th, 53rd, 57th, 61st, 66th, 69th, 81st.

To be raised in Scotland ... 26th, 42nd, 92nd.

To be raised in Ireland ... 18th, 44th, 58th, 67th.

² The officers appointed to the 2/48th included Major Buckley (from Half Pay List, 46th Regiment), Major Bradford (from Captain, 23rd Regiment), Captain Colquhoun (from Half Pay List, 58th Regiment), Captain Mahoney (from Half Pay List, Irish Brigade), Captain Tomkins (from Half Pay List, Royal Irish Artillery), Captain O'Brien (from Half Pay List, 46th Regiment), Captain Price (from Half Pay List, 28th Light Dragoons).

³ For biographical details see Appendix II.

⁴ Strength of 58th : 34 officers, 767 men (W.O. I, 169).

⁵ "The Great War with France," Bunbury.

⁶ Trimen's "Historical Record of the 35th Foot."

⁷ The force consisted of detachments of Royal Artillery, 20th Light Dragoons, the Grenadier and Light Battalions, 27th, 44th, 58th, 62nd and 81st Regiments, three battalions King's German Legion, Watteville's Regiment, the Chasseurs Britanniques, Royal Corsican Rangers, Royal Sicilians, and some Neapolitan troops.

CHAPTER XII

- ¹ "History of the British Army," Fortescue.
- ² "Military Guide to the Young Officer," Thos. Simes, 1780.
- ³ "A Treatise on the Military Science," Thos. Simes, 1780.
- ⁴ Major-General Craig to Sir Hew Dalrymple, 1794.
- ⁵ "History of the 5th Fusiliers."
- ⁶ "Manual of Military Law," Chap. IX.
- ⁷ "System of Oeconomy," by Cuthbertson.
- ⁸ List of necessaries provided to the soldier every year gratis :—

| | s. | d. |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1 pair black cloth gaiters | 4 | 0 |
| 1 pair breeches | 6 | 6 |
| Altering of clothing | 2 | 6 |
| 1 hair leather | 2 | ½ |
| Proportion of expense of watch coats | 1 | 0 |
| A worm, turnscrew and picker brush once in five years ... | | 3 |
| Emery, brickdust and oil | 2 | 6 |
| | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| | 16 | 11½ |

- ⁹ List of Necessaries to be provided for the soldier out of his pay and allowances, as occasion may require in the course of the year :—

| | s. | d. |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1 pair of black gaiters | 4 | 0 |
| 2 pairs of shoes | 12 | 0 |
| 1 pair of stockings | 1 | 6 |
| Soleing and heelpiecing | 4 | 0 |
| 2 shirts | 11 | 0 |
| Foraging cap | 1 | 3 |
| Knapsack (6s. once in six years) | 1 | 0 |
| Pipeclay and whiting | 4 | 4 |
| Clothes brush (1s. once in two years) | | 6 |
| 3 shoe brushes | 1 | 3 |
| Black ball | 2 | 0 |
| Worsted mitts | | 9 |
| Powdering bag and puff (1s. 6d. once in three years) ... | | 6 |
| 2 combs | 1 | 0 |
| Grease and powder for the hair | 3 | 0 |
| Washing at 4d. a week | 17 | 4 |
| | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| | 3 | 5 5 |

- ¹⁰ For full details of clothing see Appendix VI.
- ¹¹ "Anecdotal History of the Army," Stocqueller.
- ¹² Colonel Cochrane's Diary, 15th October, 1777.
- ¹³ "The Regulator or instructions to form the officer and the soldier upon Fixed Principles," Thos. Simes, 1780.

CHAPTER XIII

¹ The strength of the 2/48th at the time was 32 officers and 721 other ranks.

² The 1/48th, with 807 men present and fit for duty, was the strongest Line battalion present ; the 2/48th, with 567, was one of the weakest.

³ " History of the Peninsular War," Oman.

⁴ The description of this part of the fight is from Fortescue's " History of the British Army."

⁵ A letter in *The Star* of 20th August, 1812.

⁶ " History of the Peninsular War," by Napier.

⁷ The following officers were wounded :—In the 1st Battalion : Major M. Marston ; Captains H. F. Wood and W. F. French ; Lieutenants W. W. Chesbyn, W. Gill, B. E. Drought, J. Cuthbertson, W. Page, A. MacIntosh, G. MacKay ; Ensign C. Vander Meulen. In the 2nd Battalion (2/48th) : Lieutenant J. A. Johnstone ; Ensign J. Renny.

⁸ " A Prisoner of France," by Captain Boothby, R.E.

⁹ For biographical details see Appendix II.

Bibliography.—" History of the War in the Peninsula," Napier. The Regimental Records. Fortescue's " History of the British Army." Oman's " History of the Peninsular War." Letters in *The Star*, dated 19th August, 1809, 20th August, 1812. Sidney's Life of Hill. Narratives of Leslie, Leith Hay and Lord Munster. Regimental Histories of other regiments engaged. Wellington's Dispatches. " The Naval and Military Sketch Book, 1844." Etc., etc.

CHAPTER XIV

¹ Strengths at the end of 1809 : 1/48th, 790 ; 2/48th, 631. Strengths, May, 1810 : 1/48th, 551 ; 2/48th, 481.

² Lieutenant T. V. Bloomfield in a letter dated 17th August, 1810.

³ Casualties of the 2/48th at Albuera :—

| | Officers. | Sergeants. | Drummers. | R. and F. | Total. |
|---------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| Killed ... | 6 | 4 | — | 40 | 50 |
| Wounded ... | 8 | 3 | 1 | 82 | 94 |
| Prisoners ... | 9 | 8 | 7 | 175 | 199 |
| | — | — | — | — | — |
| | 23 | 15 | 8 | 297 | 343 |

Officers killed : Lieutenants J. Liddon, H. C. Loft, F. Drew, R. Skee (or Shee) (died of wounds), and — Sharp (died of wounds) ; Ensign T. Rothwell.

Officers Wounded : Captain W. N. Watkins ; Lieutenants H. F. Wood, R. A. Wauch, B. E. Drought, J. A. Johnson and C. Van der Meulen ; Ensigns P. McDougal and W. Norman.

Officers captured : Major W. Brooke (in command) ; Captains F. Allman and P. Campbell ; Lieutenants J. W. Ellwood, J. Marshall, G. Sack, T. Brotheridge and H. F. Wood ; Ensign W. Gilbert.

On Major Brooke being captured, Captain Parry Yale assumed command.

⁴ Manuscript Records of the 2/48th.

⁵ Casualties of the 1/48th at Albuera :—

| | Officers. | Sergeants. | Drummers. | R. and F. | Total. |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Killed | 4 | 6 | — | 58 | 68 |
| Wounded | 12 | 9 | 1 | 184 | 206 |
| Missing | — | — | — | 6 | 6 |
| | <hr/> 16 | <hr/> 15 | <hr/> 1 | <hr/> 248 | <hr/> 280 |

Officers killed : Lieutenant-Colonel G. H. Duckworth (in command) ; Lieutenants Page, J. Ansaldo and E. Parsons (died later of wounds).

Officers wounded : Captains J. Wilson (commanded on the death of Colonel Duckworth), W. F. French, J. Morrisett and T. Bell ; Lieutenants L. Crawley, R. Herring, T. Wright, E. O'Donahue, I. W. Duke, A. McIntosh and E. Vincent ; Ensign S. Collins ; Adjutant W. R. Steele.

On Captain Wilson being wounded, Captain Ainstie assumed command.

⁶ History of the 14th Foot.

⁷ " History of the British Army," Fortescue.

⁸ Major Brooke's diary was published by Sir Charles Oman in *Blackwood's Magazine* of October, 1908.

⁹ Report from *The Star*, 5th October, 1811.

¹⁰ Report from *The Star*, 27th April, 1812.

¹¹ R.U.S.I. Cuttings Book, Book II, page 332.

CHAPTER XV

¹ Kincaird.

² Letter from Lieutenant T. V. Blomfield.

³ " History of the British Army," Fortescue.

⁴ *The Storming of Badajoz*.—The details of the casualties of the 48th are as follows :—

| | Officers. | Other Ranks. | Total. |
|----------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| Killed | 4 | 32 | 36 |
| Wounded | 15 | 122 | 137 |
| | <hr/> 19 | <hr/> 154 | <hr/> 173 |

Officers killed : Captain W. H. Brooke ; Lieutenant C. M. Chilcock ; Ensign Barker.

Officers wounded : Lieutenant-Colonel J. Erskine ; Major J. Wilson ; Captains W. F. French (died later), T. Bell and J. F. Turnpenny ; Lieutenants J. Brooke, T. Stroude, H. E. Robinson, J. Cuthbertson, F. Armstrong, C. Wilson and H. J. Poultenay ; Ensigns Z. Thacker, E. Johnson, O. Burke and J. Thompson.

After Colonel J. Erskine had been wounded, Major J. Wilson took over command and was himself wounded.

⁵ " History of the Peninsula," Oman.

⁶ *Casualties of the 48th at Salamanca*.—The details of the officers wounded are as follows :—Captain G. S. Thwaites ; Lieutenants T. Stroude, J. W. Leroux, E. Vincent, J. Marshall, F. Armstrong and E. Johnson ; Ensigns Z. Thacker, Warton and Le Messurier.

In addition, 1 sergeant and 17 men were killed and 6 sergeants, 2 drummers and 79 men wounded.

The 48th was commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel J. Wilson and Captain T. Bell, each of whom received a medal.

⁷ According to the muster rolls of the 48th, Sergeant Daniel Long died 2nd February, 1802, at Malta.

CHAPTER XVI

¹ The itinerary of the march was as follows :—1st June, Zamura ; 2nd-3rd, Toro ; 4th, La Mota ; 5th, Castromonte ; 6th, Ampudia ; 7th, Palencia ; 8th, Amusco ; 9th Amusco ; 10th, Melgar ; 11th Castroxeriz ; 12th, Castroxeriz ; 13th, Villadiego ; 14th, Masa ; 15th, Quintana and Puente Arenas ; 16th, Medina Pomar ; 17th Quincoces ; 18th, Berberana ; 19th, Subisana Murillo ; 20th, Subisana Murolo ; 21st, Battle of Vittoria.

This is a total of about two hundred and eighty miles in twenty-two days, an average over the three weeks of thirteen miles a day.

² Leronnier Delafosse, pp. 227-228.

³ *Battle of Sorauren*.—The details of the officer casualties of the 48th were as follows :—

Killed : Captain H. F. Wood (died of wounds) ; Lieutenant M. Limer ; and Ensign Parsons.

Wounded : Major W. G. White ; Lieutenants J. Cuthbertson, C. Van Der Meulen, H. J. Pountney, I. W. Duke, H. E. Robinson and E. Johnston.

⁴ *Battle of Pyrenees*.—The officer casualties of the 58th were as follows :—Wounded : Lieutenant-Colonel F. B. Campbell ; Captain L. J. Westropp ; Lieutenants C. Lampriere, Patrick Shea and Thomas Hayton ; Ensigns C. McDonald and E. Baylee.

⁵ The historical accuracy of this story must be accepted with some reserve. The story dates the attack on Tolosa as 24th December, but the only fighting at this place appears to have been on 27th June, 1813. We have been unable to trace the name Hovenden in the muster rolls of the 2/58th for 1813. Also the 9th, 58th and 88th were all in different divisions and were never at Tolosa together.

⁶ *Battle of Nivelle*.—The officers of the 48th wounded were as follows :—Lieutenants Stephen Collins, Francis M. Scott and Zachariah Thatcher ; Ensign Benjamin Thompson.

⁷ The strength of the 1/48th on 16th January, 1814, was 413 effective rank and file, and that of the 2/58th at the same time was 184.

⁸ *Battle of Toulouse*.—The casualties of the 1/48th were as follows :—Killed, 1 sergeant, 15 rank and file. Wounded : 4 officers, 5 sergeants, 2 drummers, 37 rank and file.

Officers wounded : Captain Jas. Reid ; Lieutenant J. Campbell ; Ensign Wm. Fox ; Adjutant and Ensign Geo. Sheen.

⁹ During the Peninsular War fifteen non-commissioned officers of the 48th were promoted to commissions. Details are as follows :—

1807 Sergeant-Major Finney.

1808 Sergeant-Major Ross.

1809 Sergeant Penophen Muscrop (Provost Marshal, afterwards Ensign).

- 1810 Sergeant-Major John Dixon (Ensign and Adjutant, 48th) ; Sergeant Samuel Brierly (Ensign, 2/48th).
- 1811 Quartermaster-Sergeant Edward Johnson (Ensign, 48th) ; Sergeant Samuel Johnson (Ensign, 48th ; severely wounded at Badajoz) ; Quartermaster-Sergeant John Wild (Quartermaster, 48th).
- 1812 Sergeant W. Grant (Adjutant, Portuguese Service) ; Sergeant-Major John Barnes (Ensign).
- 1813 Quartermaster-Sergeant Wm. Weatherall (Ensign, 48th ; died in the field) ; Sergeant-Major John Freere (Quartermaster, 48th) ; Sergeant-Major George Sheen (Ensign and Adjutant, 48th ; lost a leg at Toulouse. The original owner of the Adjutant's Cup, now in the Officers' Mess of the 1st Battalion).
- 1814 Sergeant-Major Wm. Forster (Ensign and Quartermaster, 48th) ; Sergeant James Stewart (Ensign, 53rd Regiment).

CHAPTER XVII

- ¹ Napier's "Peninsular War," Vol. V.
- ² The officers wounded at Plattsburg were : Captain Westropp ; Lieutenant C. Brohier ; Lieutenant and Adjutant Lewis.
- ³ For biographical details see Appendix II.

CHAPTER XVIII

- ¹ "History of Australia," Rusden.
- ² "History of Tasmania," John West.
- ³ *Ibid.*
- ⁴ The sketch of Howe's career and description of his death have been taken from the following : "History of Australia," Rusden ; "History of Tasmania," West ; "The Military Sketch Book" ; "The Story of the Australian Bushrangers," Boxall.
- ⁵ "The Story of the Australian Bushrangers," Boxall.
- ⁶ The casualties in the Coorg Campaign were :—Killed—Lieutenant J. A. Erskine, one sergeant, fourteen rank and file. Wounded—Lieutenant E. G. H. Gibbs, Lieutenant J. W. Smith, two sergeants and twenty-one rank and file.
- ⁷ *Stations*.—September, 1835—March, 1836 : Weedon, with detachments at Newcastle-under-Lyme, Holbeach (Lincolnshire) and Nottingham.
- ⁸ *Stations*.—March—September, 1836 : Headquarters and two companies at Bolton, detachments at Blackburn, Wigan, Haydock Lodge and Rochdale.
- ⁹ *Stations*.—September, 1836—August, 1837 : Saltford Barracks, Manchester, with detachments of two companies each at Liverpool and Chester. On 29th March, 1837, a company under Captain W. Codd proceeded to the Isle of Man. From 22nd July to 9th August, in consequence of the elections, detachments were sent to Eccles, Middleton, Cheadle, Didsbury and Prestwick.
- ¹⁰ *Stations in Ireland*.—29th August, 1837 : Birr (Headquarters), Maryborough, Tullemore, Banagher, Shannon Harbour, and Portunna. March, 1838 : Athlone. July, 1838 : Fermoy, Mitchelstown, Millstreet.

¹¹ *Company Commanders*.—Service Companies : Captain Hon. A. A. Dalzell (Grenadiers), Captain W. A. McCleverty (Light Company), Brevet Major Hunter Ward, Captain R. Cole, Captain W. Codd, Brevet Major P. J. Willats. Depot Companies : Captain J. Webber Smith, Captain C. A. Young, Brevet Major E. Duncan, Captain B. Riley.

CHAPTER XIX

¹ "History of the British Army," Fortescue.

² Newspaper cutting.

³ *The Force at Ruapekapeka*.—The force consisted of the 58th and 99th Regiments, with detachments of Royal Artillery, Royal Engineers, Royal Navy, Marines, a contingent from the East India Company's Artillery, and Navy and some Colonial Volunteers.

⁴ *New Zealand Journal*.

⁵ For biographical details see Appendix II.

⁶ *Stations in North of England*.—28th August, 1860 : Headquarters at Burnley, with detachments at Manchester and Preston. October, 1860 : Concentrated at Sheffield. January (?), 1861 : In detachments at Scarborough (for musketry), Weedon, Sunderland and Tynemouth. August, 1861 : Newcastle-on-Tyne.

⁷ *Stations in Ireland*.—January, 1862 : The Curragh. October, 1862 : Dublin. September, 1863 : Newry and Enniskillen. May, 1864 : The Curragh.

Bibliography.—"History of the British Army," Fortescue. Colburn's *U.S. Magazine*. *Naval and Military Review*. Etc., etc.

CHAPTER XX

¹ *Crimea*.—Infantry Divisions :—

| | | |
|-------------------|-----|---|
| 1st Division | ... | 1st Brigade : 3rd Grenadier Guards, 1st Coldstream Guards, 1st Scots Fusilier Guards. 2nd Brigade : 9th, 13th, 31st, 56th Foot. |
| 2nd Division | ... | 1st Brigade : 3rd, 30th, 55th, 95th Foot. 2nd Brigade : 41st, 47th, 49th, 62nd, 82nd Foot. |
| 3rd Division | ... | 1st Brigade : 4th, 14th, 39th, 50th, 89th Foot. 2nd Brigade : 18th, 28th, 38th, 44th Foot. |
| 4th Division | ... | 1st Brigade : 17th, 20th, 21st, 57th, 63rd Foot. 2nd Brigade : 46th, 48th, 68th, 1st Rifle Brigade. |
| Highland Division | | 1st Brigade : 42nd, 79th, 92nd, 93rd Foot. 2nd Brigade : 1st, 71st, 72nd Foot. |
| Light Division | ... | 1st Brigade : 7th, 23rd, 33rd, 34th, 2nd Rifle Brigade. 2nd Brigade : 19th, 77th, 88th, 90th, 97th Foot. |

Crimea. Bibliography.—"History of the British Army," Fortescue. "Campaign of Sevastopol," Hamley. "The British Expedition to the Crimea," Russell.

² Records of the 48th Foot.

³ *India*.—Stations occupied :—20th October, 1858 : Barrackpore. 8th January, 1859 : Allahabad (Clydesdale Barracks). 15th January, 1859 : Cawnpore (Stubble Barracks). 21st January, 1859 : Calpee (finding detachments). 14th April, 1859 : Cawnpore (leaving two companies at Calpee). May, 1859 :

Four companies at Allahabad (Chatham Barracks). June, 1859: Four companies returned. February, 1861: Sitapur. November, 1861: Lucknow. December, 1863: Calcutta (Dum Dum).

⁴ For biographical details see Appendix II.

⁵ *Ireland*.—Stations occupied:—12th December, 1866: The Curragh. 8th April, 1867: Dublin (Richmond Barracks). 19th August, 1867: Dublin (Ship Street Barracks). December, 1867: Fermoy. 3rd October, 1868: Cork for embarkation.

CHAPTER XXI

¹ "A" Company (Second-Lieutenant O'Donel) at Heidelberg; "B" Company (Lieutenant Power, Second-Lieutenant Jopp) at Luneberg; "C" Company (Captain Saunders) at Utrecht; "D" Company (Captain Hornby, Second-Lieutenant Morgan) at Standerton; "E" Company (Lieutenant Dolphin) at Newcastle; "F" Company (Second-Lieutenant Fawcett) at Standerton; "G" and "H" Companies (Second-Lieutenant Compton and Second-Lieutenant Hill) with Headquarters at Wakkerstroom. On 27th January, 1880, "C" Company joined Headquarters, and a few days later moved to Standerton. In February "C" and "F" Companies and "D" and "A" Companies relieved each other, and in March "G" Company (now under Captain Lovegrove) relieved "E" Company, and "B" Company joined Headquarters from Luneberg.

² Diary of Captain Lovegrove in 58th Mess.

CHAPTER XXII

¹ "Military Forces and Institutes of Great Britain," H. B. Thomson. 1855.

| | 1800. | 1867. | 1873. | 1876. | 1881. |
|------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| | s. d. | s. d. | s. d. | s. d. | s. d. |
| Sergeant-Major ... | 1 6½ | 2 11½ | 3 6 | 3 11* | 5 0 |
| Quartermaster-Sergeant | 1 6½ | 2 3½ | 2 10 | 2 11* | 4 2* |
| Colour-Sergeant ... | — | 2 1½ | 2 8 | 2 9* | 3 2* |
| Sergeant ... | 1 0½ | 1 7½ | 2 2 | 2 3* | 2 6* |
| Corporal ... | 8½ | 11½ | 1 6 | 1 6*† | 1 10*† |
| Drummer ... | 7½ | 8½ | 1 3 | 1 3*† | 1 3*† |
| Private ... | 6 | 7½ | 1 2 | 1 2*† | 1 2*† |

² "Lord Cardwell at the War Office," by Sir Robert Biddulph.

⁴ *R.U.S.I. Journal*, September, 1846.

⁵ QUARTERMASTER G. STUBBS'S MEDAL.—Silver, oval, 2¼ inches deep by 1⅞ inches wide.

Obverse.—Within a milled circle, resting on two olive branches, the numerals "48" having the letters "Ne Rt" beneath; above a heart-shaped perforation for suspension, "18" to the left and "14" to the right (1814 being the year of award); on the left of this milled circle, inscribed "For Gallt. Condt." on the right "And Soldy. Merit"; below "Presented by General Lord Cs Fitzroy to Qr. Mr. G. Stubbs"; the whole surrounded by a small loop engraved border.

Reverse.—Within two branches of oak leaves, acorns thereon, tied at base;

* Includes 2d. deferred pay.

† With additions for length of service and good conduct.

the Battle Honours "Talavera," "Albuera," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria"; outside the branches, "Pyrenees," "Orthes," "Nivelle." running circular on the lower half of the medal. Hall marked.

* 48TH PENINSULA MEDAL.—Silver, engraved, $1\frac{9}{16}$ inches in diameter, with a plain flat bar for suspension, inscribed "Peninsula."

First Example.

Obverse.—Regimental number "48" in centre; crown above; below, the recipient's name, "Jno. O. Doll," on a scroll, beneath "1819, Northamptonshire," the whole within a raised border.

Reverse.—The eleven Battle Honours "Oporto," "Talavera," "Albuera," "Rodrigo," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Orthes," "Toulouse"; the whole surrounded by two laurel branches, tied at base; within a raised border.

Riband, red, blue edges.

Second Example.

Obverse.—The same as above, but presented to "Richd Hollingsworth."

Reverse.—The same as above, but with only five engagements—"Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Orthes," "Toulouse."

(Curiously, he only received the last three bars on his M.G.S. Medal.)

† 48TH OFFICERS' SHOOTING BADGE.—Silver, circular, $1\frac{1}{8}$ inches in diameter, with a silver ring for suspension.

Obverse.—Numerals "48" in centre surmounted by a crown; on either side a laurel wreath tied at base; above "Peninsula"; the whole surrounded by a raised double border; milled edge.

Reverse.—In centre, "Won by Lieut. W. Reed. Distance 120 Yards"; the whole encircled by "From Lieut.-Colonel James Erskine, 1817."

Hall marked.

‡ THE 58TH MAIDA MEDAL.

First Example.

Gilt, engraved, $1\frac{1}{8}$ inches in diameter.

Obverse.—Arms of Gibraltar; below "Maida," above on scroll "Montis Insignia Calpe." "LVIII Regt."

Reverse.—"Gibraltar, MDCCLXXXII" in centre; surrounded by a laurel wreath, tied at base; Crown above.

Second Example.

Silver, engraved, $1\frac{7}{8}$ inches in diameter, with loop and raised rim.

Obverse.—In the centre Castle; above "Gibraltar," below "Maida"; in exergue on a scroll "LVIII Regt. Foot."

Reverse.—Inscribed "Presented to William Condon by his Comrades in Arms, 1809."

In Colonel Gaskill's collection.

§ 58TH MARKSMAN'S MEDAL.—Silver, engraved, $1\frac{1}{8}$ inches in diameter, raised rim and ring for suspension.

Obverse.—In centre the Castle; above "58"; below a horseshoe and key; above "Regiment of Foot"; below "Gibraltar," on scroll.

Reverse.—"Marksmen's Prize, B Company, 1835."

In Colonel Gaskill's collection.

¹⁰ 58TH ABILITY AND GOOD CONDUCT MEDAL.—Silver, engraved, 1½ inches in diameter, circular.

Obverse.—"1st Class, 58th Regt. School. First premium. Colombo. Dec. 1836."

Reverse.—Inscribed "This Medal was awarded to Edwin King for Ability and Good Conduct."

58TH GIBRALTAR MEDAL.—Silver gilt with engraved reverse suspended from a loop and ring. Circular.

Obverse.—In the centre the Castle and Key within a raised garter, inscribed "Montis Insignia Calpe LVIII Regt."

Reverse.—"Gibraltar MDCCLXXXII" within two olive branches and a royal crown."

This medal is in possession of the 58th Regiment.

¹¹ The two marches are given in Appendix XVI.

¹² "The Army Regulator," 1811.

Bibliography.—"History of the British Army," Fortescue. "The Manual of Military Law," Official. "The Transformation of War," Colin. "The British Officer," Stocqueller, 1851. "Lord Cardwell at the War Office," Sir Robert Biddulph. "The British Army," A Lieutenant-Colonel in the Army, 1899. "Military Forces and Institutes of Great Britain," H. B. Thomson, 1855. "Military Miscellany," H. Marshall, 1846. "Army Book for the British Empire," Goodenough and Dalton, 1893. "Military Forces," Clode. "The Rise of Military Music," H. J. Farmer. "History of the 5th Fusiliers," E. M. Walker.

CHAPTER XXIII

¹ 13 Edw., I. Cap. 16.

² *Northampton Mercury*.

CHAPTER XXIV

¹ Captain Saunders' Diary in 58th Mess.

² Casualties at Laing's Nek :—*Killed*.—Lieutenant H. Dolphin ; Second-Lieutenant L. Baillie ; Colour-Sergeants E. Evans and S. Lindsell ; Sergeants R. Anderson, J. Slattery and W. Smith ; Corporals J. Griffin, T. Kelly and R. Harper ; Lance-Corporal H. Cayley ; Privates S. Briggs, P. Burns, J. Carter, J. Duffy, M. Hennessy, W. Lacey, F. Manning, J. McKegney, J. McCarthy, J. Multern, J. Moore, W. Smith, J. Shears, A. Swinfield, W. Tarry, A. Thompson, G. Viles, J. T. Wilson, W. Ward, F. Reakes, J. Brown, E. Houlgrave, J. Behan, W. Munstell, J. McCullum, J. Pearson, A. Fricker, F. Pullen, J. Warley, S. Marshall, T. Sharpe, S. Viveash, P. Egan, W. Butler, J. Peck, W. Beudall, G. Rollinge, H. Crossey, G. Tipler, R. Hale, J. Stevens, W. Haye, J. Brown, T. Letford, J. Cosgrove, T. Mallon, J. Fincham, C. Allington, T. Hawkins, J. Dougherty, W. Keane, J. Campbell, R. King and D. McCarthy. *Died of Wounds*.—Major W. H. Hingeston ; Prov. Lance-Sergeant A. Connor ; Privates A. H. O'Connor, D. Cockling, J. Murphy, W. Barber, T. FitzHarris, G. Pole, W. Mills, W. McCracken, F. Taylor, T. Warner, J. Galer, S. Deacon.

³ Casualties at Ingogo :—*Killed*.—Privates Baker and Lyons.

4 The Force at Majuba :—

| | | | | <i>On Lines of Communication.</i> | <i>On Summit.</i> | <i>Total.</i> |
|---------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 58th Regiment | ... | ... | ... | — | 170 | 170 |
| 92nd Regiment | ... | ... | ... | 60 | 120 | 180 |
| 3/60th | ... | ... | ... | 140 | — | 140 |
| Naval Brigade | ... | ... | ... | — | 64 | 64 |
| | | | | 200 | 354 | 554 |

5 Casualties at Majuba :—

| | | | OFFICERS. | | OTHER RANKS. | |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| | | | 58th. | Whole Force. | 58th. | Whole Force. |
| Killed | ... | ... | 1 | 5 | 33 | 88 |
| Wounded | ... | ... | 5 | 8 | 42 | 125 |
| Prisoners | ... | ... | 1 | 7 | 13 | 51 |
| | | | 7 | 20 | 88 | 264 |

Killed.—Captain Hon. C. Maude ; Sergeant T. Race ; Corporal H. Dyer ; Lance-Corporal J. Creagan ; Drummer J. Flanagan ; Privates J. Bluff, R. Parker, S. Smeardon, U. Thompson, H. Vandry, W. Gardner, W. McCourt, N. McLoughlin, J. Whitehouse, G. Andrews, P. McKeiven, J. Smith, W. Stone, J. Williams, T. Connoes, J. McCarthy, L. Lovell, J. Farmer, F. Morrison, J. Richardson, J. Richmond, J. Bloomfield, C. Addington, R. Rollins, W. Rigney, J. Grady.

Died of Wounds.—Corporal P. Murray ; Privates H. Osborne, G. McIvar, A. Truswell, T. Leggins, A. Tongs, G. Stone, G. Mayne.

CHAPTER XXV

1 The distribution of the infantry in the Main Column of the Tirah Expeditionary Force was as follows :—

FIRST DIVISION (Major-General W. P. Symons, C.B.) :—

1st Brigade (Brigadier-General R. C. Hart, V.C., C.B.) : 2nd Bn. The Derbyshire Regiment ; 1st Bn. The Devonshire Regiment ; 2nd Bn. 1st Gurkha Regiment.

2nd Brigade (Brigadier-General A. Gaslee, C.B.) : 2nd Bn. The Yorkshire Regiment ; 1st Bn. Royal West Surrey Regiment ; 2nd Bn. 4th Gurkha Regiment ; 3rd Regiment Sikh Infantry.

SECOND DIVISION (Major-General A. G. Yeatman Biggs, C.B.) :—

3rd Brigade (Colonel F. J. Kempster, D.S.O.) : 1st Bn. The Gordon Highlanders ; 1st Bn. The Dorsetshire Regiment ; 1st Bn. 2nd Gurkha Regiment ; 15th Sikhs.

4th Brigade (Brigadier-General R. Westmacott, C.B., D.S.O.) : 2nd Bn. K.O.S.B. ; 1st Bn. The Northamptonshire Regiment ; 1st Bn. 3rd Gurkha Regiment ; 36th Sikhs.

2 " Tirah, 1897," by Colonel C. E. Callwell.

3 " The Campaign in Tirah," by Colonel H. D. Hutchinson.

4 " The Indian Frontier War," by Lionel James.

⁵ The casualties during the Tirah Campaign were :—

| | | | | <i>Officers.</i> | <i>Other Ranks.</i> | <i>Total.</i> |
|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Killed | ... | ... | ... | 3 | 23 | 26 |
| Wounded | ... | ... | ... | 1 | — | 1 |
| Accidentally killed | ... | ... | ... | — | 1 | 1 |
| Died of wounds | ... | ... | ... | — | 4 | 4 |
| Died of disease | ... | ... | ... | — | 23 | 23 |
| | | | | <hr/> 4 | <hr/> 51 | <hr/> 55 |

CHAPTER XXVI

¹ Official History of the War.

² *Times* History of the War.

³ Unpublished Memoirs of Colonel C. W. Barton, C.M.G., D.S.O.

⁴ Newspaper report.

⁵ "History of the Boer War," by Conan Doyle.

⁶ "History of the Northumberland Fusiliers," by H. M. Walker.

⁷ Mentioned in Dispatches (South Africa) :—Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Denny ; Major E. F. Brereton ; Captains H. C. Godley, C. S. Prichard, C. S. Copeland, G. E. Ripley, J. Little (Brevet Major), A. A. Lloyd, L. G. Freeland, P. Allen, W. Hughes (4th Battalion) ; Lieutenants E. Knatchbull, Hugessen, R. C. Coldwell, C. W. Barton, R. W. Rawlins, A. J. Martin (for consistent good work with armoured trains) ; Quartermaster Hon. Lieutenant W. Fricker ; Quartermaster-Sergeant Cole ; Sergeant-Major R. Mayes ; Colour-Sergeants W. Allen, A. Beard, K. Vann, A. Goodman, H. M. Walker, K. Vance, E. King, W. H. Sampson, F. Watson ; Lance-Corporal C. Rumble ; Privates F. A. Clarke, C. Hall, J. Kidd, D. Thistle.

"Captain C. S. Prichard, an excellent officer, rendered excellent service on 20th March in command of three companies by scaling a hill in the dark and thus out-flanking a Boer position." (Colonel Benson's dispatch on operations at Gatsrand.)

⁸ Casualties in South Africa :—*Killed in Action*—Privates J. B. Cooper, W. Crane, T. Dobson, J. S. Hall, N. W. Sherwood, R. W. Norman and W. Yandell. *Died of Wounds*—Privates C. Paul, G. Smith and G. Upen.

⁹ Full details of the Militia Battalion are given in "The History of the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," by Major C. A. Markham, F.S.A., published by Reeves and Turner, London, 1924.

¹⁰ Reorganization of companies :—"A" and "E" Companies became "A," "B" and "F" Companies became "B," "C" and "G" Companies became "C," "D" and "H" Companies became "D."

CHAPTER XXVII

¹ *Northampton Fencible Infantry : Officers.*—The following is an extract from the *Gazette* :—

"Major John Manners, an independent officer, to be Colonel.
James Bulkely Esqre, to be Lieutenant-Colonel.
H. Maxwell Esqre, to be Major.

Captain R. Beacroft (of the late 101st Foot), John Hayes Esqre, Andrew Ebbert Esqre, Charles Malin Esqre, Adjutant Phillip Perry (of the 21st Dragoons) and Richard Wilson Esqre, to be Captains.

John Coldstream, Lionel Smith, Roderick McFarquhar, Wilfred Matthew Head, Samuel Storr, John Nevin, Thomas Jellis, Cresens Churchill, William Jephcott, John Gilbert, and Frederick Ebbard, Gents, to be Lieutenants.

Second-Lieutenant Henry Lyte (from half-pay Marines) to be Captain-Lieutenant.

John Philip Perry, Thomas Cook, and John Goddard to be Ensigns.

George Watkin, Clerk, to be Chaplain ; Philip Blake, Gent, to be Adjutant ; Roderick McFarquhar, Gent, to be Quartermaster ; John Coldstream, Gent, to be Surgeon."

* See Wellington's letter to Sir John Burgoyne in the "Life and Letters of Field-Marshal Sir John Burgoyne."

* *1st Althorp Company—Captains :*

| | |
|--|----------------|
| Right Hon. John Poyntz, Earl Spencer (Captain Commander) | 29th Aug. 1859 |
| John Beasley | 17th Oct. 1863 |
| Sir Henry Fletcher, Bart. | 28th Mar. 1866 |
| Drury Wake | 27th Nov. 1871 |
| E. H. R. Sawbridge (late Captain 24th Foot) | 22nd Mar. 1877 |

* *2nd Towcester Company—Captains :*

| | |
|---|----------------|
| Right Hon. George Wm. Fermor, Earl of Pomfret (Captain Commander) | 19th Oct. 1859 |
| John Wardlaw | 11th Jan. 1864 |
| Thos. G. F. Hesketh | 3rd July 1871 |
| Henry J. Fitzroy | 16th Oct. 1872 |
| Sir Hereward Wake | 23rd June 1877 |

* *3rd Overstone and Moulton Company—Captains :*

| | |
|---|---------------|
| Robert Loyd Lindsay | 3rd Mar. 1860 |
| (In January, 1863, this company was attached to the 4th Northampton Company.) | |

* *4th Northampton Company—Captains :*

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| W. A. Barr (Captain Commandant) | 15th Feb. 1860 |
| W. Griffiths Hollis | Jan. 1862 |
| Wm. Davies | 24th Mar. 1864 |
| John Macquire | 6th Mar. 1865 |
| Joseph Muscott | 12th April 1872 |
| (Later as the 3rd Company, after absorb- ing the old 3rd Company in 1863 and combining with the 5th Company in 1873.) | |
| Henry Cooper | 1873 |
| Richard Phipps | 23rd June 1874 |
| George N. Wetton | Nov. 1875 |

⁷ 5th Northampton Company—Captains :

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| Samuel Isaac (Captain Commandant) ... | 3rd Mar. 1860 |
| Henry Cooper Cox | 18th Dec. 1861 |
| George Turner | 1st June 1864 |
| Wm. Briggs | 26th July 1865 |
| Henry Cooper (Captain Commandant) ... | 1869 |

⁸ 6th Peterborough Company—Captains :

| | |
|---|----------------|
| Hon. G. W. Fitzwilliam (Captain Com- mandant) | 3rd Mar. 1860 |
| John N. Fazakerley | 14th Mar. 1862 |
| Thos. J. Walker (Captain Commandant, Aug. 1876) | 29th July 1865 |
| John Beecroft | 3rd June 1872 |
| (There are now two Captains.) | |

⁹ 7th Wellingborough Company—Captains :

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| H. M. Stockdale (Captain Commandant) ... | 20th Sept. 1860 |
| G. H. Burnham | 22nd June 1863 |
| Wm. Davies (from 4th Company) | 6th Mar. 1865 |
| W. W. Clarke (Captain Commandant, June, 1877) | 23rd Mar. 1874 |
| Wm. Jackson | 27th June 1877 |

¹⁰ 8th Daventry Company—Captains :

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| Sir R. Knightley | 23rd Nov. 1860 |
| E. C. Burton | 12th Oct. 1869 |

¹¹ 9th Kettering Company—Captains :

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| F. M. Eden | 22nd Apr. 1867 |
| J. G. Willows | 3rd Jan. 1871 |
| Chas. East | Jan. 1873 |
| Walter C. East | 25th Jan. 1879 |

(The original honorary members of the corps were J. Bailey, C. Bayes, G. Bates, W. Buckley, J. W. Dawes, — Draper, Rev. L. Harper, G. W. Lamb, T. Pridmore, F. Roughton, Rev. H. Stobart, W. Stopford, Rev. J. L. Sutton, and A. Wright.)

¹² Local contemporary report.

¹² Camps, 1864–1880.—Althorp Park, 1864, 1869, 1876, 1879; Wakefield Lawn, 1867, 1870, 1874, 1877, 1880; Stowe Park, 1872; Norton Park, 1865; No camp, 1866, 1868, 1871, 1873, 1875, 1878.

Camps, 1881–1914.—No camp, 1881 (Windsor Review); Althorp, 1882, 1883, 1885, 1888, 1892, 1896; Wakefield Lawn, 1884, 1886, 1889, 1893, 1897; Milton Park, 1887, 1891, 1894, 1898, 1908; Stoneleigh Park, 1890 (first Brigade Camp); Colchester, 1895, 1901, 1902; Yarmouth, 1899, 1900; Clacton, 1903, 1904; Felixstowe, 1905, 1909; Aldershot, 1906; Shorncliffe, 1907, 1913; Ipswich, 1910; Thetford, 1911; Worthing, 1912; Berkhamstead, 1914.

Camps, 1920–1933.—Yarmouth, 1920; Eastbourne, 1921; Bedford, 1922; Shorncliffe, 1923; Dover, 1924, 1926, 1933; Bulford (Army Manœuvres), 1925; Cromer, 1927; Colchester, 1928, 1931; Arundel, 1929; Shoreham, 1930.

CHAPTER XXVIII

¹ For details see Appendix XV.

² Further details of the Service battalions are contained in "The History of the Northamptonshire Regiment, 1914-1918," and also in "Northamptonshire and the Great War," by W. H. Holloway, published by *The Northampton Independent*.

CHAPTER XXIX

¹ Rates of Pay, 1931 :—Private, 2s. to 3s. ; Lance-Corporal, 3s. 6d. to 3s. 9d. ; Corporal, 4s. 6d. ; Sergeant, 6s. ; R.Q.M.S., 10s. ; R.S.M. 12s.

In addition to the above, accommodation, rations, fuel and light are provided, and certain allowances in the case of married men.

² The composition of the Battle Honours Committee was as follows :—Major-General G. F. Browne, C.B., D.S.O., Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. W. H. Wortham, C.M.G., D.S.O. (1st Battalion) ; Major C. W. Barton, C.M.G., D.S.O. (2nd Battalion) ; Colonel G. A. Trent, C.M.G., D.S.O. (5th Battalion) ; Colonel J. Brown, C.B.E., D.S.O. (4th Battalion) ; Colonel R. Turner, D.S.O. (6th Battalion).

³ See also Appendix V.

⁴ See Appendix II.

⁵ See Appendix XIII.

⁶ Camps of 5th Battalion :—1920, Yarmouth ; 1921, Eastbourne ; 1922, Cardington ; 1923, Dover ; 1924, Shorncliffe ; 1925, Army Manœuvres ; 1926, Dover ; 1927, West Runton ; 1928, Colchester ; 1929, Arundel ; 1930, Shoreham ; 1931, Colchester ; 1932, No camp ; 1933, Dover.

CHAPTER XXX

¹ These included Private F. A. Short and Private T. Crummery of the 48th.

² Reservists came from the following regiments :—Suffolk, Royal Berkshire, Durham Light Infantry, Northumberland Fusiliers, King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry, West Yorkshire, Royal Warwickshire, East Yorkshire, Essex, Duke of Wellington's, York and Lancaster, Norfolk, Worcestershire, Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire, Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry, Gloucestershire.

³ The following officers sailed with the Battalion from Liverpool :—Lieutenant-Colonel L. G. W. Dobbin, D.S.O. ; Majors C. R. J. Mowatt, D.S.O., D. W. Powell, D.S.O., S. S. Hayne, D.S.O. ; Captains T. S. Muirhead, E. C. Mylne, A. D. Middleton, S. H. Sprey-Smith ; Lieutenants A. St. G. Coldwell, A. O. F. Winkler, G. R. C. D. Lindley, S. T. Wills, J. W. Hinchcliffe, C. W. Perkins, J. V. Brewin, M.C., H. Essame, M.C., A. W. Kinsley, M.C., W. E. Carrick, M.C., L. O. A. Hunt, R. C. Murchison, R. Macpherson ; Second-Lieutenants, H. J. Pitt, A. Evison ; Lieut. and Quartermaster G. Lee, M.C., D.C.M.

Embarkation strength was 25 officers and 747 other ranks.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I

THE COLONELS OF THE REGIMENT

THE 48TH REGIMENT.

| | <i>Name.</i> | <i>Date of Appointment.</i> |
|--------|---|-----------------------------|
| I. | Colonel J. Cholmondley | 13th Jan. 1741 |
| II. | Colonel Lord Harry Beauclerk | 14th Mar. 1743 |
| III. | Colonel Francis Ligonier | 22nd April 1745 |
| IV. | Colonel H. S. Conway | 6th April 1746 |
| V. | Colonel George, Viscount Torrington | 24th July 1749 |
| VI. | Colonel William, Earl Home | 11th Aug. 1750 |
| VII. | Colonel T. Dunbar | 29th April 1752 |
| VIII. | Lieutenant-General D. Webb | 11th Nov. 1755 |
| IX. | Lieutenant-General W. Browne | 18th Dec. 1766 |
| X. | Lieutenant-General W. A. Sorrell | 15th Dec. 1773 |
| XI. | Lieutenant-General R. Skene | 31st Mar. 1783 |
| XII. | General P. Tonyn | 23rd May 1787 |
| XIII. | General Lord Charles FitzRoy | 1st Jan. 1805 |
| XIV. | General Sir Thomas Hislop, Bart., G.C.B. | 25th Dec. 1829 |
| XV. | Lieutenant-General G. Middlemore, C.B. | 31st May 1843 |
| XVI. | General Sir James H. Reynett, K.C.B., K.C.H. | 25th Nov. 1850 |
| XVII. | General Earl of Carnwath | 10th Aug. 1864 |
| XVIII. | General W. A. McCleverty | 29th April 1875 |

THE 58TH REGIMENT.

| | | |
|-------|--|-----------------|
| I. | Lieutenant-General R. Anstruther | 28th Dec. 1755 |
| II. | Lieutenant-General R. Cunninghame | 14th Dec. 1767 |
| III. | Colonel Hon. George West | 18th Oct. 1775 |
| IV. | Lieutenant-General L. Baugh | 19th Feb. 1776 |
| V. | General G. Scott | 18th April 1787 |
| VI. | General Richard, Earl of Cavan, K.C. | 1st July 1811 |
| VII. | General Thomas, Lord Lynedoch, G.C.B. | 10th Feb. 1823 |
| VIII. | Major-General Lord Frederick Bentinck, C.B. | 6th Sept. 1826 |
| IX. | Lieutenant-General Sir Kenneth Douglas, Bart. | 1st Mar. 1828 |
| X. | General F. Maitland | 11th Dec. 1833 |
| XI. | Major-General G. C. D'Aguilar, C.B. | 5th Feb. 1848 |
| XII. | General E. B. Wynyard, C.B. | 31st Jan. 1851 |
| XIII. | Lieutenant-General C. Craufurd Hay | 25th Nov. 1864 |
| XIV. | Major-General W. Sullivan, C.B. | 29th Aug. 1868 |
| XV. | General Sir Arthur J. Lawrence, K.C.B. | 6th Jan. 1870 |

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | |
|------|---|-----------------|
| I. | General W. A. McCleverty | 29th April 1875 |
| II. | Major-General R. C. Whitehead, C.B. | 7th Oct. 1897 |
| III. | Major-General G. F. Browne, C.B., D.S.O. | 12th Dec. 1910 |
| IV. | General Sir Havelock Hudson, G.C.B., K.C.I.E. | 22nd June 1925 |
| V. | Lieutenant-General Sir Harry H. S. Knox, K.C.B., D.S.O. | 23rd Oct. 1931 |

APPENDIX II

BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES ON COLONELS

THE 48TH REGIMENT.

I. COLONEL HONOURABLE JAMES CHOLMONDLEY.

James Cholmondley, the younger son of George, second Earl of Cholmondley, was born 18th April, 1708.

His service was as follows:—Guidon and Major, 3rd Troop of Life Guards, 17th May, 1725; Cornet and Major, 3rd Troop of Life Guards, 28th May, 1725; Lieutenant-Colonel, 3rd Troop of Life Guards, 1731; Colonel, 48th Foot, 13th January, 1741; Colonel, 34th Foot, 18th December, 1742; Brigadier, 8th June, 1745; Major-General, 20th September, 1747; Colonel, 12th Dragoons, 24th July, 1749; Colonel, 5th Dragoon Guards, November, 1749; Colonel, Inniskilling Dragoons, 16th January, 1750; Lieutenant-General, 2nd May, 1754; General, 1770; died, 13th October, 1775.

He served at Fontenoy in 1745, and on 18th June, 1745, was appointed Brigadier, in which capacity he served for the rest of the war. On the outbreak of the Rebellion in 1745 he was sent to England with a brigade of infantry. He joined the army under Field-Marshal Wade in Yorkshire, and after the flight of the rebels from Derby, joined General Hawley's army in Scotland. He was at the Battles of Falkirk and Culloden, and for many years before his death was Lieutenant-Governor of Chester.

II. COLONEL LORD HARRY BEAUCLERK.

Lord Harry Beauclerk, fourth son of the first Duke of St. Albans, was born in 1701.

His first commission as Ensign, in what is now the East Surrey Regiment, was dated 12th October, 1717. He became Captain in the 3rd Foot in October, 1727, and transferred to the 1st Foot Guards in May, 1735. He was appointed Colonel of the 48th Regiment on 14th March, 1743, but held the appointment only two years before being transferred to the 31st Foot. He resigned his commission in 1749 and died in 1761.

III. COLONEL FRANCIS LIGONIER.

Francis Ligonier was the younger brother of Field-Marshal Sir John Ligonier, and belonged to a Huguenot family of Castres in the South of France.

He became Ensign in the 12th Foot on 23rd December, 1711, but resigned his commission on 13th July, 1717. He rejoined on 24th May, 1720, and entered his brother's regiment, "The Black Horse," as a Lieutenant; became a Captain in the 9th Dragoons on 5th May, 1722; Major, 1st May, 1729; and Lieutenant-Colonel on 8th July, 1737. He was promoted to his brother's regiment, "Ligonier's Horse" (7th Dragoon Guards) on 18th July, 1739, and was wounded at Dettingen. On 22nd April, 1745, he was appointed Colonel of the 48th Foot.

When Colonel Jas. Gardiner fell at Preston Pans, deserted by his men, George II assigned his regiment to Ligonier, in addition to the 48th, swearing he "would give them an officer who would show them how to fight." He left

a sick bed to rally the Dragoons at Falkirk, and contracted a pleurisy of which he died a few days later. His brother John erected a monument to him in Westminster Abbey, which has since disappeared. The inscription on it is given in the Duke of Cumberland's Order Book (p. 83).

IV. COLONEL HENRY SEYMOUR CONWAY.

Henry Seymour Conway, the son of Francis Seymour, first Lord Conway, was born in 1721 and entered the Army at an early age. He was returned to Parliament as member for Higham Ferrers, Northamptonshire, and with the exception of ten months (1774-1775) sat for various constituencies in successive Parliaments until 1778.

In 1741 he was Captain-Lieutenant of the 1st Regiment of Foot Guards, with the Army rank of Lieutenant-Colonel, and was present at the Battle of Dettingen. He was also present at Fontenoy and distinguished himself by his personal bravery. He received command of the 48th Foot on 6th April, 1746, and was present at Culloden; also at Laffelt in the Flanders campaign of 1747. On 17th July, 1749, he received command of the 29th Regiment, and of the 13th Dragoons in December, 1751. He was promoted Major-General in 1756; Lieutenant-General, 30th March, 1759; he was appointed Colonel of the Royal Dragoons on 5th April, 1759, but was dismissed for political reasons by George III on 9th May, 1764; promoted Colonel, 4th Dragoons, February, 1768; General, 26th May, 1772; Colonel, Royal Horse Guards, October, 1774; and died 12th October, 1794, in his seventy-fifth year.

"His personal advantages were great, he was singularly handsome, his manner was reserved though gracious. His talents were not brilliant, he lacked decision and insight, and was easily swayed by his emotions and his friends. Of his personal courage there is no doubt. He was a better soldier than he was a general and a better general than a statesman."

His picture, painted by Echardt in 1746, is engraved by Greatbatch and is given in Cunningham's edition of Walpole's letters (I, 38).

V. MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE, VISCOUNT TORRINGTON.

George, Viscount Torrington (George Byng) succeeded his brother as third Viscount.

His first commission as Ensign was dated 26th August, 1708; Ensign in Slane's Foot (disbanded in 1712), (Dalton, VI, 250 and 1740); by June 1st, 1715, he had got to the present 4th Dragoon Guards as Cornet, but he transferred to the Royal Horse Guards on 25th August, 1716. After a period on half-pay he joined the 3rd Foot Guards, his Captaincy being dated 25th January, 1729. He obtained his Majority in 1740 and became Lieutenant-Colonel in 1743. He was appointed Colonel of the 4th Marines in 1744, and was promoted Major-General in 1745.

He became Colonel of the 48th Foot on 24th July, 1749, but died a year after his appointment, on 11th August, 1750.

VI. COLONEL WILLIAM, EARL HOME.

William, Earl Home, eighth Earl of Home, obtained a Cornet's commission in the 2nd Dragoon Guards, 13th May, 1735, and a troop of Churchill's Dragoons in May, 1740; in July, 1743, he was made Captain in the 3rd Dragoon Guards, with whom he served on the Continent. He also served in the 1745 Rebellion.

At Prestonpans (21st September, 1745) he assisted Cope in an attempt to rally the Dragoons. Later he was given command of the Glasgow Volunteer Regiment, which in December, 1745, was sent to the defence of Stirling. He was promoted Captain-Lieutenant in the 3rd Regiment of Foot Guards on 27th June, 1743 and Major, 27th April, 1749. He became Colonel of the 48th Foot on 11th August, 1750; Colonel of the 29th Regiment in 1752; Governor of Gibraltar in 1757, and died at Gibraltar, 28th April, 1761, as a Lieutenant-General.

VII. COLONEL THOMAS DUNBAR.

Thomas Dunbar received a commission as Lieutenant in the 35th Foot on 3rd December, 1722. He was already an Ensign in the 35th Foot at Almanza (Dalton, VI, 368), though his appointment cannot be traced; it was renewed by George I in 1715. The 1740 Army List gives his first commission as Lieutenant, 3rd December, 1723, so that the man wounded at Almanza may not have been this Thomas Dunbar. He was promoted to a Captaincy in the 18th Foot on 4th September, 1734; Major, 20th June, 1744; Lieutenant-Colonel, 19th March, 1745; and became Colonel of the 48th Foot on 29th April, 1752. He became Lieutenant-Governor of Gibraltar on 11th November, 1755, and died in 1767.

VIII. COLONEL DANIEL WEBB.

Daniel Webb purchased a commission as Ensign in the 1st Foot Guards on 20th March, 1721; he became a Captain on 16th April, 1722, and a Major in the 8th Horse (now 7th Dragoon Guards) on 29th March, 1742; and commanded a squadron at Dettingen, where his regiment highly distinguished itself. On 27th May, 1745, he succeeded Lieutenant-Colonel Francis Ligonier as Lieutenant-Colonel of the 8th Horse, and this regiment, under his command, acquired fresh honours at Fontenoy. He was made Colonel of the 48th Foot on 11th November, 1755, and served in America. His services, however, were not of a particularly brilliant nature, and he was not a success on the Oswego Expedition, or at the time of the loss of Fort William Henry in 1758. He became Major-General in 1759; Lieutenant-General in 1761; and General in 1765. Subsequently he served in Germany under Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, and commanded a brigade of cavalry at the Battle of Warburg in 1760. On 18th December, 1766, he became Colonel of the 8th (King's) Regiment, and on 22nd October, 1772, Colonel of the 14th Light Dragoons, retaining the appointment until his death, at Dublin, on 11th November, 1773.

IX. MAJOR-GENERAL WILLIAM BROWNE.

On the transfer of General Webb to the Colonelcy of the 8th Foot, he was replaced as Colonel of the 48th Foot on 18th December, 1766, by Major-General William Browne who at that time was Colonel of the 73rd Foot. The new Colonel had commenced his military career as an Ensign in the 3rd Foot on 26th July, 1722, and had obtained his Captaincy in the 1st Foot Guards on 26th October, 1740. In 1748 he was promoted Lieutenant-Colonel, and became Major-General on 3rd March, 1761; and Lieutenant-General on 30th April, 1770. He died in 1773, having been Colonel of the 48th for seven years.

X. MAJOR-GENERAL WILLIAM ALEXANDER SORRELL.

Major-General William Alexander Sorrell became Colonel of the 48th Foot on 15th December, 1773, on the death of Major-General William Browne. His

prior service had been in the 2nd Foot Guards, being an Ensign on 27th November, 1741; Captain in 1745; and Lieutenant-Colonel in 1756. He became Brevet Colonel on 19th February, 1762; Major-General on 25th May, 1772; and Lieutenant-General on 24th August, 1777. He died in 1783.

XI. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT SKENE.

Robert Skene commenced his military career as an Ensign in the 19th Foot on 21st January, 1743, and had been promoted Lieutenant in 1745. His next step was as Captain in the 59th Foot, his appointment being dated 14th April, 1756. He became a Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel while serving on the Staff at Martinique in 1758; Brevet Colonel in 1772; Major-General in 1777; and Lieutenant-General on 20th November, 1782. He became Colonel of the 48th Foot on 31st March, 1783, and died in 1787, having held command only four years.

XII. MAJOR-GENERAL PATRICK TONYN.

Patrick Tonym had commenced his career as a Cornet in the 6th Dragoons on 16th March, 1744, and remained in that Regiment for seventeen years, being promoted Lieutenant in 1748 and Captain in 1751. His next promotion was to the rank of Lieutenant-Colonel of the 104th Foot in 1761. He was Brevet Colonel in 1777 and Major-General on 19th October, 1781. He was given command of the 48th Foot on 23rd May, 1787, and on his death, after sixty years' service, was a full General, having been appointed on 1st January, 1798.

XIII. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL LORD CHARLES FITZROY.

Lord Charles FitzRoy was the second son of the third Duke of Grafton. He became an Ensign in 1782, and was appointed Captain of the 3rd Foot Guards in 1787. He served in the campaign in Flanders in 1793-4 and was present at the Siege of Valenciennes. He became a Major-General in 1798; Colonel-Commandant of the 60th Foot in 1804-5; and Colonel of the 48th Foot on 1st January, 1805, until his death on 20th December, 1829. He became Lieutenant-General in January, 1805, and General on 4th January, 1814. He was a Member of Parliament for Bury St. Edmunds.

XIV. COLONEL SIR THOMAS HISLOP.

On 25th December, 1829, Sir Thomas Hislop, then Colonel of the 51st, was appointed Colonel of the 48th Foot in succession to Lord Charles FitzRoy. On 28th December, 1778, he was appointed Ensign in the 39th Foot and served through the Siege of Gibraltar. He purchased a company in the 100th Foot in 1785, but exchanged back to the 39th Foot. He became Lieutenant-Colonel of the 115th Foot on 25th April, 1795, from which he once more exchanged to the 39th Foot.

He held various commands in the West Indies and India. G.C.B. in 1818. He was Colonel in succession of the 95th, 51st and 48th Foot. He died at Charlton, Kent, on 3rd May, 1843.

XV. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL GEORGE MIDDLEMORE.

On 31st May, 1843, General George Middlemore, C.B., who had commanded the 1/48th at Talavera thirty-four years previously, was appointed Colonel of

the 48th. His first commission as Ensign in the 86th Foot was dated in January, 1793; three months later he was promoted Lieutenant and on 15th October, 1794, he obtained his company in the 86th. His promotions to other ranks were dated as follows :—Major, 14th September, 1804; when he joined the 48th; Lieutenant-Colonel, 2nd November, 1809; Colonel, 12th August, 1819; Major-General, 22nd July, 1830; Lieutenant-General, 23rd November, 1841.

He served in command of his company of the 86th as Marines on board H.M.S. *Brunswick* under Lord Howe, and afterwards in the North Sea with Lord Duncan. He accompanied the force from India to Egypt under Sir David Baird and received the Egyptian medal. He was Colonel of the Regiment until 1850. In 1836 he was Governor of St. Helena and held the post at the time of the removal of Napoleon's remains in 1840. He was Colonel of the 76th prior to the 48th Foot. He died on 18th November, 1850, at Tunbridge Wells.

XVI. MAJOR-GENERAL SIR JAMES HENRY REYNETT.

On 25th November, 1850, Sir James Henry Reynett was appointed Colonel of the 48th Foot in succession to General Middlemore. Sir James Reynett served with the 52nd on the expedition against Ferrol in 1800, and was present at the action before that place. He was on the staff of the Q.M.G. in the Peninsula in 1808-9 and was present at the Battles of Corunna, Douro, Oporto, Talavera and Busaco; and subsequently in 1811 at Pombal, Reddinha, Sabugal, Foz d'Aronce and Fuentes d'Onor. He received the War Medal and four clasps.

The dates of his promotion to the various ranks were as follows :—Ensign, 25th November, 1799; Lieutenant, 14th March, 1800; Captain, 24th March, 1804; Major, 8th April, 1813; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1st June, 1814; Colonel, 22nd July, 1830; Major-General, 23rd November, 1841. He was Colonel of the 48th until 1864.

XVII. GENERAL ARTHUR ALEXANDER DALZELL, EARL OF CARNWATH.

On 10th August, 1864, the Hon. A. A. Dalzell, who later became Earl of Carnwath, was appointed Colonel of the 48th Foot. The dates of his promotion to the various ranks were as follows :—Ensign, 29th April, 1819; Lieutenant, 5th February, 1824; Captain, 26th June, 1827; Major, 2nd April, 1865; General, 14th April, 1873.

XVIII. COLONEL WILLIAM ANSON MCCLEVERTY.

On 29th April, 1875, Colonel William Anson McCleverty became Colonel of the 48th Regiment.

The dates of his promotion to the various ranks were as follows :—Ensign, 26th March, 1824; Lieutenant, 26th August, 1825; Captain, 21st May, 1829; Major, 23rd April, 1841; Lieutenant-Colonel, 19th December, 1845; Colonel, 20th June, 1854; Major-General, 4th May, 1860; Lieutenant-General, 22nd November, 1868; General, 17th March, 1876.

He served with the 48th against the Rajah of Coorg in 1834, and commanded the troops in New Zealand during the native disturbances of 1847, for which he received a medal. He was appointed to command the 108th (Madras Infantry) on 27th March, 1868.

He became Colonel of both battalions of the Northamptonshire Regiment in 1884; until that time there had been two Colonels.

THE 58TH REGIMENT.

I. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT ANSTRUTHER.

Robert Anstruther of Bargarvie, son of Sir Robert Anstruther of Balcaskie, joined Preston's Regiment (the 26th Foot and later the Cameronians) as an Ensign on 13th December, 1715. He became a Captain on 3rd April, 1718, and a Major in the same regiment on 15th December, 1738. He fought at Dettingen, Fontenoy and Culloden, and became Lieutenant-Colonel on 13th July, 1745, and Colonel in October, 1755. On 28th December, 1755, he became Colonel of the 58th, which he formed. He acquired the estate of Bargarvie, near Cupar, and married, on 11th August, 1765, Lady Elizabeth Maitland, daughter of the 6th Earl of Lauderdale. He was promoted Major-General in 1759 and Lieutenant-General on 19th March, 1765, and remained as Colonel of the 58th until his death in 1767.

His coat of arms—"Argent three piles issuing from the chief sable"—is undoubtedly the origin of the black facings of the 58th. His family crest was "Two arms embowed in armour holding a battle-axe with both hands proper" (registered in the Lyon Office, 17th June, 1730), and his motto, "*Periissem ni periissem*" (I should have perished had I not gone through it), is said to be the words used in his defence by an ancestor arraigned for axing a treacherous neighbour.

II. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT CUNNINGHAME.

Robert Cunninghame became Colonel of the 58th Foot on 14th December, 1767. He had served first as an Ensign in the 20th Foot, being appointed on 12th December, 1746; he became a Captain-Lieutenant in the 35th Foot on 25th December, 1750, and two years later a Captain in the same Regiment. His next promotion was to Lieutenant-Colonel on 3rd November, 1757, by virtue of his appointment as Adjutant-General in Ireland. He became a Brevet Colonel in 1762; Major-General, 25th May, 1772; Lieutenant-General five years later, and as Lord Rossmore, a full General on 12th October, 1793. He remained as Colonel of the 58th Foot until 1775, when he obtained command of the 14th Foot, and later in April, 1787, he was once more transferred to the command of the 5th Dragoons.

III. COLONEL HON. GEORGE WEST.

The Hon. George West became Colonel of the 58th Foot on 18th October, 1775. Colonel West had commenced his service as an Ensign in the 1st Foot Guards on 8th November, 1751, and had obtained his company in the 26th Foot on 7th November, 1755, and his Majority in the 55th Foot on 19th July, 1758. He returned to the 1st Foot Guards as Lieutenant-Colonel on 6th November, 1759, and was appointed Colonel and A.D.C. on 25th June, 1766. He held the Colonelcy of the 58th for less than a year, when he died.

IV. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL LAUNCELOT BAUGH.

Launcelot Baugh was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot on 19th February, 1776. He had been appointed Ensign in Battereau's Regiment on 24th May, 1742, and Captain in the 1st Foot Guards on 26th August, 1747; eleven years later he became Lieutenant-Colonel in the same Regiment. He was Colonel and A.D.C. on 6th July, 1771, and Major-General on 29th August, 1777. He remained in command of the 58th Foot until 1787, when he obtained command of the 6th Foot (18th April, 1787). He was Lieutenant-General on 19th February, 1779, and died in 1792.

CC

V. GENERAL GEORGE SCOTT.

George Scott obtained his first commission as Ensign in the 2nd Foot Guards on 21st December, 1749; became Lieutenant and Captain, 12th June, 1756; Major in the 89th Foot on 13th October, 1759. He became a Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel on 9th February, 1762, and was on half-pay from 1763 until 1773. On 26th February, 1773, he became Lieutenant-Colonel in the 61st Foot; Brevet Colonel on 29th August, 1777; and on 16th December, 1777, became Colonel of the 83rd Foot (Royal Glasgow Volunteers). From 1783 until 1787 he was again on half-pay, being appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot on 18th April, 1787. He was promoted Major-General, 19th October, 1781; Lieutenant-General, 12th October, 1793; and General, 1st January, 1798.

VI. GENERAL RICHARD, 7TH EARL OF CAVAN, K.C.

On 1st July, 1811, General, The Earl of Cavan was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot. He had been appointed Ensign in the 2nd Guards on 2nd April, 1779; Lieutenant, 27th July, 1781; Captain, 30th November, 1790. He was promoted Colonel in the Army on 21st August, 1795; Major-General, 18th June, 1798; Lieutenant-General, 30th October, 1805; and General, 4th June, 1814. He had been appointed Colonel of the 45th Foot in 1823.

He served in Europe and in Egypt, where he commanded a brigade, and was wounded at Valenciennes on 3rd January, 1793. He died in London on 21st November, 1836.

VII. GENERAL LORD LYNEDOCH, G.C.B. (THOMAS GRAHAM).

On 10th February, 1823, General Lord Lynedoch, G.C.B. (Thomas Graham) was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot, when the Earl of Cavan was appointed to the 45th Foot.

In 1785 Graham's name appears as having played in the first cricket match in Scotland. It was between two teams of gentlemen for £1,000 a side, and Graham's score of 20 in each innings was the second highest made. In 1794 he was elected Member of Parliament for the County of Perth as a Whig. At the commencement of the war in 1793 he had gone to the Mediterranean as a volunteer. On his return he raised the 90th Regiment, his commission as Lieutenant-Colonel Commandant being dated 10th February, 1794. He saw much service in the Mediterranean and on the Continent at the end of the eighteenth century, and later served as Lieutenant-General under Wellington in the Peninsular War. In 1814 he commanded the British forces in Holland with the temporary rank of General; at the same time he received the thanks of Parliament for his work in the Peninsula and was raised to the Peerage. He was given a cross for the Battles of Barossa and Vittoria and the Sieges of Ciudad Rodrigo and San Sebastian. He was appointed Colonel of the 14th Foot in 1826. He was mainly responsible for the formation of the United Service Club in 1817, where there is a portrait of him.

VIII. MAJOR-GENERAL LORD FREDERICK BENTINCK, C.B.

Lord Frederick Bentinck was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot on 6th September, 1826, in succession to Lord Lynedoch, who obtained command of the 14th Foot. He entered the Army in 1797 as Ensign in the 32nd Regiment, from which he was appointed Lieutenant in the 24th Dragoons. He served in Ireland during the year 1798; and in 1799 in Italy. He was at the Battle of Novi, the Siege of Alexandria, the Battle of Marengo, and the blockade of Genoa.

After a time on half-pay he exchanged into the 52nd Regiment and later obtained his Majority in the 45th Regiment, in which Regiment he became Lieutenant-Colonel on 21st April, 1804. He saw service in Sicily from 1805 to 1809. He was Brevet Colonel on 4th June, 1813, and on 12th August, 1819, was promoted Major-General. He was awarded the C.B.

IX. MAJOR-GENERAL SIR KENNETH DOUGLAS, BART.

On 1st March, 1828, Sir Kenneth Douglas was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot on the death of Lord Frederick Bentinck.

As Kenneth MacKenzie he had entered the 33rd Foot as Ensign when only thirteen years of age on 26th August, 1767. He served with them until 1783, when he was placed on half-pay, but later exchanged to the 14th Regiment in the West Indies. He was promoted to a company on 13th May, 1794, and later to a Majority in the 90th Regiment, becoming Lieutenant-Colonel on 19th October, 1798. He transferred to the 44th Regiment as a Lieutenant-Colonel and later to the 52nd, which he trained as a light infantry battalion. He frequently during his service acted as Staff Officer to Lord Lynedoch, one of his predecessors as Colonel of the 58th. He was appointed Major-General on 4th June, 1811; and died on 22nd February, 1833, and is buried at Hythe.

X. GENERAL FREDERICK MAITLAND.

Frederick Maitland was the youngest son of General the Hon. Sir Alexander Maitland, and was appointed Colonel of the 58th Foot on 11th December, 1833, on the death of Sir Kenneth Douglas. He was seventy years old at the time, and having been appointed Ensign in the 14th Foot at the age of sixteen on 1st September, 1779, had fifty-four years' service.

The dates of his promotion to the various ranks are as follows:—Lieutenant (30th Foot), 19th September, 1782; Captain (60th Regiment), 2nd December, 1789; Brevet Major, 1793; Major (60th Regiment), 21st August, 1793; Lieutenant-Colonel, 2nd July, 1794; Colonel, 1st January, 1800; Brigadier-General, 1801; Major-General, 30th October, 1805; Lieutenant-General, 4th June, 1811; General, 25th May, 1825.

His first service was as a Marine, on board the *Union* in the Channel Fleet, and at the Siege of Gibraltar in 1781.

Almost the whole of his service took place in the West Indies, and during many years in that climate was at the reduction of every island taken by British arms. Having been on the Staff of the Q.M.G. under General Cuyler, he was sent home with dispatches after the capture of Tobago in 1793, and while in Europe was present at the Relief of Nieuport, as aide-de-camp to Sir Charles Grey. In 1796 he returned to the West Indies as Military Secretary to Sir Ralph Abercromby. He was in Ireland during the Rebellion of 1798 and in Scotland and at Helder in 1799.

In 1800 he returned to the West Indies once more as Quartermaster-General, and the following year was appointed Brigadier-General and Commandant of Fort Royal. He commanded a brigade at the Capture of St. Bartholomew, St. Thomas, St. Martin and Santa Cruz, and was second in command to Sir Thomas Trigg at the taking of Surinam.

In 1805 he was appointed Governor of Grenada by the express command of King George III and in 1809 he commanded a division at the taking of Martinique, for which he received a gold medal and the thanks of Parliament. He also commanded an expedition against the Saintes.

In 1811 he was transferred to the Mediterranean where he commanded until the arrival of Lord William Bentinck. In 1812 he was in command of the force which contained the 58th and landed on the east coast of Spain. His health, however, failed him and he was granted the Governorship of Dominica by the King as a reward for his services.

He died at Tunbridge Wells on 27th January, 1848, aged eighty-five years, and was buried at Hartfield in Sussex where there is a tablet to his memory in the church, over which hang two old Colours (probably those presented in 1827). He retained the command of the Regiment until his death.

XI. MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE CHARLES D'AGUILAR, C.B.

On 5th February, 1848, on the death of General Maitland, General George Charles d'Aguilar, C.B., was appointed Colonel of the 58th Regiment.

His first commission had been as Ensign in the 86th Regiment on 24th September, 1799; his promotion to Lieutenant being dated 1st December, 1802. On 30th March, 1808, he obtained his company in the 81st Foot, and on 1st April, 1813, was promoted Major in the Rifle Brigade. He became Lieutenant-Colonel on 20th May, 1813; Colonel, 22nd July, 1830; and Major-General, 23rd November, 1841.

He served eight years in India during the wars of Scindia and Holkar, 1803 to 1806. He also served in Walcheren at the Siege of Flushing, and in Sicily and on the east coast of Spain, where he probably met the 58th, and was present at Castalla. He took part in the Waterloo campaign and was at the official entry into Paris in 1815.

Subsequently he served twenty-six years on the General Staff. He commanded an expedition in 1847 which took the forts of Bocca Tigris in Canton River, and those of Staked Barrier and of the City of Canton.

XII. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL EDWARD BUCKLEY WYNARD, C.B.

Major-General Edward Buckley Wynyard succeeded General d'Aguilar as Colonel of the 58th Regiment on 31st January, 1851.

He obtained his first commission as Ensign on 17th December, 1803; was promoted Lieutenant and Captain, 7th January, 1808; Major, 25th March, 1813; Lieutenant-Colonel, 28th April, 1814; Colonel, 22nd July, 1830; Major-General, 23rd November, 1841; and Lieutenant-General, 11th November, 1851.

He served with the army in Sicily from 1808 until March, 1810, when he was severely wounded at the attack on Santa Maura, for which he subsequently obtained Brevet rank of Major.

XIII. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL CHARLES CRAUFURD HAY.

Charles Craufurd Hay succeeded General Wynyard as Colonel of the 58th Regiment on 25th November, 1864.

He received his first commission as Cornet on 27th June, 1824, and was promoted Lieutenant, 24th December, 1825; Captain, 19th September, 1826; Major, 16th June, 1837; Lieutenant-Colonel, 30th August, 1842; Colonel, 20th June, 1854; Major-General, 26th August, 1858; Lieutenant-General, 20th January, 1867.

He was Commander of the Forces at the Cape of Good Hope and Lieutenant-Governor. On 29th August, 1868, he was appointed Colonel of the 93rd Foot, and died in 1873.

XIV. MAJOR-GENERAL WILLIAM SULLIVAN, C.B.

William Sullivan succeeded General Craufurd Hay as Colonel of the 58th Regiment on 29th August, 1863.

He received his first commission as Ensign on 14th October, 1824; was promoted Lieutenant, 8th April, 1826; Captain, 21st June, 1831; Major, 27th August, 1841; Lieutenant-Colonel, 11th August, 1846; Colonel, 20th June, 1854; and Major-General, 23rd March, 1861.

He served in the Eastern Campaign of 1854 in the Light Division, and was present at Alma, Balaclava, Inkerman (where his horse was shot under him) and also at Sevastopol.

XV. MAJOR-GENERAL SIR ARTHUR JOHNSTONE LAWRENCE, K.C.B.

Arthur Johnstone Lawrence succeeded General Sullivan as Colonel of the 58th Regiment on 6th January, 1870.

He received his first commission as Second-Lieutenant on 4th April, 1827, in the 23rd Foot; was promoted Lieutenant (unattached) on 13th February, 1830; Lieutenant in the Royals, 16th March, 1830; Captain, 24th February, 1837; Major, 11th September, 1846; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1st August, 1847; Colonel, 28th November, 1854; Major-General, 1st June, 1862; and Lieutenant-General, 25th October, 1871.

He commanded the 2nd Battalion Rifle Brigade throughout the Eastern Campaign of 1854, until 5th November; the 1st Brigade Light Division from 5th November, 1854, until 5th February, 1855; the 2nd Brigade, 2nd Division, from 25th December, 1855, until the end of the Crimean War. He was present at the Battle of Alma, where his horse was shot under him, also at Inkerman and the Siege of Sevastopol.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

I. GENERAL W. A. MCCLEVERTY.

(See XVIII page 384.)

II. MAJOR-GENERAL ROBERT CHILDREN WHITEHEAD, C.B.

Major-General Whitehead succeeded General McCleverty as Colonel of the Northamptonshire Regiment on 7th October, 1897.

He received his first commission as Ensign on 7th October, 1851; was promoted Lieutenant, 18th August, 1854; Captain, 30th November, 1855; Major, 15th February, 1861; Lieutenant-Colonel, 22nd May, 1874; Colonel, 1st October, 1877; and Major-General, 14th December, 1887.

He served with the 97th Regiment in the Crimea, including the Siege and Fall of Sevastopol, and was with the storming party at the assault on the Redan. He was mentioned in dispatches for distinguished conduct, received the medal with clasp, the 5th Class of the Medjidie and the Turkish Medal. He commanded the 58th Foot in the Zulu War and was present at the Battle of Ulundi, when he was mentioned in dispatches, received the C.B., and the medal with clasp.

III. MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE FITZHERBERT BROWNE, C.B., D.S.O.

Major-General Browne succeeded General Whitehead as Colonel of the Northamptonshire Regiment on 12th December, 1910.

He received his first commission as Ensign on 6th July, 1870; and was promoted Lieutenant, 28th October, 1871; Captain, 16th December, 1882; Major, 22nd November, 1890; Lieutenant-Colonel, 19th September, 1896; Colonel, 19th September, 1900; Major-General, 10th October, 1906.

He served with the expedition against the Yonnies on the West Coast of Africa, 1887-88, during which campaign he was mentioned in dispatches, received the medal with clasp and the D.S.O. He again served on the West Coast of Africa in 1892, and took part in the attack on Tambi on 14th March, 1892, where he was wounded, and received a clasp to the medal. He served in China in 1900 as Military Attaché.

IV. GENERAL SIR HAVELOCK HUDSON, G.C.B., K.C.I.E.

General Sir Havelock Hudson succeeded General Browne as Colonel of the Northamptonshire Regiment on 22nd June, 1925.

Born on 26th June, 1862, the son of Lieutenant-General Sir John Hudson, K.C.B., he was gazetted to the Regiment on 22nd October, 1881, and a few years later was seconded to the Indian Army. He served in the campaign on the North-West Frontier in 1897, in China in 1900 and during the Second Miranzai Expedition in 1901.

He was promoted Captain, 22nd October, 1892; Brevet Major, 29th November, 1901; Lieutenant-Colonel, 13th May, 1907; Colonel, 17th February, 1911; Major-General, 18th February, 1915; Lieutenant-General, 23rd October, 1917; General, 28th January, 1921.

During his service he held a number of staff appointments, including those of D.A.Q.M.G., Mohmand Field Force in 1897, and D.A.Q.M.G., China Expedition, 1900-01 and was B.G.G.S., Northern Army, India, from 1st October, 1912, to 29th September, 1914. Joining the British Expeditionary Force in France from this date, he held the appointment of B.G.G.S. on the Headquarters of the Indian Corps until 30th July, 1915, when he took over command of the 8th Division. He returned to India to take up the appointment of Adjutant-General, which he held from 5th February, 1917, until 30th October, 1920, when he became Commander-in-Chief, of Eastern Command (India), an appointment he retained until his retirement in 1924.

On 21st June, 1922, he was appointed A.D.C. General to King George V, and was Military Member of the Indian Council from 1924 to 1929.

V. LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR HARRY HUGH SIDNEY KNOX, K.C.B., D.S.O.

Harry Hugh Sidney Knox, son of Vesey E. Knox, of Newcastle, Co. Down, was born on 5th November, 1873, and joined the Regiment from the 5th Battalion Royal Irish Rifles as a Second-Lieutenant on 9th September, 1893. He was promoted Lieutenant on 26th August, 1895, and took part with the 1st Battalion in the Tirah Campaign of 1897-98, including the operations on the Samana, the actions of Chagru Kotal and Dargai, the Capture of Sampagha and Arhanga Passes and the operations at Dwatoi and in the Bara Valley. From January, 1900, to March, 1902, he was employed with the King's African Rifles in Uganda and was promoted Captain, 1st April, 1902. He was Adjutant of the 1st Battalion from 12th May, 1902, to 11th May, 1905, and soon after passed the Staff College, and held appointments on the General Staff in India from August, 1910, to 11th November, 1914. On 15th June, 1913, he obtained his Majority and between January, 1915, and May, 1917, he served on the General Staff of the V Corps and 15th Division in France. Promoted Lieutenant-Colonel on 2nd June, 1919

(Brevet, 1st January, 1916), he became Brigadier-General, General Staff, of XV Corps in France from May, 1917, to March, 1919. During August, 1918, he commanded the 29th Division. During the Great War he was mentioned in dispatches seven times and awarded the C.B. and D.S.O. In addition he received the Belgian Order of the Crown, 4th Class, the Legion of Honour, 4th Class, and the French War Cross.

He was promoted Colonel on 7th April, 1920 (Brevet, 1st January, 1918) and after the war became B.G.G.S., Southern Command, March, 1919—April, 1921; Chief Instructor at the Staff College, April, 1921—March, 1923; and commanded the 3rd Infantry Brigade, April, 1923—March, 1926. He was A.D.C. to the King 1925-26. On 21st March, 1926, he was promoted Major-General and was Director of Military Training at the War Office from June, 1926, to May, 1930, when he took over the command of the 3rd Division. He relinquished his command on being promoted Lieutenant-General on 22nd August, 1932, and became Lieutenant of the Tower of London. On 1st January, 1935, the Knighthood of the Order of the Bath was conferred on him, and on 1st March, 1935, he was appointed Adjutant-General and a Member of the Army Council. On 23rd October, 1931, he was appointed Colonel of the Regiment.

APPENDIX III

SUCCESSION LIST OF LIEUTENANT-COLONELS

PART I.

THE 48TH REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| T. Hopson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Jan. 1741 |
| G. Stanhope | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th April 1743 |
| J. Wilson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Mar. 1748 |
| R. Burton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th Oct. 1754 |
| A. Murray | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Mar. 1761 |
| C. Teesdale | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Mar. 1762 |
| R. Ross | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Sept. 1762 |
| B. Gordon | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Mar. 1769 |

THE 48TH NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| A. Campbell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 19th Sept. 1795 |
| (There are now two Lieutenant-Colonels) | | | | | | | |
| W. Horne | (vice Campbell) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Oct. 1796 |
| M. Hunter | (vice Horne) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th Dec. 1797 |
| W. S. Wemyss | (vice Gordon) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th July 1803 |
| Hon. D. Leslie | (vice Hunter) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th July 1803 |
| C. Donnellan | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Nov. 1804 |
| (There are now three Lieutenant-Colonels, the 2/48th having been formed.) | | | | | | | |
| G. H. Duckworth | (vice Wemyss) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th June 1808 |
| G. Middlemore | (vice Donnellan) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Nov. 1809 |
| Patrick Ross | (vice Middlemore) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 28th June 1810 |
| J. Erskine | (vice Duckworth) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th June 1811 |
| W. Hutchinson | (vice Ross) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Oct. 1811 |
| W. Brooke | (vice Leslie) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th June 1813 |
| (After 1814 there are two Lieutenant-Colonels, the 2/48th being disbanded.) | | | | | | | |
| W. Grove White | (vice Brooke) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Jan. 1817 |
| G. Cimitière | (vice Grove White) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Mar. 1824 |
| J. Taylor | (vice Erskine) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th June 1825 |
| T. Bell | (vice Cimitière) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Sept. 1827 |
| J. H. Schœdde | (vice Taylor) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th June 1830 |
| S. Brock | (vice Schœdde) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Mar. 1833 |
| (There is now only one Lieutenant-Colonel.) | | | | | | | |
| Hon. A. A. Dalzell | (vice Bell) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd April 1841 |
| B. Riky | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th Dec. 1853 |
| G. M. Lys | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th May 1855 |
| A. R. Chapman | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Sept. 1858 |
| A. N. Campbell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Sept. 1859 |
| J. G. R. Aplin | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd Nov. 1860 |
| R. H. Travers | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th Nov. 1870 |
| E. D'H. Fairclough | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st May 1878 |

1ST BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| F. C. Trent | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th June 1882 |
| St. J. Bally | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Nov. 1884 |
| (There are now two Lieutenant-Colonels.) | | | | | | | | |
| A. C. H. Lynch | (vice Trent) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Nov. 1884 |
| H. B. Wilson | (vice Bally) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st Aug. 1887 |
| (There is now only one Lieutenant-Colonel.) | | | | | | | | |
| A. W. Morris | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Nov. 1890 |
| R. J. Chaytor | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Nov. 1894 |
| W. B. Capper | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th April 1898 |
| W. F. Fawcett | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th June 1901 |
| W. Weallens | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th June 1905 |
| F. J. Parker | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th June 1909 |
| E. O. Smith | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th June 1913 |
| L. G. W. Dobbin | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Dec. 1914 |
| G. A. Royston-Piggott | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st July 1915 |
| H. R. H. Drew | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Sept. 1915 |
| K. Bethell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Dec. 1915 |
| Hon. D. P. Tollemache | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Oct. 1916 |
| G. St. G. Robinson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th July 1917 |
| H. R. H. Drew | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd June 1919 |
| C. R. J. Mowatt | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Jan. 1921 |
| H. C. W. H. Wortham | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Dec. 1922 |
| R. M. Raynsford | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Jan. 1925 |
| S. H. J. Thunder | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Oct. 1926 |
| T. S. Muirhead | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Oct. 1930 |
| F. W. L. Bissett | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Nov. 1933 |

PART II.

THE 58TH REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| Byam Crump | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29th Dec. 1755 |
| W. Howe | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Dec. 1757 |
| J. Burgoyne | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 19th Dec. 1764 |
| R. C. Bayley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd July 1773 |
| G. Cochrane | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th June 1777 |

THE 58TH RUTLANDSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| G. Horsfall | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29th Mar. 1786 |
| W. Brereton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th May 1789 |
| R. Stewart | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Nov. 1792 |
| W. Cunninghame | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Oct. 1794 |
| W. Houston | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th June 1795 |
| S. Bromfield | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd July 1795 |
| R. Douglas | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th June 1796 |
| (There are now two Lieutenant-Colonels.) | | | | | | | | |
| G. Johnstone | (vice Douglas) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th Nov. 1802 |
| T. Fitzgerald | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 28th Aug. 1804 |
| (There are now three Lieutenant-Colonels on formation of 2/58th.) | | | | | | | | |
| D. Walker | (vice Johnstone) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Nov. 1809 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| R. Buckby | (vice Fitzgerald) | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Nov. 1810 |
| H. John | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th Aug. 1821 |
| (There is now only one Lieutenant-Colonel.) | | | | | | |
| M. Clifford | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29th Nov. 1827 |
| J. W. Frith | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Dec. 1836 |
| R. H. Wynyard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Dec. 1842 |
| C. Bridge | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Oct. 1858 |
| C. Hood | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd Nov. 1860 |
| R. C. Whitehead | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd May 1874 |
| W. D. Bond | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th Sept. 1879 |

2ND BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| C. E. Foster | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st April 1884 |
| D. G. Anderson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st July 1887 |
| W. T. Ellis | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st April 1890 |
| T. C. Orde-Powlett | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st April 1894 |
| H. C. Denny | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Mar. 1899 |
| T. D'O. Snow | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Mar. 1903 |
| A. C. Bolton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd June 1903 |
| E. F. Brereton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd June 1907 |
| C. S. Prichard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd June 1911 |
| A. C. Buckle | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Mar. 1915 |
| C. G. Buckle | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Aug. 1916 |
| S. S. Hayne | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th June 1918 |
| L. G. W. Dobbin | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Mar. 1919 |
| C. R. J. Mowatt | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Dec. 1922 |
| G. L. Crossman | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Jan. 1925 |
| W. D. Barber | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Mar. 1929 |
| G. St. G. Robinson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Mar. 1933 |

(Officers who commanded for temporary periods during the Great War included : C. E. Higginbotham, C. R. J. Mowatt, S. S. Hayne, F. T. Williams, S. G. Latham, C. J. Hardy, H. T. Fowler, A. V. Rowe.)

PART III.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE MILITIA.

| | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| Henry Yelverton, 3rd Earl of Sussex | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th Jan. 1763 |
| Charles, Lord Compton, (succeeded as 9th Earl of Northampton) | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Mar. 1784 |
| Sir Richard de Capell Brooke, Bart. | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th Mar. 1798 |
| Sir Justinian Isham, Bart. | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1809 |
| Thomas Philip Maunsell | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd April 1845 |
| William Alleyne Cecil, Lord Burghley (succeeded as 3rd Marquis of Exeter, 16th Jan., 1867) | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th Jan. 1854 |
| Lord Brownlow Thomas Montague Cecil | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Oct. 1887 |
| Brownlow Henry George Cecil, Lord Burghley (succeeded as 4th Marquis of Exeter) | ... | ... | ... | ... | April 1889 |
| Sackville George Stopford Sackville | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18th May 1898 |
| Joseph Hill, C.B. | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th May 1901 |
| Anthony Mildmay Julian Fane, 13th Earl of Westmorland | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st July 1907 |
| George Holden Champion de Crespigny | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st July 1914 |
| Herbert Charles Metcalf, D.S.O. | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Nov. 1918 |

THE RUTLAND MILITIA.

| | | | | | | |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|------|
| Brownlow Cecil, 9th Earl of Exeter | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1759 |
| George Brudenell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1760 |
| George Finch, 3rd Earl of Winchelsea and Nottingham, K.G. | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1778 |
| William Burton | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st July | 1779 |
| Michael Pierrepont | ... | ... | ... | ... | 19th Oct. | 1801 |
| Hon. Henry Lewis Noel | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Oct. | 1852 |

SUPPLEMENTARY MILITIA, OR SECOND REGIMENT OF
NORTHAMPTONSHIRE MILITIA.

| | | | | | | |
|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| Robert Willis Blencowe | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | Sept. 1797 |
|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|

NORTHAMPTONSHIRE LOCAL MILITIA.

EASTERN REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|------|
| John Fane, 10th Earl of Westmorland | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Mar. | 1809 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|------|

CENTRAL REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|------|
| Thomas Samwell Watson Samwell | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3rd June | 1809 |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|------|

WESTERN REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| John Plower Clarke | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29th Dec. 1808 |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|

PART IV.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEERS.

EASTERN REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|
| John, Earl of Westmorland | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1804—1814 |
|---------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|

WESTERN REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|
| John Clarke | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1804—1805 |
| John Plower Clarke | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1805—1814 |

1ST ADMINISTRATIVE BATTALION NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEER RIFLES.

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| Henry William, Earl of Euston | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Aug. 1860 |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|

1ST VOLUNTEER BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1881).

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| H. J. Fitzroy, Earl of Euston | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Feb. 1882 |
| H. H. Costabadie (2nd Battalion) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st Nov. 1900 |
| G. E. Ripley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Dec. 1903 |

4TH TERRITORIAL BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1908).

| | | | | | | |
|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| S. L. Barry | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st Mar. 1914 |
| E. G. Curtis | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th Aug. 1914 |
| J. Brown | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th May 1916 |
| J. P. S. Winnington | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th April 1918 |
| T. Ryan | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Sept. 1918 |
| J. Brown | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Feb. 1920 |
| J. Lowther | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th Mar. 1924 |
| W. R. Styles | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th Mar. 1928 |

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

2/4TH NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1914—1919).

A. F. Mulliner.

J. P. Law.

C. S. Prichard.

J. H. Collett.

3/4TH NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1914—1919).

G. S. Eunson.

W. F. Grant.

5TH TERRITORIAL BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1922).

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| MacD. Barkley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Feb. 1920 |
| C. W. Rowe | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Feb. 1926 |
| A. H. Mellows | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th Nov. 1928 |
| W. E. Green | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th Nov. 1934 |

PART V.

SERVICE BATTALIONS, 1914—1919.

THE 5TH BATTALION.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| G. A. Trent | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 19th Aug. 1914 |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|

THE 6TH BATTALION.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| G. E. Ripley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th Oct. 1914 |
| S. H. Charrington | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Oct. 1916 |
| R. Turner | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Mar. 1917 |

(Meyrick and J. H. Piper also commanded for short periods.)

THE 7TH BATTALION.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| A. Parkin | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Oct. 1914 |
| P. C. B. Skinner | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Oct. 1915 |
| E. R. Mobbs | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd April 1916 |
| S. S. Hayne | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Jan. 1918 |
| E. S. C. Grune | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th Sept. 1918 |

(The following also commanded for short periods: H. B. King, T. H. S. Swanton and D. W. Powell.)

APPENDIX IV

SUCCESSION LIST OF ADJUTANTS

PART I.

THE 48TH REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| Hezekiah Fleming | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Jan. 1741 |
| J. Gordon | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Sept. 1754 |
| J. Hawthorn | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th April 1758 |
| W. Scott | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th June 1760 |
| J. Fraser | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Dec. 1767 |
| S. M'Connell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th Dec. 1770 |
| R. Montresor | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Dec. 1776 |
| W. Horne | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Feb. 1779 |

THE 48TH NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| G. A. Tonyn | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st July 1790 |
| T. Magee | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Aug. 1798 |
| J. Kerr | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th July 1803 |
| (There are now two adjutants, on creation of 2/48th.) | | | | | | | | |
| Colin Campbell | (vice Kerr) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th Sept. 1805 |
| W. Cheslyn | (vice Magee) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th June 1806 |
| H. Irwin | (vice Cheslyn) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th Aug. 1807 |
| J. Peacock | (vice Campbell) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th Oct. 1807 |
| J. W. Dixon | (vice Peacock) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Nov. 1809 |
| W. R. Steel | (vice Irwin) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Feb. 1809 |
| E. C. Close | (vice Steel) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Feb. 1812 |
| G. Skene | (vice Close) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th Nov. 1813 |
| (After 1815, the 2/48th being disbanded, there is only one Adjutant.) | | | | | | | | |
| H. T. Humphreys | (vice Dixon) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1810 |
| J. Wild | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th July 1814 |
| T. Weston | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Sept. 1822 |
| M. Morphet | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th Dec. 1825 |
| H. Wheeler | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th Feb. 1834 |
| W. F. Windowe | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st Jan. 1848 |
| S. J. Maclurcan | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th Mar. 1850 |
| W. R. Williamson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st Mar. 1851 |
| E. G. Horne | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th July 1854 |
| J. Rawlins | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th Mar. 1860 |
| G. T. Miller | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3rd Nov. 1861 |
| J. W. Keyworth | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th May 1866 |
| R. Pennell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th June 1867 |
| G. A. Lewes | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st May 1876 |
| R. J. Chaytor | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th May 1880 |

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

1ST BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| A. Bell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Nov. 1883 |
| E. F. Brereton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Aug. 1885 |
| A. H. Barthorp | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Aug. 1890 |
| W. B. Woodham | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Aug. 1894 |
| F. J. Parker | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Aug. 1898 |
| H. H. S. Knox | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th May 1902 |
| G. A. Trent | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th May 1905 |
| W. T. Layard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th April 1908 |
| S. H. J. Thunder | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th April 1909 |
| H. Lloyd | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th April 1912 |
| G. St. G. Robinson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 19th April 1915 |
| J. C. O. Marriott | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Feb. 1916 |
| A. G. McNaught | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Nov. 1916 |
| W. J. Jervois | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Dec. 1920 |
| R. Gurney | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Dec. 1923 |
| J. W. Hinchcliffe | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th May 1925 |
| J. A. Barthorp | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th May 1928 |
| E. P. Sewell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th May 1931 |
| P. F. A. Growse | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th May 1934 |

PART II.

THE 58TH REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| D. M'Kemptie | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th Feb. 1756 |
| J. Warburton... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th Dec. 1759 |
| J. Anstruther | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th Aug. 1765 |
| J. Wemyss | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8th July 1768 |
| E. Burke | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3rd May 1770 |
| W. Cunninghame | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18th Aug. 1779 |

THE 58TH RUTLANDSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| J. Baven (or Beirn) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18th Oct. 1782 |
| W. Royal | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st Dec. 1792 |
| T. Hetherington | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th June 1802 |
| S. E. Bentley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Jan. 1804 |
| T. Mortimer (Adjutant for 2nd Battalion) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Mar. 1804 |
| (Two Adjutants from now on creation of 2/58th.) | | | | | | | | |
| P. Shea | (vice Bentley) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31st Jan. 1805 |
| W. Groves | (vice Mortimer) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Aug. 1807 |
| J. Slater | (vice Groves) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd Aug. 1810 |
| S. M. Hobson | (vice Shea) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Aug. 1812 |
| N. Tipson | (vice Hobson) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Nov. 1812 |
| W. Lewis | (vice Slater) (until 1815) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15th July 1813 |
| (Only one Adjutant from now on disbandment of 2/58th.) | | | | | | | | |
| D. Morrison | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11th Dec. 1817 |
| A. Bererhoudt | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Jan. 1824 |
| R. A. Mackenzie | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th July 1826 |
| D. Robertson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th Jan. 1828 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| O. Gorman | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 26th Oct. 1830 |
| J. M'Lerie | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 28th Dec. 1838 |
| I. R. Cooper | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th Jan. 1848 |
| H. C. Balneavis | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th July 1852 |
| G. J. R. Wynyard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 28th July 1854 |
| W. Bolton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th April 1858 |
| W. J. Hall | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 16th Oct. 1860 |
| O. W. Hill | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th July 1864 |
| T. H. Milles | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 24th July 1869 |
| O. W. Hill | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3rd Jan. 1871 |
| A. W. Morris | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd Nov. 1872 |
| E. Lovegrove | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th May 1877 |
| E. D. Sandys | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 18th Oct. 1879 |

2ND BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| S. J. M. Jopp | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st July 1881 |
| W. F. Fawcett | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th May 1885 |
| E. O. Smith | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th May 1890 |
| A. A. Lloyd | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1894 |
| J. Little | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1898 |
| S. A. Thompson | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1902 |
| W. R. Russell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1905 |
| C. R. J. Mowatt | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1908 |
| H. Power | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1911 |
| O. K. Parker | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th Nov. 1915 |
| H. Essame | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th July 1917 |
| T. S. Muirhead | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Sept. 1919 |
| A. O. F. Winkler | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Feb. 1921 |
| A. D. Middleton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Mar. 1923 |
| J. Lingham | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Mar. 1926 |
| M. A. Green | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Mar. 1929 |
| G. A. Hill Walker | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th Aug. 1930 |
| E. L. Percival | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 27th Aug. 1933 |

PART III.

MILITIA AND SPECIAL RESERVE.

For details, see "The History of The Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," by Major C. A. Markham.

PART IV.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEERS.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| Robert Marriott (West Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10th June 1804 |
| A. Hamams (West Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9th Jan. 1813 |
| William Hollis (Central Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Mar. 1810 |
| Edward Skelton (East Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13th Dec. 1804 |
| (Disbanded 1814.) | | | | | | |

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

1ST ADMINISTRATIVE BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE VOLUNTEER RIFLES.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| Major Landon | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 25th Oct. 1860 |
|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|

1ST VOLUNTEER BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (from 1881).

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| E. D. Sandys | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st May 1886 |
| W. F. Fawcett | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd April 1891 |
| J. A. C. Wetherall | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 21st April 1896 |

(Two battalions from now.)

| | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------|
| R. C. Coldwell | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 29th April 1901 |
| G. E. Ripley | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st April 1902 |
| J. Little | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 17th Dec. 1902 |
| L. J. Wyatt (North Staffordshire Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1905 |
| L. M. Wilson (East Surrey Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 30th April 1906 |
| W. G. Simpson (Royal Marines) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 4th Aug. 1906 |

4TH TERRITORIAL BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1908).

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| R. B. Parker | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1910 |
| S. H. J. Thunder | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20th Nov. 1913 |
| J. Brown | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7th Nov. 1914 |
| A. J. Wright | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 14th May 1916 |
| N. J. Darling | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12th Feb. 1917 |
| D. R. Church | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Jan. 1919 |
| H. E. Hardy | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 6th Feb. 1919 |
| V. A. R. Isham (Suffolk Regiment) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 23rd Mar. 1920 |
| H. R. Phipps | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Mar. 1923 |
| S. P. Briggs | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5th Mar. 1927 |
| W. C. Furminger | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Feb. 1933 |
| D. E. Taunton | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1st Feb. 1933 |

5TH TERRITORIAL BATTALION THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT (1922).

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| L. H. M. Mackenzie | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 22nd Aug. 1922 |
| W. B. Spencer | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Dec. 1925 |
| M. F. F. Buszard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Dec. 1929 |
| J. A. W. Ballard | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2nd Dec. 1933 |

APPENDIX V

THE COLOURS

THEIR ORIGIN.

From the earliest time at which men fought in organized bodies some sort of insignia has generally been provided to serve as a rallying-point and a visible sign that all could follow in a crisis. Such a sign was the Eagle of the Romans. During the Middle Ages the trained bands of individual noblemen formed the basis of military force ; and each band carried a banner or flag bearing the arms of their lord, which signified their corporate body and claimed the devotion of each individual. These flags were also used, no doubt, to enable a commander to distinguish the several positions of the various components of his force.

On the formation of standing armies, the professional captain took the place of the nobleman, and as many of these were not entitled to armorial bearings they carried small flags of distinctive colours, which is the origin of the term "Colours." It is certain that at one time every company possessed a Colour. By degrees the Colours were reduced, and by the end of the seventeenth century only three were allowed for each regiment, the Colonel's, the Lieutenant-Colonel's and the Major's ; the number of Colours was probably based on the fact that it was usual at the time for a regiment to fight in three divisions.

1741. By this date the number of Colours had generally been reduced to two, but there is no record of the original Colours carried by the **48th** on formation. At this time it was usual for Colonels of regiments to place on the Colours their own armorial bearings and crests.

Up to now no concise regulations had been issued concerning the Colours, but on 14th September, 1743, a Royal Warrant was published, which fixed the number of Colours at two for each regiment and abolished all armorial bearings. Extracts from the warrant which affect the Regiment are as follows :—

"The First Colour of every marching Regiment of Foot is to be the Great Union. The Second Colour to be the colour of the facing of the Regiment with the Union in the upper canton. . . . In the centre of each Colour is to be painted, in gold Roman figures, the number of the rank of the Regiment, within a wreath of Roses and Thistles on one stalk. . . . No Colonel to put his arms, crest, device or livery on any part of the appointments of his Regiment. The cords and tassels of all Colours to be crimson and gold."

The "Great Union" was the forerunner of the Union Jack and was a combination of the Crosses of St. George and St. Andrew.

This order had a deeper significance than might at first appear. The removal of the Colonel's arms or crest and the substitution of the Great Union showed that the allegiance of the Regiment was not merely to the Colonel, but to the King. No longer did the first Colour of each regiment represent the presence of their Colonel, but from now onwards it represented the King's own person, and through him was the symbol of England. The second Colour was to be "of the facings of the Regiment," and thus the embodiment of the "soul of the Regiment."

"They fly not only for the living but for all who have died in the Regiment

for the King, not only as an augury of battles to be won but as a token of every field of the past."*

Until about 1825 it was not customary in the Army for Colours to be formally presented, but they were received and accounted for merely as ordinary stores. Regiments received their Colours from the Colonel as a gift, and on new ones being presented, the old Colours were usually given back to him. There are records, however, of replaced Colours being buried with full military honours.

1751. A warrant dated 1st July gave permission for the number and wreath to be either painted or embroidered.

This warrant also referred for the first time to the First and Second Colours as the "King's" and the "Regimental" Colour respectively.

1763. An inspection report of the **58th** dated 1st June, 1769, records "Colours 1763." These are the first recorded Colours of the Regiment, and were presented at Bideford after the return of the Regiment from the West Indies. The old Colours must have been very dilapidated after exposure to fire at Louisburg and Quebec, and to the climatic conditions in the West Indies. They may even have been lost when eight companies of the **58th** were captured at sea in 1762 (see Chapter VI.)

1766. The first recorded Colours of the **48th** were presented in Ireland on 24th June, 1766. Whether these were the second set of Colours the Regiment had possessed or whether other Colours had been presented since the formation of the Regiment it is impossible to say.

1768. Royal Warrant dated 19th December stated:—

"The second Colour of those Regiments which are faced with black to be the St. George's Cross throughout. Union in the upper canton; the three other cantons black."

The dimensions of the Colours were also laid down as:

"six foot six inches flying, and six foot deep on the pike; the length of the pike, including the spearhead to be nine feet ten inches. The cord and tassels to be crimson and gold mixed."

1781. On the return of the **48th** from the West Indies in 1781 new Colours were presented, presumably at Glasgow; these probably replaced the Colours of 1766 which may have been lost when eight companies of the Regiment were captured at Dominique and Grenada in 1778 (see Chapter VII). It is possible, however, that an intermediate set may have been in possession, as an inspection report of 1769 states "no Colours."

1784. Up to 1768 no Battle Honours had appeared on Regimental Colours; the 15th Light Dragoons were then allowed to wear "Emsdorff" as a special favour. This was followed in 1784 by the grant of "Gibraltar" when on 22nd April the following letter was sent by the Adjutant-General to the Secretary of the Clothing Board:—

"I seize this opportunity to acquaint you further that His Majesty has been graciously pleased, in commemoration of the glorious defence made by the Regiments of Foot which composed the Garrison of Gibraltar during the late memorable siege of that important fortress, to permit the 12th, 39th,

* "A Private in the Guards." Stephen Graham.

56th and 58th Regiments, which made a part of it, to have the word 'Gibraltar' placed upon their Grenadier and Light Infantry caps and upon their accoutrements and drums, as likewise upon the Second Colours of their Regiments, just underneath their respective number."

1799. On 14th October new Colours were presented to the **48th** while at Poole before embarking for Gibraltar. What became of these Colours is not known ; they had been replaced by 1804.

1801. In the latter years of the eighteenth century the ornamental designs on Colours underwent a change ; the heart-shaped shield was introduced and the Union wreath became less decorative.

On the Union with Ireland in 1801 the Cross of St. Patrick was added to the Great Union flag, and the present-day Union flag came into existence. The Shamrock was now added and became entwined with the Rose and Thistle in the Union wreath. Both the **48th** and **58th** were serving abroad at this time, and the Colours may not have been immediately replaced.

1802. Permission to carry the Sphinx on the Colours of the **58th** was given in the following letter from the Adjutant-General, dated 6th July, 1802 :—

" I have the honour to transmit herewith for the information of the Clothing Board, the accompanying pattern of a badge, which, by His Majesty's gracious permission, is to be in future assumed and worn on the Colours of the several Regiments which served during the late campaign in Egypt as a distinguished mark of His Majesty's Royal approbation and as a lasting memorial to the glory acquired to His Majesty's arms by the zeal, discipline and intrepidity of his troops in that arduous and important campaign. It is His Royal Highness', the Commander-in-Chief's pleasure that the pattern in question be lodged in the office of the Controller of Army Accounts, there to be had recourse to as occasion may arise."

1804. It is clear from official correspondence that new Colours had been received by the **48th** by 1804. These were the Colours carried throughout the Peninsular War and the King's Colour which was finally destroyed by a fire in the Officers' Mess at Umballa on 7th December, 1902.

A second battalion was added to both the **48th** and **58th**. Their Colours are described in the archives of the Inspector of Regimental Colours, illustrated in hand-painted vellum (see 1820.)

1806. An Inspector of Regimental Colours was appointed, who at once wrote to all regiments asking for a detailed description of Colours in use and an explanation of any divergences from the regulations.

The reply of the **48th**, now preserved in the College of Arms, was signed by Major Middlemore at Gibraltar on 24th May, 1807, in which he states they were presented by the late Colonel, General Tonyn. The King's Colour had " XLVIII Regt." in the centre, surmounted by the Royal cypher " G.R." and Crown, the whole within a shield, surrounded by the Union Wreath. The Regimental Colour is of buff, with the Union in the dexter canton ; in the centre " XLVIII Regt." within a shield surrounded by the Union Wreath. (As General Tonyn was Colonel from 1787 to 1st January, 1805, the date of these Colours is fixed between the Union in 1801 and 1804.)

The reply of the **58th** to the circular is not now forthcoming.

DD 2

1807. The **58th** received permission to wear the Battle Honour "Maida" on the Colours on 24th February.

1814. After the Peninsular War approval was given, on the following dates, for Battle Honours to be worn on the Colours:—"Peninsula," 6th April, 1815; "Talavera," 6th November, 1816; "Albuhera," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Orthes," "Toulouse," 17th February, 1818; "Douro," 2nd June, 1837.

The Colours of most regiments which had seen much active service in the Napoleonic Wars were in no fit state to receive new Battle Honours, and consequently, in the majority of cases, new Colours were issued. In the new Colours the old heart-shaped shield gave way to a plain girdle without buckle, thereon inscribed the County title, having within the number of the Regiment in Arabic figures. The Union wreath remained, but the branches were now lengthened and overlapped.

1820. In the archives of the Inspector of Regimental Colours there is a hand-painted book showing the Colours of every regiment in the Army in 1820. Details of the Colours of the **48th** and **58th** are as follows:—

1/48th. KING'S COLOUR.—The Union with "48th Regt" in centre, encircled "Northamptonshire," with the Union Wreath around; below on scroll "First Batt."; "Peninsula" and nine other Battle Honours of the Peninsular War on separate scrolls around.

REGIMENTAL COLOUR.—Of buff with the Union in dexter canton with the same design, Battle Honours, scrolls, etc., as the King's Colour.

2/48th. KING'S COLOUR.—Similar to **1/48th**, but with "Second Batt." on the scroll and only two Battle Honours, "Peninsula" and "Talavera" above and below the wreath respectively. ("Douro" had not yet been approved, but it is not known why "Albuhera" was not borne.)

REGIMENTAL COLOUR.—Of buff with similar design to that on King's Colour.

1/58th. KING'S COLOUR.—The Union with "58th Regt" in centre, encircled by "Rutlandshire," with the Union wreath around; below on scroll "First Batt."; again below "Gibraltar" and the Sphinx superscribed "Egypt" within a wreath; "Peninsula," "Maida," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Orthes" on separate scrolls around.

REGIMENTAL COLOUR.—Black, thereon the Red Cross of St. George, the Union in dexter canton, having the same design as the King's Colour.

2/58th. KING'S COLOUR.—Similar to **1/58th**, having "Second Batt." on the scroll below the wreath; the honours for Egypt, Gibraltar and Maida are carried as for the **1/58th**, with in addition one honour, "Peninsula."

REGIMENTAL COLOUR.—Similar to that of **1/58th** with design as for King's Colour of **2/58th**.

1827. New Colours presented to **58th** on 26th November at Portsmouth by H.R.H. The Duke of Clarence, afterwards King William IV (see Chapter XVII). These Colours may be those which now hang over the tablet to the memory of General Frederick Maitland in the church at Hartfield in Sussex. General Maitland was Colonel of the **58th** from 1833 until 1848.

1836. A War Office Memorandum announced that His Majesty had been graciously pleased to allow the **58th** Regiment to bear on its Colours, in addition to the word "Gibraltar," the following distinctions, viz.: "The Castle and Key, being part of the armorial bearings of that fortress, together with the motto 'Montis Insignia Calpe'."

1838. New Colours were presented to the **48th** at Gibraltar on 19th November, by Lieutenant-General Sir Alex. Woodford (see Chapter XVIII). These Colours were trooped at Warley on the fiftieth anniversary of their presentation (see Chapter XX). They remained in service until 23rd July, 1889. On 4th July, 1923, they were deposited in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Northampton, where they now hang.

1839. Roman numerals replaced the Arabic figures on new Colours presented after this date, and the abbreviation "Regt." disappeared at the same time.

1841. New Colours were presented to the **58th** at Edinburgh by Lady Greenock on 9th July, 1841. These Colours were carried throughout the New Zealand War and were handed over to the Colony in 1860, being placed in the Supreme Court at Auckland in 1868, from which they were transferred to the Public Library in 1909 and to the War Museum in 1933 (see Chapter XIX).

1844. In January, 1844, Queen's Regulations were issued "forbidding any regimental record or device being placed on the Queen's Colour, other than the number of the regiment in gold characters surmounted by the imperial crown." The bearing of Battle Honours on the Queen's Colour consequently ceased.

1855. The dimensions of Colours were reduced to six feet flying and five feet six inches deep.

1858. The dimensions of Colours were further reduced to four feet six inches flying and four feet in depth.

1860. New Colours were presented to the **58th** at Aldershot by Lieutenant-General Knollys on 10th May, 1860 (see Chapter XIX). These Colours were taken with the Regiment to South Africa and were carried in action at the Battle of Ulundi in 1879 and also at Laing's Nek on 28th January, 1881 (see Chapter XXIV). This is believed to be the last occasion on which the Colours of a British regiment were carried into action. The practice of leaving Colours behind on taking the field followed from the heavy casualties which resulted to officers. The situation was brought to a head at Ishandhlwana on 22nd January, 1879, when two officers lost their lives in attempting to save the Colours of the 24th Regiment. On 17th January, 1882, a circular letter was issued pointing out that, in consequence of the altered form of attack and the extended range of firing, the Colours would not necessarily in future be taken by a battalion on active service, but should be left at the base unless otherwise deemed expedient.

The Colours presented to the **58th** in 1860 are still in service (1935), and must be among the oldest in the Army.

1868. A Royal Warrant further reduced the size of Colours to three feet nine inches flying, and three feet deep. They were to be ornamented with gold and silver fringe for the Queen's, and gold and white for the Regimental Colour; the crest of England replaced the spearhead on the pikes.

1881. General Order 41 stated: "All distinctions appearing hitherto on the Colours, as borne by either of the Line battalions of a Territorial Regiment, will in future be borne by both those battalions."

The small Union in the dexter canton now disappeared from the Regimental Colour, which for regiments faced with white was to be a red Cross of St. George

on a white field with the Territorial designation and the title displayed within the Union wreath, ensigned with the imperial crown.

1882. The Battle Honours "Louisburg," "Quebec," and "South Africa, 1879," were approved for the Regiment.

1889. New Colours (which are still carried in 1935) were presented to the **48th** at the Tower of London on 23rd July, by H.R.H. The Prince of Wales, afterwards King Edward VII (see Chapter XX). These Colours were carried unfurled across the frontier when the **48th** marched into Germany in 1918.

1898. Instructions were issued that when Colours were replaced they remained the property of the State and should be deposited in some church or other public building, and that in no circumstances should they be allowed to pass into the possession of any individual.

1900. Army Order No. 23 awarded the honour "Tirah" to the Regiment.

1904. A special order of 21st December awarded the Battle Honours "Modder River" and "South Africa, 1899-1902" to the Regiment.

1909. Army Order No. 295 authorized the Battle Honours "Martinique, 1762, 1794" and "Havannah" to the Regiment.

1919. After the Great War it was decided that all regiments should be allowed to select ten Battle Honours of the Great War to be borne on the Colours of all battalions of the regiment. It was further decided that these honours should be borne on the King's Colour. The honours selected by the Regimental Committee appointed were as follows:—"Mons," "Marne, 1914," "Aisne, 1914, '18," "Ypres, 1914, '17," "Neuve Chapelle," "Loos," "Somme, 1916, '18," "Arras, 1917, '18," "Epéhy," "Gaza."

1933. Army Order 70 of 1930 stated that "His Majesty had been graciously pleased to approve that in future, where it is not already authorized, a badge selected by the Regiment and approved by the Army Council, shall be placed in the centre of the Regimental Colour."

In consequence, correspondence took place between the Colonel of the Regiment, the **48th**, the **58th** and the Inspector of Regimental Colours, and it was decided that a suitable design should incorporate the following:—

- (a) Something from the Arms of Quebec, as both battalions were present at the Battle of Quebec in 1759.
- (b) Special prominence for the Battle Honours "Gibraltar" and "Talavera."
- (c) The "Castle" and the Sphinx in the bottom right and left corners respectively.
- (d) The omission of the words "Montis Insignia Calpe."

In October, 1931, the required design was completed and the centre badge adapted from the Arms of Quebec (*i.e.*, a lion between two *fleurs-de-lys* and a sprig of maple leaves). For the purpose of the badge the *fleurs-de-lys* were charged on the maple leaves. At the same time the Garter King of Arms pointed out that the red Cross on the Colour was no longer correct as the facings had been changed to buff. The Castle and Key were retained on the Colours as subsidiary devices. In March, 1932, the final design was approved by all battalions of the Regiment,

and in October, 1933, the following letter was received by General Knox, the Colonel of the Regiment, from the Army Council :—

Sir,

With reference to Army Order 170 of 1930 and your letter of 1st March, 1932, I am commanded by the Army Council to inform you that "a sprig of three maple leaves, each charged with a fleur-de-lys," has been approved as the centre badge for the Regimental Colours of The Northamptonshire Regiment in accordance with your recommendation. A notification to this effect will appear in Army Orders in due course and the list of badges in the Monthly Army List will be amended accordingly.

I am, Sir,

Your obedient servant,

A. E. WIDDOWS."

THE MILITIA COLOURS.

Full details of the Colours of the Militia are contained in Appendix "C" of "The History of the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," by Major C. A. Markham (published by Reeves & Turner, 1924).

VOLUNTEER AND TERRITORIAL COLOURS.

Although the various Volunteer companies of the early part of the nineteenth century carried their own Colours (for further details see Chapter XXVII), the Volunteer units formed on the revival of the movement in 1859, after a few years, were not permitted to do so; but when these battalions came under the Territorial Act of 1907 the privilege was restored and new Colours were received. Under these conditions new Colours were presented to the 4th Territorial Battalion The Northamptonshire Regiment in 1909. The King's Colour is the Union, having in the centre the numeral "IV," encircled by the title "The Northamptonshire Regiment," the whole surmounted by the Crown. The Regimental Colour is white, thereon the red Cross of St. George, bearing the number, title and Crown in centre, similar to the King's Colour; the whole surrounded by the Union wreath of Roses, Thistles and Shamrocks. In August, 1929, Colours were presented by the Earl of Cavan to the 5th Battalion (see Chapter XXIX), the Regimental Colour being the first buff Colour carried by any battalion of the Regiment since 1889.

SERVICE BATTALIONS (GREAT WAR).

In accordance with Army Council Instruction No. 444 of the 21st July, 1919, a "silk Union Flag," namely, a King's Colour, was presented to each Service and Garrison Battalion of the Regular Army, and to each Second and Third Line Battalion of the Territorial Force, which had served overseas, at any period of time, during the years 1914-1918. The Colours of the 5th, 6th and 7th Service Battalions and of the 1st Garrison Battalion now hang in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Northampton.

TROOPING THE COLOUR.

There is little doubt that the ceremony of Trooping the Colour had its origin in the guard-mounting ceremonial of the past; the object of the ceremony is to pay respect to the Colours and all that they represent, and to allow from time to time every man to view them close and to pay them all the honour which is their due.

Though the Colours are usually touched or carried only by an officer, the ceremony starts with the emblem in charge of a sergeant with two sentries on either side to guard it from all harm. It is hard to say how this originated, but it may surely be taken as a token of trust in the non-commissioned officers.

The Guards without officers are paraded and formed up by the Adjutant, and the Guard Commanders are moved out in front, a relic of the days when they were so collected in order to draw lots for their guards and receive the "parole" and such orders as might be given them.

The drums beat the "Assembly," warning the officers and non-commissioned officers to get to their posts. They recover their arms and move by slow march to take over their commands. (Unkind tradition has it that this slow march was introduced about 1740 by the Duke of Cumberland to test whether they were sober enough to perform duty.)

The first honour is paid to the Colour by the slow and quick marches played by the Band and Drums.

The Colour is now about to be received into the ranks of the battalion. In the past, the Grenadiers were always the escort and paraded in the place of honour on the right of the line, and so the right guard still has this duty. The band and drums play "The British Grenadiers" and the escort moves in full view across the front of the parade to where the Colour is posted. On arrival in position in front of the Colour the escort halts, and the officer who is to carry the Colour receives it from the Regimental Sergeant-Major as the representative of the men. The Colour is received with full honours by the escort. Arms are presented and the band plays the salute; if it is the King's Colour, "God Save the King" is heard, as it is the symbol of the Sovereign's presence; if the Regimental Colour is being trooped, the Regimental Slow March is played. The Sergeant-Major salutes with his sword, the only occasion on which he does so. The escort, with its arms at the "present," is not in a position, at the moment, to afford it full protection, consequently the sergeants on the flanks of each rank face outwards and port their arms so as to be ready to repel any intruder.

The escort, with the Colour, now moves back in slow time to the music of the "Grenadiers' Slow March" to the right of the line. They file through the ranks of the battalion, arms are presented, and every man has the opportunity of seeing the Colour carried by, and showing it honour.

The ceremony finishes with a march past in quick and slow time to the Regimental Marches, the battalion now showing itself and its Colours to the world.

(*Note.*—The Author acknowledges the assistance he has received from Colonel C. T. Tomes, D.S.O., M.C., with regard to the traditional aspect of the Colours.)

APPENDIX VI

UNIFORM, ARMS AND EQUIPMENT

Within the limited space available, a complete account of the uniform and equipment of the British infantry is manifestly impossible. All that has been attempted in the following notes is to give a general impression of the more important changes, and those items of particular regimental interest. Details with regard to the provision of the clothing and the incidence of cost has already been given in Chapters I, XII and XXII.

1741. At the date of formation of the 48th the dress of each regiment depended very much on the individual whims of the Colonel. The only official order in force appears to have been a Royal Warrant published on 20th November, 1729, which represented the necessaries of a foot soldier to be "a good full-bodied **coat**, well lined, which may serve for the waistcoat the second year, a **waistcoat**, a pair of good kersey **breeches**, a pair of good strong **stockings**, a pair of good strong **shoes**, two good shirts, two good neckcloths and a strong **hat** well laced."

The red **coat** seems to have been traditional long before this time.

As regards arms, an order of 1706 states that "every man was to be armed with a **musket** and bayonet of approved pattern, the bullets averaging 16 to the pound." The musket in general use was the "**Brown Bess**," a flintlock weighing about ten pounds with a calibre of three-quarters of an inch. It was long and cumbersome, particularly when the triangular bayonet was fixed. The maximum range was three hundred yards, but accurate shooting beyond one hundred yards was impossible, beyond which range the collective effect of the volley was relied on. This weapon was used by the British infantry for over one hundred years, and throughout the Peninsular War.

1742. A book was published entitled "A Representation of the Cloathing of his Majesty's Household and of all the Forces upon the Establishment of Great Britain and Ireland." There is a copy of this publication in the War Office Library. It contains a series of coloured plates, one for each regiment. The details given of the 48th are reproduced in the plate facing page 18.

A private of a battalion company is represented. He wears the three-cornered felt **hat** of the period, trimmed with white lace; on the left side is worn the black cockade of the House of Hanover. A voluminous frock **coat** of red cloth is worn without any collar, but with chest lapels and huge cuffs; the skirts are hooked back to show the **facings** of buff. (The origin of facings was the lining of the coat and sleeves.) The **waistcoat** is of red cloth with sleeves, and reaches half-way down the thigh; the **breeches** also are red, and white **gaiters** are worn high above the knee, fastened with dark leather garters; cuffs, lapels, pocket-flaps and waistcoat are trimmed with striped **lace**. (The choice of the lace was left to Colonels and changed from time to time; that of the 48th on formation was white with a blue worm and yellow stripe.) A white neckcloth was also worn.

The equipment consisted of a broad leather **shoulder-belt**, supporting a large black pouch, brass buckle in front, from which hung the brush and picker used in the days of flint and steel; a broad waistbelt carried a small sword and the bayonet in a frog on the left side.

1747. King's Regulations of 14th September, 1747, give the following additional information :—

OFFICERS.—Crimson silk **sashes**, denoting commissioned rank, to be worn over the right shoulder. **Sword knots** crimson and gold in stripes; **gorgets** gilt or silver according to the lace. (The gorget was originally the collar-piece of a suit of armour, but as armour was discarded it gradually became a distinctive badge for officers, in the form of a small metal plate on the front of the collar of the coat.)

SERGEANTS.—Red worsted **sashes** to be worn round the waist, striped with the colour of the facings. (The sash was recognized as a badge of office, and it is to be noted that the position of sashes of officers and sergeants have since changed places.)

DRUMMERS.—**Coats** to be the colour of the facings, lined and lapelled in red and "laced in such a way as the Colonel shall think fit, the lace being of the colour of that on the soldiers' coats."

GRENADIERS.—A tall mitre **cap**, made of cloth, to be worn, the front being of the same colour as the facings, with the King's cypher embroidered and the crown over it. The flap was red, with the White Horse of Hanover and the motto of the Regiment over it. (After 1751 the motto, "Nec aspera terrent" was universal to the grenadiers of all regiments.) The back part of the hat was red, with a turn-up the colour of the facings. (After 1751 the number of the regiment, in figures, was worn on the middle part behind.) In marching order a **knapsack** of hairy goat-skin was worn over the right shoulder.

1751. A Royal Warrant, on 1st July, assigned numbers to regiments, though these numbers had been used unofficially for some years. On the same date, the first clothing warrant to give the infantry dress in any detail was published. The coat and equipment is much the same as that which has already been described.

1754. Bob wigs were forbidden to be worn by officers, and two years later non-commissioned officers and men were ordered to have their hair clubbed.

1755. Formation of the 58th. The **facings** on formation cannot definitely be fixed, as some records state that buff or white was worn until 1767, others show that black was worn as early as 1756. An inspection report of the 58th dated 30th September, 1756, gives the uniform as "Red, faced and lapelled with black, lined with buff, lace yellow." It seems, therefore, that, unlike most regiments, the facings and linings differed, which may account for the doubts. An Army List dated 1757 shows for the 58th "black facings, buff lining, yellow lace." The origin of the black facings seems to have been the coat of arms of the Anstruther family "Argent three piles issuing from the chief sable" (see Appendix II.)

1759. The **epaulette** first appeared, and in 1769 it became a badge of rank, replacing the **alguillette**. Worn on the right shoulder, it was made of gold for officers and coloured silk or worsted for non-commissioned officers.

1763. **Swords** were abolished for all except officers, sergeants and grenadiers.

1767. On 21st September a warrant ordered that the numbers of regiments should appear on the **buttons**, which previously had been quite plain. Pewter buttons were worn by the men. Those worn by the officers consisted of a thin disc of gilt metal, fixed by cement to a bone or wooden back. The numbers were as a rule in Arabic numerals.

An inspection report of the 48th, dated 14th April, states : " Thirty-nine swords only. Black gaiters. Fifes and a large band of music."

An inspection report of the 58th, dated 15th April, states : " Men dressed in a particular manner, not having skirts to their coats ; hats too small and have red and white tufts in them ; skirts ordered for next clothing. Fifes and a band of music."

Attention was being paid at this time to the length of the **skirt**, which was to be " four inches from the ground when kneeling on both knees."

1768. By a Royal Warrant dated 19th December several changes were made in the uniform both of officers and men, the more important being as follows :—

OFFICERS.—The **coats** were lapelled to the waist with the facing of the Regiment, and had cross pockets and sleeves with round cuffs ; the ample skirts gave way to narrow skirts fastened back behind, and the coat was generally tighter. The buttonholes were embroidered with gold. The **waistcoat** was plain without embroidery. Officers of battalion companies wore a black felt three-cornered cocked **cap** with a black cockade and laced with gold, while those of the grenadier company wore a black bearskin mitre-shaped hat similar to that of the men.

Epaulettes with a gold fringe were worn on each shoulder by grenadier officers, and on the right shoulder only by the others. The **sash** of crimson silk was transferred to the waist, and on the **gorget**, which was of gilt, were engraved the King's arms and the regimental number. The gaiters were of black linen, with black buttons and small stiff tops. The **breeches** were white.

All officers carried **swords**, which were removed from the waistbelt to a narrow white shoulder **belt**, two inches wide, worn under the coat. This belt was ornamented in the centre of the breast with a small buckle of gilt (developed from the waistbelt buckle). This buckle was soon developed into something more pretentious and ornamental, and so the **shoulder belt plate** came into being. The narrow belt restricted its size ; at first it was oval, 2 inches wide and 2½ inches high, the design consisting of the Royal cypher and the regimental number, but as time passed the ornamentation became more elaborate. By degrees it became the custom to wear the shoulder-belt outside the coat, and by 1776 the practice had become general. In addition to the sword, grenadier officers carried a **fuzil** and other officers an **esoponton**, a steel-headed pike 7 feet long, with cross-bar just below the blade.

SERGEANTS.—Crimson worsted **sashes**, with a stripe the colour of the facings, were worn round the waist, and silk epaulettes. Grenadier sergeants carried **swords**, **fuzils** and pouches, but those of other companies **swords**, **halberds** and no pouches. Halberds were light ornamental battle-axes on long shafts. In 1792 the halberd was replaced by a **pike**.

CORPORALS.—Corporals wore worsted **epaulettes**, but otherwise were dressed and armed as the men.

DRUMMERS.—The drummer's **coat** was the colour of the facings, faced and lapelled with red. **Waistcoats** of those with buff facings to be red ; lace similar to that on the soldiers' coats. The **cap** worn was of black bearskin, with the King's crest in silver plated metal in front and the number of the regiment behind. A short **sword** with a scimitar pattern blade was carried.

The **drums** were to be of wood, the front painted the colour of the facings, with the King's cypher and crown and the number of the Regiment under it.

GRENADIERS.—The cloth mitre **cap** was replaced by one of bearskin similarly shaped, on the front of which was the King's crest with the motto, " Nec aspera terrent " in white metal on a black metal ground.

Most of this Warrant was a sanction for changes already in progress. Epau-
 lettes, for instance, were here first authorised (in December, 1768), but officers
 of the 48th Regiment were already wearing them in the previous May, as will now
 be seen.

1768. An inspection report of the 48th Regiment dated 23rd May, 1768,
 reads :—

“ Five fifers. Officers, plain scarlet coats, lapelled to the waist with light buff ;
 gilt buttons not numbered ; a gold epaulette ; buff waistcoat and breeches ;
 lining buff serge ; plain hats ; gold buttons and loops. Men’s hats, linen for lace.
 Accoutrements, white. They wear their pouches too far behind.”

An inspection report of the 58th Regiment, dated 30th May, says :—

“ Officers, plain scarlet, lapelled to waist with black velvet ; slashed sleeve
 with a round black velvet cuff ; gilt buttons numbered ; gold shoulder knot ;
 buff lining ; buff waistcoat and breeches, with a black velvet edging ; gold laced
 hats ; black and gold sword knots.”

1770. An order of 20th April, 1770, directed that the **hair** of grenadiers and
 drummers was to be plaited and turned up behind with a black ribbon, having
 a bow-knot at the tye. Those men who had their hair so short that it would not
 plait were instructed to provide themselves with a false plait without delay.

1771. At this time light companies were introduced. The officers of both
 light and grenadier companies wore two **epaulettes**, with a grenade in the case of the
 grenadier company and a bugle in the case of the light company embroidered in
 each. The officers of other companies wore one epaulette only on the right
 shoulder.

An inspection report of the 58th Regiment, dated 24th April, 1771, was as
 follows :—

“ Officers, plain sleeve, gold epaulette, white lining, waistcoat and breeches,
 crimson and gold sword knot. Sergeants, corporals, drummers and private men
 have received the full allowance of half-mounting money in lieu of shirts, rollers,
 shoes and stockings.”

1772. In a return, 58th Regiment, of the 25th April, 1772, was the following
 remark : “ The Regiment compleated with buff accoutrements in 1770 ; the light
 infantry compleated in 1771.”

1776. A return of arms, 58th Regiment, 30th March, 1776, showed the Regi-
 ment having 20 halberds and fuzils, 10 drums, 380 firelocks, 390 bayonets, and
 429 cartridge boxes ; accoutrements, 20 sergeants’ sashes, 39 grenadier swords,
 351 pouches, 351 shoulder belts, 390 slings ; the nine pioneers each had an axe,
 saw, cap and apron ; whilst in a clothing return, 20 sergeants, 12 drummers and
 fifers, 367 rank and file are reported as being fully clothed. Twenty-three of
 each of the following articles were shown as being in store for recruits :—Coats,
 shirts, breeches, rollers, neck-cloths, shoes, stockings, hats.

1777. An inspection report of the 58th, dated 8th March, states : “ Corporals’
 knots not according to regulation, being a mixture of red and white, instead of all
 white.”

1779. “ To prevent **hats** from falling off at exercise and thereby to give the
 soldiers a pretence for unsteadiness, two small plaits of hair should be sewed to the
 lining and from thence come round the back of the head, there to be fastened by a
 small hook and eye, under the plait or queue of the hair.” (Cuthbertson).

"It should be particularly noticed that men do not wear their **shoes** on the same feet, but that they change them about to prevent their running crooked." (Cuthbertson).

1780. A book published at this date ("Military Guide to the Young Officer," Thos. Symes) shows the 48th having **facings** of pale buff, and coat linings of buff; the men's **lace** was white with a black and red stripe. The 58th **facings** are black, and the coat linings white, the **lace** being white with a red stripe. The officers' hat lace of both regiments is gold.

1782. The 48th and 58th received their county titles (see Chapter XII), and in 1792 the Arms of Northampton were introduced in the ornamentation of the 48th officers' **breastplate**; this was of gilt metal, oval in shape, about 2½ inches high, having all the ornamentation engraved, the design being the arms of the town of Northampton in the centre; above the Royal cypher and crown; below the word "Northamptonshire"; on the sides "48 Regt."

1784. Men's **belts** were transferred from the waist to the right shoulder as cross-belts to support the bayonet. The waist-buckle so developed into the so-called **breastplate**.

Shorter black **gaiters**, made of wool instead of linen, replaced the long gaiters. **Shoulder straps** were ordered to be of the colour of the facings. A leather **cap** with turned-up peak and plume was introduced for the light infantry.

Inspection reports:—58th Regiment, 31st May, 1784: "Grenadiers no caps nor men long gaiters; no men's hair all queued contrary to order." 48th Regiment, 31st July, 1784: "Officers have plain, instead of laced, hats."

1785. A return of arms, 58th Regiment, 31st August, 1785, showed that the total number of firelocks on charge was 360; of this number 66 were reported upon as being good, 285 bad, and 9 wanting. The following remarks were appended:—"Received 276 firelocks in the year 1771, the rest at different periods since the year 1779; the arms returned as bad were rendered unserviceable by the enemy's fire at Gibraltar."

1786. The **esponsion** or half pike carried by officers was laid aside.

Officers to wear black cloth **gaiters** uniform with the men.

White **hats** instead of black were approved for wear in India and the West Indies.

1788. An inspection report of the 58th Regiment of the 16th August, 1788, stated: "Light infantry in half gaiters."

1789.—Soldiers in India received a round white **hat**, a **jacket**, instead of a coat, and **trousers** instead of breeches. Ultimately it was ordered that the **hat** was to be black, at least 6 inches in the crown and 4 inches wide in the brim.

1791. All officers were ordered to wear two **epaulettes**. Grenadiers and light company officers had worn two for some time, and were now only distinguished by the grenade or bugle worn on the epaulette.

About this time the bone-backed **button** of officers was replaced by one of a single sheet of gilt metal with a metal shank, while the large pewter button of the men was reduced in size.

1793. In December, 1793, a reduction in the size of the cocked **hats** of the infantry was made; these were now to be 4 inches deep by 7 in diameter, whilst the size of the brim and mode of "cocking" were to remain.

1795. An order, dated 19th July, 1795, forbade the use of **hair** powder by the non-commissioned officers and men ; this order, however, did not include the officers, who continued to do so until about 1807, when the practice was finally abandoned.

1796. On the 21st January, 1796, an order was promulgated for the colour of the **coats** of the drummers and fifers, 58th Regiment, to be changed to **white**, instead of the regimental colour of **black** ; the cuffs and collar were now to be **black** ; the breeches and waistcoat remaining **white**.

Further alterations in uniform occurred in 1796 ; **lapels** were continued down to the waist and so made as to button over or to fasten up with hooks and eyes, the stand-up collar was roomy so as to admit the large neckerchief then coming into fashion. A new light infantry **jacket** was introduced, very short in the skirts with oblique pocket flaps. **Coats** of the battalion companies were to be fastened down to the waist, whereby the white-sleeved waistcoat was completely hidden. Light company officers now wore a curved **sword** suspended from the shoulder-belt by slings.

1797. On the 13th September, 1797, a War Office Circular signified His Majesty's pleasure that the **plume** to be worn for the future in the headdresses of all ranks was, for the battalion companies, red and white, the red being beneath ; white for the grenadier companies, and green for the light companies.

The **lapels** on the coat were done away with, except for officers' full dress ; but the distinction of each individual regiment as to the pattern of the lace and the method of wearing same were retained.

From now, until 1855, may be termed the " coatee " period ; the **coat** ending at the waist in front ; with skirts or tails, of varying dimensions at the back, only those of the officers being double-breasted, whilst those of the **rank** and **file** were single-breasted. Down to the year 1829 the officers' coats had, in full dress, **lapels** of the facing colour, frequently with loops or bars of lace thereon, but when buttoned across they were generally plain ; after 1829, when the **lapels** were abolished, officers' coats were always plain in front. During the whole of this period the single-breasted garments of the **rank** and **file** were ornamented with loops of **worsted** tape, or lace, across the chest.

1799. Officers and men, in 1799, except the **flank** companies, were ordered to have their **hair** queued 10 inches long, including 1 inch of hair to appear below the binding and to be tied a trifle below the upper part of the coat collar. When queues were worn by the battalion companies, those of the grenadier companies wore their hair plaited.

1800. The **lace** now worn was, for the 48th, **white**, with a **black** and **red** stripe, and for the 58th, **white**, with a **red** stripe. These laces remained in vogue until 1836. The cocked **hat** was discontinued for use by the men, and replaced by a cylindrical **cap** with a peak. It was made of lacquered felt and ornamented with a large brass oblong plate about 8 inches high, bearing the Royal crest, below which was engraved the regimental number. The cap was surmounted by a tuft (white for grenadiers, green for light infantry companies, and red and white for others) rising from a small black leather cockade, in the centre of which was worn a regimental button. There was no chin strap.

1801. Grey **greateats**, with a small cape, were introduced for non-commissioned officers and men. The dress of men and officers had now become quite different, as the officers still retained the old coat and the cocked hat. The officers'

button was now generally made of flat gilt with the design in relief upon it. The buttons of private soldiers continued to be of pewter until 1855.

1802. The **epaulettes** and shoulder knots of non-commissioned officers were discontinued and **chevrons** introduced, to be worn on the right arm, a sergeant-major wearing four, a sergeant three and a corporal two.

1805. A black canvas **knapsack** superseded the coloured leather pack.

1806. A new pattern cap was approved, similar to the 1800 cap, but unlacquered.

1808. The queue was abolished and the **hair** on the neck was ordered to be cut short.

1809. In the early days of the Peninsular War the officers of the 48th Regiment wore a somewhat larger gilt **breastplate** than that of 1792. It also was oval, with a narrow raised half-round silver rim; in the centre a smaller silver rim, surmounted by a silver crown; within this inner oval "48" in silver, upon a matted gilt ground.

1812. A new pattern of **cap** was approved. This was made of black felt and was fitted with cap lines—gold and crimson for officers, white for the rank and file, except the light company, which was green. The size of the brass plate in front was reduced. No alteration was made in the colour of the plumes. The peak was rounded and gave some shade to the eyes. The height in front was just 7 inches, the back being 1 inch less.

It is considered by some that this is the cap which was approved in 1806, and though there is no certainty in the matter, the available evidence seems to show that it was not introduced until 1812. The regulations are not explicit and refer to sealed patterns in the Office of Ordnance. These sealed patterns have been lost, presumably destroyed in one of the periodic fires before 1860.

This cap was adopted at the same time by officers, who now discarded the **cocked hat**. The method of cocking the hat had been changed early in the century from the three-cornered form to a "bicorné." At first this was worn square to the front, but by 1809 it was worn "fore-and-aft."

The old white breeches and black gaiters were also exchanged for grey **trousers**. These had been tried experimentally some years previously, and many officers provided themselves with them during the Peninsular War, but the official authorisation only came in 1811.

A grey **greatcoat** was also introduced for officers.

1813. The rank of **colour-sergeant** was introduced. Holders of the rank were distinguished by "an honourable badge" consisting of a King's colour, having two crossed swords over the pike, the whole surmounted by a crown. This badge was worn over the chevrons.

1814. OFFICERS.—The officer's dress was now as follows:—Long-tailed **coat** for parade, levées, etc., with chest lapels the colour of the facings, buttoned back with ten buttons set in pairs in the 48th and equidistant in the 58th; the **buttons** were slightly convex with the number thereon; faced collar edged all round with scarlet; round cuffs of cloth; cross pocket flaps; skirts turned back having skirt ornaments. (The 48th skirt ornament formed a star with the motto "Nemo me impune lacessit" round the "48.") **Breeches** and **black leggings** for home, and grey **trousers** for active service. Instead of the long-tailed **coat**, a

short jacket, not unlike that worn by the men, was adopted by officers for the field, being double-breasted and buttoning over, without any chest lapels. The long straight **sword**, black leather scabbard with gilt mounting, crimson and gold sword knot was worn according to regulations, suspended in a frog from a white buffalo shoulder-belt; the breast plate being borne on the shoulder-belt. A crimson silk **sash** was worn round the waist. Officers were distinguished by their **epaulettes**; field officers wearing two, a colonel having a silver star and crown embroidered on the strap; lieutenant-colonel, a crown; major, a star; whilst captains and subalterns wore a single epaulette on the right shoulder; officers of the flank companies, two wings with gilt grenades, or "bugles," thereon respectively. The adjutant wore, in addition to his epaulette, an epaulette strap on the left shoulder. The epaulettes of field officers and captains, together with the wings of captains of the flank companies, were edged with bullion; those of subalterns with a fringe.

PRIVATE SOLDIERS.—Private soldiers wore short single-breasted **jackets**, laced across the breast with loops of regimental lace, 4 inches long; pewter **buttons**; lace round the high collar showing frill in front; red shoulder-straps edged with lace and terminated by a small worsted tuft; in the flank companies by a wing of red cloth, edged with an overhanging worsted fringe; gaiters, breeches or trousers. Sergeants were dressed as the privates, but in finer cloth; their **sash** of crimson worsted with a stripe of the same colour as the regimental facings; they carried a straight sword suspended from a shoulder-belt, their other weapon being the halberd.

1815. On the 2nd August, 1815, a new **cap** was authorized to replace that of 1812. The material was black felt; height $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches, measurement across the top 11 inches; feathered red and white plume, 12 inches high for officers; the wide drooping peak was of black leather; the chin-scales were allowed to be fastened up in front below the black cockade; regimental plate in front 2 inches of lace round the top and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch round the bottom. Grenadiers retained their bearskins with embroidered tassels for their officers and white for their men, and the light company had a green feather and a "bugle" badge. On service in the field the plume was generally removed, and in wet weather it was customary to protect the shako with a waterproof cover.

1816. From now until 1830 the uniform reached its highest splendour. Our wartime uniforms appeared drab compared with those of the Austrians, Prussians and others, and efforts were made for the British Army to meet its allies in uniforms equally beautiful. As these uniforms became more splendid they became less practical.

1817. About the year 1817 the officers of the 48th Regiment adopted a new **breastplate**, which remained practically unaltered until 1855, when the wearing of same became obsolete on the disappearance of the shoulder-belt. It was the usual gilt plate, some 4 inches high by 3 inches wide, having the number "48" in centre, within a small double wreath of laurels, just above the number a long scroll bearing "Peninsula"; a crown over; below, another scroll with "Talavera"; the whole of the ornamentations being in raised silver.

1818. The Convex type of **button** was introduced for officers.

1820. Short-tailed jackets, for all ranks, were replaced by the **coatee** with long tails.

1822. **Breeches** and gaiters were changed for **grey trousers**. **Half-boots** were introduced.

Dress Regulations were first published in their present form.

1826. The **coat** of the private soldier was somewhat altered in 1826, the lace loops across the chest being made broader at the top and tapering down narrower to the waist, no lace now appeared on the skirts.

1828. In December, 1828, another change took place in the **cap** ; the height was now reduced to 6 inches and the plume to 8 inches, all the lace was removed and replaced by bands of black leather. The only ornament for the front was the universal star plate with crown attached on the top, some 6 inches by 6½ inches broad. Regiments were permitted to put what devices they liked in the centre ; the gilt scales to fasten under the chin remained, and cap lines were introduced, the latter to be worn on parade occasions only wound round the shako across the front in a heavy braided festoon, and then hung down, terminating in two tassels which were looped up to one of the coat buttons ; of gold lace for the officers, white worsted for battalion companies, and green worsted for the light infantry.

A **forage cap** of blue cloth, with a flat top and peak, having a band round it the colour of the facings, was approved for officers. A scarlet **shell jacket** was also introduced, as a form of " undress " as the full dress was much too cumbrous for ordinary purposes. Later on officers took to wearing their shell jackets open, with a waistcoat, in mess, and so originated the modern **mess jacket**.

1829. A double-breasted **coatee** was introduced for the officers ; having two rows of gilt buttons down the front in pairs ; a collar of the regimental facing, which fastened up at the throat ; rounded cuffs and a slashed flat with four buttons thereon ; slashed pockets on the coat-tails ; turn-back skirt with ornaments. **Epaulettes** were now to be worn on each shoulder by all officers of the battalion companies ; the officers of the grenadier and light companies still adhering to their wings, the fringe of which varied a little according to rank. The new " Oxford mixture " was substituted as a colour for the blue-grey **trousers**, which in each successive issue became darker and darker until it finally became blue-black.

1830. The sergeant's **pike** was abolished throughout the infantry.

From the 15th October to the 30th April, **trousers** of the " Oxford mixture " cloth, with a red stripe ½ inch wide down the outward seam, were ordered to be worn ; and from the 1st May to the 14th October those of white linen.

The white **fatigue jacket**, worn by the rank and file, which had originated from the old sleeved waistcoat, was replaced this year by one of red ; the colour of the collar and cuffs, together with the sergeant's chevrons, being that of the regimental facings.

The **gorget** was abolished.

The **plume** worn on the shako by the officers of the battalion companies was now all white.

An Army Order, 2nd August, 1830, instructed **bands** of infantry regiments " to be dressed in white clothing with the regimental coloured facings ; the trousers and caps to be conformable in every respect to the pattern of the Regiment at Large." This order appears to have been the first real attempt on the part of the military authorities to co-ordinate the dress of bandsmen throughout the Army, before which all kinds of fancy garments had crept in, probably due to the whims of the regimental officers who were responsible for their supply and payment.

EE

1832. For some time mounted officers had worn their **swords** suspended by slings from a white **shoulder-belt** bearing the regimental breastplate, but in 1832 field officers were ordered to wear them suspended by slings from a white **waist-belt**; the scabbard to be brass, instead of leather; the adjutant to wear a steel scabbard and to retain the old method of wearing the sword; this necessitated that a sword-belt clasp be used.

1834. A new **forage cap** was ordered to be worn by officers; of blue cloth with a black silk band, oak-leaf pattern, the numerals in gold embroidery in front. The officer's undress uniform now presented a very smart appearance, the blue **frock-coat** was ornamented with shoulder-straps laced with regimental gold lace; the sword being carried in the black leather waist-belt over the crimson sash.

1836. Regimental **lace** was replaced by plain white tape lace. The coloured lace was, however, continued for drummers.

Chevrons of non-commissioned officers were ordered to be worn on both arms. A chevron was also approved as a good conduct badge for the rank and file. Sergeants' **coats** were to be double-breasted without any lace.

1837. The officer's **breastplate** of the 58th was now of gilt, slightly convex, size 4 inches by 3 inches. In the centre "LVIII" encircled by the words "Salamanca, Peninsular," and around these "Gibraltar, Pyrenees, Nivelles, Orthes"; on either side a further scroll bearing "Maida" and "Vittoria." Above a crown; the background of all the foregoing being of crimson enamel; on sides a laurel wreath tied at the base. The whole mounted on an eight-pointed star in silver, bearing at the base a sphinx, inscribed "Egypt." The background of the plate was of frosted gilt, the edges burnished. This plate was worn until 1855.

1839. By now it was beginning to be realized that the size of the **cap** was somewhat unwieldy, and a new pattern was approved which was made of black beaver, 6 inches in height, 11 inches across the top; the plumes were replaced by ball tufts, white for the battalion companies and green for the light infantry; other details remained practically unchanged.

1840. Gilt **buttons** of special regimental design were adopted.

1842. A new model **musket** on the percussion principle was adopted, with a backsight for one hundred and fifty yards, calibre .753 inch. Hitherto regiments had been armed with the old muzzle-loading flintlock, which, in spite of several attempts at improvement, had remained the standard weapon.

1843. The "Albert" **cap**, copied from the contemporary French model, was authorized. It was made of black beaver, height $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches, $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches across the top, and had a chain chin-strap for officers, other ranks one of leather. The colour of the ball-tufts for the battalion companies was changed to red and white; a drooping peak, both back and front, afforded some protection to the neck as well as to the eyes. The men had a small round brassplate in front, thereon the crown over the numerals. Officers had a new shako plate, of universal pattern, size $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter, and an eight-pointed gilt star with crown over; in the centre the regimental number within a garter; on either side a palm and laurel branch, tied at base; the various battle honours appearing on the star rays.

Bearskins were abolished for grenadier companies.

1845. The 58th Regiment had now adopted a new forage **cap-badge**, having the gold castle on blue cloth in the centre ; below a blue scroll bearing the word "Gibraltar," having the key above on green silk. Above the castle, on a blue ribbon, the words "Montis Insignia Calpe."

A plain crimson **sash** for the sergeants took the place of the crimson sash with a stripe the colour of the facings.

1843. OFFICERS.—A grey **greatestcoat**, in lieu of the blue cloak, was brought into wear ; the **frockcoat** with ornamental shoulder scales was abolished ; a plain scarlet cloth **shell-jacket** introduced (the origin of the present mess jacket), a black patent-leather sword-belt being worn with it.

After going through a gradual process of evolution during the best part of half a century, the long-tailed scarlet **coatee** of the officer finally appeared as follows :—Prussian collar, with two loops and small uniform buttons at each end ; plain round cuff $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, slashed on the sleeves with four loops and small buttons ; two large buttons at waist ; two rows of uniform buttons, ten in each row, on front in pairs, or at equal distance according to regimental pattern, the distance between the rows being 3 inches at top and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches at bottom ; white kerseymore turnbacks and skirt lining ; regimental skirt ornaments ; collar and cuffs of the colour established for the facing ; loops on the collar and flaps of gold lace or embroidery ; epaulettes, or wings, on the shoulders. The crimson silk **sash**, which went twice round the waist, had bullion fringe ends and was tied in front of the left hip, the pendant part being 16 inches in length.

At this period the **skirt ornaments** of the 48th Regiment were a gold star of the St. Andrew's or Thistle Order on a background of scarlet cloth, having the numerals "48" in gold, encircled in the centre. That of the 58th was a Garter star, proper, except that the star was gold spangled instead of silver, worn on a background of black velvet. The length of both these stars was $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. **Gloves** were of white leather, two-buttoned.

1851. The Minié rifle was introduced in 1851, the diameter of the bore being .702 inch, and sighted up to one thousand yards. It was never generally issued, although used by some of our troops during the earlier stages of the Crimean War.

1855. The Crimean War had demonstrated the poor state of the Army in everything except bravery, and when it was over a thorough reorganization took place. In the process the gorgeous uniforms had to give way to something more practical, and **coatees**, **cross-belts**, **epaulettes** and **stocks** were all done away with, the new clothing being modelled on that of the French. Among other changes, all ranks were fired by a passion to grow large **whiskers**. For the next fourteen years we slavishly copied every change in the uniform of the French Army.

In 1855 the uniform was as follows :—

OFFICERS.—A scarlet double-breasted **tunic** with lapels and cuffs of the facing. Two rows of regimental buttons down the front, nine buttons in each row. The skirt 14 inches deep with a scarlet slashed flap behind, on which were two buttons. The coat, collar, cuffs and slashes were edged with white.

A blue double-breasted **frockcoat** for undress was introduced with a stand-up collar.

The only collar ornaments were the **badges of rank**, which were as follows : Colonel and Captain, a silver embroidered crown and star ; Lieutenant-Colonel and Lieutenant, a silver embroidered crown ; Major and Ensign, a silver embroidered star. Field officers alone wore these badges on the frock coat and shell jacket.

Trousers with a scarlet welt were worn, and the crimson **sash** was transferred from the waist to the left shoulder.

The **sword** was carried suspended from a white enamelled **waistbelt** fastened by a gilt union locket, with the number and name of the Regiment. The belt was worn outside the tunic and the sword scabbard was of black leather.

The "Albert" **shako** was re-modelled, being now of black felt $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches in front, rising to $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches at the back. Ball tufts remained, and a black patent leather chin-strap was worn.

SERGEANTS.—**Sashes** were now worn over the right shoulder.

SOLDIERS.—As for the officers, a tunic was introduced for the men. The bayonet was carried in a frog suspended from a waistbelt.

ALL RANKS.—A new **button** was introduced. It was of brass, gilt for officers, convex in shape, closed at the back and with a rim in the case of the officers. The design of the 48th button was: In the centre "48"; above a crown; below a straight, twisted bar. The 58th button had as design "58" in the centre, surrounded by "Gibraltar, Egypt, Maida" in a circle. These buttons replaced those of pewter previously worn by the men, and were worn until 1871, when the universal pattern was introduced, and by the officers until 1881.

The Enfield **rifle** was issued and used during the closing actions of the Crimean War, having replaced the Minié rifle of 1851 and the percussion musket of 1842. Its bore was .577 inch and the range twelve hundred yards. This rifle remained with the infantry until the introduction of the breech-loader in 1867.

1857. Patterns for the **drummer's lace** and fringe were approved by authority on 2nd May, 1857. The fringe was to be $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches long and arranged in a width of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of each colour; that of the 48th Regiment being alternately black, white, red, and that of the 58th Regiment white and red. These were worn until 1871, when they were replaced by a new universal pattern of lace, white with red crowns, and a red and white fringe of a smaller size.

1858. A single-breasted **tunic** was introduced for both officers and men, instead of the double-breasted one. Particulars of the officers' tunic were as follows: Eight buttons in front at equal distances, collar rounded off in front, cuff $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, collar and cuffs the colour of the facings, slashed flap on sleeve with three loops of lace and regimental buttons; the skirt $10\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep for an officer 5 feet 9 inches in height; scarlet flaps at the plaits behind, two waist buttons 3 inches apart. On the left shoulder was retained the crimson silk cord for the sash, the shoulders being otherwise bare. The rank badges on the collar remained unchanged.

The **waistbelt** was of white enamelled leather, $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, with slings and a gilt hook; the plate being a round gilt clasp, having the number of the Regiment on the centre-piece and surmounted by a crown in silver; on the outer circle the regimental title. The **scabbard** for field officers was still of brass; adjutants, steel; other regimental officers, black leather with gilt mountings. Black scabbards were abolished in 1866.

The flank companies—namely, grenadier and light, were abolished in 1858, after which all companies were to be clothed alike.

1859. Hitherto, the uniform officially authorized for wear at mess had been full dress. For some years it had, however, been customary to wear the shell jacket as **mess dress**. This was worn open with a waistcoat of regimental design. This year the wearing of the shell jacket at mess was regularized.

It was laid down that the blue **frock coat**, with the waistbelt and sword, and the crimson sash over the left shoulder, was to be worn by officers when in quarters, on fatigue or orderly duty, at drill and on parade, when the non-commissioned officers and men were dressed in shell jackets. The sash and white waistbelt and sword were to be worn on all occasions, both with the scarlet tunic and blue frock. The **forage cap** was to be worn with the blue frock, but never with the scarlet tunic. When the waistbelt was worn over the coat and the sword hooked up, the edge was to be turned to the rear and the back of the sword to the front.

1861. Another alteration took place in the **shako** ; the material was now of blue ribbed cloth, having a peak, now straight, only in the front. The height was $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches, rising to $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches at the back ; dimensions on top, 6 by $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches ; ball tufts, red and white for all companies. The plate was a gilt star of eight points, having the number of the Regiment within a garter, the whole surmounted by a crown. No alterations were made in the patent leather chin-strap.

1866. The black leather **scabbard** was replaced by one of steel. Field officers retained the brass scabbard. Regimental **lace** for drummers was discontinued.

1867. A blue **patrol jacket** was sanctioned for officers to take the place of the blue frock-coat ; and in the following year the slashed cuff on the tunic was replaced by a pointed one having gold lace, the amount of which varied according to rank. For levées, etc., the officer's **sash** was ordered to be of gold and crimson, and gold lace was to be worn on the trousers and sword-belt. A similar alteration was also made to the **cuffs** on the tunics of the men, which so remained until 1882.

Cork **helmets** for tropical wear were introduced.

1869. A new blue cloth **shako** was officially approved, the height of which was 4 inches, the back $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches ; dimensions on top 6 by $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Gold braid ornamented those of the officers, the other ranks having red braid. The straight black leather peak and the red and white ball tuft were retained. The plate was gilt and consisted of a cut-out regimental number on a frosted background within the garter ribbon, supported by laurels, tied at the base, supporting the crown above. A gilt chained chin-strap for officers.

The infantry **stock** was abolished. The sergeant-major and quartermaster-sergeant were henceforth to wear their **chevrons** below the elbow, pointing upwards.

1871. The Snider breech-loading **rifle** took the place of the muzzle-loaded Enfield rifle in 1867. This was the first breech-loader issued, and was sighted from one hundred to one thousand yards. The conversion of the Enfield to a breech-loading system was only a temporary measure.

After the issue of the Snider-Enfield rifle the principle of breech-loading arms was in a transition state, and as the result of many exhaustive and prolonged experiments, the Martini-Henry rifle was recommended in 1871 for adoption. A period of some three or four years necessarily elapsed before all units, at home and abroad, were completely supplied. The diameter of the bore was .45 inch. This rifle, as before, has a long triangular bayonet, tapering towards the point, and was used in the campaign in South Africa, 1877-1879.

A universal **button** for the other ranks, bearing the Royal Arms, was substituted for the button bearing the number of the Regiment. In future the number was to be shown on the shoulder-straps ; also the brick-red **tunics** of the rank and file

were changed to scarlet, being similar in colour to those of the officers ; the **white tunics** of the band were abolished in favour of the scarlet ; bandsmen being ordered to wear a worsted badge of crossed trumpets on the right sleeve.

The **Glengarry cap** was introduced for undress purposes, having the badge in gilt on the left-hand side, the designs being : 48th Regiment, the numerals "48" within a garter, inscribed "Northamptonshire," the whole surmounted by a crown ; 58th Regiment, the numerals "58" within a garter, inscribed "Montis Insignia Calpe," the whole surmounted by the castle.

The drummers' regimental **lace** and fringe were replaced by lace of a universal pattern (white with red crowns) and a red and white fringe of a smaller size.

1872. A universal pattern **mess jacket** and vest was authorized. The scarlet jacket had a stand-up collar and cuffs of the regimental facing, edged gold braid ; a loop at collar to fasten across neck ; a row of gilt studs and hooks and eyes down front. The vest was the colour of the regimental facing, edged gold braid ; pockets, braided, forming crow's feet and eyes ; a row of gilt studs and hooks and eyes down front.

Pantaloons and **high boots** were ordered to be worn on parade by officers of infantry, when mounted.

1878. After the victory of the Prussians over the French in 1870, the British Army turned from Paris to Berlin for its new fashions, and in 1878 the period of the **shako** came to an end.

This headdress gave way to the blue cloth **helmet** with fittings of gilt brass ; at the top a gilt spike was mounted on a cross-piece base ; curb chain chin-strap, with rose fastenings at sides ; the chin-strap when not required to be worn under the chin, could be fastened up to a hook at the back ; the plate in front consisted of an eight-pointed star, regimental number in centre within a garter ribbon, on either side a laurel branch tied at base, the whole surmounted by the crown.

1880. Officers' **badges of rank** were removed from the collar to the shoulder-straps of the tunic. At the same time an alteration and re-arrangement of the "crown" and "star," signifying the respective ranks, was effected. A Captain wore two stars ; Lieutenant, one star ; whilst a Second-Lieutenant had no distinguishing mark. Majors wore a crown ; Lieutenant-Colonels a crown and star ; and Colonels a crown and two stars. The collar was thus free to acquire the regimental badge. The **tunic** was now to be fitted with shoulder-straps of twisted round gold cord, lined with scarlet ; gold lace ornamented the collar and pointed cuffs, the amount of which still varied according to rank ; the collar was no longer rounded in front, but cut square.

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT.

1881. On the introduction of the Territorial system on 1st July, 1881, the **facings** of all non-Royal English regiments were changed to white, and the pattern of the officer's gold lace was to be universally that of the rose ; consequently the buff and black facings, which had been worn by these two Regiments ever since the dates of their formation, disappeared.

Badges were similarly affected, all numbers disappearing. The design of the **helmet plate** was an eight-pointed star, gilt, surmounted by a crown ; in centre the castle and key, having on a scroll above the word "Gibraltar," and on a scroll below the word "Talavera," encircled by the title "Northamptonshire" ; on either side a bay and laurel wreath, tied at base with a ribbon. The **Glengarry**

cap-badge was of gilt metal, the garter, with motto, surmounted by the crown, design and ground as that for the helmet plate. On the officer's forage cap was the castle and key in gold embroidery, bearing above the castle a blue silk golden embroidered scroll inscribed "Gibraltar," and a similar scroll below inscribed "Talavera." On the collar of the tunic, in gilt metal, within a laurel wreath a gilt circle pierced "Northamptonshire Regt.," the ground of blue enamel; in relief within the circle on a raised ground of blue enamel, the garter cross, the shoulder-plate badge of the old Northamptonshire Militia, in silver; below the cross, and on the circle, a horseshoe in silver; the circle surmounted by a crown in gilt metal.

1882. The pointed **cuff** was replaced for sergeants and men by a plain round white cuff, which remained until 1903, when the former was re-introduced.

1884. New pattern **valise** equipment was issued.

1887. Brown **gloves** were first worn for drill order and undress.

1888. The Slade-Wallace equipment was approved and in due course was generally adopted by the infantry.

1889. The Lee-Metford magazine **rifle** was approved for issue. Calibre, .303 inches. The bayonet was sword-shaped.

1890. The scarlet serge **patrol jacket** was taken into use by officers; the collar, shoulder-straps and pointed cuffs were of white; a patch pocket with pointed flap and small button on each breast; five small regimental buttons down the front; there was no collar badge. The officer's **forage cap**, at this period, was made of blue cloth, straight up, 3 inches high, with black patent leather drooping peak and chin-strap; the peak ornamented with half-inch full gold embroidery; band $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches wide of black oak-leaf lace; badge in front.

1893. The **Glengarry cap** was abolished on the introduction of the new **field service cap**; this was made of blue cloth with folding peak in front; flaps at the sides to let down; lower flaps to fasten under the chin when unfolded; when folded these were fastened in front by two small buttons; regimental badge in brass on the left-hand side.

1895. The Lee-Enfield **rifle**, with a bolt-lock and detachable charger-loading magazine, replaced the Lee-Metford.

1897. The **mess jacket**, with white roll collar and pointed cuffs, no piping, was introduced; rank badges on shoulder-straps; the white washing-vest was collarless, having four plain gilt buttons in front, thereon the castle and key in silver.

1900. For some years the working dress of the soldier had been **khaki**. After the Boer War it became the universal dress, the tunic only being retained for ceremonial and walking out. With the introduction of khaki, puttees replaced leggings.

During the South African War either **helmets** or **slouch hats** were worn with the khaki service dress.

The **Sam Browne belt** was adopted for the general use of officers when in service or undress uniform.

Hitherto there appears to have been some lack of uniformity in the design of the **castle** amongst those regiments entitled to the distinctive badge, for on 30th January, 1900, the War Office issued this notification :—

"In reviewing the W.O. sealed pattern badges, it has been noticed that the Castle of Gibraltar is represented by a different design in each regiment to which the distinction has been granted ; a correct representation, as shown in the accompanying photograph, has now been obtained of the Castle as shown upon the seal of Gibraltar, granted in 1502, and subsequently on the coinage of Gibraltar ; this design will be followed in future in regimental badges. Sealed patterns of the new badges will be provided at public expense."

The design on the photograph showed the castle having three turrets ; the key being suspended below the centre gateway.

In conformity with this instruction a new **cap-badge** was brought into use : Silver within a laurel wreath, the three turreted castle and key ; above the castle a scroll inscribed " Gibraltar " ; beneath, a scroll inscribed " Talavera " ; on the lower bend of the wreath in gilt a scroll bearing the county title, " Northamptonshire."

Pouches had proved unsatisfactory during the Boer War, and were replaced by **bandollers**.

1902. The **rank badges** for a Captain, Lieutenant and Second-Lieutenant were changed to : Captain, three stars ; Lieutenant, two stars ; Second-Lieutenant, one star. Rank badges of the field ranks remained unchanged.

After the conclusion of the war in South Africa, in 1902, certain changes in uniform took place. The infantry officer's **scarlet tunic** was shorn of the varied braiding according to rank. All were henceforth to wear the same amount of decoration on the sleeves and collar as had formerly been used for subalterns ; and the skirts altered, a three-pointed slash at each side being introduced. The officers' sash was now to be worn round the waist instead of over the left shoulder. A double-breasted blue frock-coat, with gilt buttons, was re-introduced for officer's undress, taking the place of the red serge and blue mohair-braided patrol jackets ; the gold lace sword-slings being worn under the tunic and over the frock-coat. The brass spurs and sword scabbards of field officers were replaced by those of steel. A new circular **cap** of dark blue cloth, with the regimental badge in front, was served out to the non-commissioned officers and men, whose tunics had now a pointed cuff and slashed flaps and buttons on the skirts. The blue **forage cap** of the officers had a sloping black patent leather peak and chin-strap ; the peak embroidered for field officers and plain for others ; regimental badge in front, and a narrow red welt round the top seam. The short black leather leggings were withdrawn.

1905. A new round walking-out **cap**, with drooping black patent leather peak, for the other ranks, was taken into use ; and by now the khaki **greatcoat** had become general for all purposes.

1910. The short Lee-Enfield **rifle** (1907 pattern) was introduced. The barrel was 5 inches shorter and the sword-bayonet 5 inches longer than the old pattern rifle. The bore was .303 inches. This is the rifle which was used throughout the Great War.

The 1908 pattern web **equipment** was issued at the same time.

No longer were the men's **shoulder titles** thread stitched, but of stamped metal ; the colour of their shoulder straps, on the scarlet tunic, had now been changed from red to all white.

On the officers' service dress **jacket** a turn-down collar, worn with a khaki shirt and tie, replaced the stand-up collar.

1914. After the outbreak of the Great War only the khaki service dress and equipment were issued.

1914-1918. The Great War period saw few changes in uniform, but a number of additions were made to the equipment, of which the most important were the **steel helmet** and the **gas respirator**. The introduction of new weapons, such as the **Lewis gun** and the grenade with its discharger, also involved certain modifications in the equipment. On the conclusion of the war full dress was not reintroduced except for the band and drums, though it was still permitted as the official levée dress for officers.

1927. Permission was obtained for the former buff facings of the Regiment to be restored. Since 1881 the facings had been white, and in mess dress the 48th had worn a white and the 58th a black waistcoat. With the buff-faced jacket the black velvet waistcoat was now adopted by both battalions, so that both the old facing colours should be preserved.

APPENDIX VII

THE CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE, NORTHAMPTON

The Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Northampton, where every Church of England recruit attends his first church parade, owes its origin to the Crusades. It was probably built by Simon de Senlis, the first of the Norman Earls of Northampton, who took part in the First Crusade. The original Round Church is a reproduction of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, and was, no doubt, intended by its builder as a thank-offering for his safe return.

Two other Crusades started from Northampton in 1239 and 1270, and we can imagine the Crusaders kneeling in the church before embarking on their perilous adventure. It thus forms an eminently suitable and inspiring starting-point for the soldier on his military career; the old Colours hanging in the chancel and the regimental memorials are further reminders of his trust and the traditions he must maintain. Faced with these responsibilities, the recruit must often be overcome with dread that in the hour of danger he may show his fears. Like the Crusaders of old, he prays for strength when the crisis shall arise.

THE COLOURS.

In the chancel may be seen eight of the Regimental Colours. Firstly, at the west end hang the Queen's and Regimental Colours of the 48th which were presented to the Regiment at Gibraltar in 1838; they were carried into action in the Crimean War and have seen service, among other places, in the West Indies, the Mediterranean and India, being replaced after fifty-one years by the present Colours in 1889. Behind them hang the Great War Colours of the 5th, 6th and 7th Battalions, not carried themselves into action, but representing, nevertheless, the devotion, loyalty and sacrifice of many Northamptonshire men, and no less to be honoured and respected than the Colours of old. Finally, nearest the altar, are the King's and Regimental Colours of the 3rd (Militia) Battalion.

THE WINDOWS—MEMORIALS.

At the east end of the chancel are three windows, each of two lights. The central window has two figures, that on the left being the risen Lord with the words "Touch me not," and beneath are helmets and crests and the words "Mel Regi." On the right is the figure of Mary and the word "Rabboni," and beneath on a scroll, supported by two angels, the legend:—

*"In proud and loving memory of our Beloved Son, Major Arnold
E. M. Reicke, R.F.A., who was accidentally killed 19th June, 1919.
In saving another's life he gave his own."*

The window on the south also has two figures, that on the left being a man in Jewish dress, and the words "Joseph of Arimathea," and beneath a chalice and porter. The figure of the right has a red robe and white cloak, and is holding in his hands a model of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre and the words "Simon de Senlis." Beneath is a shield or and gules quarterly.

Beneath, under both lights, is the inscription :—

*Erected in memory of the Officers, N.C.Os. and Men of the
7th (Service) Battalion Northamptonshire Regiment who died for
their Country in the Great War 1914-1919.*

The window on the north also has two figures. That on the left is a knight in chain armour with white cloak, holding his sword in his right hand, point to base, and the words " Godfrey de Boullion."

The figure on the right is that of a king, also in chain armour, with helmet and crown, wearing a red robe and white cloak, holding in his right hand his sword, point to base, and in his left the staff of a red banner with the three golden lions of England and the words " Kg. Richard Cœur de Lion."

And beneath both lights is the inscription :—

*Erected in memory of the Officers, N.C.Os. and Men of the
5th (Service) Battalion Northamptonshire Regiment who died for
their Country in the Great War 1914-1919.*

At the east end of the south aisle is the Chapel of St. George, or the Warriors' Chapel, which forms the combined regimental and parochial memorial to those who fell in the Great War. At the entrance to the chapel is an oak screen, on whose doors is the following inscription :—

*This Screen is erected to the memory of the Officers, Non-
commissioned Officers and Men of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Battalions
of the Northamptonshire Regiment who fell in the Great War or
died on Active Service, 1914-19, by their Comrades, Relatives
and Friends.*

This screen was unveiled by General Lord Horne on 29th May, 1921.

On the south side of the chapel are two soldiers' windows both of two lights. That on the left or east side has in the left light a crowned figure of a king in armour with a red robe on which is a white cross, holding in his hands a crown of thorns, and beneath are the words " St. Louis," and in base a shield with the arms of France. On the right is the figure of a man in plate armour with red robe looped over his left arm, grasping his sword with his right arm under his robe, and beneath, the words " St. Martin," and in base a shield of blue with eight sceptres set wheel fashion. Beneath both lights is the following legend :—

*To the glory of God and the dear memory of Eric Norman Bostock,
2nd Lieut. 2nd Battalion Northamptonshire Regiment, who gave
his life for his Country at Berry au Bac, France, 27th May, 1918.*

The window on the right has in the head the insignia :—Within belt crowned, " Talavera XLVIII "; The Castle and Key, and " 6th Battn. Gibraltar, Northamptonshire."

In the light on the left side is a figure with breastplate in a blue robe holding in his right hand a cross and in his left a drawn sword ; beneath are the words " St. Alban," and below a blue shield bearing a gold saltire.

In the other light is a crowned figure in plate armour with blue robe, on which is St. George with chain round neck and garter below left knee, holding in his right hand a sceptre, and the words " Kg. Henry V," and below in a shield are the arms of England and France quarterly.

And on both lights are the Battle Honours :—

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Pommiers Redoubt</i> | <i>Crozat Canal</i> |
| <i>Trones Wood</i> | <i>Barbœuf</i> |
| <i>Thiepval</i> | <i>Hangard</i> |
| <i>Boom Ravine</i> | <i>The Ancre</i> |
| <i>S. Leger</i> | <i>Combles</i> |
| <i>Cherisy</i> | <i>Ronssoy</i> |
| <i>Glencorse Wood</i> | <i>Vendhuille</i> |
| <i>Houthulst Forest</i> | <i>Mormal Forest</i> |

And the legend :—

*To the glory of God and in glad and thankful remembrance of those
of the 6th Battalion Northamptonshire Regiment who going out from
homes of England made sacred the fields of France and Flanders
1914-1919.*

Chained to a bracket on the north side of this chapel there is a book entirely written on parchment and bound in red morocco, having the Northamptonshire badge in metal and the figures 1914-1919 outside. On the first page, beneath the badge, the following inscription :—

ROLL OF HONOUR
OF
THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT
IN THE
GREAT WAR
1914-1919.

(COMPILED FROM THE OFFICIAL RECORDS.)

Every day when the guard is mounted at the Depot the best-turned-out man is told off to march down to the church and to turn a leaf of this Record Book ; he is then excused from the remainder of his duty on the guard.

On the south between the windows just described there is a stone plate beneath a figure of St. George with a roll of men of the parish who fell in the Great War.

In the north or soldiers' aisle are to be found other regimental memorials. At the west end is a window of stained glass erected in 1883 :—

*" by the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Men of the
58th Regiment in memory of their comrades who were killed in
action and died in South Africa 1879-1880-1881-1882-1883."*

The window represents Richard Cœur de Lion at the Battle of Jaffa ; beneath it in the wall are five brass plates on which are engraved the names of those of the Regiment who lost their lives between 1879 and 1883, the fifth plate giving the Battle Honours and crest of the Regiment.

At the east end of this aisle are memorial brasses to two officers of the 48th, Captain G. H. McG. Orr Whieldon and Captain G. Mowbray Lys, who died in 1891 and 1893. In each case the memorials were presented by " their brother officers."

The window in the north aisle near the vestry is erected to the memory of Colonel Ripley, who died of wounds received in 1916 when commanding the 6th Battalion. That at the west end of the aisle is erected to the memory of officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the 4th Battalion. It illustrates

the belief that soldiers who lay down their lives for their country are received with honour by Christ and the Angels in Paradise. Underneath the figures are the words :—

" They climbed the steep ascent to Heaven through peril, toil and pain."

Opposite in the south aisle is a window erected in 1899 by the officers and men of the 48th in memory of their comrades who were killed in the Tirah Campaign on the North-West Frontier of India in 1897. It contains three figures representing the Good Centurion (Faith), Joshua (Fortitude) and Solomon (Justice).

Next to it is another military window presented in 1903 by the 58th in memory of the non-commissioned officers and men who were killed during the South African War 1899-1902. It contains representations of Judas Maccabeus (War), Melchisedek (Peace) and Moses (Victory).

On the north wall of the nave at the west end are memorials to William Kerr and his son, who were largely responsible for the formation of the Northamptonshire Volunteers and Fencibles during the Napoleonic Wars. The wording of the memorials is as follows :—

In a vault adjacent are deposited the mortal remains of William Kerr M.D., upwards of sixty years a distinguish'd Physician and Surgeon in the town of Northampton. Endowed with extraordinary vigour of body and energy of mind as uncommon, His professional occupation were extensive and laborious, Characterized alike by humanity penetration judgement and skill. These were not only conspicuous in the performance of his private engagements, but eminently so in his public duties at the old and new Infirmaries of this place. The object of which he faithfully and zealously promoted from the year 1763 to within a short period of his death. The same ardour that manifested itself in the exercise of his profession was evinced also on several patriotic occasions but particularly in raising and conducting The Northampton Volunteer troop of Cavalry of which He was the beloved respected and Honour'd Commandant From its foundation 1798 to its dissolution in 1824. Benevolence and kindness of disposition, Urbanity and suavity of manners, Uprightness and honesty of conduct added lustre to the eminence of his character And have further endeared the memory of a life which has seldom been surpassed in usefulness to mankind. He was born in the county of Roxburgh Jan. 12th 1738 died Sept. 4th 1824 in the 87th year of his age.

The last mural monument we need mention is that of the Marquis of Exeter, who commanded the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia for forty-one years. This is on the south side of the circular part of the church. Close to the south door there is an achievement for the late Marquis of Exeter. In the upper corners above the arch are the insignia of the Regiment, that on the left being a cross within a crowned star of eight points with the word "Mediterranean" and a horseshoe, and within a scroll the words "Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia," and that on the right being within a crowned belt the words "Montis Insignia Calpe"; a Castle and Key beneath the word "Gibraltar."

Beneath the arch, on a shield are the Cecil arms: Barry of ten argent and azure over all on six escutcheons sable, three, two, and one, each charged with a lion rampant of the first. On a marquis's coronet on helm the crest on a cap of maintenance: A gerb or supported by two lions rampant, the dexter argent, the

sinister azure. Supporters, two lions rampant ermine and the motto "Cor unum vita una."

Beneath is the legend :—

To the Glory of God, and in memory of William Alleyne 3rd Marquis of Exeter during 41 years Lieut. Colonel Commandant and Honorary Colonel of the Northamptonshire and Rutland Militia (3rd and 4th Battalions Northamptonshire Regt.). A.D.C. to the Queen. Born April 30th, 1825. Died July 14th, 1895. Erected by past and present Officers of the Regiment.

(Note.—For many of the above details acknowledgment is given to "A History of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, Northampton," by Reverend J. C. Cox, LL.D., F.S.A., and Reverend R. M. Serjeantson, M.A., and "Notes on the History of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, Northampton," by Reverend R. M. Serjeantson, M.A., F.S.A.).

APPENDIX VIII

THE 15TH (NORTH) AUCKLAND REGIMENT

The Regiment was founded in 1911, under "The Defence Amendment Act, 1909," the principle of which was compulsory military training. The unit was first known as The 15th North Auckland Regiment and had an enlistment area covering the whole of the North Auckland Peninsula. Incorporated in the new unit were several officers of a volunteer company known as the Whangarei Rifles.

One of the Rifles' most enthusiastic officers, Captain (later Lieutenant-Colonel) T. H. Steadman, V.D., became the Commanding Officer of the 1st Battalion 15th North Auckland Regiment and by his organizing ability created a unit, which soon after its formation was to be worthily represented in the field during the Great War by two, and at one time (1917) by three companies.

The motto adopted by the Regiment was "Pour Devoir," and in the light of what happened later, when most of the early members of the 1st Battalion volunteered for service with the New Zealand Expeditionary Force, it is evident all ranks lived up to this motto.

The badge of the unit consists of a centre-piece containing the numerals 15 surmounted by the Crown and enclosed in fern leaves; the garter containing the motto "Pour Devoir" and North Auckland.

Originally the Headquarters of the unit were established in Whangarei, but it was later found advisable to remove to Ponsonby, a suburb of the city of Auckland, where it is maintained to this day.

In drawing men of military age from all over the "Roadless North" as the North Auckland Peninsula was then known, a fair proportion of the troops were Maoris, a good many of whom were direct descendants of the Ngapuhi, Te Rarawa, Hokianga, Ngati-Hine and kindred tribes, who had fought against the British at Puketutu, Ohaeawai and Ruapekapeka in 1845-46. The British troops had included the 58th, to which the North Auckland Regiment in 1913 was so happily allied.

In the early years of the life of the Regiment progress sufficient to bring forth commendatory remarks from General Sir Ian Hamilton during his visit of inspection in 1914 was made, not only in the 1st Battalion but in the many Senior Cadet Companies affiliated with the Regiment.

The Regiment was honoured in 1914 by the appointment as Honorary Colonel of Major-General Sir Alexander Godley, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., to whom had been entrusted the re-organization of the Defence Forces of New Zealand and who at that particular time was realizing in no uncertain degree the result of his labours with the Dominion Force.

Immediately on the outbreak of the Great War, the Government of New Zealand announced its intention of dispatching an expeditionary force, in fulfilment of its obligations to the Mother Country; a great many members of the Regiment, eventually resulting in a surplus, volunteered for service. In addition to Mounted Rifle, Artillery, Signal, Engineer and other units within the Auckland Province, a battalion of infantry was formed consisting of one company from each of the first battalions of the 3rd Auckland, 6th Hauraki, 15th North Auckland and 16th Waikato Regiments.

The 1/15th Company saw service in Egypt, Gallipoli and France. On the 1st March, 1916, a second Auckland Battalion came into being as one of the new units to complete the New Zealand Division, the original idea of home battalions being

represented in service battalions being adhered to. Until the end of the fighting on the Western Front, both the 1/15th and 2/15th Companies continued to represent the 15th North Auckland Regiment; the New Zealand Division having in April, 1916, embarked for France.

A third company of the 15th North Auckland Regiment was in existence for a short time in 1917 on the formation of a fourth New Zealand Infantry Brigade.

In the space available it is impossible to give a full record of the overseas service of these units. Mention must, however, be made of three very gallant members who were awarded the Victoria Cross:—

The first of these was the late Sergeant S. Forsyth, V.C., who on 24th August, 1918, a few days after joining the 2/15th Company from an Engineer unit, was conspicuous for his bravery in attacking enemy machine guns in the vicinity of Grevillers, in walking in front of a tank under heavy fire to direct its fire and when the tank was disabled, organizing and leading its crew until he fell mortally wounded by an enemy sniper.

Sergeant (now Captain) R. S. Judson, V.C., D.C.M., M.M., New Zealand Staff Corps, of the 1/15th Company, only two days after Sergeant Forsyth's exploits, won the second Victoria Cross, this being the culmination of a wonderful record with his unit. For his bravery and leadership on the 24th and 25th July and 16th August in the same year he had already been awarded the D.C.M. and M.M.

During the attack on the Le Transloy-Loupart system the 2nd Wellington Battalion was held up by hostile machine-gun fire. Sergeant Judson with a small bombing section of 1/15th Company 1st Auckland Battalion "pressed through the checked line and rushing forward under intensely heavy fire captured a machine gun in a German sap. While his men consolidated Judson proceeded two hundred yards alone up the sap, bombing two machine-gun crews before him. Jumping out of the trench he ran ahead of the enemy; then standing on the parapet he ordered the party consisting of two officers and about ten men to surrender. Being fired on he threw a bomb and jumped down among them, killing two and putting the rest to flight."

The third Victoria Cross was awarded to Private J. Crichton of 2/15th Company for acts of gallantry at Crêvecoeur on 30th September, 1918, that in the words of the Battalion Commander, Lieutenant-Colonel (now Colonel) Sir Stephen Allen, K.B.E., C.M.G., D.S.O., V.D., were particularly remarkable. "Though wounded in the foot early in the action, Crichton continued with his company and several times swam the small branch of the river with messages from his platoon commander to the Officer Commanding Company, this involving also the crossing of a zone swept by machine-gun fire. He also, under heavy fire, removed the detonators and cut the wires connected to mines under one of the bridges."

Thirty Battle Honours were awarded to the Regiment, the honours borne on the Colours being "Flers-Courcelette," "Messines, 1917," "Passchendaele," "Bapaume, 1918," "Havrincourt," "Canal du Nord," "Cambrai, 1918," "Krithia," "Landing at Anzac," "Defence of Anzac."

On the cessation of hostilities and the return of the troops to New Zealand, the Regiment, ably assisted by many returned officers, continued to "carry on the good work."

Changes have occurred in the title of the Regiment; and so has the system of enlistment, the basis now being voluntary.

The present establishment of the 1st Battalion is 294 all ranks which, while low, is more than a nucleus should it for any reason be necessary to place the battalion on a war footing.

APPENDIX IX

THE LAKE SUPERIOR REGIMENT OF CANADA

By Army Order No. 57 of 1933 His Majesty the King was graciously pleased to approve of the alliance between the Lake Superior Regiment of Canada and the Northamptonshire Regiment. This honour was particularly welcomed by the Northamptonshire Regiment, in view of the part they played in the early days of the Dominion, more especially at Quebec in 1759.

The Lake Superior Regiment had its inception in an independent company formed at Port Arthur in 1885 and designated the Algoma Rifles. This company was raised for service in the North-West Rebellion of that year, often known as the Second Reil Rebellion; the first Reil Rebellion, known otherwise as the Red River Insurrection, had occurred in 1869 and had been quelled by a mixed force of British Regulars and Canadian Militia. Both risings were caused by resentment at the encroachment of the white settlers; the first concerned the French-Indian half-breeds only, as the Indians refused to join them; on the second occasion both Indians and half-breeds combined. The second rebellion was only put down after severe fighting by a force of Canadian Militia under General Middleton. Although formed on account of these rebellions, the Algoma Rifles were not called upon for active service.

The rebel leader in each case was a French-Indian half-breed known as Louis Reil, who was eventually captured, tried and executed at Regina on 16th November, 1885. It is interesting to note that Patrick Reil, a direct descendant of Louis Reil, a man who showed a strong strain of Indian blood, was a member of the first draft from the Lake Superior Regiment to the 8th Battalion Canadian Expeditionary Force, and became one of the most noted snipers in the Canadian Corps, being eventually killed in action. The 8th Battalion, recruited mainly from the Winnipeg Rifles, had a distinguished record in the Rebellion of 1885, and earned from the Indians under Louis Reil the sobriquet "Little Black Devils" from the colour of their uniforms.

The feeling of unrest in Western Canada among the half-breeds and the Indians, caused by the Reil Rebellion, however, decided the Government in 1887 to increase the strength of the Militia, and, with that end in view, five other companies were raised by the Algoma Rifles. No. 2 Company had its Headquarters at Fort William, No. 3 Company at Kenora, No. 4 Company at Gore Bay, No. 5 Company at Manitowaning (Manitoulin Island), and No. 6 Company at Sault Ste. Marie. Upon completion of this organization, the Regiment was spread over a length of eight hundred miles; each company separated from the other by miles of trackless wilderness or the stormy waters of Lake Superior, and the canoe route to the Lake of the Woods.

The Regiment was gazetted in 1887 under the title of the 96th Battalion District of Algoma Rifles, then commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel S. W. Ray, who had organized the first company. This regiment was disbanded in 1896, but was again organized in 1905 as the 96th Lake Superior Regiment with Headquarters at Port Arthur. The organization of this regiment consisted of two companies at Port Arthur, two companies at Fort William, one company at Kenora, and one company at Fort Francis, the Commanding Officer being the late Lieutenant-Colonel C. N. Laurie. In 1908 the Regiment was reorganized

as a city unit with four companies at Port Arthur and four companies at Fort William. The former companies at Kenora and Fort Francis formed the nucleus of another regiment, the 98th Kenora Light Infantry.

It should be explained that the Active Militia of Canada (the official designation of the Military Forces of that country) are divided under two headings, the Permanent and the Non-Permanent. The former correspond to the Regular Army of Great Britain, the latter, of which this unit forms a part, to the Territorial Force. The permanent force, however, is mainly for instructional purposes, numbering some three thousand five hundred all ranks, scattered from coast to coast, so that the non-permanent force actually forms a part of the first line of defence.

Until the outbreak of the Great War in 1914 the Regiment had seen no active service, but had been called out on two occasions in aid of the Civil Power.

On the outbreak of hostilities in 1914, the 96th Lake Superior Regiment was assigned as its first duty the guarding of the system of grain elevators in the two cities of Port Arthur and Fort William. These elevators had at that time a combined storage capacity of over sixty million bushels, and were the main distributing centre for the forwarding of Canada's wheat crop to England. These elevators were spread out along the water front of the two cities over a distance of twelve miles. The electric power plant at Kakabeka Falls, eighteen miles from the cities which supplied the elevators, was also guarded by the Regiment.

In the meantime the immediate requirement of troops at the front caused the Minister of Militia to change the policy of recruiting through the organized Militia units, and to substitute a system for the formation of units for the Canadian Expeditionary Force apart from the organized Militia. Thus, while the Lake Superior Regiment was carrying out defence duties in Canada, it was also recruiting for the Canadian Expeditionary Force. The first drafts sent to the Canadian Expeditionary Force were 234 officers and men to the 8th Battalion at Valcartier, a machine-gun section of 1 officer and 28 men to England, 128 officers and men to the 28th Battalion, and one company of 250 officers and men to the 4th Battalion.

On 3rd November, 1915, the first complete battalion of the Regiment, the 52nd New Ontario Battalion, which was commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Hay, left for France. The second battalion, the "94th Battalion," left on 16th June, 1916, under Lieutenant-Colonel Machin; the third battalion, the "141st Bull Moose" Battalion, left early in 1917, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel McKenzie.

The 52nd Battalion was incorporated in the 3rd Canadian Division upon arrival in England. The 94th and 141st Battalions were used as reinforcements throughout the Division owing to the heavy casualties which took place at the Ypres Salient and on the Somme.

In all over four thousand all ranks were recruited by the Regiment and dispatched on active service; the casualties numbered 140 officers and 2,819 other ranks.

In 1921 the Canadian Militia as a whole were reorganized, numerical designations were discontinued, and the Lake Superior Regiment was reorganized as the perpetuating unit of the 52nd Battalion Canadian Expeditionary Force.

The Colours of the Battalion, a gift from the citizens of Port Arthur and Fort William, were presented to the unit in the theatre of war in 1918.

The Battle Honours awarded to the Lake Superior Regiment were selected from those awarded to the four units to which the Regiment contributed and are as follows, those printed in small capitals being borne on the Colour:—"YPRES,

1915, 1917," "Festubert, 1915," "MOUNT SORREL," "SOMME, 1916," "Flers-Courcelette," "Ancre Heights," "Arras, 1917-1918," "VIMY, 1917," "HILL 70," "PASSCHENDAELE," "AMIENS," "Scarpe, 1918," "Drocourt-Quéant," "HINDENBURG LINE," "Canal du Nord," "CAMBRAI, 1918," "VALENCIENNES," "France and Flanders, 1915-1918."

Decorations awarded to the 52nd Battalion numbered 380 in all, the principal ones being:—V.C., 1; D.S.O., 10; M.C., 35; D.C.M., 40; M.M., 191.

The Victoria Cross was awarded to Lieutenant Christopher Patrick O'Kelly, for conspicuous gallantry in action on 26th October, 1917, during the operations in front of Passchendaele. The recommendation in regimental records reads as follows:—

"After the original attack on Bellevue Spur had failed and two companies of the 22nd Canadian Infantry Battalion had launched a new attack, this officer advanced his company over one thousand yards under heavy fire without any artillery barrage, to the German position on the crest of the hill. He then personally organized and led a series of attacks against German pillboxes, his company alone capturing six of them and over one hundred prisoners with machine guns. Later in the afternoon, under his leadership, his company repelled a strong German counter-attack, taking more prisoners. During the night they captured a German raiding party consisting of one officer and ten men with a machine gun, the whole of these accomplishments being chiefly due to the magnificent courage, daring and ability of this officer. He was previously awarded the Military Cross, 3rd August, 1917."

The uniform of the Regiment is that of Infantry of the Line, scarlet with black facings.

The badge has no special significance other than the motto which was borne by the 52nd Battalion Canadian Expeditionary Force. The description is as follows:—In gilt with silver monogram. A double circle inscribed "THE LAKE SUPERIOR REGIMENT," within the circle on a plain disc the letters "L.S.R." in the form of a monogram. On each side of the circle a spray of maple leaves. At the top, a beaver on a log, resting on the circle and between the points of the sprays. The whole supported by a scroll inscribed "INTER PERICULA INTREPIDI."

Since reorganization the Lake Superior Regiment has taken its place within the Defence Forces of Canada in Military District No. 10, and, although organized on a skeleton establishment, is maintaining the traditions of the Canadian Forces overseas.

APPENDIX X

SHORT HISTORY OF THE 48TH BATTALION (THE TORRENS REGIMENT), AUSTRALIAN MILITARY FORCES.

BATTLE HONOURS.

The Great War.—"Somme, 1916, '18," "Pozières," "Bullecourt," "Messines, 1917," "Ypres, 1917," "Menin Road," "Polygon Wood," "Passchendaele," "Ancre, 1918," "Hamel," "Amiens," "Albert, 1918," "Hindenburg Line," "Epéhy," "France and Flanders, 1916-18," "Egypt, 1916."

THE 48th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces was a product of the Great War, being formed in Egypt at Tel-el-Kebir on the 3rd March, 1916. Some four officers and three hundred and fifty other ranks, who formed the nucleus of this new formation, were drafted from the 16th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces, which had just come through the Gallipoli Campaign. Major R. L. Leane (afterwards Brig.-General R. L. Leane, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., M.C., V.D.) was appointed from the 11th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces to command the new 48th Battalion, which became part of the 12th Brigade in the Fourth Division of the Australian Imperial Forces. The Battalion was brought up to strength by the end of March, and after completing their equipment were occupied on the Suez Canal defences.

On the 2nd June, 1916, the Battalion embarked for France on the troopship *Caledonia*. Disembarking at Marseilles, it immediately entrained for Bailleul in the north of France. On 3rd July the Battalion experienced its first taste of German shrapnel on entering the village of Fleurbaix to occupy a trench system just east of that town.

Early in July the 48th moved south to the Somme to participate in the epic struggle for Pozières Ridge, moving up the now famous Sausage Valley, around Casualty Corner, along the sunken road to relieve another South Australian battalion—the 27th—holding O.G.1 and O.G.2, names of tragic reminiscence that represented trenches which had been captured the previous night at the cost of many casualties. Heavy casualties were experienced by the incoming 48th, and the supposed O.G.2 had been obliterated by shell-fire before arrival. Actually the Battalion occupied a position further forward on the line of the old Pozières windmill, with some scattered posts out in no man's land. Throughout the 5th and 6th of July the enemy shelling continued with unrelenting fury until noon of the 7th when it abated suddenly. The enemy then counter-attacked and penetrated the line in small groups, but a well executed attack succeeded in making them prisoners. Relieved on the night of the 7th, the Battalion in their first real conflict had been subjected to a forty-eight hours' bombardment of an intensity that had not been surpassed by any previous bombardment in the history of the War.

Pozières casualties accounted for 598 of the Battalion's personnel, of whom six officers and 174 other ranks were killed, but on the 12th the thus depleted ranks again took over O.G.1 and O.G.2 and held the storm centre around the windmill for the next three days, suffering a further eighty-nine casualties during this period. After a further turn of duty in this section it was not until the 19th August that the remnants of a Battalion moved to Berteaucourt to rest and forget

the horrors of Pozières. Before the end of the month the Battalion was again occupying the front line trenches at Mouquet Farm, another part of the Ridge.

After serving in the Ypres Salient, the Battalion later returned to the Somme, near Fricourt. In this area the 48th settled down to fight what was to be their most formidable enemy during the next five months—winter, its rain and snow, its frost and hunger and cold. It was during this period that the Battalion spent seven weeks' continuous service in the front line.

In March, 1917, the Battalion participated in the first attack on the Hindenburg Line at Bullecourt. Here, owing to the failure of the tanks and the lack of artillery support, the 48th was forced to advance over the open. The uncut wire sadly depleted their numbers before they passed through the first and reached their second objective. Efforts were made to gain touch with the battalion on the right, but the intervening gap was strongly held by the enemy and constant bombing attacks were necessary to keep him from further inroads. The battalion on the left had failed in their advance and the 48th was left with both flanks in the air. Fierce fighting to repel determined counter-attacks and depleted ammunition failed to prevent the Germans advancing along the network of trenches, but from time to time they were hurled back. Meanwhile, the troops in support of the 48th were forced to retire and their place was promptly taken by the enemy who now surrounded the 48th on all sides. The survivors decided to fight their way back until they reached the support line which had been their first objective. Here in a frantic struggle they succeeded in driving out the enemy and for the time being establishing themselves. The new position was untenable and became still more desperate when our own artillery began shelling the trench, believing it still occupied by the enemy. An hour later, therefore, the dwindling garrison began to fight back still further, a small party of officers and men covering the retirement. Fourteen officers and 421 other ranks fell in this engagement.

In the summer of 1917 the 48th played a conspicuous part in the operations at Messines, and in October took part in the attack on the enemy defences between Zonnebeke and Passchendaele Ridge.

Early 1918 found the Battalion in Belgium at Spoil Bank on the Ypres—Comines Canal, but the news of the German break through on the British Fifth Army front in March, 1918, sent the 48th moving quickly southwards. Marching day and night for two days, with but brief rest, they reached Millencourt by noon on the 27th, and here took over the line from two Scottish regiments who were holding the railway embankment on the right of the main Albert—Amiens Road, and thus as part of Rawlinson's Fourth British Army commenced its task of barring further progress of the enemy towards Amiens. The attack on Monument Wood, the defence of Villers Bretonneux and the Battle of Hamel form some vivid pages in the unit's history during the next few months.

On the 8th August, 1918, and during the succeeding weeks the 48th participated in the "big push" which eventually drove the enemy back on to the Hindenburg Line. During the advance towards the St. Quentin Canal and the village of Bellenglise on the 19th September the right of the brigade front was held up by a formidable enemy strong post from which machine guns commanded a wide field of fire. In moving forward in the maze of trenches the 48th encountered this obstacle. Help was summoned from neighbouring units for a concentrated attack on this position. Meanwhile, one firebrand, a lad named Woods, succeeded in working forward and hoisted himself on the parapet of a neighbouring trench. He was soon the target for many bullets, but with a supply of bombs succeeded in creating such havoc in the strong post that when the attack was launched the post

was quickly captured. Thus was the 48th awarded its first Victoria Cross in its last engagement.

The following is a summary of the casualties suffered by the Battalion and the decorations won during the War :—

| CASUALTIES. | | | | | | <i>Officers.</i> | <i>Other Ranks.</i> |
|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------------|---------------------|
| Killed in action | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31 | 638 |
| Died of wounds | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 8 | 133 |
| Died of other causes | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | — | 19 |
| Total deaths | | | | | | 39 | 790 |
| Wounded | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 60 | 1,787 |
| Total casualties | | | | | | 99 | 2,577 |

DECORATIONS GAINED ON SERVICE.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|----|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| V.C. | ... | ... | ... | 1 | D.C.M. | ... | ... | ... | 23 |
| C.M.G. | ... | ... | ... | 1 | M.M. | ... | ... | ... | 172 |
| D.S.O. | ... | ... | ... | 4 | M.S.M. | ... | ... | ... | 3 |
| M.C. | ... | ... | ... | 19 | Foreign Decorations | ... | ... | ... | 11 |

Since the War the 48th has been maintained on a Militia basis, and in 1931, for purposes of economy in administration, was linked with the 43rd Battalion Australian Militia Forces. On mobilization both units would regain their separate identity. Battalion Headquarters are situated at Adelaide, with companies at Alberton, Adelaide and Southwark. Brigadier-General Raymond L. Leane, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., M.C., V.D., who formed the Regiment, is now (1934) its Honorary Colonel.

In the badge of the Regiment the Egyptian Pyramid and Sphinx symbolises the birthplace of the 48th at Tel-el-Kebir on 3rd March, 1916. The native boomerang and the wreath of gum leaves supply the Australian motive, while the Crown surmounting the whole typifies the Battalion as an integral part of the Empire.

APPENDIX XI

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE 58TH BATTALION (ESSENDON RIFLES), AUSTRALIAN MILITARY FORCES.

BATTLE HONOURS.

The Great War.—"Somme, 1916, '18," "Ypres, 1917," "Menin Road," "Polygon Wood," "Poelcappelle," "Passchendaele," "Avre," "Villers Bretonneux," "Amiens," "Albert, 1918," "Mont St. Quentin," "Hindenburg Line," "St. Quentin Canal," "France and Flanders, 1916-1918," "Egypt, 1916."

THIS Battalion has a dual origin from the 58th Battalion Commonwealth Military Forces, formed on the 1st July, 1913, and from the 58th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces, formed in Egypt three years later.

The 58th Battalion Australian Commonwealth Military Forces (C.M.F.) was one of the new units formed in 1913 as the result of the recommendations made by Lord Kitchener after his visit in 1911, at the invitation of the Commonwealth Government, to investigate the question of Australia's military defences, and to formulate a scheme for reorganizing the forces.

Lord Kitchener recommended a system of compulsory training, all youths to serve as Senior Cadets between sixteen and eighteen years of age, and then to serve in the Citizen Forces between eighteen and twenty-five years of age. His recommendations were put into force on 1st July, 1911. The more densely populated districts were divided into training areas. One, two or three of these being grouped into a battalion area, each being given a battalion area number in anticipation of the day when sufficient personnel would be available to form a Citizen Force battalion. Where sufficient youths who became eighteen years of age in 1911 were available a battalion was formed, and in successive years battalions in other areas were formed as men passed up from the senior cadet units. Youths in the less populated districts were exempted from training.

The 58th Battalion area was situated in the 15th Infantry Brigade district. The first battalion of this brigade to be formed was, however, the 60th. This was in 1911, with headquarters at Carlton, Melbourne. In the remainder of the Brigade area cadet training only was conducted during 1911-12 and 1912-13.

The 58th Battalion was formed on 1st July, 1913, when the 60th Battalion was divided. The second-in-command of the latter battalion, Major H. E. Elliott, was promoted and he became the 58th's first Commanding Officer. Later on he commanded the 15th Infantry Brigade in the Australian Imperial Force, and became Major-General H. E. Elliott, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., D.C.M., V.D., G.O.C. Third Division, Australian Military Forces, after the War. Another officer who went with him to the 58th was Lieutenant T. White, now a Lieutenant-Colonel and Minister for Customs in the Australian Commonwealth Government.

At the time, and until 1915, the 58th Battalion was organized on an eight-company basis. The area covered included Essendon, Moonee Ponds and Ascot Vale, which are suburbs of Melbourne, and the country northwards to the Murray River, an area approximately one hundred and eighty miles north to south by thirty miles wide.

On the outbreak of war, Lieutenant-Colonel Elliott was appointed to command the 7th Battalion, one of the specially-formed Volunteer battalions in the First

Division, Australian Imperial Force (A.I.F.). Many officers and men of the 58th Battalion joined the 7th with him.

The 57th Battalion of the Citizen Forces had not been formed, but on 1st July, 1915, the 58th Battalion Citizen Forces were divided, the country areas northwards of Melbourne to the Murray River going to form the 57th Battalion. The 58th Battalion retained the areas Essendon, Moonee Ponds and Ascot Vale.

The 58th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces was one of eight battalions formed at Tel-el-Kebir in Egypt in February, 1916, to complete the Fifth Australian Division.

The method of formation was for each of eight battalions of the First Division to give half their strength as the nucleus of a new unit, the parent unit of the 58th being the 6th Battalion. It formed part of the newly-constituted 15th Brigade, command of which was given to Brigadier-General H. E. Elliott, the old Commanding Officer of the 58th Essendon Rifles, and later of the 7th Battalion Australian Imperial Forces.

At the end of March the Fifth Division took over a sector of the Suez Canal defences, but its service in Egypt was short, and in the middle of June it sailed from Alexandria for Marseilles, and on 10th July moved into the line near Armentières. Nine days later the 58th were fighting in the Battle of Fromelles and suffered heavy casualties. In October a move was made to the Somme, where the battle had been in progress nearly four months. Here a sector was taken over in the vicinity of Flers and Gueudecourt, and throughout the winter the discomforts of trench life were suffered. In February the Germans withdrew to the Hindenburg Line closely followed by the Fifth Division, and many engagements were fought, the 58th under Lieutenant-Colonel C. A. Denetry distinguishing itself particularly on the 26th and 27th March, near Beaumetz.

On 12th May the 58th co-operated in an attack near Bullecourt for which they received high praise. It was in this engagement that Lieutenant R. V. Moon won the Victoria Cross for most conspicuous bravery in an attack on a German strong point. Though wounded three times, he led his men forward to the attack again and again and later busied himself with the consolidation of the captured position. "His bearing was magnificent, and was largely instrumental in winning a fight against superior numbers, safeguarding the flank of the attack on Bullecourt and gaining 184 prisoners and four machine guns." Later in the month the Fifth Division was withdrawn into reserve for a well-merited rest.

In September, 1917, the 58th were once more in action, being heavily attacked on the 25th near Polygon Wood but standing firm. The following day the wood was brilliantly captured by the Division. The winter was spent holding the line in the Messines—Wytshaete sector, and many raids were made on the enemy. During March, 1918, the Division moved south to assist in checking the great German offensive and at the end of April took part in the recapture of Villers Bretonneux, and the following month were holding the line on the Somme front; while here Lieutenant-Colonel C. V. Watson, D.S.O., assumed command of the 58th.

On the 8th August, 1918, the British Army assumed the offensive, and the attack made by the Australian Corps immediately south of the Somme was entirely successful. After his defeat General Ludendorff wrote: "August 8th was the black day in the history of the German Army." Later attacks were delivered on other portions of the front, and by the end of August the Germans were everywhere retreating. They were still, however, prepared to fight, and strong defensive positions were ready for occupation. During the first week of September the

Fifth Division broke through one of these lines by the capture of Peronne, the 58th Battalion (under Major H. D. G. Ferres, D.S.O., M.C.) being given the task of clearing the town, which it accomplished after bitter fighting, capturing more than a hundred prisoners.

After the Battle of Peronne all important enemy defences west of the Hindenburg Line had been captured, but this most formidable position still remained. The Fifth Division attacked in the Bullecourt sector supported by tanks, and after fierce fighting the line was broken on 1st October. This was the last fight of the Division.

It is impossible in the short space to give any adequate account of the gallantry and determination of the 58th Battalion during their two and a half years of active service. The honours gained included 1 Victoria Cross, 5 D.S.Os. (one with bar), 20 Military Crosses (two with bars), 15 D.C.Ms. (one with bar), 73 Military Medals (six with bars) and 7 M.S.Ms. In addition, twenty-seven officers and men were mentioned in despatches. The deaths from all causes during the war totalled thirty officers and almost six hundred other ranks.

Another Victoria Cross was won by Lieutenant F. H. Tubb, an old member of the 58th Battalion C.M.F., while serving with the 7th Battalion A.I.F. He won the medal for conspicuous bravery and devotion to duty at Lone Pine Trenches on the Gallipoli Peninsula on 8th August, 1915. "In the early morning the enemy made a determined counter-attack on the centre of the newly-captured trench held by Lieutenant Tubb. They advanced up a sap and blew in a sandbag barricade, leaving only one foot of it standing, but Lieutenant Tubb led his men back, repulsed the enemy and rebuilt the barricade, supported by strong bombing parties in the barricades, but on each occasion Lieutenant Tubb, although wounded in the hand and arm, held his ground with the greatest coolness, and finally succeeded in maintaining his position under very heavy bomb fire."

In 1919 the 58th Battalion Australian Imperial Force dispersed and a temporary Citizen Force regimental organization was formed. The Australian Imperial Forces personnel formed, theoretically, the 1st and 4th Battalions of the 58th Infantry Regiment, the Citizen Force formed the 2nd and 5th Battalions, and the Senior Cadets formed the 3rd and 6th Battalions. In the following years reductions in numbers undergoing training and in training time were made as economy measures. During this period the regimental organization lapsed, but the Battalion, now the 58th Battalion Australian Military Forces (A.M.F.), under Lieut.-Colonel C. V. Watson, D.S.O., who had commanded the latter unit in France, continued to carry on the traditions of the 58th Battalion Australian Imperial Force.

About 1924 the 58th Battalion again took over the country detachments at Shepparton, Wangaratta and Benalla, which have been retained up to the present time. From 1924 to 1930 the Battalion was commanded by Lieut.-Colonel F. O. Rodgers.

In 1929 the Government of the day decided to suspend the compulsory clauses of the Defence Act and to substitute a voluntary scheme of enlistment. Members under training and the number of days training were considerably reduced. At the present time (1934) members are required to do four days home training and six days in a camp of continuous training each year. Lieutenant-Colonel J. M. Edgar, V.D., who had assumed command in 1930, handed over to Lieutenant-Colonel N. F. Wellington, M.C., V.D., in April, 1934.

APPENDIX XII

MESS PLATE

1ST BATTALION.

SNUFF HORN.—The oldest piece of Mess property is the Snuff Horn presented by Sir John Dalrymple. It is not known under what circumstances, or when, it was presented.

PLATE.—Next in point of age comes all silver plate crested with the snake. As most of this bears on it the inscription "TALAVERA," it is reasonable to suppose that it was purchased between the years in which the Regiment returned from the Peninsular War (1814) and when it embarked for New South Wales (1817).

The side dishes, soup tureens, spoons, forks, etc., were purchased on the return of the Regiment to England in 1835, after their tour of service in New South Wales and India—most of this silver is dated 1826.

LAMPS.—Lieutenant-Colonel the Hon. A. A. Dalzell obtained command of the Regiment in 1841 and presented the two silver lamps on the plain columns.

GOBLETs.—On the embarkation of the Regiment at Gibraltar in 1858 for India all heavy baggage, including Mess plate and property, was left at Gibraltar by order. When a regular Mess was re-established at Cawnpore in 1859, the naked appearance of the Mess table, destitute of Mess plate, induced several officers to present silver goblets. Major R. Blakeney, Captain J. Bedingfield and Captain H. F. Brooke, each gave three; Major J. G. R. Aplin and Surgeon A. F. Shelton contributed two each; while Lieutenant E. Feneran, Lieutenant and Adjutant E. G. Horne and Lieutenant J. Rawlins each provided one. Sixteen were thus provided. The following year the number was increased to twenty-two, goblets being presented by Lieutenants G. Goddard and P. C. M. Marshall, Ensigns T. Hall, H. W. Hume, W. J. Kayworth and Captain W. Cummings. Similarly in 1861 five more were presented, Surgeon P. McDermott giving two, and Lieutenant R. Pennell, Lieutenant J. W. Munro (Bengal Army), and Lieutenant W. Rutherford (Bengal Army) one each. In 1862 further goblets were presented by Captain A. G. Wyse, Lieutenant G. T. Miller, Lieutenant C. H. Bergemen (Bengal Army), Lieutenant D. Inglis (Bengal Army) and Lieutenant F. B. Morris (Bengal Army); and in 1863 Major W. R. Williamson gave two, increasing the total to thirty-four. The remaining six goblets were given in 1875 by Lieutenant Sparrow (two), Major Fairclough, Surgeon T. M. Beamish, Surgeon-Major Bolton and Surgeon Roach.

PLATE FUND.—At Allahabad in 1860 it was suggested that the old custom of giving champagne on promotion should cease, and instead, that officers should contribute to a plate fund, and that the names of all officers who thus contributed should be recorded on the plate purchased by their contributions, thus permanently associating their names with the material prosperity and traditions of the Mess. In accordance with this suggestion Captains J. Farquhar and E. Feneran, who obtained their companies this year, each gave £20; Lieutenants C. H. Chauncy, T. Hall and E. C. Brown £10 each; and Lieutenant J. Rawlins £10 on appointment as Adjutant.

CLARET JUGS.—With this money two claret jugs were immediately purchased and the names of these officers inscribed on them.

CIGAR LAMPS.—The cigar lamps were presented by Lieutenant-Colonel A. N. Campbell and Lieutenant C. H. Chauncy, in 1861.

THE CENTRE-PIECE.—In 1866, at Aldershot Camp, it was decided to expend £350 of the Plate Fund to purchase a silver centre-piece. The following is a copy of a paragraph about it in the *Illustrated London News*, dated 2nd November, 1867.

“ The officers of the 48th Regiment at Aldershot Camp presented to their Mess two beautiful pieces of plate manufactured by Messrs. London and Ryder of New Bond Street, consisting of a cup and plateau for the centre piece of their table. The chief feature of the design is the appropriate introduction of military emblems and figures. The plateau represents bastions and lines of fortification, and is inscribed with the victories of the Regiment, namely, Toulouse, Vittoria, Peninsula, Douro, Talavera, Albuera, Badajos, Salamanca, Orthes, Pyrenees, Nivelle and Sevastopol. The cup is surmounted by an imposing figure of victory seated upon a cannon, and holding aloft the ‘conqueror’s Bays.’ The handles are formed of gorgons’ heads, entwined with serpents that coil round the cover. On each side are bas reliefs, the one modelled from West’s celebrated picture of the ‘Death of Wolfe,’ the other is the Storming of Badajos, in which the Regiment was conspicuously engaged, comprising the assault of ‘San Rogue’ on 12th April, 1812. The base of the cup is supported by four war dogs, chained, surmounted by shot and shell. Spear heads, gonfalons, banners, and military trophies complete the elevation. The total height of the cup and plateau above the table is two feet six inches, and the aggregate weight nearly four hundred and fifty ounces, of silver.”

MALTA RIFLE CUP AND GOBLETS.—In 1871 the 48th, 52nd, 1/24th, 31st, 64th and 87th Regiments quartered in Malta, each gave £10 towards a prize to be competed for by a team of six officers from each regiment, with the regulation Snider rifle. The match was won by the Regiment, and a silver jug and two goblets were purchased. Seven rounds were fired at 300, 400 and 600 yards. The winning team was composed as under:—Captain Ellis, Lieutenant Bowley, Lieutenant Pennell, Lieutenant Powlett, Captain Feneram, Lieutenant McLaughlan. The captain of the team was Lieutenant-Colonel Travers.

THE 89TH CUP.—At the Bangalore Rifle Meeting in 1874, the 89th Regiment (Royal Irish Fusiliers) challenged four members of any regiment to shoot for 200 rupees. The conditions were seven rounds with the Snider rifle at 200 and 300 yards. The 48th team (Captain Ellis, 50 ; Colour-Sergeant Shea, 41 ; Captain Lynch, 39 ; Captain Bowley, 38) won the cup.

THE BANGALORE CUP was won by a regimental team of eight at the Southern India Rifle Association Meeting in 1878.

THE MADRAS POLO CUP was won outright by the Regiment in 1897, having been won for three years in succession.

TALAVERA FIGURES.—Two figures of officers in the uniform of 1809 and 1909 were purchased by the past and present officers of the Regiment in 1909 to commemorate the centenary of the Battle of Talavera, the 1809 figure being purchased by past officers and the other by serving officers of the Regiment.

SILVER STATUETTE OF A SOLDIER IN FIGHTING ORDER OF 1918.—This statuette, modelled from Company Sergeant-Major Walton, was presented in 1919 by Major-General H. K. Bethell, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., who had commanded the 48th in 1916, to commemorate the services of the Regiment in the Great War.

THE TALAVERA CUP was purchased in 1877 by the officers of the Regiment, each officer giving two days’ pay.

CHALLENGE SHIELDS, ETC.

THE TRAVERS SHIELD.—Presented by Colonel Travers in 1875 to be held annually by the best shooting company.

THE FAWCETT CUP was presented in 1904 by Colonel Fawcett to be shot for annually by the companies of the Regiment, the conditions to be decided by the officers annually, owing to the frequent changes in the system of shooting.

THE WEALLENS BOWL was presented by Lieutenant-Colonel W. Weallens in 1906.

The above are some of the earlier and larger items of the Mess plate. Subscriptions to the Plate Fund are still given by officers on promotion, and increases to the regimental plate are frequently made by officers of the Regiment.

2ND BATTALION.

The earliest recorded presentation of silver to the 58th Mess was made in 1792, when Lieutenant Jeffries gave a two-handled cup, on which was inscribed, "He joined the 58th with pleasure and left it with regret." This cup, together with a snuff-box presented by Major John Crongey in 1798, was unfortunately stolen at Aldershot in 1898, and never recovered.

The oldest piece of silver in the Mess is now a cup presented by Captains Ogle and Sutton in 1799. Sutton was aide-de-camp to Abercromby in Alexandria in 1801.

Other presentations to the Regiment during the first century of its history include a fine silver soup tureen presented by Sir Gibson Carmichael, Bart., in 1804; a snuff-well by Lieutenant David Morrison in 1808; another by Lieutenant R. S. Parke in 1811; and a sauce tureen by Lieutenant-Colonel Henry in the same year.

The year 1851 is the opening of a period of fifty years during which the majority of the silver was collected. It was a period of peace, and the custom of presenting plate to the Regiment on joining and on leaving seems to have been well observed.

In that year Lieutenant James Duncan presented a snuff-box and H.E. Lieutenant-Colonel Wynyard another made of horse's hoof, "In memory of Old Sultan, accidentally killed, 1851."

Between 1856 and 1875 thirty-eight pint size silver beer goblets were presented by thirty-six officers, Major Hood and Captain Shiffner giving two each. These goblets are now unfortunately rather frail and are no longer in daily use.

In 1862 a collection of champagne goblets was started. They are of the usual champagne-glass shape and size with very handsome vine-pattern stems. There are thirty-three of them in all, the last having been presented in 1887.

The centre-piece was presented at Gosport in 1875 by Lieutenant-Colonel Whitehead and fifty-seven officers.

It consists of an ebony plinth with three feet, on which the Battle Honours of the Regiment are inscribed on silver scrolls, each guarded by a sphinx lying along one of the feet. The plinth also bears the names of the donors. On the plinth is set an ornamental silver platform bearing the figures of three soldiers in the uniforms of different periods between 1760 and 1860. They face outwards from a group of Colours, surmounted by a winged figure of Victory.

Some of the most beautiful silver in the Mess was acquired during the stay of the Regiment at Hong Kong, 1885-1889. The Hong Kong Community Cup, given to the 58th on leaving, is a large Chinese carved silver trophy of very fine

workmanship. The punch bowl, given by Mr. Chater in 1888 as an annual quarter-mile challenge cup, is a perfect example of the Chinese bamboo-pattern decoration.

Trophies won at this period include a Chinese silver cup with four dogs on the lid, first prize shooting for regiments abroad, 1885 ; a dragon-handled cup, second prize shooting, Army Inter-Regimental Abroad, 1887 ; a gourd, carved in hawthorn pattern, third prize in the Army Inter-Regimental Rifle Match, 1886 ; and a jug, carved in peacocks and may-blossom, won by Lieutenant C. S. Prichard in 1888.

All the silver presented and won at Hong Kong was the work of Wang-Hing and is of exceptionally beautiful craftsmanship.

In 1890 Colonel D. G. Anderson, as his farewell gift to the 58th, presented a trophy for inter-company volley firing, consisting of a fine Japanese bronze representing two figures engaged in a fight with quarter-staffs, mounted on a plinth bearing the regimental crest and carrying shields for the names of winners.

Two horse-hoof ashtrays, presented by Lieutenant A. R. Hill, V.C., on his being awarded the V.C. in 1881, are made of hooves of the horse he rode at Laing's Nek.

An interesting souvenir of the Regiment's service in New Zealand is an ancient carved model of a Maori war canoe, mounted on wheels as a table ornament.

There are, in addition to the pieces mentioned above, about fifty pieces of presentation silver given by officers to the 58th Mess, and some thirty trophies won outright, mainly for shooting. It is interesting to note that the size and value of the trophy has no relation to the merit of the win.

Among the more interesting of these are the following :—

A pair of two-handled cups won at the Transvaal Army Rifle Meeting in 1903, the first prizes for the inter-regimental rifle and revolver competitions.

The Malta Command Long-Distance Running Challenge Cup, won by the 58th in 1909, 1910, 1911, 1912, 1913.

A two-handled cup presented by General Heneker to the 58th in France, being the football cup for his division, in 1916.

Three large silver cups, presented to the 58th in 1932, 1933 and 1934, by the Aldershot Command Horse Show, on their winning the Connaught Cup for the Officers' Team Inter-Unit Riding Competition.

APPENDIX XIII

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENTAL DINNER CLUB

The object of this Club is to enable officers of the Regiment, both past and present, to meet annually so that retired officers may be brought in contact with those at present serving, and at the same time may have an opportunity of meeting those friends whom they otherwise have little chance of seeing ; also that officers of each battalion may have a chance of making the acquaintance of those serving with the other battalion.

All officers who serve or have served in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd Battalions at any time are eligible for membership ; officers of the Territorial Battalions may be asked by the Committee to become honorary members.

As far as can be ascertained, the idea of the Club originated with Colonel Travers, who was then commanding the 48th, and was inaugurated by him in 1874, but officers attending were limited to those on leave from the 48th (then stationed at Bellary, India), officers of the Depot and retired officers of the 48th.

The dinner was always held at the " Albion," a restaurant in the city, which was celebrated for its cellars of vintage wines, on the night prior to the Derby, and on Derby Day the Club hired a coach and four—or more, if required—for members to drive down to Epsom. The earliest chairman who can be traced was General McCleverty, who was followed by Colonel Whitehead.

In 1900, the Club was named the Northamptonshire Regimental Dinner Club. At this time officers of the Militia were also allowed to attend.

The dinners continued to be held at the " Albion " until 1907, excepting 1904, when it was held at the " Trocadero " ; from 1908 to 1911 at the Savoy Hotel, and from 1912 to 1914 at Oddenino's Imperial Restaurant.

No dinner was held in 1910 owing to the death of His Majesty King Edward VII.

The Dinner Club restarted in 1920 and the dinner was held annually at Oddenino's until 1925 ; from that date until 1931 the venue constantly changed, but from 1931 onwards it has been held at the United Service Club ; the evening of the day prior to the Derby is invariably the date on which it is held.

The annual subscription is one guinea for retired officers of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd Battalions and half a guinea for those at present serving at home or abroad.

Members paying the higher rate who attend the dinner pay an additional ten shillings ; those paying the lower rate an additional one pound.

APPENDIX XIV

COMRADES' ASSOCIATION, THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

The Comrades' Association owes its origin to the Northamptonshire Regiment Aid Society which was formed in 1909. The object of the Society was to assist deserving soldiers of the Regiment or their families and the first rules of the society were signed by Lieutenant-Colonel F. J. Parker, commanding the 1st Battalion; Lieutenant-Colonel E. Brereton, D.S.O., commanding the 2nd Battalion; Lieutenant-Colonel The Earl of Westmorland, commanding the 3rd Battalion; and Lieutenant-Colonel G. Ripley, commanding the 4th Battalion of the Northamptonshire Regiment.

Funds were provided in the main by subscriptions from past and present officers of the Regiment and during the first six months of its existence thirty-one cases were assisted.

The Society carried on its work steadily from the commencement, and retired ex-officers and others having an interest in the welfare of the Regiment kindly undertook the duties of Regimental Agents. The value of such help cannot be overrated, for the agents were a link between the old soldiers and the Regiment in which they had served, the Regiment received from its agents reliable information regarding the circumstances and precise needs of each case. The agents also visited the soldiers and families under their care, and assisted them by any means in their power.

It has been a principle of the Society that whenever possible assistance should be given in such a way that the position of each man or woman assisted should be made permanently more secure. In almost every case, the money given has been administered by some responsible person or society.

After the war there was a considerable increase in the number of applications for assistance. On the formation of the Society the problem presented by the enlistment of vast numbers of men for the war only had not been foreseen. These men were not eligible for relief under a strict interpretation of the rules of the Society, but the circumstances were exceptional and the distress in individual cases so great that temporary aid in the form of a gratuity was given in many cases.

In 1927 the Society was reorganized under the Colonel of the Regiment, General Sir Havelock Hudson, G.C.B., K.C.I.E. In future funds were to be provided not only by the officers and outside subscriptions, but in addition by serving non-commissioned officers and men for whom a sliding scale was suggested. At the same time the name of the Society was altered to that of "Comrades' Association."

In 1933 it was decided to issue a Comrades' Association Badge, with the following design :—Collar badge as worn by all ranks, metal, enamelled, showing dark blue inner ring, lettered in metal "Northamptonshire Regiment," showing white cross in centre, and white horse-shoe at foot, surrounded by wreath and crown at top, scroll at foot in red enamel, with metal word "COMRADES."

EXTRACT FROM THE RULES.

Rule 1.—The Association to be known as The Comrades' Association of The Northamptonshire Regiment. The registered address of the Association, The Barracks, Northampton.

Rule 2.—(a) To foster *esprit de corps* in all who have served in the Regiment.

(b) To assist, from the funds, all deserving cases of old members of the Regiment and their families as far as the executive may, after investigation, deem desirable.

(c) To bring together, at least once a year, past and present members of the Regiment.

Rule 3.—The Association shall be open for membership to all officers, warrant officers, non-commissioned officers and men, past and present, of units bearing the title The Northamptonshire Regiment or The Northamptonshire Yeomanry.

(a) Officers: Life membership on one donation of £10; membership, 10s. annually.

(b) Regular serving soldiers, 3s. a year.

(i) Subscriptions for six years constitutes life membership. (Men who enlisted before 1st July, 1928, become life members on payment of 5s. per annum up to the terms of their original engagement.)

(ii) Subscriptions will not be asked for from any Regular serving soldiers during the first six months of service.

(iii) Subscriptions from serving soldiers to be collected by battalions, and forwarded to the Honorary Treasurer by 1st July each year.

(c) Ex-soldiers' donations in the form of voluntary subscriptions will be gratefully received. Those paying 2s. a year on 1st July each year becoming members. One donation of £1 constitutes life membership. Cards will be issued to serving soldiers on enrolment by battalions, and by the Association in the case of ex-soldiers.

Rule 6.—A general meeting of the members of the Society to take place:—

(a) During the month of February each year.

(b) During "Cricket Week" each year.

Rule 7.—The funds of the Society should consist of:—

(a) Subscriptions from the battalions.

(b) Voluntary subscriptions from individual officers.

(c) Invested funds.

(d) Legacies, donations, etc.

The last-named shall be invested in the names of the trustees elected by the executive committee.

Rule 10.—That a yearly reunion to transact business and to include a dinner to be held on the Saturday of the Regimental Cricket Week at Northampton. Notification of the same to be published at least one month before the event in the local press.

Rule 11.—The Association wishes existing branches to continue and others to be formed where possible with similar objects. These would receive the encouragement and support of the Association. There are branches at present at London and Birmingham.

Rule 12.—The foregoing rules shall not be altered or added to without the consent of the Colonel of the Regiment and the Officers Commanding the Regular Battalions.

In 1933 The Northamptonshire Regimental Women's Association was formed, its object being to encourage co-operation throughout the families of the Regiment as a whole in order to benefit those families in need of help during times of sickness and stress. Members wear a badge similar to the Comrades' badge.

APPENDIX XV

OFFICERS WHO DIED IN THE GREAT WAR

| <i>Battalion.</i> | <i>Name and Rank.</i> | <i>Casualty.</i> | <i>Date.</i> | <i>Decoration.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 7th ... | Adderley, 2/Lieut. D. H. ... | Killed in action | 16/6/17 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Airy, Lieut. A. L. ... | Killed in action | 11/1/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Allport, 2/Lieut. I. M. ... | Killed in action | 9/1/17 | — |
| 3rd (M.G.C.) ... | Alnack, 2/Lieut. A. C. T. ... | Killed in action | 27/9/16 | — |
| 2nd (att. D.C.L.I.) | Alston, Lieut.-Col. E. A. B. ... | Killed in action | 11/8/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Antony, 2/Lieut. C. S. ... | Killed in action | 19/9/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Attwater, Capt. H. St. J. ... | Killed in action | 26/6/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Badcock, Lieut. E. D. ... | Killed in action | 22/7/16 | — |
| 3rd ... | Ballard, 2/Lieut. F. W. ... | Killed in action | 11/10/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Barthorp, Lieut. M. A. R. ... | Killed in action | 20/7/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Barron, 2/Lieut. V. ... | Died of wounds | 4/11/18 | — |
| 6th ... | Bates, Lieut. A. C. ... | Died of wounds | 20/10/17 | M.C. |
| 6th ... | Batty, Capt. G. G. H. ... | Died of wounds | 27/9/16 | — |
| 7th ... | Beale, 2/Lieut. N. S. C. G. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 1st (2nd) ... | Belding, 2/Lieut. C. ... | Killed in action | 11/3/15 | — |
| 3rd (1/4th) ... | Bell, 2/Lieut. R. J. ... | Killed in action | 2/11/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Bentley, Capt. G. M. ... | Died of wounds | 29/10/14 | — |
| 2nd ... | Beresford, Lieut. C. Z. de la P. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 8th (2nd) ... | Bird, Lieut. W. C. ... | Killed in action | 4/3/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Bishop, Capt. R. B. ... | Killed in action | 19/8/15 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Blacker, Lieut. G. F. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Boal, 2/Lieut. W. W. ... | Died of wounds | 10/10/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Borrow, Lieut. C. E. ... | Died | 24/3/19 | — |
| 4th ... | Borrow, Lieut. F. G. L. ... | Died of wounds | 22/8/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Bostock, Lieut. E. N. ... | Killed in action | 27/5/18 | M.C. |
| 3rd (R.F.C.) ... | Boulton, Lieut. A. E. ... | Killed in action | 17/3/17 | — |
| 3rd (6th) ... | Boulton, 2/Lieut. J. B. ... | Killed in action | 17/2/17 | — |
| 3rd (1/7th K.A.R.) | Brown, Lieut. C. J. J. ... | Died | 18/11/18 | — |
| 3rd ... | Buckle, Lieut.-Col. A. C. ... | Died | 21/12/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Buckle, Lieut.-Col. C. G. ... | Killed in action | 27/5/18 | D.S.O., M.C. |
| 4th ... | Bull, 2/Lieut. R. P. ... | Killed in action | 30/10/18 | — |
| | Burke, Lt. & Qr.-Mr. E. T. ... | Killed in action | 25/4/18 | — |
| 7th ... | Burnham, 2/Lieut. A. F. T. ... | Killed in action | 28/6/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Burrows, Capt. A. H. ... | Killed in action | 13/3/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Capell, Capt. A. G. C. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Carey, Capt. B. C. ... | Died of wounds | 22/9/18 | M.C. |
| 2nd ... | Carritt, Capt. H. W. ... | Killed in action | 8/7/16 | — |
| 5th ... | Cartledge, 2/Lieut. C. A. ... | Killed in action | 30/7/16 | — |
| 8th (M.G.C.) ... | Cartwright, Lieut. S. ... | Killed in action | 17/8/16 | — |
| (1/5th Norf.) | Catherall, 2/Lieut. W. C. ... | Killed in action | 2/11/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Chalmers, Capt. D. ... | Killed in action | 18/9/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Chambers, 2/Lieut. N. A. ... | Died of wounds | 17/8/16 | — |
| 5th ... | Chisholm, Lieut. K. J. ... | Died of wounds | 18/8/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Clark, Major G. M. ... | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Clark, Capt. N. T. ... | Died of wounds | 1/4/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Clarke, 2/Lieut. A. H. G. ... | Killed in action | 9/9/16 | — |
| 7th ... | Clarke, Lieut. C. L. ... | Killed in action | 8/10/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Clarke, 2/Lieut. C. F. ... | Died of wounds | 1/10/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Clayton, Capt. J. G. ... | Killed in action | 20/8/16 | — |
| 3rd (6th) ... | Close, 2/Lieut. W. C. ... | Killed in action | 20/3/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Cole, 2/Lieut. E. L. ... | Killed in action | 27/9/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Colyer-Fergusson, Capt. T. R. ... | Died of wounds | 31/7/17 | V.C. |
| 1st ... | Cooper, 2/Lieut. D. K. ... | Killed in action | 9/9/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Cooper, 2/Lieut. G. S. ... | Killed in action | 17/2/17 | — |

GG

THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

| <i>Battalion.</i> | <i>Name and Rank.</i> | <i>Casualty.</i> | <i>Date.</i> | <i>Decoration.</i> |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1st ... | Cowley, Lieut. C. S. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Crawford, 2/Lieut. C. N. ... | Killed in action | 8/4/16 | — |
| (R.F.C.) ... | Crean, Capt. T. ... | Killed | 26/10/14 | — |
| 4th ... | Crockett, Lieut. C. J. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Curzen, 2/Lieut. R. ... | Killed in action | 5/4/18 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Davison, Lieut. R. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 3rd (6th) ... | Dawson, 2/Lieut. R. G. ... | Killed in action | 18/9/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Dickson, Capt. B. B. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Duchesne, 2/Lieut. R. E. ... | Killed in action | 8/10/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Duncan, 2/Lieut. C. W. ... | Killed in action | 22/11/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Eden, Lieut. B. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 1st (2nd T.M.B.) ... | Elliot, 2/Lieut. N. ... | Killed in action | 9/7/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Elston, Capt. C. D. ... | Died of wounds | 22/11/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Erle, Capt. C. ... | Died | 10/2/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Evans, Capt. D. L. ... | Died of wounds | 26/9/16 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Farrar, Capt. J. H. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Farrell, 2/Lieut. R. ... | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 8th (1/5th Glos.) ... | Farrimond, 2/Lieut. J. ... | Killed in action | 21/7/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Fisher, 2/Lieut. C. J. ... | Died of wounds | 28/7/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Fisher, Capt. W. S. ... | Killed in action | 23/3/18 | — |
| 6th ... | Fletcher, 2/Lieut. A. F. ... | Killed in action | 12/5/18 | — |
| 6th ... | Freeman, 2/Lieut. T. ... | Killed in action | 17/2/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Frend, 2/Lieut. H. P. ... | Killed in action | 20/3/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Fricker, Lieut. A. W. ... | Killed in action | 29/5/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Frost, Lieut. J. W. ... | Died | 23/3/19 | M.C. |
| 1st ... | Giddy, 2/Lieut. N. L. ... | Killed in action | 15/8/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Gordon, 2/Lieut. C. G. ... | Died of wounds | 17/9/14 | — |
| 2nd ... | Gordon, Lieut. G. D. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Gordon, Capt. R. E. ... | Killed in action | 15/9/14 | — |
| 4th (M.G.C.) ... | Gorrings, Lieut. N. R. ... | Killed in action | 10/4/18 | — |
| 5th ... | Gould, Lieut. W. J. ... | Killed in action | 23/8/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Grace, Capt. H. C. ... | Died of wounds | 2/9/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Greenwood, 2/Lieut. C. S. ... | Killed in action | 20/8/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Growse, Capt. J. H. ... | Died of wounds | 1/4/18 | — |
| 5th ... | Gurney, 2/Lieut. F. A. ... | Died | 23/3/16 | — |
| 4th (R.F.C.) ... | Guy, Capt. C. G. ... | Died of wounds | 12/8/17 | — |
| 7th ... | Hadley, Capt. P. S. ... | Died | 24/10/18 | M.C. |
| 2nd ... | Haldane, Major L. A. ... | Killed in action | 2/4/16 | D.S.O. |
| 2nd ... | Hall, 2/Lieut. R. L. ... | Killed in action | 27/5/18 | — |
| 6th ... | Hall, 2/Lieut. W. H. ... | Killed in action | 5/4/18 | — |
| 8th (7th) ... | Halliday, 2/Lieut. L. H. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Hamilton, 2/Lieut. N. C. ... | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 7th ... | Hammond, 2/Lieut. J. C. ... | Killed in action | 11/4/17 | — |
| 3rd (6th) ... | Harper, Lieut. W. L. ... | Killed in action | 1/7/18 | — |
| (R.F.C.) ... | Harston, 2/Lieut. W. H. ... | Killed in action | 23/11/17 | — |
| 8th ... | Hartigan, 2/Lieut. T. J. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 8th (6th) ... | Hayward, 2/Lieut. H. W. ... | Killed in action | 26/9/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Heather, Lieut. P. A. ... | Killed in action | 12/7/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Henson, Major A. C. ... | Killed in action | 22/8/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Heriz-Smith, 2/Lieut. D. M. H. ... | Died of wounds | 17/2/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Heywood, Lieut. J. G. C. ... | Killed in action | 30/8/15 | — |
| 2nd ... | Higginbotham, Major C. E. ... | Killed in action | 11/3/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Higham, 2/Lieut. P. H. ... | Killed in action | 17/2/17 | M.C. |
| 2nd ... | Higson, 2/Lieut. J. T. ... | Died of wounds | 4/8/18 | — |
| 3rd (7th) ... | Hills, 2/Lieut. F. M. ... | Killed in action | 27/7/17 | — |
| 4th (R.F.C.) ... | Hope, Lieut. H. B. T. ... | Killed in action | 26/4/17 | — |
| 5th ... | Howard, Lieut. N. ... | Died of wounds | 1/8/15 | — |
| 4th (R.A.F.) ... | Howell, Lieut. E. I. ... | Died | 21/4/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Hunt, Capt. G. W. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 5th ... | Hunter, 2/Lieut. J. W. ... | Died of wounds | 9/7/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Jackson, 2/Lieut. N. W. G. ... | Killed in action | 9/9/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Jacques, Lieut. E. W. R. ... | Killed in action | 17/8/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Jarvis, 2/Lieut. A. S. G. ... | Killed in action | 31/10/14 | — |

| <i>Battalion.</i> | <i>Name and Rank.</i> | <i>Casualty.</i> | <i>Date.</i> | <i>Decoration.</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 2nd ... | Jarvis, 2/Lieut. F. C. ... | Killed in action | 7/7/16 | — |
| 4th (M.G.C.) ... | Jones, Lieut. R. N. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | — |
| 1st (1/5th Norf.) ... | Joseph, 2/Lieut. W. G. A. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |
| 4th ... | Kilsby, 2/Lieut. G. A. ... | Killed in action | 18/9/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Knight, Capt. F. E. ... | Killed in action | 4/3/17 | — |
| 6th (7th) ... | Knight, 2/Lieut. F. ... | Killed in action | 28/5/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Knight, 2/Lieut. R. V. H. ... | Killed in action | 19/7/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Lambert, Lieut. J. E. D. ... | Killed in action | 2/11/15 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Latham, Lieut.-Col. S. G. ... | Killed in action | 24/4/18 | D.S.O. |
| 6th ... | Law, Lieut. E. F. ... | Killed in action | 5/4/18 | — |
| 7th ... | Laycock, Lieut. L. J. P. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | — |
| 7th ... | Lea, 2/Lieut. M. B. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Leadbitter, 2/Lieut. G. G. ... | Killed in action | 19/10/17 | — |
| 3rd ... | Lees, 2/Lieut. P. B. ... | Killed in action | 11/3/15 | — |
| 1st (Gar. Bn.) ... | Lidington, 2/Lieut. N. H. ... | Killed in action | 15/9/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Lines, Lieut. F. L. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |
| 3rd (7th) ... | Litchfield, 2/Lieut. T. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | — |
| 5th ... | Littledale, Capt. R. ... | Killed in action | 30/11/17 | — |
| 7th ... | Lloyd, 2/Lieut. H. ... | Killed in action | 12/8/16 | — |
| 3rd (7th) ... | Lloyd, 2/Lieut. W. B. ... | Killed in action | 10/8/17 | — |
| 7th ... | Lucas, 2/Lieut. C. L. C. ... | Died of wounds | 30/6/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Lucy, Lieut. R. E. ... | Died of wounds | 20/3/15 | — |
| 8th (1/5th Glos.) ... | Lycett, 2/Lieut. W. B. ... | Died of wounds | 24/7/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Lys, 2/Lieut. F. G. B. ... | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Mace, 2/Lieut. E. ... | Killed in action | 10/8/17 | — |
| 7th ... | McRae, 2/Lieut. P. McK. ... | Killed in action | 24/12/17 | — |
| 4th (R.F.C.) ... | Manfield, Lieut. N. F. ... | Killed in action | 9/9/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Marlow, Lieut. S. J. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Marshall, 2/Lieut. B. G. ... | Killed in action | 5/4/16 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Martin, 2/Lieut. G. H. ... | Killed in action | 26/12/17 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Mason, 2/Lieut. E. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 3rd ... | Matthews, 2/Lieut. E. A. ... | Killed in action | 14/3/15 | — |
| 7th (R.A.F.) ... | Meadway, 2/Lieut. B. W. ... | Died | 4/6/18 | — |
| 7th ... | Millard, Major H. ... | Died of wounds | 11/4/17 | — |
| 7th ... | Mobbs, Lieut.-Col. E. R. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | D.S.O. |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Monro, Lieut. K. E. ... | Died of wounds | 14/5/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Morley, Lieut. J. N. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Motion, Lieut. S. H. ... | Died of wounds | 1/8/17 | — |
| 8th ... | Moulding, Lieut. S. D. ... | Killed in action | 22/8/15 | — |
| 4th ... | Murray, Capt. R. L. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Myers, 2/Lieut. T. W. ... | Died of wounds | 19/11/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Neale, 2/Lieut. H. C. T. ... | Died of wounds | 1/1/16 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Neish, 2/Lieut. H. T. L. ... | Killed in action | 31/8/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Nelles, 2/Lieut. N. C. ... | Killed in action | 29/1/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Neville, Capt. F. S. ... | Died of wounds | 24/11/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Noakes, 2/Lieut. G. V. ... | Died of wounds | 18/8/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Norman, Major H. H. ... | Killed in action | 10/11/14 | — |
| 7th ... | Nott, Lieut. G. V. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 8th (1st) ... | Nye, Lieut. C. ... | Killed in action | 17/8/16 | — |
| 1st (R.A.F.) ... | O'Brien, Capt. H. D. S. ... | Killed in action | 14/9/18 | M.C. |
| 2nd ... | Oldfield, Capt. J. B. ... | Killed in action | 16/8/17 | M.C. |
| (2/4th Glos.) ... | Owen, Lieut. A. E. ... | Died | 18/10/16 | — |
| 5th ... | Page, 2/Lieut. A. C. D. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Paget, Lieut. G. G. B. ... | Killed in action | 14/9/14 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Palmer, 2/Lieut. E. G. ... | Killed in action | 4/3/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Parker, Capt. R. B. ... | Killed in action | 19/9/14 | — |
| 7th ... | Parkin, Lieut.-Col. A. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | — |
| 2nd ... | Peake, 2/Lieut. J. T. ... | Died of wounds | 11/5/15 | — |
| (R.F.C.) ... | Pearson, 2/Lieut. A. J. ... | Killed in action | 9/3/17 | M.C. |
| 7th ... | Pearson, Capt. R. ... | Killed in action | 9/10/18 | M.C. |
| 7th ... | Phipps, Lieut. L. L. ... | Died of wounds | 28/9/15 | — |
| 2nd (1/4th) ... | Pickering, 2/Lieut. G. A. R. ... | Killed in action | 2/11/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Piggott, Capt. W. ... | Killed in action | 24/3/18 | — |

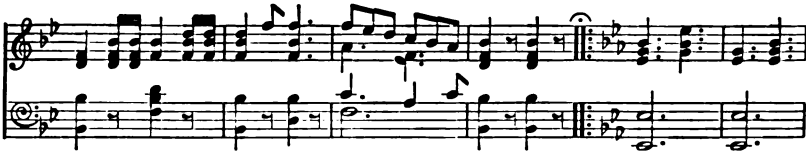
| <i>Battalion.</i> | <i>Name and Rank.</i> | <i>Casualty.</i> | <i>Date.</i> | <i>Decoration.</i> |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1st ... | Pilkington, Lieut. J. B. ... | Killed in action | 20/4/18 | — |
| 4th ... | Pittom, Lieut. W. P. ... | Died | 10/10/14 | — |
| 6th (12th Mx.) ... | Podmore, Major H. ... | Killed in action | 31/12/17 | D.S.O. |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Powell, Capt. T. G. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 2nd ... | Power, Capt. H. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 2nd ... | Prevel, Lieut. J. A. ... | Killed in action | 29/9/18 | M.C. |
| 1st ... | Ramsay, Lieut. H. C. ... | Died of wounds | 22/4/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Randall, 2/Lieut. R. W. S. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 2nd ... | Rastrick, Lieut. U. ... | Killed in action | 14/12/14 | — |
| 7th ... | Rathbone, Lieut. G. P. ... | Killed in action | 21/3/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Rawlins, 2/Lieut. L. J. ... | Killed in action | 7/11/16 | — |
| 1/2nd (R.A.F.) ... | Rayner, Lieut. A. S. ... | Died of wounds | 15/7/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Read, Capt. A. M. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | V.C. |
| 3rd (6th) ... | Redhead, Lieut. H. A. ... | Killed in action | 7/8/18 | — |
| 8th (1st) ... | Renton, 2/Lieut. C. ... | Killed in action | 6/3/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Ripley, Col. G. E. ... | Died of wounds | 16/10/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Robertson, 2/Lieut. H. S. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Robinson, Capt. L. J. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 1st (10th Worc.) ... | Royston-Pigott, Lieut.-Col. G. A. ... | Killed in action | 3/7/16 | D.S.O. |
| 2nd ... | Rushton, Capt. E. B. L. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/16 | — |
| 2nd (1st) ... | Russell, Capt. W. R. ... | Killed in action | 21/10/14 | — |
| 2nd ... | Ryan, 2/Lieut. D. W. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Saunders, 2/Lieut. C. F. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Savage, Capt. J. A. ... | Killed in action | 18/9/14 | — |
| 6th ... | Scales, 2/Lieut. P. J. ... | Killed in action | 17/2/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Selby, Lieut. M. J. ... | Killed in action | 7/7/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Serjeant, Lieut. C. L. ... | Died of wounds | 21/6/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Shankester, Lieut. G. ... | Killed in action | 9/10/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Shaw, Major G. T. ... | Killed in action | 7/7/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Sheehan, Lieut. G. K. P. ... | Killed in action | 28/8/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Shepherd, Major S. le F. ... | Killed in action | 10/8/19 | M.C. |
| 8th (5th) ... | Sheriff, 2/Lieut. A. N. ... | Killed in action | 30/10/14 | — |
| 7th ... | Shield, 2/Lieut. F. D. ... | Killed in action | 6/7/16 | — |
| 4th ... | Shortt, Capt. V. D. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Skillington, 2/Lieut. H. ... | Killed in action | 18/8/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Simons, 2/Lieut. J. H. S. ... | Killed in action | 10/7/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Smalley, 2/Lieut. W. H. ... | Died of wounds | 28/10/18 | — |
| 4th ... | Smith, 2/Lieut. G. H. ... | Died of wounds | 10/7/17 | — |
| 1st (R.F.C.) ... | Smith, 2/Lieut. F. C. ... | Killed in action | 10/7/17 | — |
| 2nd (K.A.R.) ... | Smithett, 2/Lieut. G. C. E. ... | Killed in action | 12/10/17 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Sparrow, Capt. W. G. M. ... | Killed in action | 8/7/17 | — |
| 8th (7th) ... | Stanfield, 2/Lieut. W. B. ... | Died of wounds | 29/9/15 | — |
| 4th ... | Stevenson, Lieut. I. H. ... | Killed in action | 16/2/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Stevenson, Lieut. F. C. ... | Killed in action | 22/9/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Stocker, Capt. St. J. C. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Stone, 2/Lieut. W. H. ... | Killed in action | 26/9/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Swell, Capt. A. E. ... | Killed in action | 17/8/16 | D.S.O. |
| 3rd (S.W.B.) ... | Syftret, 2/Lieut. E. T. S. ... | Died of wounds | 17/8/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Taylor, 2/Lieut. R. P. ... | Killed in action | 10/7/16 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Tayton, 2/Lieut. W. E. ... | Killed in action | 10/8/17 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Thomas, 2/Lieut. A. L. ... | Killed in action | 24/4/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Thompson, 2/Lieut. H. ... | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| (R.F.C.) ... | Thomson, Lieut. G. B. ... | Died of wounds | 12/7/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Thorneley, 2/Lieut. M. ... | Killed | 3/12/16 | — |
| 7th ... | Tolmie, 2/Lieut. G. L. ... | Died of wounds | 19/11/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Tosdevin, 2/Lieut. W. C. ... | Killed in action | 20/11/17 | — |
| (9th Essex) ... | Trefusis, Capt. H. W. ... | Killed in action | 7/11/16 | — |
| 1st ... | Trevor, Lieut.-Col. H. E. ... | Killed in action | 11/4/17 | — |
| 1st ... | Tuckey, Lieut. A. W. ... | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | — |
| 8th (5th) ... | Twigg, Capt. F. W. ... | Killed in action | 24/9/18 | — |
| 4th ... | Tyrrell, 2/Lieut. J. L. A. ... | Killed in action | 3/3/16 | — |
| | Underwood, Capt. H. H. ... | Killed in action | 19/4/17 | — |

| <i>Battalion.</i> | <i>Name and Rank.</i> | <i>Casualty.</i> | <i>Date.</i> | <i>Decoration.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 7th ... | Urquhart, Lieut. J. L. | Killed in action | 25/9/15 | — |
| 1st ... | Vandell, Lieut. H. I. ... | Killed in action | 10/11/14 | — |
| 3rd (2nd) ... | Vernon, Capt. G. B. | Killed in action | 25/4/18 | — |
| 2nd ... | Viney, 2/Lieut. C. H. | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 3rd ... | Wainwright, 2/Lieut. G. C. | Died of wounds | 22/12/14 | — |
| 6th ... | Walker, 2/Lieut. G. H. | Killed in action | 10/11/17 | — |
| 3rd ... | Wallace, Capt. A. M. ... | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 7th ... | Ward, Lieut. T. P. ... | Killed in action | 31/7/17 | — |
| 6th ... | Warner, 2/Lieut. H. J. | Killed in action | 3/6/17 | — |
| 2nd ... | Watts, Capt. C. H. R. | Killed in action | 25/12/14 | — |
| 6th ... | Webster, 2/Lieut. A. H. | Killed in action | 25/4/16 | — |
| 1st ... | White, Capt. E. E. ... | Killed in action | 14/9/14 | — |
| 6th ... | Wilcox, Lieut. F. A. C. | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Williams, Lieut.-Col. F. T. | Died of wounds | 12/7/16 | — |
| (1st L.N. Lancs.) | Williams, Lieut. T. W. | Killed in action | 9/5/15 | — |
| 3rd (1st) ... | Willoson, Lieut. F. G. D. | Killed in action | 24/9/18 | — |
| 1st ... | Wilson, 2/Lieut. C. E. | Killed in action | 16/8/16 | — |
| 6th ... | Winkworth, 2/Lieut. H. E. V. | Died of wounds | 18/2/17 | — |
| 3rd ... | Wood, 2/Lieut. J. G. ... | Killed in action | 3/10/16 | — |
| 2nd ... | Wood-Martin, Capt. J. I. | Killed in action | 12/3/15 | — |
| 6th ... | Woulfe, 2/Lieut. G. L. | Killed in action | 14/7/16 | — |
| 3rd (24th T.M.B.) | Young, 2/Lieut. G. A. | Killed in action | 4/3/17 | — |

REGIMENTAL MARCHES OF
THE NORTHAMPTONSHIRE REGIMENT

1st BATTALION.

The musical score is written in 6/8 time, key of B-flat major (two flats). It consists of six systems of two staves each. The first system shows the beginning of the march. The second system continues the melody. The third system features a repeat sign. The fourth system includes first and second endings. The fifth system continues the melody. The sixth system concludes the march.

**2nd BATTALION.**

**REGIMENTAL SLOW MARCH.**

INDEX

INDEX

A

Aboukir Bay, landing at, 92
 Aden, 283
 Ahmednagar, 283
 Aidea da Ponte, combat of, 154
 Air, move by, 343
 Albuera, Battle of, 146
Alcmene, wreck of, 208
 Aldershot, 210, 215, 224, 267
 Alexandria, 221
 Alexandria, Battle of, 94
 Alexandria, fall of, 99
 Allahabad, 214, 221, 281
 Allen, F., 289
 Allen, Drummer, 206
 Alloa, 78
 America, 23, 58
 American War, 183
 Ansell, Sergeant, 66
 Anderson, D. G., 266
 Anstruther, Robert, 27, 59, 385
 Antigua, 81
 Aplin, J. G. R., 222, 223
 Arms, 409
 Ashworth, Major, 163
 Athlone, 198
 Auckland, 201, 207, 209, 212
 Australia 187, 199
 Australian Military Forces, 48th Bn., 335, 436
 Australian Military Forces, 58th Bn., 335, 439
 Aylesham, 108

B

Badajoz, 146, 157
 Badges, 77, 119, 236, 335
 Baillie, L., 259, 261
 Bally, St. J., 223
 Banbury, 153
 Band, 77, 101, 139, 188, 243
 Bangalore, 269
 Barbados, 81
 Barber, W. D., 348
 Barkley, M. D., 337, 338
 Barnstaple, 85
 Barracks, 123, 240
 Barry, S. L., 323
 Barton, C. W., 289, 300, 346, 347
 Bath, 85
 Battle Honours, 335
 Baugh, Launcelot, 61, 385
 Beattie, S. H., 340
 Beauclerk, Lord Henry, 13, 380
 Beer Money, 126
 Belfast, 198
 Bell, T., 153, 172, 176, 178, 192, 194, 196
 Bellary, 192, 223

Belmont, Battle of, 286
 Benares, 214
 Bentinck, Lord Frederick, 185, 386
 Berridge, F. R., 337
 Beverley, 85
 Bideford, 59
 Billeting, 123, 240
 Birr, 109, 185
 Bissett, F. W. L., 345
 Boer War, The First, 254
 Bolton, 196
 Bolton, A. C., 303
 Bond, W. D., 232, 233, 265
 Booth, Haworth, 225
 Boulcott's Farm, 205
 Boulter, W. E., V.C., 330
 Bounty, 240
 Brereton, E. F., 303, 304
 Bridge, Cyprien, 201, 209, 210
 Bridgestock, Sergeant, 261
 Briggs, S. P., 336
 Brighton, 185
 Brooke, John, 153
 Brooke, Major, 145, 149, 152
 Brooke, W. H., 153
 Brown, John, 323, 327, 336
 Browne, George Fitzherbert, 335, 389
 Browne, William, 61, 382
 Bulwer, E. A. E., 275
 Burditt, H., 323
 Burgos, siege of, 165
 Burgoyne, J., 59, 60
 Burke, Edward, 73
 Burke, H. E. W., 294
 Burnley, 210
 Burton, R., 22, 26, 32, 37, 39, 41, 43, 44, 46,
 49, 51, 52
 Busaco, Battle of, 144
 Bushrangers, 190

C

Cadiz, 90
 Cairns, W. H., 219
 Cairo, capture of, 98
 Calcutta, 221
 Calpee, 221
 Campbell, A. N., 222
 Campbell, Lieutenant-Colonel, 174, 178
 Cannanore, 192, 194, 223
 Canterbury, 185, 196
 Capper, W. B., 281
 Captured at Sea (58th), 57
 "Cardwell System," 235
 Carnwath, Earl of, 197, 222, 223, 384
 Castalla, Battle of, 181
 Cavan, Earl of, 185, 386

Cawnpore, 221
 Ceylon, 186
 Chatham, 85, 185, 186
 Chaytor, R. J., 271
 Chelmsford, 101, 109, 153
 Cherat, 214
 Cholmondley, James, 3, 15, 17, 380
 Cimitière, G., 151, 189, 191, 192
 Cirencester, 85
 Ciudad Rodrigo, 156
 Clifford, Lieutenant-Colonel, 186
 Clonmel, 187
 Clonoony, 109
 Clothing, 409
 Cochrane, Gavin, 66
 Colchester, 101, 267, 348
 Coldwell, W. G. A., 348
 Colonel of the Regiment, 4, 244
 Colours, 52, 61, 78, 102, 105, 172, 185, 186, 196, 210, 224, 259, 281, 303, 323, 325, 335, 336, 401, 426.
 Colyer-Ferguson, T. R., V.C., 326
 Commissions, purchase of, 4, 121, 237
 Compton, T. E., 255, 275, 277
 Comrades' Association, 447
 Conway, Henry Seymour, 21, 381
 Cook, S. H. S., 323
 Coorg Campaign, 192
 Corfu, 217
 Cork, 30, 59, 61, 99, 108, 187, 198
 County march, 283
 County titles, 118
 Crimean War, 216
 Crossman, G. L., 347
 Crougey, Lieutenant-Colonel, 95
 Culloden, Battle of, 18
 Cunningham, Robert, 59, 61, 385
 Curragh, 109, 210, 214, 222, 224
 Curtis, E. G., 323, 327
 Cuthbertson, J., 189

D

Dagshai, 282
 D'Aguilar, George Charles, 208, 388
 Dalhousie, 345
 Dalzell, Hon. A. A., 197, 222, 223, 384
 Darjeeling, 214
 Darwell, F. W., 287
 Daventry, 78
 Delhi, 282
 Denny, Captain, 204
 Denny, H. C., 286, 300, 303
 Devonport, 283
 Dinner Club, 446
 Discipline, 9, 48, 59, 128, 239
 Dixon, Lieutenant, 149
 Dobbin, L. G. W., 275, 246
 Dolphin, H., 261
 Dominica, 62, 63
 Donelan, A., 194
 Donellan, Anthony H., 142
 Donellan, Charles, 109, 110, 132, 141
 Dorman, L. P., 323
 Douglas, Sir Kenneth, Bart., 185, 186, 387

Douro, passage of the, 130
 Dover, 215
 Dragoons, 12th, 91
 Dragoons, 26th, 91
 Dress, 7, 9, 28, 30, 121, 126, 241, 335
 Drew, H. R. H., 339, 341
 Drill, 10, 59, 120, 244
 Drogheda, 79
 Drum, the Peninsular, 164, 173
 Drum-Major, 9, 102, 128, 141, 164, 228, 244
 Dublin, 59, 109, 186, 187, 198, 210
 Duckworth, G. H., 109, 130, 145, 150
 Dunbar, Thomas, 22, 26, 382

E

Eastbourne, 108
 Echalar, combat at, 173
 Edinburgh, 14, 78, 186
 Egypt, 91, 105
 Ellis, W. T., 266
 Enlistment, 6, 126, 239
 Enniskillen, 198, 210
 Enslin Station, action at, 292
 Equipment, 409
 Erskine, James, 131, 188
 Eunson, G. S., 323*
 Exeter, 29

F

Facings, 9, 28, 236, 335
 Fairclough, E. D'H., 223
 Falkirk, Battle of, 15
 Falmouth, 29
 Farnham, 85
 Fawcett, W. F., 281, 300
 Fenians, 222, 223
 Fermoy, 187
 Fitzroy, Lord Charles, 109, 110, 383
 Flanders, 12, 19
 Flank companies, 112, 121, 145
 Flogging, 9, 128, 133, 175, 228, 239
 Fontenoy, 13
 Formation of Service Battalions, 108
 Formation of the 48th, 2
 Formation of the 58th, 27
 Fort Attock, 214
 Foster, C. E., 211, 266
 Fraser, R. H., 278
 Freeland, L. G., 289
 French Regiment, 32nd, 97
 French Revolution, 80
 Frith, J. W., 186
 Froome, Major, 108
 Fyzabad, 281

G

Gaeta, 111
 Galway, 59
 Garrard, W. V., 338
 Genoa, 105
 Gibbs, H. D., 194
 Gibraltar, 59, 65, 89, 102, 196, 221
 Gifford, C. L., 275

McKemptie, Lieutenant, 36
 Medals, 240, 242
 Mellows, A. H., 337, 338
 Mercara, 193
 Mess Plate, 442
 Metcalfe, H. C., 336
 Methodists, 190
 Middlemore, George, 141, 142, 383
 Militia, 236, 246
 Minorca, 89, 104, 181
 Mobbs, E. R., 330
 Modder River, 291
 Monongahela, Battle of, 25
 Montmorency, Battle of, 39
 Montreal, 51
 Montresor, Captain, 36
 Montserrat, 81
 Morisett, Major, 190
 Morris, A. W., 225, 229, 264, 265
 Mounted Infantry, 266
 Mowatt, C. R. J., 287, 341, 347
 Muirhead, T. S., 343, 345
 Mulliner, A. F., 322
 Murray, Sergeant-Major, 261
 Musketry, 267, 281, 283

N

Naas, 187
 Newcastle-on-Tyne, 210
 Newport, 198
 Newry, 210
 New York, 27, 52
 New Zealand, 199
 Nive, Battles of the, 176
 Nivelle, Battle of, 175
 Norgate, Lieutenant, 225
 Norman, Harold, 225
 North Auckland Regiment, 15th, 209, 335, 431
 Northampton, 109, 153
 Northamptonshire Volunteers, 306
 Norwich, 3, 100
 Nugent, Major, 208
 Nuthall, H. M., 229

O

O'Brien, D., 194
 O'Brien, Major, 167
 O'Donel, C. M., 261
 Ohaiawai, 202
 Okaihu, 201
 Orde Powlett, T. C., 225, 267
 Organization, 4, 333
 Orthez, Battle of, 177
 Osborne, James, Private, V.C., 257
 Osborne Smith, E., 283
 Osborne, T., 60
 Ostend, 12

P

Page, A. T., 294, 321
 Page, E. H., 206

Paget, William, 61, 65
 Palestine, 343
 Paris, 184
 Parker, F. J., 225, 283
 Parkin, A., 277, 330
 Parry, W. P. L., 189
 Pay, 4, 7, 121, 124, 238, 334
 Pearce, Lieutenant-Colonel, 108
 Peel, W. E., 259
 Peshawar, 281
 Plattsburg, Battle of, 184
 Plymouth, 28, 29, 61, 80, 85
 Polo, 269
 Poole, 85, 102
 Portsmouth, 85, 109, 185, 186, 215
 Power, W. Le P., 234, 257
 Preston, 224
 Prichard, C. S., 300, 304
 Pyrenees, the Battles of the, 170

Q

Quebec, 36

R

Railway, first move by, 196
 Rawal Pindi, 346
 Raynsford, R. M., 341, 342
 Recruiting, 29, 58, 101, 107, 109, 110, 127, 222
 Regiments—
 1st, 15, 18, 33, 51, 91, 92, 198
 2nd, 91, 99, 198
 3rd, 18, 130, 134, 145, 147, 184
 4th, 12, 16, 18
 5th, 155, 184, 287
 6th, 84, 167, 221
 7th, 130, 154, 163, 172, 217, 221
 8th, 16, 18, 20, 61, 91, 108
 9th, 56, 81, 84
 10th, 181
 12th, 8, 12, 28, 66, 73, 341
 13th, 16, 18, 20, 91
 14th, 14, 15, 18, 61, 87, 185, 223
 15th, 31, 33, 35, 38, 41, 49, 51, 81, 84
 17th, 32, 51
 18th, 91
 19th, 20, 59
 20th, 18, 35, 112, 114, 145, 172
 21st, 18, 81, 228, 258
 22nd, 33, 51
 23rd, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 99, 108, 154, 163, 172
 24th, 140, 160, 167, 227
 25th, 18, 20, 221, 271
 26th, 33, 76
 27th, 16, 18, 51, 56, 87, 112, 167, 170, 184
 28th, 40, 41, 43, 49, 51, 56, 89, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 99, 150
 29th, 134, 137, 149
 30th, 59, 91, 105, 130
 31st, 87, 140, 145, 147, 149
 34th, 12, 16, 18, 150
 35th, 41, 49, 105

Tonyn, Patrick, 78, 110, 383
 Torres Vedras, Lines of, 145
 Torrington, Viscount George, 22, 381
 Toulouse, Battle of, 178
 Tower of London, 224
 Travers, R. H., 223
 Trent, F. C., 220, 223
 Trent, G. A., 278, 329
 Trichinopoly, 192
 Trois Rivières, 52
 Tynemouth, 65

U

Ulundi, Battle of, 230
 Umballa, 282
 Uniform, 409
 Uxbridge, 28

V

Vittoria, Battle of, 169
 Volunteer movements, 305

W

Waddell, Lieutenant, 277
 Wakkerstroom, Defence of, 256
 Wales, 198
 Walker, T. H., 294, 321
 Wanganui, 207
 Warley, 224
 Waterford, 99, 107
 Watkins, W. N., 189

Watson, Surgeon, 43
 Weallens, W., 282
 Webb, Daniel, 26, 29, 61, 382
 Weedon, 153, 196
 Wei-Hai-Wei, 342
 Wellesley, Arthur, 80
 Wellington, Mary Anne, 100
 Wemyss, Colonel, 110
 West, Hon. George, 61, 385
 West Indies, 53, 62, 63, 81, 85
 Wetherall, J. R., 336
 White, Major, 172
 Whitehaven, 78
 Whitehead, Robert Children, 214, 215, 228, 233, 389
 Willats, P. J., 194
 Willoughby, F., 322
 Wilson, H. B., 223
 Wilson, J., 158, 170, 180
 Wilson, John, 22
 Wilson, Sir James, 154
 Winchester, 109, 110
 Wolfe, 32, 43
 Worcester, 101
 Wortham, H. C. W. H., 341
 Wynyard, Edward Buckley, 208, 388
 Wynyard, G. H., 204, 208
 Wynyard, G. J. R., 204, 208
 Wynyard, J. H., 208
 Wynyard, R. H., 186, 204, 208, 238

Z

Zulu War, 227



